<https://enlabsoftware.com/development/how-to-apply-solid-principles-with-practical-examples-in-c-sharp.html>

<https://www.simplilearn.com/tutorials/asp-dot-net-tutorial/asp-dot-net-life-cycle>

* Tuples:
  + <https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/value-tuples>
  + <https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/article/tuples-in-c-sharp/>

**Contents**

[.NET Stack 21](#_Toc144387666)

[The history behind .NET: from the .NET Framework first release to .NET 6 21](#_Toc144387667)

[The .NET Framework era 21](#_Toc144387668)

[The .NET CORE era 21](#_Toc144387669)

[The .NET 5 and .NET 6 era 22](#_Toc144387670)

[What is .NET development platform 25](#_Toc144387671)

[.NET framework 25](#_Toc144387672)

[.NET Core 25](#_Toc144387673)

[Xamarin 26](#_Toc144387674)

[Universal Windows Platform (UWP) 26](#_Toc144387675)

[.NET Standard 26](#_Toc144387676)

[Common language runtime (CLR) 27](#_Toc144387677)

[Supported languages 27](#_Toc144387678)

[The Framework 28](#_Toc144387679)

[Stack vs Heap 30](#_Toc144387680)

[Installing .NET 32](#_Toc144387681)

[On Windows without Visual Studio 32](#_Toc144387682)

[Install with Windows Package Manager (winget) 32](#_Toc144387683)

[Install alongside Visual Studio Code 33](#_Toc144387684)

[Install with Windows Installer 33](#_Toc144387685)

[Install with PowerShell automation 34](#_Toc144387686)

[Install with Visual Studio 34](#_Toc144387687)

[Check SDK versions 35](#_Toc144387688)

[Check runtime versions 35](#_Toc144387689)

[Check for install folders 35](#_Toc144387690)

[On macOS without Visual Studio 36](#_Toc144387691)

[.NET CLI 36](#_Toc144387692)

[CLI commands 36](#_Toc144387693)

[Command structure 37](#_Toc144387694)

[C# Keywords, Expressions, Statements, Blocks and Variables 39](#_Toc144387695)

[C# Keywords 39](#_Toc144387696)

[Modifier Keywords 39](#_Toc144387697)

[Access Modifier Keywords: 39](#_Toc144387698)

[Statement Keywords 40](#_Toc144387699)

[Method Parameter Keywords 40](#_Toc144387700)

[Namespace Keywords 40](#_Toc144387701)

[Operator Keywords 41](#_Toc144387702)

[Access Keywords 41](#_Toc144387703)

[Literal Keywords 41](#_Toc144387704)

[Type Keywords 41](#_Toc144387705)

[Contextual Keywords 42](#_Toc144387706)

[Query Keywords 42](#_Toc144387707)

[C# Expressions 43](#_Toc144387708)

[C# Statements 44](#_Toc144387709)

[Declaration Statement 44](#_Toc144387710)

[Expression Statement 44](#_Toc144387711)

[C# Blocks 45](#_Toc144387712)

[Example 1: C# Blocks with statements 45](#_Toc144387713)

[Example 2: C# Blocks without statements 45](#_Toc144387714)

[C# Variables 46](#_Toc144387715)

[Rules for defining variables 46](#_Toc144387716)

[Implicitly Typed Variables – var 47](#_Toc144387717)

[Null Operators 49](#_Toc144387718)

[Examples 49](#_Toc144387719)

[C# - Input / Output 51](#_Toc144387720)

[C# Output 51](#_Toc144387721)

[Difference between WriteLine() and Write() method 51](#_Toc144387722)

[Printing Variables and Literals using WriteLine() and Write() 52](#_Toc144387723)

[Combining (Concatenating) two strings using + operator and printing them 52](#_Toc144387724)

[Printing concatenated string using Formatted String [Better Alternative] 53](#_Toc144387725)

[C# Input 54](#_Toc144387726)

[Difference between ReadLine(), Read() and ReadKey() method: 54](#_Toc144387727)

[Reading numeric values (integer and floating point types) 55](#_Toc144387728)

[C# - Data Types (Primitive) 57](#_Toc144387729)

[Predefined Data Types in C# 57](#_Toc144387730)

[Alias vs .NET Type 58](#_Toc144387731)

[Default Values 59](#_Toc144387732)

[Conversions 59](#_Toc144387733)

[Enums 60](#_Toc144387734)

[Enum Values 61](#_Toc144387735)

[Access an Enum 62](#_Toc144387736)

[Conversion 62](#_Toc144387737)

[Enum Attributes 63](#_Toc144387738)

[Store Enum as String or Int in Database 65](#_Toc144387739)

[Enum Flags 68](#_Toc144387740)

[Guidelines for FlagsAttribute and Enum 73](#_Toc144387741)

[C# - More Data Types 75](#_Toc144387742)

[Anonymous Types 75](#_Toc144387743)

[Dynamic Types 77](#_Toc144387744)

[Methods and Parameters 78](#_Toc144387745)

[Nullable Types 79](#_Toc144387746)

[Shorthand Syntax for Nullable Types 81](#_Toc144387747)

[?? Operator 81](#_Toc144387748)

[Assignment Rules 81](#_Toc144387749)

[Value Type vs Reference Type 82](#_Toc144387750)

[Value Type 82](#_Toc144387751)

[Passing Value Type Variables 83](#_Toc144387752)

[Reference Type 83](#_Toc144387753)

[Passing Reference Type Variables 84](#_Toc144387754)

[Null 85](#_Toc144387755)

[Struct 86](#_Toc144387756)

[Structure Declaration 86](#_Toc144387757)

[Constructors in Structure 87](#_Toc144387758)

[Methods and Properties in Structure 87](#_Toc144387759)

[Dynamic Types 88](#_Toc144387760)

[Methods and Parameters 90](#_Toc144387761)

[out vs ref 90](#_Toc144387762)

[ref Keyword 91](#_Toc144387763)

[out Keyword 91](#_Toc144387764)

[ref vs out Comparison 91](#_Toc144387765)

[Program Structure 93](#_Toc144387766)

[Static Fields Methods 93](#_Toc144387767)

[Static Fields 93](#_Toc144387768)

[Static Methods 94](#_Toc144387769)

[Rules for Static Methods 94](#_Toc144387770)

[C# - Arrays 95](#_Toc144387771)

[Array Declaration and Initialization 95](#_Toc144387772)

[Accessing Array Elements 96](#_Toc144387773)

[Accessing Array using for Loop 96](#_Toc144387774)

[Accessing Array using foreach Loop 97](#_Toc144387775)

[LINQ Methods 97](#_Toc144387776)

[Passing Array as Argument 97](#_Toc144387777)

[C# - Multidimensional Arrays 99](#_Toc144387778)

[Exercise 101](#_Toc144387779)

[C# - Jagged Arrays: An Array of Array 104](#_Toc144387780)

[C# - Collections 107](#_Toc144387781)

[Non-generic Collections 107](#_Toc144387782)

[Generic Collections 108](#_Toc144387783)

[Generic Classes 109](#_Toc144387784)

[Boxing and Unboxing 109](#_Toc144387785)

[Generic Classes 110](#_Toc144387786)

[C# - Array List 112](#_Toc144387787)

[Create an ArrayList 112](#_Toc144387788)

[Adding Elements in ArrayList 112](#_Toc144387789)

[Accessing an ArrayList 113](#_Toc144387790)

[Iterate an ArrayList 114](#_Toc144387791)

[Insert Elements in ArrayList 114](#_Toc144387792)

[Remove Elements from ArrayList 115](#_Toc144387793)

[Check Element in ArrayList 115](#_Toc144387794)

[ArrayList Class 116](#_Toc144387795)

[ArrayList Properties 117](#_Toc144387796)

[ArrayList Methods 118](#_Toc144387797)

[C# - List 118](#_Toc144387798)

[List<T> Characteristics 119](#_Toc144387799)

[Creating a List 119](#_Toc144387800)

[Adding an Array in a List 120](#_Toc144387801)

[Accessing a List 120](#_Toc144387802)

[Accessing a List using LINQ 121](#_Toc144387803)

[Insert Elements in List 121](#_Toc144387804)

[Remove Elements from List 121](#_Toc144387805)

[Check Elements in List 122](#_Toc144387806)

[List<T> Class Hierarchy 122](#_Toc144387807)

[List<T> Class Properties and Methods 123](#_Toc144387808)

[C# - SortedList<TKey, TValue> 124](#_Toc144387809)

[SortedList Characteristics 125](#_Toc144387810)

[Creating a SortedList 125](#_Toc144387811)

[Accessing SortedList 127](#_Toc144387812)

[Remove Elements from SortedList 128](#_Toc144387813)

[SortedList Class Hierarchy 129](#_Toc144387814)

[C# - Dictionary<TKey, TValue> 129](#_Toc144387815)

[Dictionary Characteristics 129](#_Toc144387816)

[Creating a Dictionary 130](#_Toc144387817)

[Access Dictionary Elements 130](#_Toc144387818)

[Update Dictionary 131](#_Toc144387819)

[Remove Elements in Dictionary 131](#_Toc144387820)

[Dictionary Class Hierarchy 132](#_Toc144387821)

[C# - Hashtable 133](#_Toc144387822)

[Hashtable Characteristics 133](#_Toc144387823)

[Creating a Hashtable 133](#_Toc144387824)

[Update Hashtable 134](#_Toc144387825)

[Remove Elements in Hashtable 134](#_Toc144387826)

[Hashtable Class Hierarchy 135](#_Toc144387827)

[C# - Stack<T> 137](#_Toc144387828)

[Stack<T> Characteristics 137](#_Toc144387829)

[Creating a Stack 137](#_Toc144387830)

[Stack<T> Properties and Methods: 138](#_Toc144387831)

[Pop() 138](#_Toc144387832)

[Peek() 138](#_Toc144387833)

[Contains() 139](#_Toc144387834)

[C# - Queue<T> 139](#_Toc144387835)

[Queue<T> Characteristics 139](#_Toc144387836)

[Creating a Queue 140](#_Toc144387837)

[Queue<T> Properties and Methods 140](#_Toc144387838)

[Retrieve Elements from a Queue 141](#_Toc144387839)

[Contains() 141](#_Toc144387840)

[C# - HashSet 142](#_Toc144387841)

[How to create a HashSet? 142](#_Toc144387842)

[How to remove elements from the HashSet? 144](#_Toc144387843)

[Set Operations 145](#_Toc144387844)

[C# - Type Conversions (Type Casting) 150](#_Toc144387845)

[Implicit Type Casting / Automatic Type Conversion 150](#_Toc144387846)

[Explicit Type Casting 151](#_Toc144387847)

[C# - Serialization 154](#_Toc144387848)

[How serialization works 154](#_Toc144387849)

[Namespaces involved 154](#_Toc144387850)

[Uses for serialization 155](#_Toc144387851)

[JSON serialization 155](#_Toc144387852)

[Binary and XML serialization 155](#_Toc144387853)

[Making an object serializable 155](#_Toc144387854)

[Basic and custom serialization 156](#_Toc144387855)

[Example 1: Binary Serialization 156](#_Toc144387856)

[Explanation 157](#_Toc144387857)

[Example 2: Class / Object Serialization 157](#_Toc144387858)

[Example 3: Array Serialization 159](#_Toc144387859)

[Example 4: Serialize Class / Object 160](#_Toc144387860)

[Code Explanation: 161](#_Toc144387861)

[Serialize and Deserialize JSON 161](#_Toc144387862)

[Namespaces 162](#_Toc144387863)

[Serialize (Write) .NET objects as JSON 162](#_Toc144387864)

[JSON Serialization 162](#_Toc144387865)

[Serialize JSON to a File 163](#_Toc144387866)

[Serialize JSON to a File Asynchronously 164](#_Toc144387867)

[Serialize JSON using Generics 164](#_Toc144387868)

[Serialization of Class with Collections and User Defined Types 165](#_Toc144387869)

[Deserialize (Read) JSON as .NET Objects 167](#_Toc144387870)

[Deserialize a JSON String 167](#_Toc144387871)

[Deserialize JSON from a File 168](#_Toc144387872)

[Deserialize JSON from a File Asynchronously 169](#_Toc144387873)

[Serialize to Formatted JSON 170](#_Toc144387874)

[Include fields 171](#_Toc144387875)

[HttpClient and HttpContent extension methods 173](#_Toc144387876)

[Serialize and Deserialize XML 174](#_Toc144387877)

[Serialize (Read) Data from an XML File 174](#_Toc144387878)

[Deserialize (Write) Data to an XML File 175](#_Toc144387879)

[C# - OOP 187](#_Toc144387880)

[OOP Principles 187](#_Toc144387881)

[C# Classes and Objects 187](#_Toc144387882)

[C# Class Members 187](#_Toc144387883)

[Indexers 187](#_Toc144387884)

[Difference between Indexers and Properties 189](#_Toc144387885)

[Static Constructors 189](#_Toc144387886)

[C# - Access Modifiers 191](#_Toc144387887)

[protected 191](#_Toc144387888)

[internal 192](#_Toc144387889)

[C# - Modifiers 194](#_Toc144387890)

[Virtual 194](#_Toc144387891)

[Late Binding 194](#_Toc144387892)

[Dynamic Dispatch 194](#_Toc144387893)

[Virtual Methods Implementation 194](#_Toc144387894)

[Virtual – More Examples 197](#_Toc144387895)

[Override 201](#_Toc144387896)

[Readonly 203](#_Toc144387897)

[Static 205](#_Toc144387898)

[C# - Partial Classes and Methods 209](#_Toc144387899)

[Restrictions 210](#_Toc144387900)

[Examples 211](#_Toc144387901)

[Partial Methods 212](#_Toc144387902)

[C# - Conversion – Boxing & Unboxing, User Defined 215](#_Toc144387903)

[Boxing 215](#_Toc144387904)

[Unboxing 216](#_Toc144387905)

[User Defined Conversion 217](#_Toc144387906)

[C# - Exceptions 219](#_Toc144387907)

[Built-in Exception Classes in C# 219](#_Toc144387908)

[Built-in Exception Classes 219](#_Toc144387909)

[Exception Handling in C# 220](#_Toc144387910)

[Exception Filters 222](#_Toc144387911)

[Invalid catch Block 223](#_Toc144387912)

[finally Block 224](#_Toc144387913)

[Nested try-catch 225](#_Toc144387914)

[C# - throw keyword 226](#_Toc144387915)

[Re-throwing an Exception 227](#_Toc144387916)

[Custom Exception Type in C# 229](#_Toc144387917)

[C# - Serialization – File I/O, XML 231](#_Toc144387918)

[File I/O 231](#_Toc144387919)

[Namespaces involved 231](#_Toc144387920)

[Example 1: Simple Serialization 231](#_Toc144387921)

[Example 2: Serialize Sub-class. 233](#_Toc144387922)

[XML Serialization 236](#_Toc144387923)

[Items That Can Be Serialized 237](#_Toc144387924)

[Serialize an Object 237](#_Toc144387925)

[Serializing a Class that Contains a Field Returning a Complex Object 238](#_Toc144387926)

[Serializing an Array of Objects 238](#_Toc144387927)

[Serializing a Class that Implements the ICollection Interface 238](#_Toc144387928)

[C# - Generics 239](#_Toc144387929)

[Generic Class 239](#_Toc144387930)

[Instantiating Generic Class 240](#_Toc144387931)

[Generic Class Characteristics 241](#_Toc144387932)

[Generic Fields 241](#_Toc144387933)

[Generic Methods 242](#_Toc144387934)

[Advantages of Generics 243](#_Toc144387935)

[More Examples 243](#_Toc144387936)

[Features of Generics 245](#_Toc144387937)

[Advantages of Generics 246](#_Toc144387938)

[The yield Keyword 246](#_Toc144387939)

[C# - Lambda Expressions 248](#_Toc144387940)

[How to Define a Lambda Expression 248](#_Toc144387941)

[Types of Lambda Expression 248](#_Toc144387942)

[Expression Lambda: 248](#_Toc144387943)

[Statement Lambda 248](#_Toc144387944)

[Example: C# Expression Lambda 249](#_Toc144387945)

[Example: C# Statement Lambda 250](#_Toc144387946)

[C# - Local Methods / Functions 251](#_Toc144387947)

[Local functions and exceptions 253](#_Toc144387948)

[Example 253](#_Toc144387949)

[Local functions vs. lambda expressions 255](#_Toc144387950)

[Usage of the yield keyword 255](#_Toc144387951)

[C# - Logging (Serilog) 257](#_Toc144387952)

[Minimum level 257](#_Toc144387953)

[Getting Started 258](#_Toc144387954)

[Let’s create a .NET Core Console application 258](#_Toc144387955)

[Add basic File Logging 258](#_Toc144387956)

[Add Rolling File Logging 259](#_Toc144387957)

[Another Example 260](#_Toc144387958)

[Serilog Configuration File 263](#_Toc144387959)

[File Sink 264](#_Toc144387960)

[Overriding per sink 265](#_Toc144387961)

[Enrichers 265](#_Toc144387962)

[Refs 266](#_Toc144387963)

[Extension Methods 267](#_Toc144387964)

[Example #2 267](#_Toc144387965)

[C# - Record 269](#_Toc144387966)

[Immutability 271](#_Toc144387967)

[Value equality 271](#_Toc144387968)

[Nondestructive mutation (using *with*) 272](#_Toc144387969)

[Positional parameters in derived record types 273](#_Toc144387970)

[Equality in inheritance hierarchies 273](#_Toc144387971)

[C# - Attributes 275](#_Toc144387972)

[Custom Attributes 275](#_Toc144387973)

[Unit Testing using xUnit and Mocking using Moq 278](#_Toc144387974)

[What are Mocking Frameworks? 278](#_Toc144387975)

[Unit Testing using xUnit 282](#_Toc144387976)

[Create the solution 282](#_Toc144387977)

[Commands to create the solution 283](#_Toc144387978)

[Create a test 284](#_Toc144387979)

[Add more tests 285](#_Toc144387980)

[Unit Test Code Coverage & Reporting 287](#_Toc144387981)

[System under test 287](#_Toc144387982)

[Create a class library 287](#_Toc144387983)

[Create test projects 288](#_Toc144387984)

[Create a solution 289](#_Toc144387985)

[Code coverage tooling 290](#_Toc144387986)

[Integrate with .NET test 290](#_Toc144387987)

[Generate reports 291](#_Toc144387988)

[Mocking using Moq (Dependency Injection) 292](#_Toc144387989)

[More Examples 294](#_Toc144387990)

[ADO.NET 296](#_Toc144387991)

[ADO.NET Architecture 296](#_Toc144387992)

[.NET Framework Data Providers 296](#_Toc144387993)

[The DataSet 296](#_Toc144387994)

[Choosing a DataReader or a DataSet 297](#_Toc144387995)

[LINQ to DataSet 298](#_Toc144387996)

[LINQ to SQL 298](#_Toc144387997)

[ADO.NET Entity Framework 298](#_Toc144387998)

[WCF Data Services 298](#_Toc144387999)

[XML and ADO.NET 298](#_Toc144388000)

[LINQ 298](#_Toc144388001)

[LINQ to DataSet 299](#_Toc144388002)

[LINQ to SQL 299](#_Toc144388003)

[LINQ to Entities 300](#_Toc144388004)

[.NET Framework Data Providers 300](#_Toc144388005)

[Core Objects of .NET Framework Data Providers 301](#_Toc144388006)

[.NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server (SqlClient) 301](#_Toc144388007)

[ADO.NET SqlClient Data Provider Examples 302](#_Toc144388008)

[Retrieve Data Using a DataReader 303](#_Toc144388009)

[Closing the DataReader 303](#_Toc144388010)

[Executing a Command 304](#_Toc144388011)

[Getting a Single Value from a Table 306](#_Toc144388012)

[Updating Data 307](#_Toc144388013)

[Example 307](#_Toc144388014)

[Retrieving Multiple Result Sets Using NextResult() 308](#_Toc144388015)

[DataSet and DataAdapter 309](#_Toc144388016)

[Example 310](#_Toc144388017)

[LINQ to DataSet 311](#_Toc144388018)

[Multiple Result Sets 314](#_Toc144388019)

[Cross-Table Queries (LINQ to DataSet) 315](#_Toc144388020)

[Transactions and Concurrency 316](#_Toc144388021)

[Local Transactions 317](#_Toc144388022)

[Stored Procedures 319](#_Toc144388023)

[Example 319](#_Toc144388024)

[Design Pattern – Factory 322](#_Toc144388025)

[Design Pattern – Repository and Unit of work 323](#_Toc144388026)

[Repository Design Pattern 323](#_Toc144388027)

[Unit of Work Design Pattern 323](#_Toc144388028)

[EntityFramework (v6) with .NET Framework (not Core) 325](#_Toc144388029)

[Entity States 327](#_Toc144388030)

[EF6 – Database First 327](#_Toc144388031)

[Rules of Thumb 330](#_Toc144388032)

[Relationships in EF 6 332](#_Toc144388033)

[One-to-Many 332](#_Toc144388034)

[Reference Navigation Property 332](#_Toc144388035)

[Collection Navigation Property 332](#_Toc144388036)

[Migrations 332](#_Toc144388037)

[Many-to-Many Relationships 333](#_Toc144388038)

[EF 6 Transaction 334](#_Toc144388039)

[Multiple SaveChanges() in a Single Transaction 335](#_Toc144388040)

[Rollback 335](#_Toc144388041)

[EF 6 Async Query 336](#_Toc144388042)

[Async Query 336](#_Toc144388043)

[Async Save 336](#_Toc144388044)

[Getting the async Query Result 336](#_Toc144388045)

[EF 6 Eager Loading 337](#_Toc144388046)

[Use Lambda Expression 337](#_Toc144388047)

[Load Multiple Entities 338](#_Toc144388048)

[EF 6 Explicit Loading 339](#_Toc144388049)

[EF 6 Seeding Data 340](#_Toc144388050)

[Database Initialization Strategies in EF 6 Code-First 340](#_Toc144388051)

[EF 6 Multiple DbContexts 342](#_Toc144388052)

[EntityFramework Core 343](#_Toc144388053)

[Read JSON Config in Console .NET Core App 343](#_Toc144388054)

[Writing SQL Queries in EntityFramework Core 345](#_Toc144388055)

[Parameterized Query 346](#_Toc144388056)

[LINQ Operators 346](#_Toc144388057)

[FromSql Limitations 347](#_Toc144388058)

[.NET EF Core – How to store enum to the database ? 347](#_Toc144388059)

[Exception Handling in EntityFramework Core 347](#_Toc144388060)

[Create a Web API with ASP.NET Core and EF Core 348](#_Toc144388061)

[Create a MVC Web App and Web API with ASP.NET .NET Framework and EF6 with Dependency Injecting using Unity 350](#_Toc144388062)

[MVC Web App 350](#_Toc144388063)

[MVC Web API 351](#_Toc144388064)

[The Repository Pattern for ASP.NET MVC 4.8 Projects 352](#_Toc144388065)

[How to Implement a Soft Delete Strategy with Entity Framework Core 355](#_Toc144388066)

[What is a Soft Delete? 355](#_Toc144388067)

[Entity Framework soft deletes with Interceptors 356](#_Toc144388068)

[Automatically filter soft-deleted records 358](#_Toc144388069)

[Putting it all together with reads and writes 359](#_Toc144388070)

[REST and SOA 364](#_Toc144388071)

[What Is REST API and How Does It Work 364](#_Toc144388072)

[REST API Concepts 364](#_Toc144388073)

[REST API Methods and Request Structure 364](#_Toc144388074)

[REST Response Structure 365](#_Toc144388075)

[REST best practices: what makes an API RESTful 366](#_Toc144388076)

[Client-server autonomy 366](#_Toc144388077)

[Uniform interface 366](#_Toc144388078)

[Layered architecture 367](#_Toc144388079)

[Caching 367](#_Toc144388080)

[Stateless interactions 367](#_Toc144388081)

[Code on Demand (CoD) 368](#_Toc144388082)

[Service Oriented Architecture 368](#_Toc144388083)

[Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Principles 368](#_Toc144388084)

[Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Terminology 369](#_Toc144388085)

[Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Advantages 370](#_Toc144388086)

[Disadvantages of Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) 370](#_Toc144388087)

[Asynchronous Programming (async, await, Task, Thread) 370](#_Toc144388088)

[Async improves responsiveness 371](#_Toc144388089)

[Async methods are easy to write 371](#_Toc144388090)

[What happens in an async method 373](#_Toc144388091)

[Another Simpler Example 375](#_Toc144388092)

[Async File I/O 377](#_Toc144388093)

[Reflection in .NET 380](#_Toc144388094)

[What is .NET Reflection? 380](#_Toc144388095)

[Roadmap 380](#_Toc144388096)

[System.Reflection Namespace 381](#_Toc144388097)

[The System.Type Class 383](#_Toc144388098)

[Using System.Object.GetType() 384](#_Toc144388099)

[Using System.Type.GetType() 385](#_Toc144388100)

[Using typeof() C# operator 386](#_Toc144388101)

[Type Properties 386](#_Toc144388102)

[Type Methods 389](#_Toc144388103)

[Reflecting on Methods 389](#_Toc144388104)

[Reflecting on Fields and Properties 391](#_Toc144388105)

[Reflecting on Implemented Interfaces 392](#_Toc144388106)

[Reflecting on Method Parameters and Return Values 393](#_Toc144388107)

[Reflecting on Constructor 394](#_Toc144388108)

[Assembly Class 394](#_Toc144388109)

[Dynamically loading an Assembly 395](#_Toc144388110)

[Late Binding 396](#_Toc144388111)

[Design Pattern – Factory Method 398](#_Toc144388112)

[Factory design pattern 398](#_Toc144388113)

[Who is the Gang of Four? 398](#_Toc144388114)

[Where to Use It? 398](#_Toc144388115)

[Factory design pattern in real-world example 399](#_Toc144388116)

[Who is what? 399](#_Toc144388117)

[HTTP 406](#_Toc144388118)

[Introduction to HTTP 406](#_Toc144388119)

[Features 406](#_Toc144388120)

[Elements 406](#_Toc144388121)

[HTTP Requests 407](#_Toc144388122)

[HTTP Responses 408](#_Toc144388123)

[HTTP Request Lifecycle 409](#_Toc144388124)

[Routes 410](#_Toc144388125)

[Swagger UI 412](#_Toc144388126)

[What is Swagger? 412](#_Toc144388127)

[Difference between the Swagger and Open API specification 412](#_Toc144388128)

[ASP.NET Core – Minimal APIs 414](#_Toc144388129)

[WebApplication 414](#_Toc144388130)

[Working with ports 414](#_Toc144388131)

[Multiple ports 415](#_Toc144388132)

[Set the port from the command line 415](#_Toc144388133)

[Read the port from environment 415](#_Toc144388134)

[Set the ports via the ASPNETCORE\_URLS environment variable 415](#_Toc144388135)

[Listen on all interfaces 416](#_Toc144388136)

[http://\*:3000 416](#_Toc144388137)

[http://+:3000 416](#_Toc144388138)

[http://0.0.0.0:3000 416](#_Toc144388139)

[Listen on all interfaces using ASPNETCORE\_URLS 416](#_Toc144388140)

[Specify HTTPS with development certificate 416](#_Toc144388141)

[Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and ADO.NET 417](#_Toc144388142)

[Overview 417](#_Toc144388143)

[Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and EF Core 417](#_Toc144388144)

[Overview 417](#_Toc144388145)

[Prerequisites 418](#_Toc144388146)

[Create a Web API project 418](#_Toc144388147)

[Examine the code 419](#_Toc144388148)

[Run the app 420](#_Toc144388149)

[Test Using Swagger 422](#_Toc144388150)

[Update the generated code 423](#_Toc144388151)

[Add NuGet packages 424](#_Toc144388152)

[Add the API code 424](#_Toc144388153)

[The model and database context classes 426](#_Toc144388154)

[Install Postman to test the app 426](#_Toc144388155)

[Return values 429](#_Toc144388156)

[Examine the PUT endpoint 429](#_Toc144388157)

[Test the PUT endpoint 429](#_Toc144388158)

[Examine the DELETE endpoint 429](#_Toc144388159)

[Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET Core 430](#_Toc144388160)

[Using [EnableCors] in ASP.NET Core 430](#_Toc144388161)

[Enable CORS with attributes 431](#_Toc144388162)

[Disable CORS 433](#_Toc144388163)

[Set the allowed request headers 434](#_Toc144388164)

[Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET (.NET Framework) 435](#_Toc144388165)

[Scope Rules for [EnableCors] 436](#_Toc144388166)

[Set the Allowed Origins 437](#_Toc144388167)

[Set the Allowed HTTP Methods 437](#_Toc144388168)

[Set the Allowed Request Headers 437](#_Toc144388169)

[Prevent over-posting 438](#_Toc144388170)

[Differences between minimal APIs and APIs with controllers 440](#_Toc144388171)

[Use JsonOptions 441](#_Toc144388172)

[Test minimal API 441](#_Toc144388173)

[Publish to Azure 442](#_Toc144388174)

[C# - Asynchronous Programming with async and await 443](#_Toc144388175)

[What is Asynchronous Programming? 443](#_Toc144388176)

[async, await, and Task 444](#_Toc144388177)

[Multiple Async Methods 444](#_Toc144388178)

[Async Breakfast 445](#_Toc144388179)

[Don't block, await instead 448](#_Toc144388180)

[Start tasks concurrently 450](#_Toc144388181)

[Composition with tasks 452](#_Toc144388182)

[Asynchronous exceptions 453](#_Toc144388183)

[Await tasks efficiently 455](#_Toc144388184)

[ASP.NET – HttpClient Demo – ADO.NET 459](#_Toc144388185)

[Advanced ASP.NET - HttpClient 462](#_Toc144388186)

[Consumption patterns 462](#_Toc144388187)

[Basic usage 462](#_Toc144388188)

[Named clients 463](#_Toc144388189)

[CreateClient 464](#_Toc144388190)

[Typed clients 464](#_Toc144388191)

[Generated clients 466](#_Toc144388192)

[Full Demo 467](#_Toc144388193)

[Make POST, PUT, and DELETE requests 467](#_Toc144388194)

[POST 467](#_Toc144388195)

[PUT 468](#_Toc144388196)

[DELETE 468](#_Toc144388197)

[REST – HttpClient Demo – EF Core 470](#_Toc144388198)

[Create Console Application 470](#_Toc144388199)

[Install the Web API Client Libraries 472](#_Toc144388200)

[REST – REpresentational State Transfer 474](#_Toc144388201)

[Guiding Principles of REST 474](#_Toc144388202)

[Uniform Interface 474](#_Toc144388203)

[Client-server 474](#_Toc144388204)

[Stateless 475](#_Toc144388205)

[Cacheable 475](#_Toc144388206)

[Layered system 475](#_Toc144388207)

[Code on demand (optional) 475](#_Toc144388208)

[What is a Resource? 475](#_Toc144388209)

[Resource Identifiers 476](#_Toc144388210)

[Hypermedia 476](#_Toc144388211)

[Self-descriptive 476](#_Toc144388212)

[Resource Methods 476](#_Toc144388213)

[REST and HTTP are not same 477](#_Toc144388214)

[Summary 477](#_Toc144388215)

[REST – HATEOAS 478](#_Toc144388216)

[How to Implement HATEOAS 479](#_Toc144388217)

[ASP.NET Core 480](#_Toc144388218)

[Why choose ASP.NET Core? 480](#_Toc144388219)

[Build web APIs and web UI using ASP.NET Core MVC 480](#_Toc144388220)

[Client-side development 481](#_Toc144388221)

[Framework selection 481](#_Toc144388222)

[Demo: Create an ASP.NET Core Web App – Visual Studio 481](#_Toc144388223)

[Demo: Create an ASP.NET Core Web App – Visual Studio Code 481](#_Toc144388224)

[Create a web app project 481](#_Toc144388225)

[Trust the development certificate 482](#_Toc144388226)

[Run the app 482](#_Toc144388227)

[ASP.NET Core Fundamentals 483](#_Toc144388228)

[Program.cs 483](#_Toc144388229)

[Dependency injection (services) 483](#_Toc144388230)

[Middleware 484](#_Toc144388231)

[Host 485](#_Toc144388232)

[Non-web scenarios 485](#_Toc144388233)

[Configuration 486](#_Toc144388234)

[Environments 486](#_Toc144388235)

[Logging 487](#_Toc144388236)

[Routing 488](#_Toc144388237)

[Error handling 489](#_Toc144388238)

[Make HTTP requests 489](#_Toc144388239)

[Content root 489](#_Toc144388240)

[Web root 489](#_Toc144388241)

[Dependency Injection 490](#_Toc144388242)

[ASP.NET Core – Middleware 491](#_Toc144388243)

[Overview 491](#_Toc144388244)

[Architecture of Middleware 492](#_Toc144388245)

[Understanding the Run, Use and Map Method 493](#_Toc144388246)

[app.Run() 493](#_Toc144388247)

[app.Use() 493](#_Toc144388248)

[app.Map() 494](#_Toc144388249)

[Creating a Custom Middleware 495](#_Toc144388250)

[More Explanation 497](#_Toc144388251)

[Key Components in the Middleware 498](#_Toc144388252)

[Advantages of the Middleware architecture 499](#_Toc144388253)

[Configuring the Middleware Pipeline 499](#_Toc144388254)

[Examples of Middleware Components 499](#_Toc144388255)

[1. Authentication Middleware: 500](#_Toc144388256)

[2. Static Files Middleware: 500](#_Toc144388257)

[3. Routing Middleware: 500](#_Toc144388258)

[4. Session Middleware: 500](#_Toc144388259)

[5. Exception Handling Middleware: 501](#_Toc144388260)

[6. CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) Middleware: 501](#_Toc144388261)

[**7. GZIP Compression Middleware:** 501](#_Toc144388262)

[**8. HTTPS Redirection Middleware:** 502](#_Toc144388263)

[Middleware – Differences between ASP.NET Framework and ASP.NET Core 502](#_Toc144388264)

[Migrating HTTP handlers and modules to ASP.NET Core middleware 503](#_Toc144388265)

[Custom middleware in an ASP.NET Core application 503](#_Toc144388266)

[Examples of a Custom Middleware implementation 503](#_Toc144388267)

[Custom Middleware to add Logging 505](#_Toc144388268)

[Combining Custom Middleware with other built-in Middleware 506](#_Toc144388269)

[Custom Middleware for Exception Handling and Caching 506](#_Toc144388270)

[Create a middleware pipeline with WebApplication 508](#_Toc144388271)

[Configure Middleware 509](#_Toc144388272)

[Understand Run Method 509](#_Toc144388273)

[Configure Multiple Middleware (Demo2) 510](#_Toc144388274)

[Add Built-in Middleware Via NuGet 511](#_Toc144388275)

[Branch the middleware pipeline (Demo4) 511](#_Toc144388276)

[ASP.NET Core 8: Improved exception handling with IExceptionHandler 513](#_Toc144388277)

[No more middleware to handle exceptions! 513](#_Toc144388278)

[Chaining Exception handlers 515](#_Toc144388279)

[MVC Pattern 518](#_Toc144388280)

[Model Responsibilities 519](#_Toc144388281)

[View Responsibilities 519](#_Toc144388282)

[Controller Responsibilities 519](#_Toc144388283)

[ASP.NET - Controllers 521](#_Toc144388284)

[Defining Actions 521](#_Toc144388285)

[Controller Action Return Types 522](#_Toc144388286)

[Specific type 522](#_Toc144388287)

[Return IEnumerable<T> or IAsyncEnumerable<T> 522](#_Toc144388288)

[IActionResult type 523](#_Toc144388289)

[ActionResult vs IActionResult 525](#_Toc144388290)

[Controller Helper Methods 526](#_Toc144388291)

[1. Methods resulting in an empty response body 526](#_Toc144388292)

[2. Methods resulting in a non-empty response body with a predefined content type 527](#_Toc144388293)

[3. Methods resulting in a non-empty response body formatted in a content type negotiated with the client 527](#_Toc144388294)

[Routing to controller actions in ASP.NET Core 527](#_Toc144388295)

[Set up conventional route 528](#_Toc144388296)

[Multiple conventional routes 529](#_Toc144388297)

[MVC Routing - .NET Framework, not Core 531](#_Toc144388298)

[ASP.NET - Model Binding 532](#_Toc144388299)

[ASP.NET – Filters 533](#_Toc144388300)

[How filters work 533](#_Toc144388301)

[Filter types 533](#_Toc144388302)

[Action Filter Attribute 534](#_Toc144388303)

[The Scope of Action Filters 536](#_Toc144388304)

[Order of Execution 536](#_Toc144388305)

[Changing the Order 536](#_Toc144388306)

[Adding Validations 537](#_Toc144388307)

[Service Filter Attribute 539](#_Toc144388308)

[Attribute routing for REST APIs 540](#_Toc144388309)

[How to Read Values From Query Strings In ASP.NET Core 542](#_Toc144388310)

[Understanding the Fundamentals of Query Strings 542](#_Toc144388311)

[How to Read Scalar Values? 542](#_Toc144388312)

[How to Read Array Values? 543](#_Toc144388313)

[How to Read Object Values? 544](#_Toc144388314)

[The Route “template” Parameter 544](#_Toc144388315)

[Full Source Code 544](#_Toc144388316)

[ASP.NET Core - Web API with EF Core 547](#_Toc144388317)

[Create a Web Project 547](#_Toc144388318)

[Test the project 548](#_Toc144388319)

[Update the launchUrl 550](#_Toc144388320)

[Add a model class 550](#_Toc144388321)

[Add a database context 550](#_Toc144388322)

[Register the database context 551](#_Toc144388323)

[Scaffold a controller 552](#_Toc144388324)

[Update the PostTodoItem create method 552](#_Toc144388325)

[Install http-repl 553](#_Toc144388326)

[Test PostTodoItem 553](#_Toc144388327)

[Test the location header URI 553](#_Toc144388328)

[Examine the GET methods 554](#_Toc144388329)

[Routing and URL paths 554](#_Toc144388330)

[Return values 555](#_Toc144388331)

[The PutTodoItem method 555](#_Toc144388332)

[Test the PutTodoItem method 556](#_Toc144388333)

[The DeleteTodoItem method 556](#_Toc144388334)

[Test the DeleteTodoItem method 557](#_Toc144388335)

[Prevent over-posting 557](#_Toc144388336)

[ASP.NET Core – Web API, EF Core, Code First, SQL Server 561](#_Toc144388337)

[Configure and Use Migrations 561](#_Toc144388338)

[Data Annotations 563](#_Toc144388339)

[Table name 563](#_Toc144388340)

[Included and excluded properties 563](#_Toc144388341)

[Column names 564](#_Toc144388342)

[Column data types 564](#_Toc144388343)

[Maximum length 564](#_Toc144388344)

[Required and optional properties 565](#_Toc144388345)

[Column order 565](#_Toc144388346)

[Configuring a primary key 566](#_Toc144388347)

[Validation attributes 567](#_Toc144388348)

[Built-in attributes 567](#_Toc144388349)

[Error messages 568](#_Toc144388350)

[Custom attributes 568](#_Toc144388351)

[Detailed Examples of DataAnnotation (Without EntityFramework) 569](#_Toc144388352)

[Traditional Validation Methods 570](#_Toc144388353)

[Create a Console Application 570](#_Toc144388354)

[Create a Product View Model Class 571](#_Toc144388355)

[Try It Out 573](#_Toc144388356)

[Microsoft Data Annotations 574](#_Toc144388357)

[Standard Business Rule Validations 586](#_Toc144388358)

[Create Custom Validators Using the [CustomValidation] Attribute 588](#_Toc144388359)

[Create Custom Validators by Inheriting from the ValidationAttribute Class 590](#_Toc144388360)

[Custom Validator: Dynamic Date Range by Year 593](#_Toc144388361)

[Custom Validator: Is One Date Property Less Than Another 594](#_Toc144388362)

[Custom Validator: Is One Numeric Property Less Than Another 596](#_Toc144388363)

[Implement the IValidatableObject Interface 597](#_Toc144388364)

[Localizing Error Messages 599](#_Toc144388365)

[Seeding 604](#_Toc144388366)

[Reverting Migrations 605](#_Toc144388367)

[Creating DB Scripts 605](#_Toc144388368)

[CORS Configuration 606](#_Toc144388369)

[IIS Configuration as Part of .NET Core Configuration 607](#_Toc144388370)

[Create the Repository 609](#_Toc144388371)

[Add the Employee Controller 611](#_Toc144388372)

[Testing the Employee API 612](#_Toc144388373)

[EntityFramework – Fluent API 613](#_Toc144388374)

[Fluent API Configurations 613](#_Toc144388375)

[Configure One-to-Many Relationships using Fluent API in Entity Framework Core 614](#_Toc144388376)

[Configure One-to-One Relationships using Fluent API in Entity Framework Core 616](#_Toc144388377)

[Configure Many-to-Many Relationships in Entity Framework Core 618](#_Toc144388378)

[Convention 618](#_Toc144388379)

[Fluent API 618](#_Toc144388380)

[ASP.NET – OpenAPI 622](#_Toc144388381)

[OpenAPI specification (openapi.json) 622](#_Toc144388382)

[Swagger UI 624](#_Toc144388383)

[Get started with Swashbuckle and ASP.NET Core 625](#_Toc144388384)

[Package installation 626](#_Toc144388385)

[Add and configure Swagger middleware 626](#_Toc144388386)

[Customize and extend 628](#_Toc144388387)

[XML comments 629](#_Toc144388388)

[Data annotations 632](#_Toc144388389)

[Describe response types 634](#_Toc144388390)

[Customize the UI (skip) 635](#_Toc144388391)

[ASP.NET Core – Caching 636](#_Toc144388392)

[What is Caching? 636](#_Toc144388393)

[What is In-Memory Caching in ASP.NET Core? 636](#_Toc144388394)

[Implementing an In-Memory Cache 636](#_Toc144388395)

[Configuring the Cache Options 636](#_Toc144388396)

[ASP.NET Core – Security 638](#_Toc144388397)

[ASP.NET Core security features 638](#_Toc144388398)

[Authentication vs. Authorization 638](#_Toc144388399)

[Common Vulnerabilities in software 639](#_Toc144388400)

[Security - IDaaS 639](#_Toc144388401)

[IDaaS – Okta and ASP.NET Core 639](#_Toc144388402)

[My Okta (Github) 639](#_Toc144388403)

[What is the client credentials flow 640](#_Toc144388404)

[Prerequisites 640](#_Toc144388405)

[Set up your Okta authorization server 640](#_Toc144388406)

[Create your web API 641](#_Toc144388407)

[Install your dependencies 642](#_Toc144388408)

[Set up your appsettings.json files 642](#_Toc144388409)

[Add your API code 643](#_Toc144388410)

[Test your .NET 6 API 647](#_Toc144388411)

[Getting Token from an Application and Consuming the API 650](#_Toc144388412)

[Okta Authorization 650](#_Toc144388413)

[ASP.NET Core MVC Web App with User Login 650](#_Toc144388414)

[Create an Okta integration for your app 650](#_Toc144388415)

[Create app 651](#_Toc144388416)

[Sign in a user 656](#_Toc144388417)

[Configure required authentication 656](#_Toc144388418)

[Okta - Secure Your API 657](#_Toc144388419)

[Creating Users on Okta – Users API 661](#_Toc144388420)

[Okta API tokens 661](#_Toc144388421)

[Create the token 661](#_Toc144388422)

[Token expiration and deactivation 661](#_Toc144388423)

[Security - OWASP Top 10 663](#_Toc144388424)

[What's changed in the Top 10 for 2021 663](#_Toc144388425)

[A01:2021 – Broken Access Control 664](#_Toc144388426)

[Overview 664](#_Toc144388427)

[Description 664](#_Toc144388428)

[A02:2021 – Cryptographic Failures 665](#_Toc144388429)

[Overview 665](#_Toc144388430)

[Description 665](#_Toc144388431)

[A03:2021 – Injection 666](#_Toc144388432)

[Overview 666](#_Toc144388433)

[Description 666](#_Toc144388434)

[A04:2021 – Insecure Design 666](#_Toc144388435)

[Overview 666](#_Toc144388436)

[Description 666](#_Toc144388437)

[A05:2021 – Security Misconfiguration 667](#_Toc144388438)

[Overview 667](#_Toc144388439)

[Description 667](#_Toc144388440)

[A06:2021 – Vulnerable and Outdated Components 667](#_Toc144388441)

[Overview 667](#_Toc144388442)

[Description 667](#_Toc144388443)

[A07:2021 – Identification and Authentication Failures 668](#_Toc144388444)

[Overview 668](#_Toc144388445)

[Description 668](#_Toc144388446)

[A08:2021 – Software and Data Integrity Failures 669](#_Toc144388447)

[Overview 669](#_Toc144388448)

[Description 669](#_Toc144388449)

[A09:2021 – Security Logging and Monitoring Failures 669](#_Toc144388450)

[Overview 669](#_Toc144388451)

[Description 669](#_Toc144388452)

[A10:2021 – Server-Side Request Forgery (SSRF) 670](#_Toc144388453)

[Overview 670](#_Toc144388454)

[Description 670](#_Toc144388455)

[C# - Delegates 671](#_Toc144388456)

[Introduction 671](#_Toc144388457)

[Example: Callback Operation by Delegate 671](#_Toc144388458)

[Callback by Delegate 671](#_Toc144388459)

[Callback by Interface 672](#_Toc144388460)

[Array of Delegates 674](#_Toc144388461)

[Anonymous Methods 675](#_Toc144388462)

[Multicast Delegate 676](#_Toc144388463)

[More Details 678](#_Toc144388464)

[Multicast Delegates 681](#_Toc144388465)

[Func Delegate 681](#_Toc144388466)

[C# - Anonymous Method 681](#_Toc144388467)

[Anonymous Method Limitations 683](#_Toc144388468)

[C# - Events 684](#_Toc144388469)

[Events 685](#_Toc144388470)

[Example 1 685](#_Toc144388471)

[Example 2 686](#_Toc144388472)

[Example 3: Declare, Raising and Consuming an Event 687](#_Toc144388473)

[Declaring an Event 687](#_Toc144388474)

[Raising an Event 688](#_Toc144388475)

[Consume an Event 688](#_Toc144388476)

[Built-in EventHandler Delegate 689](#_Toc144388477)

[Example 4: Passing an Event Data 690](#_Toc144388478)

[Example: Passing Event Data 690](#_Toc144388479)

[More Details 691](#_Toc144388480)

[Defining and Using Events 691](#_Toc144388481)

[C# - LINQ 693](#_Toc144388482)

[LINQ query and method syntax 693](#_Toc144388483)

[LINQ element access 694](#_Toc144388484)

[LINQ select 695](#_Toc144388485)

[LINQ select into anonymous type 695](#_Toc144388486)

[LINQ SelectMany 696](#_Toc144388487)

[LINQ Concat 696](#_Toc144388488)

[LINQ filter 697](#_Toc144388489)

[LINQ built-in aggregate calculations 698](#_Toc144388490)

[LINQ orderby 699](#_Toc144388491)

[LINQ group by 700](#_Toc144388492)

[LINQ join 701](#_Toc144388493)

[LINQ XML 702](#_Toc144388494)

[C# - Extension Methods 703](#_Toc144388495)

[Deployment 706](#_Toc144388496)

[Minimal Todo API Deployment to Azure using GitHub Actions and SonarCloud 706](#_Toc144388497)

[Adding Environments and Approval Steps 706](#_Toc144388498)

# .NET Stack

## The history behind .NET: from the .NET Framework first release to .NET 6

Microsoft started working on the .NET framework in the late 90s. The idea was to create a platform based on so-called managed code, code that can be executed under a runtime environment. This was needed to improve the development experience and relieve engineers from handling security operations, active memory management, and other low-level efforts that C/C++ developers had to bother with.

## The .NET Framework era

The first release of .NET Framework in 2002 introduced C#, a language for writing managed code that had a design similar to C++. The framework itself was aimed at Windows-based computers and servers. It had WinForms, a GUI library for desktop applications; ASP.NET, a framework for Web; and ADO.NET for data access. All these elements were driven by Common Language Runtime (CLR) to compile and execute managed code.

To unite various functions, .NET offered a framework class library (FCL) that included the base class library (BCL), network library, a numerics library, and others.

Since that time, the framework has undergone multiple iterations spanning runtime updates, new desktop graphical systems (WPF), APIs for service-oriented applications (WCF), and more.

## The .NET CORE era

In 2014, Microsoft announced a dramatic shift in the way .NET exists by presenting .NET Core, a new cross-platform, cloud-friendly, and open-source version of the framework. .NET Core made it to a release in 2016, becoming the main technology to consider for new .NET projects. Gradually, Microsoft started porting existing services to work with Core. Some that didn’t receive official ports, like Windows Communication Foundation (WCF), were substituted by alternatives sourced from the community.



Also, in 2016, Microsoft acquired Xamarin, previously a proprietary technology for cross-platform mobile development, making it open source as well.

Microsoft continued moving towards “transparency between the product team and the community,” and open-sourced Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF), Windows Forms, and WinUI frameworks in December 2018.

## The .NET 5 and .NET 6 era

In May 2019, the company announced the big release that would tie the ecosystem together: All .NET elements were supposed to be bundled in the .NET 5 development platform. While changes were made to the schedule because of COVID-19, the .NET 5 unified development platform was finally introduced in November 2020. The successor to .NET Core 3.1 and .NET Framework 4.8, .NET 5 puts order into the fragmentation of the .NET world and provides a lot of features to build applications on Windows, Linux, macOS, iOS, watchOS, Android, tvOS, or using WebAssembly. The platform comes with new APIs, language features, and runtime capabilities. Also, .NET 5 includes ASP.NET Core, Xamarin, Entity Framework Core, WPF, WinForms, and ML.NET.



While .NET 5 set the unification foundations, the newest .NET 6 version delivered the final parts of it in November 2021, with Visual Studio 2022 released the same day. This is a unified platform for building projects across cloud, browser, IoT, mobile, and desktop environments, enabling all to use the same .NET libraries, SDK, and runtime.



One of the most prominent .NET 6 features is .NET MAUI (Multi-platform App UI) that acts as the cross-platform framework for developing native desktop and mobile apps with C# and XAML.

Apart from being the final step of the unification, .NET 6 can boast of:

* Better performance with decreased project execution time, latency time, and memory use.
* APIs for HTTP/3, JSON processing, mathematics, and direct memory manipulation.
* Improved security with support for OpenSSL 3 and ChaCha20Poly1305 encryption scheme.
* Stable version and long-term support for 3 years.



Besides all that, it’s the very first release that has native support for Apple Silicon (mac OS Arm64) and improved support for Windows Arm64.

# What is .NET development platform

.NET comes in four flavors: .NET Framework, .NET Core, Xamarin, and Universal Windows Platform (UWP).

These implementations combined are called the .NET development platform. Each of them contains frameworks and libraries to build various applications.

## .NET framework

The .NET Framework released back in 2002 is the first and oldest implementation of the platform. It includes three main application models – WPF, Windows Forms, ASP.NET Forms – and Base Class Library.

Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF) is a UI framework used for creating graphical interfaces primarily for desktop client applications on Windows OS. WPF uses the capabilities of Extensible Application Markup Language (XAML).

Windows Forms is a GUI class library within .NET Framework. Windows Forms are used to develop desktop applications with rich graphics that are easy to update and deploy.

ASP.NET. While the previous two components are designed for desktop engineering ASP.NET is used to develop dynamic websites and web applications. There is the Common Language Runtime (CLR) in its core that gives developers the opportunity to write ASP.NET code using different .NET languages that we discuss below.

Base Class Library (BCL) provides the most common functionality like classes in namespaces and is the core of the Framework Class Library (FCL), a set of reusable interfaces, classes, and value types that are closely integrated with the Common Language Runtime (CLR). The combination of FCL and CLR constitutes the .NET Framework. The base class library also includes ADO.NET, data access technology used by developers to access databases.

As .NET Framework supports only Windows-based devices, there was a need for a cross-platform package.

## .NET Core

.NET Core was released in 2016. It’s a cross-platform re-build of .NET Framework. Unlike the old version, engineers can now use the product on Linux and macOS and create applications that aren’t necessarily tied to the Windows family. The new system aims at conquering the cloud space as some providers like Digital Ocean are Linux-driven. Not only is .NET Core cross-platform but its different versions can also be installed side by side on the same device. .NET Core includes ASP.NET Core and Universal Windows Platform (UWP).

ASP.NET Core is a rebuild of ASP.NET that happened to be a more modular framework than its predecessor. ASP.NET Core allows you to build the mobile backend, web apps, and services. It’s also cross-platform and runs on OS X, Windows, and Linux.

In .NET 6, ASP.NET Core counts many new features including Hot Reload that enables the application of changes to C#, Visual Basic, and CSS source files without having to restart or rebuild the app (the app is running while you are updating the code).

## Xamarin

The third implementation is called Xamarin and is used for mobile applications and Mac products. Originally, Xamarin was designed independently from Microsoft and was a proprietary product. Then Microsoft acquired it in 2016 making it a fully open-source branch of the .NET platform. Xamarin uses the Mono runtime and a version of the .NET Framework adjusted to work with APIs for iOS, Android, and Xamarin.Mac.

All runtimes use a common infrastructure that makes the entire ecosystem work. It provides runtime components, languages, and compilers.

## Universal Windows Platform (UWP)

UWP provides a common type system, APIs, and application model for all devices running on Windows 10. So, UWP enables the development of universal apps for PC, tablet, Xbox, Surface Hub, HoloLens, or Internet of Things (IoT) devices.

UWP app developers get access to the Microsoft store that charges only 15 percent for non-gaming subscription-based apps, unlike Google Play Store and App Store. Other services include an execution environment (AppContainer) and Extension SDKs to call specialized APIs for different devices.

Unfortunately, .NET 5 and .NET 6 will not be coming to UWP project types and there will not be an update on UWP in this regard.

## .NET Standard

In 2016 Microsoft also introduced .NET Standard, a library that combines APIs from .NET Framework, .NET Core, and Xamarin allowing engineers to use a single base-class library rather than mastering three different ones related to each .NET implementation. This step unified the ecosystem and brought a higher consistency to reusing components across different platforms.



.NET development platform is best served with Visual Studio IDE used for building, debugging, and publishing applications across all platforms and devices.

## Common language runtime (CLR)

Common Language Runtime (CLR) is the heart of .NET, an application virtual machine that manages memory, implements code access security, verifies code safety, and provides execution of threads and code. CLR is what makes the .NET code a managed one.

As we mentioned, the idea of CLR is to make the developer’s life easier. Besides, it allows engineers to design systems with multiple languages, as CLR enables them to communicate and integrate their behaviors. The runtime checks the needed versions of applied services to ensure that all dependencies are intact and the code works as intended.

In .NET Core, an open-source CoreCLR is used. While nearly identical to CLR in .NET Framework, CoreCLR is adjusted to the .NET Core cross-platform makeup.

## Supported languages

The languages that you can use with .NET can be ultimately divided into two major groups: 1) the main officially supported languages by Microsoft, and 2) the rest of the languages that are CLI-compliant.

Main languages. Most of the .NET development happens with C#, F#, and Visual Basic. All three saw great improvements within the .NET 6 release. C# 10 and F# 6 were introduced, both aiming at simplifying code and making it more performant.

The rest of CLI-compliant languages. CLI means common language infrastructure. It’s a technical standard for high-level languages that can be compiled into a common intermediate language (CIL) and further compiled into a byte-code. Besides those three mentioned above, there are about 25 active CLI-compliant languages, including C++/CLI, IronPython, Oxygene, Phalanger, and more. There’s also a number of languages that are no longer used, like IronRuby.



## The Framework



**IL/MSIL/CIL**– Intermediate Language (IL) code is a CPU independent partially compiled code. It’s partially compiled because we do not know in what kind of environment .NET code will run and on runtime IL Code will compile to machine code using the environmental properties (CPU, OS, machine configuration, etc.).

**ILDASM**– IL Disassembler. This is a tool provided by Visual Studio to view IL code. To run ILDASM, we have to select option “Visual Studio Command Prompt” from “Visual Studio Tools” and type ildasm. It will open the ildasm tool where we can open any *exe/dll.ildasm* tool read the assembly by reflection and it is showing us various properties, methods which our assembly has. Here, we can see IL code of any method/property by clicking on that.

**CLR**– Common Language Runtime. CLR is the heart of the .NET framework, and it does 4 primary important things:

1. Garbage collection
2. CAS (Code Access Security)
3. CV (Code Verification)
4. IL to Native translation

**CTS** – Common Type System. CTS ensures that data types defined in two different languages get compiled to a common data type. This is useful because there may be situations when we want code in one language to be called in other language.

We can see a practical demonstration of CTS by creating the same application in C# and VB.NET and then compare the IL code of both applications. Here, the datatype of both IL code is same.

**CLS** – Common Language Specification. CLS is a subset of CTS. CLS is a set of rules or guidelines. When any programming language adheres to these set of rules, it can be consumed by any .NET language.

Diagram

Description automatically generated

**VES (Virtual Execution System):**VES known as CLR (Common Language Runtime), all.Net languages after compilation gets converted into CIL code. This CIL code can be carried and executed on any machine provided as operating system specific VES or CLR is available which converts CIL code into machine code according to the platform.

Timeline

Description automatically generated

**JIT**– Just In Time. JIT compiles the IL code to Machine code just before execution and then saves this transaction in memory.

**JIT has three types:**

* **Normal: This complies only those methods that are called at runtime. These methods are compiled only first time when they are called, and then they are stored in memory cache. This memory cache is commonly called as JITTED. When the same methods are called again, the complied code from cache is used for execution.**
* **Ecno: This complies only those methods that are called at runtime and removes them from memory after execution.**
* **Pre: This complies entire MSIL code into native code in a single compilation cycle. This is done at the time of deployment of the application.**

**BCL** – Base Class Library (or **FCL** – Framework Class Library)



### Stack vs Heap

The stack is the memory set aside as scratch space for a thread of execution. When a function is called, a block is reserved on the top of the stack for local variables and some bookkeeping data. When that function returns, the block becomes unused and can be used the next time a function is called. The stack is always reserved in a LIFO (last in first out) order; the most recently reserved block is always the next block to be freed. This makes it really simple to keep track of the stack; freeing a block from the stack is nothing more than adjusting one pointer.

The heap is memory set aside for dynamic allocation. Unlike the stack, there's no enforced pattern to the allocation and deallocation of blocks from the heap; you can allocate a block at any time and free it at any time. This makes it much more complex to keep track of which parts of the heap are allocated or free at any given time; there are many custom heap allocators available to tune heap performance for different usage patterns.

Each thread gets a stack, while there's typically only one heap for the application (although it isn't uncommon to have multiple heaps for different types of allocation).

**Stack:**

* Stored in computer RAM just like the heap.
* Variables created on the stack will go out of scope and are automatically deallocated.
* Much faster to allocate in comparison to variables on the heap.
* Implemented with an actual stack data structure.
* Stores local data, return addresses, used for parameter passing.
* Can have a stack overflow when too much of the stack is used (mostly from infinite or too deep recursion, very large allocations).
* Data created on the stack can be used without pointers.
* You will use the stack if you know exactly how much data you need to allocate before compile time and it is not too big.
* Usually has a maximum size already determined when your program starts.

**Heap:**

* Stored in computer RAM just like the stack.
* In C++, variables on the heap must be destroyed manually and never fall out of scope. The data is freed with delete, delete[], or free.
* Slower to allocate in comparison to variables on the stack.
* Used on demand to allocate a block of data for use by the program.
* Can have fragmentation when there are a lot of allocations and deallocations.
* In C++ or C, data created on the heap will be pointed to by pointers and allocated with new or malloc respectively.
* Can have allocation failures if too big of a buffer is requested to be allocated.
* You would use the heap if you don't know exactly how much data you will need at run time or if you need to allocate a lot of data.
* Responsible for memory leaks.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Enter image description here |  |

# Installing .NET

## On Windows without Visual Studio

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/install/windows?tabs=net60>

.NET is made up of the runtime and the SDK. The runtime is used to run a .NET app and may or may not be included with the app. The SDK is used to create .NET apps and libraries. The .NET runtime is always installed with the SDK.

The latest version of .NET is 6:

<https://dotnet.microsoft.com/en-us/download/dotnet>

### Install with Windows Package Manager (winget)

You can install and manage .NET through the Windows Package Manager service, using the **winget** tool. For more information about how to install and use **winget**, see [Use the winget tool](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/package-manager/winget/).

Windows Package Manager **winget** command-line tool is bundled with Windows 11 and modern versions of Windows 10 by default as the **App Installer**.

If you're installing .NET system-wide, install with administrative privileges.

#### Install the SDK

The .NET SDK allows you to develop apps with .NET. If you install the .NET SDK, you don't need to install the corresponding runtimes. To install the .NET SDK, run the following command:

winget install Microsoft.DotNet.SDK.6

#### Install the runtime

For Windows, there are three .NET runtimes you can install. You should install both the .NET Desktop Runtime and the ASP.NET Core Runtime to ensure that you're compatible with all types of .NET apps.

* .NET Desktop Runtime

This runtime includes the base .NET runtime, and supports Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF) and Windows Forms apps that are built with .NET. This isn't the same as .NET Framework, which comes with Windows.

winget install Microsoft.DotNet.DesktopRuntime.6

* ASP.NET Core Runtime

This runtime includes the base .NET runtime, and runs web server apps. The ASP.NET Core Runtime allows you to run apps that were made with .NET that didn't provide the runtime. The following commands install the ASP.NET Core Runtime, which is the most compatible runtime for .NET. In your terminal, run the following commands:

winget install Microsoft.DotNet.AspNetCore.6

* .NET Runtime

This is the base runtime, and contains just the components needed to run a console app. Typically, you'd install the other runtimes.

winget install Microsoft.DotNet.Runtime.6

You can install preview versions of the runtimes by substituting the version number, such as 6, with the word Preview. The following example installs the preview release of the .NET Desktop Runtime:

winget install Microsoft.DotNet.DesktopRuntime.Preview

### Install alongside Visual Studio Code

Visual Studio Code is a powerful and lightweight source code editor that runs on your desktop. Visual Studio Code is available for Windows, macOS, and Linux.

While Visual Studio Code doesn't come with an automated .NET Core installer like Visual Studio does, adding .NET Core support is simple.

1. [Download and install Visual Studio Code](https://code.visualstudio.com/Download).

<https://code.visualstudio.com/Download>

1. [Download and install the .NET SDK](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download/dotnet).

<https://dotnet.microsoft.com/en-us/download/dotnet>

1. [Install the C# extension from the Visual Studio Code marketplace](https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=ms-dotnettools.csharp).

<https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=ms-dotnettools.csharp>

### Install with Windows Installer

The [download page](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download/dotnet) for .NET provides Windows Installer executables.

When you use the Windows installers to install .NET, you can customize the installation path by setting the DOTNETHOME\_X64 and DOTNETHOME\_X86 parameters:

dotnet-sdk-3.1.301-win-x64.exe DOTNETHOME\_X64="F:\dotnet\x64" DOTNETHOME\_X86="F:\dotnet\x86"

If you want to install .NET silently, such as in a production environment or to support continuous integration, use the following switches:

* /install  
  Installs .NET.
* /quiet  
  Prevents any UI and prompts from displaying.
* /norestart  
  Suppresses any attempts to restart.

dotnet-sdk-3.1.301-win-x64.exe /install /quiet /norestart

**Tip**

The installer returns an exit code of 0 for success and an exit code of 3010 to indicate that a restart is required. Any other value is generally an error code.

### Install with PowerShell automation

The [dotnet-install scripts](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-install-script) are used for CI automation and non-admin installs of the runtime. You can download the script from the [dotnet-install script reference page](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-install-script).

The script defaults to installing the latest [long term support (LTS)](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/platform/support/policy/dotnet-core) version, which is .NET 6. You can choose a specific release by specifying the Channel switch. Include the Runtime switch to install a runtime. Otherwise, the script installs the SDK.

dotnet-install.ps1 -Channel 6.0 -Runtime aspnetcore

Install the SDK by omitting the -Runtime switch. The -Channel switch is set in this example to Current, which installs the latest supported version.

dotnet-install.ps1 -Channel Current

### Install with Visual Studio

If you're using Visual Studio to develop .NET apps, the following table describes the minimum required version of Visual Studio based on the target .NET SDK version.

| **.NET SDK version** | **Visual Studio version** |
| --- | --- |
| 6.0 | Visual Studio 2022 version 17.0 or higher. |
| 5.0 | Visual Studio 2019 version 16.8 or higher. |
| 3.1 | Visual Studio 2019 version 16.4 or higher. |
| 3.0 | Visual Studio 2019 version 16.3 or higher. |
| 2.2 | Visual Studio 2017 version 15.9 or higher. |
| 2.1 | Visual Studio 2017 version 15.7 or higher. |

If you already have Visual Studio installed, you can check your version with the following steps.

1. Open Visual Studio.
2. Select **Help** > **About Microsoft Visual Studio**.
3. Read the version number from the **About** dialog.

Visual Studio can install the latest .NET SDK and runtime.

<https://visualstudio.microsoft.com/downloads/?utm_medium=microsoft&utm_source=learn.microsoft.com&utm_campaign=button+cta&utm_content=download+vs2019>

#### Select a workload

When installing or modifying Visual Studio, select one or more of the following workloads, depending on the kind of application you're building:

* The **.NET Core cross-platform development** workload in the **Other Toolsets** section.
* The **ASP.NET and web development** workload in the **Web & Cloud** section.
* The **Azure development** workload in the **Web & Cloud** section.
* The **.NET desktop development** workload in the **Desktop & Mobile** section.

[](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/install/media/install-sdk/windows-install-visual-studio-2019.png#lightbox)

## Check SDK versions

You can see which versions of the .NET SDK are currently installed with a terminal. Open a terminal and run the following command.

dotnet --list-sdks

## Check runtime versions

You can see which versions of the .NET runtime are currently installed with the following command.

dotnet --list-runtimes

## Check for install folders

It's possible that .NET is installed but not added to the PATH variable for your operating system or user profile. In this case, the commands from the previous sections may not work. As an alternative, you can check that the .NET install folders exist.

When you install .NET from an installer or script, it's installed to a standard folder. Much of the time the installer or script you're using to install .NET gives you an option to install to a different folder. If you choose to install to a different folder, adjust the start of the folder path.

* **dotnet executable**

C:\program files\dotnet\dotnet.exe

* **.NET SDK**C:\program files\dotnet\sdk\{version}\
* **.NET Runtime**C:\program files\dotnet\shared\{runtime-type}\{version}\

## On macOS without Visual Studio

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/install/macos>

## .NET CLI

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/>

The .NET command-line interface (CLI) is a cross-platform toolchain for developing, building, running, and publishing .NET applications.

The .NET CLI is included with the [.NET SDK](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/sdk). For more information about how to install the .NET SDK, see [Install .NET Core](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/install/windows).

### CLI commands

The following commands are installed by default:

#### Basic commands

* [new](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-new)
* [restore](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-restore)
* [build](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-build)
* [publish](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-publish)
* [run](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-run)
* [test](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-test)
* [vstest](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-vstest)
* [pack](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-pack)
* [migrate](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-migrate)
* [clean](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-clean)
* [sln](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-sln)
* [help](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-help)
* [store](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-store)

#### Project modification commands

* [add package](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-add-package)
* [add reference](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-add-reference)
* [remove package](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-remove-package)
* [remove reference](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-remove-reference)
* [list reference](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-list-reference)

#### Advanced commands

* [nuget delete](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-nuget-delete)
* [nuget locals](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-nuget-locals)
* [nuget push](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-nuget-push)
* [msbuild](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-msbuild)
* [dotnet install script](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-install-script)

#### Tool management commands

* [tool install](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-tool-install)
* [tool list](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-tool-list)
* [tool update](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-tool-update)
* [tool restore](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/global-tools#install-a-local-tool) Available since .NET Core SDK 3.0.
* [tool run](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/global-tools#invoke-a-local-tool) Available since .NET Core SDK 3.0.
* [tool uninstall](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-tool-uninstall)

Tools are console applications that are installed from NuGet packages and are invoked from the command prompt. You can write tools yourself or install tools written by third parties. Tools are also known as global tools, tool-path tools, and local tools.

### Command structure

CLI command structure consists of [the driver ("dotnet")](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/#driver), [the command](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/#command), and possibly command [arguments](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/#arguments) and [options](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/#options). You see this pattern in most CLI operations, such as creating a new console app, and running it from the command line. The following commands show when the console app was run from a directory named my\_app:

dotnet new console

dotnet build --output ./build\_output

dotnet ./build\_output/my\_app.dll

#### Driver

The driver is named [dotnet](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet) and has two responsibilities, either running a [framework-dependent app](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/deploying/) or executing a command.

To run a framework-dependent app, specify the app after the driver, for example, dotnet /path/to/my\_app.dll. When executing the command from the folder where the app's DLL resides, just execute dotnet my\_app.dll. If you want to use a specific version of the .NET runtime, use the --fx-version <VERSION> option. For more information, see the [dotnet command](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet).

When you supply a command to the driver, dotnet.exe starts the CLI command execution process. For example:

dotnet build

First, the driver determines the version of the SDK to use. If there's no [global.json](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/global-json) file, the latest version of the SDK available is used. Depending on what is latest on the machine, the SDK's version might be either a preview or stable version. After the SDK version is determined, it executes the command.

#### Command

The command performs an action. For example, dotnet build builds code. dotnet publish publishes code. The commands are implemented as a console application using a dotnet {command} convention.

#### Arguments

The arguments you pass on the command line are the arguments to the command invoked. For example, when you execute dotnet publish my\_app.csproj, the my\_app.csproj argument indicates the project to publish and is passed to the publish command.

#### Options

The options you pass on the command line are the options to the command invoked. For example, when you execute dotnet publish --output /build\_output, the --output option and its value are passed to the publish command.

# C# Keywords, Expressions, Statements, Blocks and Variables

<https://www.programiz.com/csharp-programming/expressions-statements-blocks>

## C# Keywords

C# contains reserved words that have special meaning for the compiler. These reserved words are called "keywords". Keywords cannot be used as an identifier (name of a variable, class, interface, etc.).

Keywords in C# are distributed under the following categories:

### Modifier Keywords

Modifier keywords are specific keywords that indicate who can modify types and type members. Modifiers allow or prevent certain parts of programs from being modified by other parts.

| **Modifier keywords** |
| --- |
| abstract |
| async |
| const |
| [event](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-event) |
| extern |
| new |
| override |
| [partial](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-partial-class) |
| readonly |
| sealed |
| [static](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-static) |
| unsafe |
| virtual |
| volatile |

### Access Modifier Keywords:

Access modifiers are applied to the declaration of the class, method, properties, fields, and other members. They define the accessibility of the class and its members.

| **Access Modifiers** | **Usage** |
| --- | --- |
| public | The Public modifier allows any part of the program in the same assembly or another assembly to access the type and its members. |
| private | The Private modifier restricts other parts of the program from accessing the type and its members. Only code in the same class or struct can access it. |
| internal | The Internal modifier allows other program code in the same assembly to access the type or its members. This is default access modifiers if no modifier is specified. |
| protected | The Protected modifier allows codes in the same class or a class that derives from that class to access the type or its members. |

### Statement Keywords

Statement keywords are related to program flow.

| **Statement Keywords** |
| --- |
| [if](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-if-else) |
| [else](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-if-else) |
| [switch](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-switch) |
| case |
| [do](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-do-while-loop) |
| [for](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-for-loop) |
| foreach |
| in |
| [while](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-while-loop) |
| break |
| continue |
| default |
| goto |
| return |
| yield |
| [throw](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/throw-csharp) |
| try |
| catch |
| finally |
| checked |
| unchecked |
| fixed |
| lock |

### Method Parameter Keywords

These keywords are applied to the parameters of a method.

| **Method Parameter Keywords** |
| --- |
| params |
| ref |
| [out](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/articles/out-keyword-in-csharp) |

### Namespace Keywords

**These keywords are applied with namespace and related operators.**

| Namespace Keywords |
| --- |
| using |
| . operator |
| :: operator |
| extern alias |

### Operator Keywords

Operator keywords perform miscellaneous actions.

| **Operator Keywords** |
| --- |
| as |
| await |
| is |
| new |
| sizeof |
| typeof |
| stackalloc |
| checked |
| unchecked |

### Access Keywords

Access keywords are used to access the containing class or the base class of an object or class.

| **Access keywords** |
| --- |
| base |
| this |

### Literal Keywords

Literal keywords apply to the current instance or value of an object.

| **Literal Keywords** |
| --- |
| null |
| false |
| true |
| value |
| void |

### Type Keywords

Type keywords are used for data types.

| **Type keywords** |
| --- |
| bool |
| byte |
| char |
| class |
| decimal |
| double |
| enum |
| float |
| int |
| long |
| sbyte |
| short |
| string |
| struct |
| uint |
| ulong |
| ushort |

### Contextual Keywords

Contextual keywords are considered as keywords, only if used in specific contexts. They are not reserved and so can be used as names or identifiers.

| **Contextual Keywords** |
| --- |
| add |
| var |
| dynamic |
| global |
| set |
| value |

Contextual keywords are not converted into blue color (default color for keywords in visual studio) when used as an identifier in Visual Studio. For example, var in the below figure is not in blue, whereas the color of this is the blue color. So var is a contextual keyword.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/keywords-in-vs.png)

### Query Keywords

Query keywords are contextual keywords used in LINQ queries.

| **Query Keywords** |
| --- |
| from |
| where |
| select |
| group |
| into |
| orderby |
| join |
| let |
| in |
| on |
| equals |
| by |
| ascending |
| descending |

As mentioned above, a keyword cannot be used as an identifier (name of the variable, class, interface, etc.). However, they can be used with the prefix '@'. For example, the class is a reserved keyword, so it cannot be used as an identifier, but @class can be used as shown below.

**Example: Use Keyword as Identifier**

public class @class

{

public static int MyProperty { get; set; }

}

@class.MyProperty = 100;

## C# Expressions

An expression in C# is a combination of operands (variables, literals, method calls) and operators that can be evaluated to a single value. To be precise, an expression must have at least one operand but may not have any operator.

Let's look at the example below:

double temperature;

temperature = 42.05;

Here, 42.05 is an expression. Also, temperature = 42.05 is an expression too.

int a, b, c, sum;

sum = a + b + c;

Here, a + b + c is an expression.

if (age>=18 && age<58)

Console.WriteLine("Eligible to work");

Here, (age>=18 && age<58) is an expression that returns a boolean value. "Eligible to work" is also an expression.

## C# Statements

A statement is a basic unit of execution of a program. A program consists of multiple statements.

For example:

int age = 21;

Int marks = 90;

In the above example, both lines above are statements.

There are different types of statements in C#. In this tutorial, we’ll mainly focus on two of them:

1. Declaration Statement
2. Expression Statement

### Declaration Statement

Declaration statements are used to declare and initialize variables.

For example:

char ch;

int maxValue = 55;

Both char ch; and int maxValue = 55; are declaration statements.

### Expression Statement

An expression followed by a semicolon is called an expression statement.

For example:

/\* Assignment \*/

area = 3.14 \* radius \* radius;

/\* Method call is an expression\*/

System.Console.WriteLine("Hello");

Here, 3.14 \* radius \* radius  is an expression and area = 3.14 \* radius \* radius; is an expression statement.

Likewise, System.Console.WriteLine("Hello"); is both an expression and a statement.

Beside declaration and expression statement, there are:

* Selection Statements (if...else, switch)
* Iteration Statements (do, while, for, foreach)
* Jump Statements (break, continue, goto, return, yield)
* Exception Handling Statements (throw, try-catch, try-finally, try-catch-finally)

These statements will be discussed in later tutorials.

## C# Blocks

A block is a combination of zero or more statements that is enclosed inside curly brackets { }.

For example:

### Example 1: C# Blocks with statements

using System;

namespace Blocks

{

class BlockExample

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

double temperature = 42.05;

if (temperature > 32)

{ // Start of block

Console.WriteLine("Current temperature = {0}", temperature);

Console.WriteLine("It's hot");

} // End of block

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be:

Current temperature = 42.05

It's hot

Here, the two statements inside { }:

Console.WriteLine("Current temperature = {0}", temperature);

and

Console.WriteLine("It's hot");

forms a **block**.

### Example 2: C# Blocks without statements

A block may not have any statements within it as shown in the below example.

using System;

namespace Blocks

{

class BlockExample

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

double temperature = 42.05;

if (temperature > 32)

{ // Start of block

// No statements

} // End of block

}

}

}

Here, the curly braces { } after if(temperature > 32) contains only comments and no statements.

## C# Variables

A variable is a name of memory location. It is used to store data. Its value can be changed and it can be reused many times.

It is a way to represent memory location through symbol so that it can be easily identified.

The example of declaring variable is given below:

**int** i, j;

**double** d;

**float** f;

**char** ch;

Here, i, j, d, f, ch are variables and int, double, float, char are data types.

We can also provide values while declaring the variables as given below:

**int** i=2,j=4;  //declaring 2 variable of integer type

**float** f=40.2;

**char** ch='B';

### Rules for defining variables

* Variable names must be unique and are case-sensitive.
* A variable can have alphabets, digits and underscore.
* A variable name can start with alphabet and underscore only. It can't start with digit.
* No white space is allowed within variable name.
* A variable name must not be any reserved word or keyword e.g., char, float etc.

Valid variable names:

**int** x;

**int** \_x;

**int** k20;

Invalid variable names:

**int** 4;

**int** x y;

**int** **double**;

### Implicitly Typed Variables – var

In C#, variables must be declared with the data type. These are called explicitly typed variables.

**Example: Explicitly Typed Variable**

int i = 100;// explicitly typed variable

C# 3.0 introduced var keyword to declare method level variables without specifying a data type explicitly.

**Example: Implicitly Typed Local Variable**

var j = 100; // implicitly typed local variable

The compiler will infer the type of a variable from the expression on the right side of the = operator. Above, var will be compiled as int.

The following infers the type from an expression.

**Example: var from expression**

int i = 10;

var j = i + 1; // compiles as int

var can be used to declare any built-in data type or a user-defined type or an anonymous type variable. The following example shows C# compiler infers type based on the value:

**Example: Implicitly-Typed Variable**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

var i = 10;

Console.WriteLine("Type of i is {0}", i.GetType());

var str = "Hello World!!";

Console.WriteLine("Type of str is {0}", str.GetType());

var dbl = 100.50d;

Console.WriteLine("Type of dbl is {0}", dbl.GetType());

var isValid = true;

Console.WriteLine("Type of isValid is {0}", isValid.GetType());

var ano = new { name = "Steve" };

Console.WriteLine("Type of ano is {0}", ano.GetType());

var arr = new[] { 1, 10, 20, 30 };

Console.WriteLine("Type of arr is {0}", arr.GetType());

var file = new FileInfo("MyFile");

Console.WriteLine("Type of file is {0}", file.GetType());

}

Implicitly-typed variables must be initialized at the time of declaration; otherwise C# compiler would give an error: Implicitly-typed variables must be initialized.

var i; // Compile-time error: Implicitly-typed variables must be initialized

i = 100;

Multiple declarations of var variables in a single statement are not allowed.

var i = 100, j = 200, k = 300; // Error: cannot declare var variables in a single statement

//The followings are also valid

var i = 100;

var j = 200;

var k = 300;

var cannot be used for function parameters.

void Display(var param) //Compile-time error

{

Console.Write(param);

}

var can be used in for, and foreach loops.

for(var i = 0; i < 10; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine(i);

}

var can also be used with LINQ queries.

**Example: LINQ Query Syntax in C#**

// string collection

IList<string> stringList = new List<string>() {

"C# Tutorials",

"VB.NET Tutorials",

"Learn C++",

"MVC Tutorials" ,

"Java"

};

// LINQ Query Syntax

var result = from s in stringList

where s.Contains("Tutorials")

select s;

## Null Operators

The null-coalescing operator ?? returns the value of its left-hand operand if it isn't null; otherwise, it evaluates the right-hand operand and returns its result. The ?? operator doesn't evaluate its right-hand operand if the left-hand operand evaluates to non-null. The null-coalescing assignment operator ??= assigns the value of its right-hand operand to its left-hand operand only if the left-hand operand evaluates to null. The ??= operator doesn't evaluate its right-hand operand if the left-hand operand evaluates to non-null.

List<int> numbers = null;

int? a = null;

Console.WriteLine((numbers is null)); // expected: true

// if numbers is null, initialize it. Then, add 5 to numbers

(numbers ??= new List<int>()).Add(5);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(" ", numbers)); // output: 5

Console.WriteLine((numbers is null)); // expected: false

Console.WriteLine((a is null)); // expected: true

Console.WriteLine((a ?? 3)); // expected: 3 since a is still null

// if a is null then assign 0 to a and add a to the list

numbers.Add(a ??= 0);

Console.WriteLine((a is null)); // expected: false

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(" ", numbers)); // output: 5 0

Console.WriteLine(a); // output: 0

The left-hand operand of the ??= operator must be a variable, a [property](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/properties), or an [indexer](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/indexers/) element.

The type of the left-hand operand of the ?? and ??= operators can't be a non-nullable value type.

### Examples

The ?? and ??= operators can be useful in the following scenarios:

* In expressions with the [null-conditional operators ?. and ?[]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/operators/member-access-operators#null-conditional-operators--and-), you can use the ?? operator to provide an alternative expression to evaluate in case the result of the expression with null-conditional operations is null:

double SumNumbers(List<double[]> setsOfNumbers, int indexOfSetToSum)

{

return setsOfNumbers?[indexOfSetToSum]?.Sum() ?? double.NaN;

}

var sum = SumNumbers(null, 0);

Console.WriteLine(sum); // output: NaN

* When you work with [nullable value types](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/nullable-value-types) and need to provide a value of an underlying value type, use the ?? operator to specify the value to provide in case a nullable type value is null:

int? a = null;

int b = a ?? -1;

Console.WriteLine(b); // output: -1

Use the [Nullable<T>.GetValueOrDefault()](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.nullable-1.getvalueordefault#system-nullable-1-getvalueordefault) method if the value to be used when a nullable type value is null should be the default value of the underlying value type.

* You can use a [throw expression](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/statements/exception-handling-statements#the-throw-expression) as the right-hand operand of the ?? operator to make the argument-checking code more concise:

public string Name

{

get => name;

set => name = value ?? throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(value), "Name cannot be null");

}

The preceding example also demonstrates how to use [expression-bodied members](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/statements-expressions-operators/expression-bodied-members) to define a property.

* You can use the ??= operator to replace the code of the form

if (variable is null)

{

variable = expression;

}

with the following code:

variable ??= expression;

# C# - Input / Output

## C# Output

In order to output something in C#, we can use

System.Console.WriteLine() OR

System.Console.Write()

Here, System is a namespace, Console is a class within namespace System and WriteLine and Write are methods of class Console.

Let's look at a simple example that prints a string to output screen.

**Example 1**: Printing String using WriteLine()

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("C# is cool");

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

C# is cool

### Difference between WriteLine() and Write() method

The main difference between WriteLine() and Write() is that the Write() method only prints the string provided to it, while the WriteLine() method prints the string and moves to the start of next line as well.

Let's take at a look at the example below to understand the difference between these methods.

**Example 2**: How to use WriteLine() and Write() method?

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("Prints on ");

Console.WriteLine("New line");

Console.Write("Prints on ");

Console.Write("Same line");

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

Prints on

New line

Prints on Same line

### Printing Variables and Literals using WriteLine() and Write()

The WriteLine() and Write() method can be used to print variables and literals. Here's an example.

**Example 3**: Printing Variables and Literals

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

int value = 10;

// Variable

Console.WriteLine(value);

// Literal

Console.WriteLine(50.05);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

10

50.05

### Combining (Concatenating) two strings using + operator and printing them

Strings can be combined/concatenated using the + operator while printing.

**Example 4**: Printing Concatenated String using + operator

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

int val = 55;

Console.WriteLine("Hello " + "World");

Console.WriteLine("Value = " + val);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

Hello World

Value = 55

### Printing concatenated string using Formatted String [Better Alternative]

A better alternative for printing concatenated string is using formatted string. Formatted string allows programmer to use placeholders for variables. For example,

The following line,

Console.WriteLine("Value = " + val);

can be replaced by,

Console.WriteLine("Value = {0}", val);

{0} is the placeholder for variable val which will be replaced by value of val. Since only one variable is used so there is only one placeholder.

Multiple variables can be used in the formatted string. We will see that in the example below.

**Example 5**: Printing Concatenated string using String formatting

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

int firstNumber = 5, secondNumber = 10, result;

result = firstNumber + secondNumber;

Console.WriteLine("{0} + {1} = {2}", firstNumber, secondNumber, result);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

5 + 10 = 15

Here, {0} is replaced by firstNumber, {1} is replaced by secondNumber and {2} is replaced by result. This approach of printing output is more readable and less error prone than using + operator.

## C# Input

In C#, the simplest method to get input from the user is by using the ReadLine() method of the Console class. However, Read() and ReadKey() are also available for getting input from the user. They are also included in Console class.

**Example 6**: Get String Input From User

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

string testString;

Console.Write("Enter a string - ");

testString = Console.ReadLine();

Console.WriteLine("You entered '{0}'", testString);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be:

Enter a string - Hello World

You entered 'Hello World'

### Difference between ReadLine(), Read() and ReadKey() method:

The difference between ReadLine(), Read() and ReadKey() method is:

* ReadLine(): The ReadLine() method reads the next line of input from the standard input stream. It returns the same string.
* Read(): The Read() method reads the next character from the standard input stream. It returns the ascii value of the character.
* ReadKey(): The ReadKey() method obtains the next key pressed by user. This method is usually used to hold the screen until user press a key.

**Example 7**: Difference between Read() and ReadKey() method

using System;

namespace Sample

{

class Test

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

int userInput;

Console.WriteLine("Press any key to continue...");

Console.ReadKey();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.Write("Input using Read() - ");

userInput = Console.Read();

Console.WriteLine("Ascii Value = {0}",userInput);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

Press any key to continue...

x

Input using Read() - Learning C#

Ascii Value = 76

From this example, it must be clear how ReadKey() and Read() method works. While using ReadKey(), as soon as the key is pressed, it is displayed on the screen.

When Read() is used, it takes a whole line but only returns the ASCII value of first character. Hence, 76 (ASCII value of L) is printed.

### Reading numeric values (integer and floating point types)

Reading a character or string is very simple in C#. All you need to do is call the corresponding methods as required.

But, reading numeric values can be slightly tricky in C#. We’ll still use the same ReadLine() method we used for getting string values. But since the ReadLine() method receives the input as string, it needs to be converted into integer or floating point type.

One simple approach for converting our input is using the methods of Convert class.

**Example 8**: Reading Numeric Values from User using Convert class

using System;

namespace UserInput

{

class MyClass

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

string userInput;

int intVal;

double doubleVal;

Console.Write("Enter integer value: ");

userInput = Console.ReadLine();

/\* Converts to integer type \*/

intVal = Convert.ToInt32(userInput);

Console.WriteLine("You entered {0}",intVal);

Console.Write("Enter double value: ");

userInput = Console.ReadLine();

/\* Converts to double type \*/

doubleVal = Convert.ToDouble(userInput);

Console.WriteLine("You entered {0}",doubleVal);

}

}

}

When we run the program, the output will be

Enter integer value: 101

You entered 101

Enter double value: 59.412

You entered 59.412

The ToInt32() and ToDouble() method of Convert class converts the string input to integer and double type respectively. Similarly we can convert the input to other types.

# C# - Data Types (Primitive)

C# is a strongly-typed language. It means we must declare the type of a variable that indicates the kind of values it is going to store, such as integer, float, decimal, text, etc.

The following declares and initialized variables of different data types.

**Example**: Variables of Different Data Types

string stringVar = "Hello World!!";

int intVar = 100;

float floatVar = 10.2f;

char charVar = 'A';

bool boolVar = true;

C# mainly categorized data types in two types: Value types and Reference types. Value types include simple types (such as int, float, bool, and char), enum types, struct types, and Nullable value types. Reference types include class types, interface types, delegate types, and array types.



## Predefined Data Types in C#

C# includes some predefined value types and reference types. The following table lists predefined data types:

| Type | Description | Range | Suffix |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| byte | 8-bit unsigned integer | 0 to 255 |  |
| sbyte | 8-bit signed integer | -128 to 127 |  |
| short | 16-bit signed integer | -32,768 to 32,767 |  |
| ushort | 16-bit unsigned integer | 0 to 65,535 |  |
| int | 32-bit signed integer | -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647 |  |
| uint | 32-bit unsigned integer | 0 to 4,294,967,295 | u |
| long | 64-bit signed integer | -9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807 | l |
| ulong | 64-bit unsigned integer | 0 to 18,446,744,073,709,551,615 | ul |
| float | 32-bit Single-precision floating point type | -3.402823e38 to 3.402823e38 | f |
| double | 64-bit double-precision floating point type | -1.79769313486232e308 to 1.79769313486232e308 | d |
| decimal | 128-bit decimal type for financial and monetary calculations | (+ or -)1.0 x 10e-28 to 7.9 x 10e28 | m |
| char | 16-bit single Unicode character | Any valid character, e.g. a,\*, \x0058 (hex), or\u0058 (Unicode) |  |
| bool | 8-bit logical true/false value | True or False |  |
| object | Base type of all other types. |  |  |
| string | A sequence of Unicode characters |  |  |
| DateTime | Represents date and time | 0:00:00am 1/1/01 to 11:59:59pm 12/31/9999 |  |

As you can see in the above table that each data type (except string and object) includes value range. The compiler will give an error if the value goes out of datatype's permitted range. For example, int data type's range is -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647. So if you assign a value which is not in this range, then the compiler would give an error.

**Example**: Compile time error

// compile time error: Cannot implicitly convert type 'long' to 'int'.

int i = 21474836470;

The value of unsigned integers, long, float, double, and decimal type must be suffix by u,l,f,d, and m, respectively.

Example: Value Suffix

uint ui = 100u;

float fl = 10.2f;

long l = 45755452222222l;

ulong ul = 45755452222222ul;

double d = 11452222.555d;

decimal mon = 1000.15m;

## Alias vs .NET Type

The predefined data types are alias to their .NET type (CLR class) name. The following table lists alias for predefined data types and related .NET class name.

| Alias | .NET Type | Type |
| --- | --- | --- |
| byte | System.Byte | struct |
| sbyte | System.SByte | struct |
| int | System.Int32 | struct |
| uint | System.UInt32 | struct |
| short | System.Int16 | struct |
| ushort | System.UInt16 | struct |
| long | System.Int64 | struct |
| ulong | System.UInt64 | struct |
| float | System.Single | struct |
| double | System.Double | struct |
| char | System.Char | struct |
| bool | System.Boolean | struct |
| object | System.Object | Class |
| string | System.String | Class |
| decimal | System.Decimal | struct |
| DateTime | System.DateTime | struct |

It means that whether you define a variable of int or Int32, both are the same.

int i = 345;

Int32 i = 345;// same as above

## Default Values

Every data type has a default value. Numeric type is 0, boolean has false, and char has '\0' as default value. Use the default(typename) to assign a default value of the data type or C# 7.1 onward, use default literal.

int i = default(int); // 0

float f = default(float);// 0

decimal d = default(decimal);// 0

bool b = default(bool);// false

char c = default(char);// '\0'

// C# 7.1 onwards

int i = default; // 0

float f = default;// 0

decimal d = default;// 0

bool b = default;// false

char c = default;// '\0'

## Conversions

The values of certain data types are automatically converted to different data types in C#. This is called an implicit conversion.

**Example**: Implicit Conversion

int i = 345;

float f = i;

Console.WriteLine(f); //output: 345

In the above example, the value of an integer variable i is assigned to the variable of float type f because this conversion operation is predefined in C#.

The following is an implicit data type conversion table.

| Implicit Conversion From | To |
| --- | --- |
| sbyte | short, int, long, float, double, decimal |
| byte | short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, decimal |
| short | int, long, float, double, or decimal |
| ushort | int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, or decimal |
| int | long, float, double, or decimal. |
| uint | long, ulong, float, double, or decimal |
| long | float, double, or decimal |
| ulong | float, double, or decimal |
| char | ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, or decimal |
| float | Double |

Conversions from int, uint, long, or ulong to float and from long or ulong to double may cause a loss of precision. No data type implicitly converted to the char type.

However, not all data types are implicitly converted to other data types. For example, int type cannot be converted to uint implicitly. It must be specified explicitly, as shown below.

**Example**: Explicit Conversion

public static void Main()

{

int i = 100;

uint u = (uint) i;

Console.Write(i);

}

## Enums

In C#, an enum (or enumeration type) is used to assign constant names to a group of numeric integer values. It makes constant values more readable, for example, WeekDays.Monday is more readable then number 0 when referring to the day in a week.

An enum is defined using the enum keyword, directly inside a namespace, class, or structure. All the constant names can be declared inside the curly brackets and separated by a comma. The following defines an enum for the weekdays.

**Example**: Define an Enum

enum WeekDays

{

Monday,

Tuesday,

Wednesday,

Thursday,

Friday,

Saturday,

Sunday

}

Above, the WeekDays enum declares members in each line separated by a comma.

### Enum Values

If values are not assigned to enum members, then the compiler will assign integer values to each member starting with zero by default. The first member of an enum will be 0, and the value of each successive enum member is increased by 1.

**Example**: Default Enum Values

enum WeekDays

{

Monday, // 0

Tuesday, // 1

Wednesday, // 2

Thursday, // 3

Friday, // 4

Saturday, // 5

Sunday // 6

}

You can assign different values to enum member. A change in the default value of an enum member will automatically assign incremental values to the other members sequentially.

**Example**: Assign Values to Enum Members

enum Categories

{

Electronics, // 0

Food, // 1

Automotive = 6, // 6

Arts, // 7

BeautyCare, // 8

Fashion // 9

}

You can even assign different values to each member.

**Example**: Assign Values to Enum Members

enum Categories

{

Electronics = 1,

Food = 5,

Automotive = 6,

Arts = 10,

BeautyCare = 11,

Fashion = 15,

WomanFashion = 15

}

The enum can be of any numeric data type such as byte, sbyte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, or ulong. However, an enum cannot be a string type.

Specify the type after enum name as : type. The following defines the byte enum.

**Example**: byte Enum

enum Categories: byte

{

Electronics = 1,

Food = 5,

Automotive = 6,

Arts = 10,

BeautyCare = 11,

Fashion = 15

}

### Access an Enum

An enum can be accessed using the dot syntax: enum.member

**Example**: Access Enum

enum WeekDays

{

Monday,

Tuesday,

Wednesday,

Thursday,

Friday,

Saturday,

Sunday

}

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Monday); // Monday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Tuesday); // Tuesday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Wednesday); // Wednesday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Thursday); // Thursday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Friday); // Friday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Saturday); // Saturday

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Sunday); // Sunday

### Conversion

Explicit casting is required to convert from an enum type to its underlying integral type.

**Example**: Enum Conversion

enum WeekDays

{

Monday,

Tuesday,

Wednesday,

Thursday,

Friday,

Saturday,

Sunday

}

Console.WriteLine(WeekDays.Friday); //output: Friday

int day = (int) WeekDays.Friday; // enum to int conversion

Console.WriteLine(day); //output: 4

var wd = (WeekDays) 5; // int to enum conversion

Console.WriteLine(wd);//output: Saturday

### Enum Attributes

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: GeneralDemos/EnumDemos

**MyEnums.cs:**

using System.ComponentModel;

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

namespace EnumDemos

{

public enum Status

{

[EnumMember(Value = "This is 'New' Enum Member Value")]

[Description("New Document")]

[Display(Name = "NEW")]

New,

[Description("Document WIP")]

[Display(Name = "IN PROGRESS")]

InProgress,

[Description("Document Approved")]

[Display(Name = "APPROVED")]

Approved,

[Description("Document Rejeced")]

[Display(Name = "REJECTED")]

Rejected

}

public static class MyEnums

{

public static string GetEnumDescription(Enum enumType)

{

FieldInfo fieldInfo = enumType.GetType().GetField(enumType.ToString());

DescriptionAttribute[] attributes = fieldInfo.GetCustomAttributes(typeof(DescriptionAttribute), false) as DescriptionAttribute[];

if (attributes != null && attributes.Any())

{

return attributes.First().Description;

}

return enumType.ToString();

}

public static string GetDisplayName(this Enum enumValue)

{

return enumValue.GetType()

.GetMember(enumValue.ToString())

.First()

.GetCustomAttribute<DisplayAttribute>()!

.GetName()!;

}

public static string GetEnumMemberValue(this Enum enumValue)

{

//return enumValue.GetType()

// .GetMember(enumValue.ToString())

// .FirstOrDefault()

// .GetCustomAttribute<EnumMemberAttribute>()!.Value!;

var member = enumValue.GetType()

.GetMember(enumValue.ToString())

.FirstOrDefault();

var attribute = member.GetCustomAttributes(false)

.OfType<EnumMemberAttribute>()

.FirstOrDefault();

if (attribute != null)

{

return attribute.Value;

}

return null;

}

}

}

**Program.cs:**

namespace EnumDemos

{

internal class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

EnumDescriptionDemo(Status.New);

EnumDescriptionDemo(Status.InProgress);

EnumDescriptionDemo(Status.Approved);

EnumDescriptionDemo(Status.Rejected);

var myEnumDescriptions =

from Status n in Enum.GetValues(typeof(Status))

select new

{

ID = (int)n,

Name = MyEnums.GetEnumDescription(n)

};

myEnumDescriptions

.ToList()

.ForEach(a => Console.WriteLine(a));

GetEnumFromValue(0);

GetEnumFromValue(1);

GetEnumFromValue(2);

GetEnumFromValue(3);

}

static void EnumDescriptionDemo(Status status)

{

Console.WriteLine("\n EnumDescriptionDemo()...");

Console.WriteLine($"Status is {status}");

Console.WriteLine($"Description is {MyEnums.GetEnumDescription(status)}");

Console.WriteLine($"Name is {MyEnums.GetDisplayName(status)}");

Console.WriteLine($"EnumMember Value is {MyEnums.GetEnumMemberValue(status)}");

}

static void GetEnumFromValue(int num)

{

Console.WriteLine("\n GetEnumFromValue()...");

Status status = (Status)num;

Console.WriteLine($"Status is {status}");

Console.WriteLine($"Description is {MyEnums.GetEnumDescription(status)}");

Console.WriteLine($"Name is {MyEnums.GetDisplayName(status)}");

Console.WriteLine($"EnumMember Value is {MyEnums.GetEnumMemberValue(status)}");

}

}

}

### Store Enum as String or Int in Database

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: GeneralDemos/EnumDbDemo

**Department.cs:**

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations.Schema;

namespace EnumDbDemo

{

public enum DepartmentNames

{

English,

Math,

Economics

}

public class Department

{

public int Id { get; set; }

// Store enum as string using 2 properties Name and NameString.

[NotMapped]

public DepartmentNames Name { get; set; }

[Column("Name")]

public string NameString

{

get { return this.Name.ToString(); }

// private to prevent accidental updating.

private set { this.Name = value.ParseEnum<DepartmentNames>(); }

}

public string Location { get; set; }

// Store enum as number.

public DepartmentNames DeptNameInt { get; set; }

}

public static class StringExtensions

{

public static T ParseEnum<T>(this string value)

{

return (T)Enum.Parse(typeof(T), value, true);

}

}

}

**App.config**:

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>

<configuration>

<connectionStrings>

<!--<add name="EnumDbContext"

connectionString="Server=(LocalDB)\MSSQLLocalDB;Initial Catalog=EnumDb;Integrated Security=true;AttachDbFileName=C:\Data\EnumDb.mdf"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />-->

<add name="EnumDbContext"

connectionString="Server=.\SQLEXPRESS;Initial Catalog=EnumDb;Integrated Security=true;"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

</configuration>

**Program.cs**:

namespace EnumDbDemo

{

internal class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

CreateDepartments();

GetDept(DepartmentNames.English);

GetDept(DepartmentNames.Economics);

GetDept(DepartmentNames.Math);

}

static void CreateDepartments()

{

SaveDept(

new Department

{

Id = 1,

Location = "Mumbai",

Name = DepartmentNames.Economics,

DeptNameInt = DepartmentNames.Economics

});

SaveDept(

new Department

{

Id = 2,

Location = "Indore",

Name = DepartmentNames.Math,

DeptNameInt = DepartmentNames.Math

});

SaveDept(

new Department

{

Id = 3,

Location = "Delhi",

Name = DepartmentNames.English,

DeptNameInt = DepartmentNames.English

});

}

static Department SaveDept(Department dept)

{

using (var db = new EnumDbContext())

{

db.Departments.Add(dept);

db.SaveChanges();

return dept;

}

}

static void GetDept(DepartmentNames deptName)

{

using (var db = new EnumDbContext())

{

var dept = (from d in db.Departments

where d.NameString == deptName.ToString()

select d).FirstOrDefault();

Console.WriteLine($"Department Id: {dept.Id}" +

$" Department Name: {dept.Name}");

var dept2 = (from d in db.Departments

where d.DeptNameInt == deptName

select d).FirstOrDefault();

Console.WriteLine($"Department Id: {dept2.Id}" +

$" Department Name: {dept2.Name}" +

$" Department No.: {(int)(dept2.DeptNameInt)}");

}

}

}

}

### Enum Flags

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.flagsattribute?view=net-7.0>

The [Flags] attribute should be used whenever the enumerable represents a collection of possible values, rather than a single value. Such collections are often used with bitwise operators, for example:

var allowedColors = MyColor.Red | MyColor.Green | MyColor.Blue;

Note that the [Flags] attribute **doesn't** enable this by itself - all it does is allow a nice representation by the .ToString() method:

enum Suits { Spades = 1, Clubs = 2, Diamonds = 4, Hearts = 8 }

[Flags] enum SuitsFlags { Spades = 1, Clubs = 2, Diamonds = 4, Hearts = 8 }

...

var str1 = (Suits.Spades | Suits.Diamonds).ToString();

// "5"

var str2 = (SuitsFlags.Spades | SuitsFlags.Diamonds).ToString();

// "Spades, Diamonds"

#### Examples

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: EnumDemos

**Example #1**: EnumFlagDemo1().

enum Suits { Spades = 1, Clubs = 2, Diamonds = 4, Hearts = 8 }

[Flags] enum SuitsFlags { Spades = 1, Clubs = 2, Diamonds = 4, Hearts = 8 }

static void EnumFlagsDemo1()

{

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("EnumFlagsDemo1()...");

var str1 = (Suits.Spades | Suits.Diamonds).ToString();

Console.WriteLine($"Without [Flags]: {str1}"); // "5"

var str2 = (SuitsFlags.Spades | SuitsFlags.Diamonds).ToString();

Console.WriteLine($"With [Flags]: {str2}"); // "Spades, Diamonds"

}

**Example #2**: EnumFlagDemo2().

// Define an Enum without FlagsAttribute.

enum SingleHue : short

{

None = 0,

Black = 1,

Red = 2,

Green = 4,

Blue = 8

};

// Define an Enum with FlagsAttribute.

[Flags]

enum MultiHue : short

{

None = 0,

Black = 1,

Red = 2,

Green = 4,

Blue = 8

};

static void EnumFlagsDemo2()

{

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("EnumFlagsDemo1()...");

// Display all possible combinations of values.

Console.WriteLine(

"All possible combinations of values without FlagsAttribute:");

for (int val = 0; val <= 16; val++)

Console.WriteLine("{0,3} - {1:G}", val, (SingleHue)val);

// Display all combinations of values, and invalid values.

Console.WriteLine(

"\nAll possible combinations of values with FlagsAttribute:");

for (int val = 0; val <= 16; val++)

Console.WriteLine("{0,3} - {1:G}", val, (MultiHue)val);

}

// The example displays the following output:

// All possible combinations of values without FlagsAttribute:

// 0 - None

// 1 - Black

// 2 - Red

// 3 - 3

// 4 - Green

// 5 - 5

// 6 - 6

// 7 - 7

// 8 - Blue

// 9 - 9

// 10 - 10

// 11 - 11

// 12 - 12

// 13 - 13

// 14 - 14

// 15 - 15

// 16 - 16

//

// All possible combinations of values with FlagsAttribute:

// 0 - None

// 1 - Black

// 2 - Red

// 3 - Black, Red

// 4 - Green

// 5 - Black, Green

// 6 - Red, Green

// 7 - Black, Red, Green

// 8 - Blue

// 9 - Black, Blue

// 10 - Red, Blue

// 11 - Black, Red, Blue

// 12 - Green, Blue

// 13 - Black, Green, Blue

// 14 - Red, Green, Blue

// 15 - Black, Red, Green, Blue

// 16 – 16

**Example #3**:

[Flags]

public enum PhoneService

{

None = 0,

LandLine = 1,

Cell = 2,

Fax = 4,

Internet = 8,

Other = 16

}

static void PhoneServiceEnumFlags()

{

// Define three variables representing the types of phone service

// in three households.

var household1 = PhoneService.LandLine | PhoneService.Cell |

PhoneService.Internet;

var household2 = PhoneService.None;

var household3 = PhoneService.Cell | PhoneService.Internet;

// Store the variables in an array for ease of access.

PhoneService[] households = { household1, household2, household3 };

// Which households have no service?

for (int ctr = 0; ctr < households.Length; ctr++)

Console.WriteLine("Household {0} has phone service: {1}",

ctr + 1,

households[ctr] == PhoneService.None ?

"No" : "Yes");

Console.WriteLine();

// Which households have cell phone service?

for (int ctr = 0; ctr < households.Length; ctr++)

Console.WriteLine("Household {0} has cell phone service: {1}",

ctr + 1,

(households[ctr] & PhoneService.Cell) == PhoneService.Cell ?

"Yes" : "No");

Console.WriteLine();

// Which households have cell phones and land lines?

var cellAndLand = PhoneService.Cell | PhoneService.LandLine;

for (int ctr = 0; ctr < households.Length; ctr++)

Console.WriteLine("Household {0} has cell and land line service: {1}",

ctr + 1,

(households[ctr] & cellAndLand) == cellAndLand ?

"Yes" : "No");

Console.WriteLine();

// List all types of service of each household?//

for (int ctr = 0; ctr < households.Length; ctr++)

Console.WriteLine("Household {0} has: {1:G}",

ctr + 1, households[ctr]);

Console.WriteLine();

}

// The example displays the following output:

// Household 1 has phone service: Yes

// Household 2 has phone service: No

// Household 3 has phone service: Yes

//

// Household 1 has cell phone service: Yes

// Household 2 has cell phone service: No

// Household 3 has cell phone service: Yes

//

// Household 1 has cell and land line service: Yes

// Household 2 has cell and land line service: No

// Household 3 has cell and land line service: No

//

// Household 1 has: LandLine, Cell, Internet

// Household 2 has: None

// Household 3 has: Cell, Internet

It is also important to note that [Flags] **does not** automatically make the enum values powers of two. If you omit the numeric values, the enum will not work as one might expect in bitwise operations, because by default the values start with 0 and increment.

**Incorrect declaration:**

[Flags]

public enum MyColors

{

Yellow, // 0

Green, // 1

Red, // 2

Blue // 3

}

The values, if declared this way, will be Yellow = 0, Green = 1, Red = 2, Blue = 3. This will render it useless as flags.

Here's an example of a correct declaration:

[Flags]

public enum MyColors

{

Yellow = 1,

Green = 2,

Red = 4,

Blue = 8

}

**Example #4**: ColorsEnumFlagsDemo()

[Flags]

enum ColorWithFlag : int

{

None = 0,

Black = 1,

Red = 2,

Green = 4,

Blue = 8,

ThisColorIsSoRare = 268435456

};

enum ColorWithFlagLeftShifOp : int

{

None = 0,

Black = 1,

Red = 1 << 1, // 2

Green = 1 << 2, // 4

Blue = 1 << 3, // 8

ThisColorIsSoRare = 1 << 60 // 268435456

};

static void ColorsEnumFlagsDemo()

{

// Group all the primary colors (i.e. red, blue, and green) into one variable.

// This sums the integer representation of the color in the `primaryColors` variable,

var primaryColors = ColorWithFlag.Red | ColorWithFlag.Green |

ColorWithFlag.Blue;

//var primaryColors = ColorWithFlagLeftShifOp.Red | ColorWithFlagLeftShifOp.Green |

// ColorWithFlagLeftShifOp.Blue;

// So if you do:

Console.WriteLine($"Regular: {primaryColors}");

// You get Red, Green, Blue.

// And if you do:

var primaryColorsIntegerValue = (int)primaryColors;

//you would get 14

Console.WriteLine($"Number: {primaryColorsIntegerValue}");

// This returns true.

var isGreenColor = primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Green) ? "Yes" : "No";

Console.WriteLine($"Does it have Green color? {isGreenColor}");

// This returns true.

var isGreenAndRedColor = (primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Green) |

primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Red)) ? "Yes" : "No";

Console.WriteLine($"Does it have Green and Red colors? {isGreenAndRedColor}");

// This returns false.

var isBlackColor = primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Black) ? "Yes" : "No";

Console.WriteLine($"Does it have Black color? {isBlackColor}");

// This returns false.

var isGreenBlackAndRedColor = ((primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Green) |

primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Red)) &

primaryColors.HasFlag(ColorWithFlag.Black)) ? "Yes" : "No";

Console.WriteLine($"Does it have Green or Red and Black colors? {isGreenBlackAndRedColor}");

}

### Guidelines for FlagsAttribute and Enum

* Use the [FlagsAttribute](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.flagsattribute?view=net-7.0) custom attribute for an enumeration only if a bitwise operation (AND, OR, EXCLUSIVE OR) is to be performed on a numeric value.
* Define enumeration constants in powers of two, that is, 1, 2, 4, 8, and so on. This means the individual flags in combined enumeration constants do not overlap.
* Consider creating an enumerated constant for commonly used flag combinations. For example, if you have an enumeration used for file I/O operations that contains the enumerated constants Read = 1 and Write = 2, consider creating the enumerated constant ReadWrite = Read OR Write, which combines the Read and Write flags. In addition, the bitwise OR operation used to combine the flags might be considered an advanced concept in some circumstances that should not be required for simple tasks.
* Use caution if you define a negative number as a flag enumerated constant because many flag positions might be set to 1, which might make your code confusing and encourage coding errors.
* A convenient way to test whether a flag is set in a numeric value is to perform a bitwise AND operation between the numeric value and the flag enumerated constant, which sets all bits in the numeric value to zero that do not correspond to the flag, then test whether the result of that operation is equal to the flag enumerated constant.
* Use None as the name of the flag enumerated constant whose value is zero. You cannot use the None enumerated constant in a bitwise AND operation to test for a flag because the result is always zero. However, you can perform a logical, not a bitwise, comparison between the numeric value and the None enumerated constant to determine whether any bits in the numeric value are set.

If you create a value enumeration instead of a flags enumeration, it is still worthwhile to create a None enumerated constant. The reason is that by default the memory used for the enumeration is initialized to zero by the common language runtime. Consequently, if you do not define a constant whose value is zero, the enumeration will contain an illegal value when it is created.

If there is an obvious default case your application needs to represent, consider using an enumerated constant whose value is zero to represent the default. If there is no default case, consider using an enumerated constant whose value is zero that means the case that is not represented by any of the other enumerated constants.

* Do not define an enumeration value solely to mirror the state of the enumeration itself. For example, do not define an enumerated constant that merely marks the end of the enumeration. If you need to determine the last value of the enumeration, check for that value explicitly. In addition, you can perform a range check for the first and last enumerated constant if all values within the range are valid.
* Do not specify enumerated constants that are reserved for future use.
* When you define a method or property that takes an enumerated constant as a value, consider validating the value. The reason is that you can cast a numeric value to the enumeration type even if that numeric value is not defined in the enumeration.

# C# - More Data Types

## Anonymous Types

In C#, an anonymous type is a type (class) without any name that can contain public read-only properties only. It cannot contain other members, such as fields, methods, events, etc.

You create an anonymous type using the *new* operator with an object initializer syntax. The implicitly typed variable- var is used to hold the reference of anonymous types.

The following example demonstrates creating an anonymous type variable student that contains three properties named Id, FirstName, and LastName.

**Example**: Anonymous Type

var student = new { Id = 1, FirstName = "James", LastName = "Bond" };

The properties of anonymous types are read-only and cannot be initialized with a null, anonymous function, or a pointer type. The properties can be accessed using dot (.) notation, same as object properties. However, you cannot change the values of properties as they are read-only.

**Example**: Access Anonymous Type

var student = new { Id = 1, FirstName = "James", LastName = "Bond" };

Console.WriteLine(student.Id); //output: 1

Console.WriteLine(student.FirstName); //output: James

Console.WriteLine(student.LastName); //output: Bond

student.Id = 2;//Error: cannot chage value

student.FirstName = "Steve";//Error: cannot chage value

An anonymous type's property can include another anonymous type.

**Example**: Nested Anonymous Type

var student = new {

Id = 1,

FirstName = "James",

LastName = "Bond",

Address = new { Id = 1, City = "London", Country = "UK" }

};

You can create an array of anonymous types also.

**Example**: Array of Anonymous Types

var students = new[] {

new { Id = 1, FirstName = "James", LastName = "Bond" },

new { Id = 2, FirstName = "Steve", LastName = "Jobs" },

new { Id = 3, FirstName = "Bill", LastName = "Gates" }

};

An anonymous type will always be local to the method where it is defined. It cannot be returned from the method. However, an anonymous type can be passed to the method as object type parameter, but it is not recommended. If you need to pass it to another method, then use struct or class instead of an anonymous type.

Mostly, anonymous types are created using the Select clause of a LINQ queries to return a subset of the properties from each object in the collection.

**Example**: LINQ Query returns an Anonymous Type

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

IList<Student> studentList = new List<Student>() {

new Student() { StudentID = 1, StudentName = "John", age = 18 },

new Student() { StudentID = 2, StudentName = "Steve", age = 21 },

new Student() { StudentID = 3, StudentName = "Bill", age = 18 },

new Student() { StudentID = 4, StudentName = "Ram" , age = 20 },

new Student() { StudentID = 5, StudentName = "Ron" , age = 21 }

};

var students = from s in studentList

select new { Id = s.StudentID, Name = s.StudentName };

foreach(var stud in students)

Console.WriteLine(stud.Id + "-" + stud.Name);

}

}

public class Student

{

public int StudentID { get; set; }

public string StudentName { get; set; }

public int age { get; set; }

}

Shape, rectangle

Description automatically generated

In the above example, a select clause in the LINQ query selects only StudentID and StudentName properties and renames it to Id and Name, respectively. Thus, it is useful in saving memory and unnecessary code. The query result collection includes only StudentID and StudentName properties, as shown in the following debug view.

Visual Studio supports IntelliSense for anonymous types, as shown below.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/anonymoustype-debugview.png)Anonymous Type Intellisense Support in Visual Studio

Internally, all the anonymous types are directly derived from the System.Object class. The compiler generates a class with some auto-generated name and applies the appropriate type to each property based on the value expression. Although your code cannot access it. Use GetType() method to see the name.

**Example**: Internal Name of an Anonymous Type

static void Main(string[] args)

{

var student = new { Id = 1, FirstName = "James", LastName = "Bond" };

Console.WriteLine(student.GetType().ToString());

}

## Dynamic Types

C# 4.0 (.NET 4.5) introduced a new type called dynamic that avoids compile-time type checking. A dynamic type escapes type checking at compile-time; instead, it resolves type at run time.

A dynamic type variables are defined using the dynamic keyword.

**Example**: dynamic Variable

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 1;

The compiler compiles dynamic types into object types in most cases. However, the actual type of a dynamic type variable would be resolved at run-time.

**Example**: dynamic Type at run-time

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 1;

Console.WriteLine(MyDynamicVar.GetType());

Graphical user interface

Description automatically generated with low confidence

Dynamic types change types at run-time based on the assigned value. The following example shows how a dynamic variable changes type based on assigned value.

**Example**: dynamic

static void Main(string[] args)

{

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 100;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = "Hello World!!";

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = true;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = DateTime.Now;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

}

Text

Description automatically generated

The dynamic type variables is converted to other types implicitly.

**Example**: dynamic Type Conversion

dynamic d1 = 100;

int i = d1;

d1 = "Hello";

string greet = d1;

d1 = DateTime.Now;

DateTime dt = d1;

### Methods and Parameters

If you assign a class object to the dynamic type, then the compiler would not check for correct methods and properties name of a dynamic type that holds the custom class object. Consider the following example.

**Example**: Calling Methods

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

dynamic stud = new Student();

stud.DisplayStudentInfo(1, "Bill");// run-time error, no compile-time error

stud.DisplayStudentInfo("1");// run-time error, no compile-time error

stud.FakeMethod();// run-time error, no compile-time error

}

}

public class Student

{

public void DisplayStudentInfo(int id)

{

}

}

In the above example, the C# compiler does not check for the number of parameters, parameters type, or non-existent. It validates these things at run-time, and if it is not valid, then throws a run-time exception. Note that Visual Studio IntelliSense is not supported for the dynamic types. Note that Visual Studio IntelliSense is not supported for the dynamic types.

## Nullable Types

As you know, a value type cannot be assigned a null value. For example, *int i = null* will give you a compile time error.

C# 2.0 introduced nullable types that allow you to assign null to value type variables. You can declare nullable types using Nullable<t> where T is a type.

**Example**: Nullable type

Nullable<int> i = null;

A nullable type can represent the correct range of values for its underlying value type, plus an additional *null* value. For example, Nullable<int> can be assigned any value from -2147483648 to 2147483647, or a null value.

The Nullable types are instances of System.Nullable<T> struct. Think it as something like the following structure.

**Example**: Nullable struct

[Serializable]

public struct Nullable<T> where T : struct

{

public bool HasValue { get; }

public T Value { get; }

// other implementation

}

A nullable of type *int* is the same as an ordinary *int* plus a flag that says whether the *int* has a value or not (is null or not). All the rest is compiler magic that treats "null" as a valid value.

**Example**: HasValue

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Nullable<int> i = null;

if (i.HasValue)

Console.WriteLine(i.Value); // or Console.WriteLine(i)

else

Console.WriteLine("Null");

}

**Output**:

Null

The HasValue returns **true** if the object has been assigned a value; if it has not been assigned any value or has been assigned a null value, it will return **false**.

Accessing the value using NullableType.value will throw a runtime exception if nullable type is null or not assigned any value. For example, i.Value will throw an exception if i is null:

[Text

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/nullabletype-error.png)

Use the GetValueOrDefault() method to get an actual value if it is not null and the default value if it is null. For example:

**Example**: GetValueOrDefault()

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Nullable<int> i = null;

Console.WriteLine(i.GetValueOrDefault());

}

### Shorthand Syntax for Nullable Types

You can use the '?' operator to shorthand the syntax e.g. int?, long? instead of using Nullable<T>.

**Example**: Shorthand syntax for Nullable types

int? i = null;

double? D = null;

### ?? Operator

Use the '??' operator to assign a nullable type to a non-nullable type.

**Example**: ?? operator with Nullable Type

int? i = null;

int j = i ?? 0;

Console.WriteLine(j);

**Output**:

0

In the above example, i is a nullable int and if you assign it to the non-nullable int j then it will throw a runtime exception if i is null. So to mitigate the risk of an exception, we have used the '??' operator to specify that if i is null then assign 0 to j.

### Assignment Rules

A nullable type has the same assignment rules as a value type. It must be assigned a value before using it if nullable types are declared in a function as local variables. If it is a field of any class then it will have a null value by default.

For example, the following nullable of int type is declared and used without assigning any value. The compiler will give **"Use of unassigned local variable 'i'"**error:

[Text

Description automatically generated with medium confidence](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/unassigned-nullabletype.png)

In the following example, a nullable of int type is a field of the class, so it will not give any error.

**Example**: Nullable type as Class Field

class MyClass

{

public Nullable<int> i;

}

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

MyClass mycls = new MyClass();

if(mycls.i == null)

Console.WriteLine("Null");

}

}

## Value Type vs Reference Type

In C#, these data types are categorized based on how they store their value in the memory. C# includes the following categories of data types:

1. Value type
2. Reference type

### Value Type

A data type is a value type if it holds a data value within its own memory space. It means the variables of these data types directly contain values.

Note: All the value types derive from *System.ValueType*, which in-turn, derives from *System.Object*.

For example, consider integer variable int i = 100;

The system stores 100 in the memory space allocated for the variable i. The following image illustrates how 100 is stored at some hypothetical location in the memory (0x239110) for 'i':

[Arrow

Description automatically generated with medium confidence](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/value-type-memory-allocation.png)

Memory Allocation of Value Type Variable

The following data types are all of value type:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| bool | Byte | char | decimal |
| double | enum | float | int |
| long | sbyte | short | struct |
| uint | ulong | ushort |  |

### Passing Value Type Variables

When you pass a value-type variable from one method to another, the system creates a separate copy of a variable in another method. If value got changed in the one method, it wouldn't affect the variable in another method.

**Example**: Passing Value Type Variables

static void ChangeValue(int x)

{

x = 200;

Console.WriteLine(x);

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

int i = 100;

Console.WriteLine(i);

ChangeValue(i);

Console.WriteLine(i);

}

**Output**:

100

200

300

In the above example, variable i in the Main() method remains unchanged even after we pass it to the ChangeValue() method and change it's value there.

### Reference Type

Unlike value types, a reference type doesn't store its value directly. Instead, it stores the address where the value is being stored. In other words, a reference type contains a pointer to another memory location that holds the data.

For example, consider the following string variable:

string s = "Hello World!!";

The following image shows how the system allocates the memory for the above string variable.

[Diagram

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/raference-type-memory-allocation.png)

Memory Allocation of Reference Type Variable

As you can see in the above image, the system selects a random location in memory (0x803200) for the variable s. The value of a variable s is 0x600000, which is the memory address of the actual data value. Thus, reference type stores the address of the location where the actual value is stored instead of the value itself.

The followings are reference type data types:

* String
* Arrays (even if their elements are value types)
* Class
* Delegate

### Passing Reference Type Variables

When you pass a reference type variable from one method to another, it doesn't create a new copy; instead, it passes the variable's address. So, If we change the value of a variable in a method, it will also be reflected in the calling method.

**Example**: Passing Reference Type Variable

static void ChangeReferenceType(Student std2)

{

std2.StudentName = "Steve";

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Student std1 = new Student();

std1.StudentName = "Bill";

ChangeReferenceType(std1);

Console.WriteLine(std1.StudentName);

}

**Output**:

Steve

In the above example, we pass the Student object std1 to the ChangeReferenceType() method. Here, it actually pass the memory address of std1. Thus, when the ChangeReferenceType() method changes StudentName, it is actually changing StudentName of std1 object, because std1 and std2 are both pointing to the same address in memory.

String is a reference type, but it is immutable. It means once we assigned a value, it cannot be changed. If we change a string value, then the compiler creates a new string object in the memory and point a variable to the new memory location. So, passing a string value to a function will create a new variable in the memory, and any change in the value in the function will not be reflected in the original value, as shown below.

**Example**: Passing String

static void ChangeReferenceType(string name)

{

name = "Steve";

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

string name = "Bill";

ChangeReferenceType(name);

Console.WriteLine(name);

}

**Output**:

Bill

### Null

The default value of a reference type variable is null when they are not initialized. Null means not referring to any object.

[Diagram

Description automatically generated with medium confidence](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/null.png)

Null Reference Type

A value type variable cannot be null because it holds value, not a memory address. C# 2.0 introduced nullable types, using which you can assign null to a value type variable or declare a value type variable without assigning a value to it.

## Struct

In C#, struct is the value type data type that represents data structures. It can contain a parameterized constructor, static constructor, constants, fields, methods, properties, indexers, operators, events, and nested types.

struct can be used to hold small data values that do not require inheritance, e.g. coordinate points, key-value pairs, and complex data structure.

### Structure Declaration

A structure is declared using struct keyword. The default modifier is internal for the struct and its members.

The following example declares a structure Coordinate for the graph.

**Example**: Structure

struct Coordinate

{

public int x;

public int y;

}

A struct object can be created with or without the new operator, same as primitive type variables.

**Example**: Create Structure

struct Coordinate

{

public int x;

public int y;

}

Coordinate point = new Coordinate();

Console.WriteLine(point.x); //output: 0

Console.WriteLine(point.y); //output: 0

Above, an object of the Coordinate structure is created using the new keyword. It calls the default parameterless constructor of the struct, which initializes all the members to their default value of the specified data type.

If you declare a variable of struct type without using new keyword, it does not call any constructor, so all the members remain unassigned. Therefore, you must assign values to each member before accessing them, otherwise, it will give a compile-time error.

**Example**: Create Structure Without new Keyword

struct Coordinate

{

public int x;

public int y;

}

Coordinate point;

Console.Write(point.x); // Compile time error

point.x = 10;

point.y = 20;

Console.Write(point.x); //output: 10

Console.Write(point.y); //output: 20

### Constructors in Structure

A struct cannot contain a parameterless constructor. It can only contain parameterized constructors or a static constructor.

**Example**: Parameterized Constructor in Struct

struct Coordinate

{

public int x;

public int y;

public Coordinate(int x, int y)

{

this.x = x;

this.y = y;

}

}

Coordinate point = new Coordinate(10, 20);

Console.WriteLine(point.x); //output: 10

Console.WriteLine(point.y); //output: 20

You must include all the members of the struct in the parameterized constructor and assign parameters to members; otherwise C# compiler will give a compile-time error if any member remains unassigned.

### Methods and Properties in Structure

A struct can contain properties, auto-implemented properties, methods, etc., same as classes.

**Example**: Methods and Properties in Struct

struct Coordinate

{

public int x { get; set; }

public int y { get; set; }

public void SetOrigin()

{

this.x = 0;

this.y = 0;

}

}

Coordinate point = Coordinate();

point.SetOrigin();

Console.WriteLine(point.x); //output: 0

Console.WriteLine(point.y); //output: 0

The following struct includes the static method.

**Example**: Static Constructor in Struct

struct Coordinate

{

public int x;

public int y;

public Coordinate(int x, int y)

{

this.x = x;

this.y = y;

}

public static Coordinate GetOrigin()

{

return new Coordinate();

}

}

Coordinate point = Coordinate.GetOrigin();

Console.WriteLine(point.x); //output: 0

Console.WriteLine(point.y); //output: 0

## Dynamic Types

C# 4.0 (.NET 4.5) introduced a new type called dynamic that avoids compile-time type checking. A dynamic type escapes type checking at compile-time; instead, it resolves type at run time.

A dynamic type variables are defined using the dynamic keyword.

**Example: dynamic Variable**

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 1;

The compiler compiles dynamic types into object types in most cases. However, the actual type of a dynamic type variable would be resolved at run-time.

**Example: dynamic Type at run-time**

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 1;

Console.WriteLine(MyDynamicVar.GetType());

**Output:**

System.Int32

Dynamic types change types at run-time based on the assigned value. The following example shows how a dynamic variable changes type based on assigned value.

**Example: dynamic**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

dynamic MyDynamicVar = 100;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = "Hello World!!";

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = true;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

MyDynamicVar = DateTime.Now;

Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}, Type: {1}", MyDynamicVar, MyDynamicVar.GetType());

}

**Output:**

Value: 100, Type: System.Int32

Value: Hello World!!, Type: System.String

Value: True, Type: System.Boolean

Value: 01-01-2014, Type: System.DateTime

The dynamic type variables is converted to other types implicitly.

**Example: dynamic Type Conversion**

dynamic d1 = 100;

int i = d1;

d1 = "Hello";

string greet = d1;

d1 = DateTime.Now;

DateTime dt = d1;

### Methods and Parameters

If you assign a class object to the dynamic type, then the compiler would not check for correct methods and properties name of a dynamic type that holds the custom class object. Consider the following example.

**Example: Calling Methods**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

dynamic stud = new Student();

stud.DisplayStudentInfo(1, "Bill");// run-time error, no compile-time error

stud.DisplayStudentInfo("1");// run-time error, no compile-time error

stud.FakeMethod();// run-time error, no compile-time error

}

}

public class Student

{

public void DisplayStudentInfo(int id)

{

}

}

In the above example, the C# compiler does not check for the number of parameters, parameters type, or non-existent. It validates these things at run-time, and if it is not valid, then throws a run-time exception. Note that Visual Studio IntelliSense is not supported for the dynamic types. Note that Visual Studio IntelliSense is not supported for the dynamic types.

## out vs ref

ref and out keywords in C# are used to pass arguments within a method or function. Both indicate that an argument/parameter is passed by reference. By default parameters are passed to a method by value. By using these keywords (ref and out) we can pass a parameter by reference.

### ref Keyword

The ref keyword passes arguments by reference. It means any changes made to this argument in the method will be reflected in that variable when control returns to the calling method.

public static string GetNextName(ref int id)

{

string returnText = "Next-" + id.ToString();

id += 1;

return returnText;

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

int i = 1;

Console.WriteLine("Previous value of integer i:" + i.ToString());

string test = GetNextName(ref i);

Console.WriteLine("Current value of integer i:" + i.ToString());

}

### out Keyword

The out keyword passes arguments by reference. This is very similar to the ref keyword.

public static string GetNextNameByOut(out int id)

{

id = 1;

string returnText = "Next-" + id.ToString();

return returnText;

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

int i = 0;

Console.WriteLine("Previous value of integer i:" + i.ToString());

string test = GetNextNameByOut(out i);

Console.WriteLine("Current value of integer i:" + i.ToString());

}

### ref vs out Comparison

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **ref** | **out** |
| The parameter or argument must be initialized first before it is passed to ref. | It is not compulsory to initialize a parameter or argument before it is passed to an out. |
| It is not required to assign or initialize the value of a parameter (which is passed by ref) before returning to the calling method. | A called method is required to assign or initialize a value of a parameter (which is passed to an out) before returning to the calling method. |
| Passing a parameter value by ref is useful when the called method is also needed to modify the parameter. | Declaring a parameter to an out method is useful when multiple values need to be returned from a function or method. |
| It is not compulsory to initialize a parameter value before using it in a calling method. | A parameter value must be initialized within the calling method before its use. |
| When we use REF, data can be passed bi-directionally. | When we use OUT data is passed only in a unidirectional way (from the called method to the caller method). |
| Both ref and out are treated differently at run time and they are treated the same at compile time. | |
| Properties are not variables, therefore it cannot be passed as an out or ref parameter. | |

# Program Structure

* Procedural
* Decision
* Repetition
* Static Fields and Methods

## Static Fields Methods

C# supports two types of class methods, static methods, and non-static methods. Any normal method is a non-static method.

A static method in C# is a method that keeps only one copy of the method at the Type level, not the object level. That means, all instances of the class share the same copy of the method and its data. The last updated value of the method is shared among all objects of that Type.

Static methods are called by using the class name, not the instance of the class.

### Static Fields

Static fields of a non-static class are shared across all the instances. So, changes done by one instance would reflect in others.

**Example: Shared Static Fields**

public class StopWatch

{

public static int NoOfInstances = 0;

// instance constructor

public StopWatch()

{

StopWatch.NoOfInstances++;

}

}

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

StopWatch sw1 = new StopWatch();

StopWatch sw2 = new StopWatch();

Console.WriteLine(StopWatch.NoOfInstances); //2

StopWatch sw3 = new StopWatch();

StopWatch sw4 = new StopWatch();

Console.WriteLine(StopWatch.NoOfInstances);//4

}

}

### Static Methods

You can define one or more static methods in a non-static class. Static methods can be called without creating an object. You cannot call static methods using an object of the non-static class.

The static methods can only call other static methods and access static members. You cannot access non-static members of the class in the static methods.

**Example: Static Method**

class Program

{

static int counter = 0;

string name = "Demo Program";

static void Main(string[] args)

{

counter++; // can access static fields

Display("Hello World!"); // can call static methods

name = "New Demo Program"; //Error: cannot access non-static members

SetRootFolder("C:\MyProgram"); //Error: cannot call non-static method

}

static void Display(string text)

{

Console.WriteLine(text);

}

public void SetRootFolder(string path) { }

}

### Rules for Static Methods

1. Static methods can be defined using the static keyword before a return type and after an access modifier.
2. Static methods can be overloaded but cannot be overridden.
3. Static methods can contain local static variables.
4. Static methods cannot access or call non-static variables unless they are explicitly passed as parameters.

# C# - Arrays

A variable is used to store a literal value, whereas an array is used to store multiple literal values.

An array is the data structure that stores a fixed number of literal values (elements) of the same data type. Array elements are stored contiguously in the memory.

In C#, an array can be of three types: single-dimensional, multidimensional, and jagged array. Here you will learn about the single-dimensional array.

The following figure illustrates an array representation.

[Table

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/array.png)

## Array Declaration and Initialization

An array can be declared using by specifying the type of its elements with square brackets.

Example: Array Declaration

int[] evenNums; // integer array

string[] cities; // string array

The following declares and adds values into an array in a single statement.

Example: Array Declaration & Initialization

int[] evenNums = new int[5]{ 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 };

string[] cities = new string[3]{ "Mumbai", "London", "New York" };

Above, evenNums array can store up to five integers. The number 5 in the square brackets new int[5] specifies the size of an array. In the same way, the size of cities array is three. Array elements are added in a comma-separated list inside curly braces { }.

Arrays type variables can be declared using [var](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-var-implicit-typed-local-variable) without square brackets.

Example: Array Declaration using var

var evenNums = new int[]{ 2, 4, 6, 8, 10};

var cities = new string[]{ "Mumbai", "London", "New York" };

If you are adding array elements at the time of declaration, then size is optional. The compiler will infer its size based on the number of elements inside curly braces, as shown below.

Example: Short Syntax of Array Declaration

int[] evenNums = { 2, 4, 6, 8, 10};

string[] cities = { "Mumbai", "London", "New York" }

The following example demonstrates invalid array declarations.

Example: Invalid Array Creation

//must specify the size

int[] evenNums = new int[];

//number of elements must be equal to the specified size

int[] evenNums = new int[5] { 2, 4 };

//cannot use var with array initializer

var evenNums = { 2, 4, 6, 8, 10};

It is not necessary to declare and initialize an array in a single statement. You can first declare an array then initialize it later on using the new operator.

Example: Late Initialization

int[] evenNums;

evenNums = new int[5];

// or

evenNums = new int[]{ 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 };

## Accessing Array Elements

Array elements can be accessed using an index. An index is a number associated with each array element, starting with index 0 and ending with array size - 1.

The following example add/update and retrieve array elements using indexes.

Example: Access Array Elements using Indexes

int[] evenNums = new int[5];

evenNums[0] = 2;

evenNums[1] = 4;

//evenNums[6] = 12; //Throws run-time exception IndexOutOfRange

Console.WriteLine(evenNums[0]); //prints 2

Console.WriteLine(evenNums[1]); //prints 4

Note that trying to add more elements than its specified size will result in IndexOutOfRangeException.

## Accessing Array using for Loop

Use the for loop to access array elements. Use the length property of an array in conditional expression of the for loop.

Example: Accessing Array Elements using for Loop

int[] evenNums = { 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 };

for(int i = 0; i < evenNums.Length; i++)

Console.WriteLine(evenNums[i]);

for(int i = 0; i < evenNums.Length; i++)

evenNums[i] = evenNums[i] + 10; // update the value of each element by 10

## Accessing Array using foreach Loop

Use foreach loop to read values of an array elements without using index.

Example: Accessing Array using foreach Loop

int[] evenNums = { 2, 4, 6, 8, 10};

string[] cities = { "Mumbai", "London", "New York" };

foreach(var item in evenNums)

Console.WriteLine(item);

foreach(var city in cities)

Console.WriteLine(city);

## LINQ Methods

All the arrays in C# are derived from an abstract base class System.Array.

The Array class implements the IEnumerable interface, so you can LINQ extension methods such as Max(), Min(), Sum(), reverse(), etc.

Example: LINQ Methods

int[] nums = new int[5]{ 10, 15, 16, 8, 6 };

nums.Max(); // returns 16

nums.Min(); // returns 6

nums.Sum(); // returns 55

nums.Average(); // returns 55

The System.ArraySystem.Array class also includes methods for creating, manipulating, searching, and sorting arrays.

Example: Array Methods

int[] nums = new int[5]{ 10, 15, 16, 8, 6 };

Array.Sort(nums); // sorts array

Array.Reverse(nums); // sorts array in descending order

Array.ForEach(nums, n => Console.WriteLine(n)); // iterates array

Array.BinarySearch(nums, 5);// binary search

## Passing Array as Argument

An array can be passed as an argument to a method parameter. Arrays are reference types, so the method can change the value of the array elements.

Example: Passing Array as Argument

public static void Main(){

int[] nums = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };

UpdateArray(nums);

foreach(var item in nums)

Console.WriteLine(item);

}

public static void UpdateArray(int[] arr)

{

for(int i = 0; i < arr.Length; i++)

arr[i] = arr[i] + 10;

}

i = 0; i < arr.Length; i++)

arr[i] = arr[i] + 10;

}

# C# - Multidimensional Arrays

C# supports multidimensional arrays up to 32 dimensions. The multidimensional array can be declared by adding commas in the square brackets. For example, [,] declares two-dimensional array, [, ,] declares three-dimensional array, [, , ,] declares four-dimensional array, and so on. So, in a multidimensional array, no of commas = No of Dimensions - 1.

The following declares multidimensional arrays.

Example: Multidimensional Arrays

int[,] arr2d; // two-dimensional array

int[, ,] arr3d; // three-dimensional array

int[, , ,] arr4d ; // four-dimensional array

int[, , , ,] arr5d; // five-dimensional array

Let's understand the two-dimensional array. The following initializes the two-dimensional array.

Example: two-dimensional Array

int[,] arr2d = new int[3,2]{

{1, 2},

{3, 4},

{5, 6}

};

// or

int[,] arr2d = {

{1, 2},

{3, 4},

{5, 6}

};

[,] arr2d = {

{1, 2},

{3, 4},

{5, 6}

};

In the above example of a two-dimensional array, [3, 2] defines the no of rows and columns. The first rank denotes the no of rows, and the second rank defines no of columns. The following figure illustrates the two-dimensional array divided into rows and columns.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/twodimensional-array.PNG)

The following access values of the two-dimensional array.

Example: Access two-dimensional Array

int[,] arr2d = new int[3,2]{

{1, 2},

{3, 4},

{5, 6}

};

arr2d[0, 0]; //returns 1

arr2d[0, 1]; //returns 2

arr2d[1, 0]; //returns 3

arr2d[1, 1]; //returns 4

arr2d[2, 0]; //returns 5

arr2d[2, 1]; //returns 6

//arr2d[3, 0]; //throws run-time error as there is no 4th row

In the above example, the value of a two-dimensional array can be accessed by index no of row and column as [row index, column index]. So, [0, 0] returns the value of the first row and first column and [1, 1] returns the value from the second row and second column.

Now, let's understand the three-dimensional array. The following declares and initializes three-dimensional arrays.

Example: Three-dimensional Array

int[, ,] arr3d1 = new int[1, 2, 2]{

{ { 1, 2}, { 3, 4} }

};

int[, ,] arr3d2 = new int[2, 2, 2]{

{ {1, 2}, {3, 4} },

{ {5, 6}, {7, 8} }

};

int[, ,] arr3d3 = new int[2, 2, 3]{

{ { 1, 2, 3}, {4, 5, 6} },

{ { 7, 8, 9}, {10, 11, 12} }

};

arr3d2[0, 0, 0]; // returns 1

arr3d2[0, 0, 1]; // returns 2

arr3d2[0, 1, 0]; // returns 3

arr3d2[0, 1, 1]; // returns 4

arr3d2[1, 0, 0]; // returns 5

arr3d2[1, 0, 1]; // returns 6

arr3d2[1, 1, 0]; // returns 7

arr3d2[1, 1, 1]; // returns 8

As you can see in the above example, [1, 2, 2] of arr3d1 specifies that it will contain one row of two-dimensional array [2, 2]. arr3d2 specifies dimensions [2, 2, 2], which indicates that it includes two rows of two-dimensional array of [2, 2]. Thus, the first rank indicates the number of rows of inner two-dimensional arrays.

Now, consider the following four-dimensional array.

Example: Four-dimensional Array

int[,,,] arr4d1 = new int[1, 1, 2, 2]{

{

{ { 1, 2}, { 3, 4} }

}

};

arr4d1[0, 0, 0, 0]; // returns 1

arr4d1[0, 0, 0, 1]; // returns 2

arr4d1[0, 0, 1, 0]; // returns 3

arr4d1[0, 0, 1, 1]; // returns 4

int[,,,] arr4d2 = new int[1, 2, 2, 2]{

{

{ {1, 2}, {3, 4} },

{ {5, 6}, {7, 8} }

}

};

arr4d2[0, 0, 0, 0]; // returns 1

arr4d2[0, 0, 0, 1]; // returns 2

arr4d2[0, 0, 1, 0]; // returns 3

arr4d2[0, 0, 1, 1]; // returns 4

arr4d2[0, 1, 0, 0]; // returns 5

arr4d2[0, 1, 0, 1]; // returns 6

arr4d2[0, 1, 1, 0]; // returns 7

arr4d2[0, 1, 1, 1]; // returns 8

In the above example, the four-dimensional array arr4d1 specifies [1, 1, 2, 2], which indicates that it includes one row of the three-dimensional array.

In the same way, you can declare and initialize five-dimensional, six-dimensional array, and up to 32-dimensional arrays in C#.

## Exercise

Write a C# Sharp program to merge two arrays of the same size sorted in ascending order.



using System;

public class Exercise7

{

public static void Main()

{

int[] arr1 = new int[100];

int[] arr2 = new int[100];

int[] arr3 = new int[200];

int s1, s2, s3;

int i, j, k;

Console.Write("\n\nMerge two arrays of same size sorted in ascending order.\n");

Console.Write("------------------------------------------------------------\n");

Console.Write("Input the no. of elements to be stored in the first array: ");

s1 = Convert.ToInt32(Console.ReadLine());

Console.Write("Input {0} elements in the array :\n",s1);

for(i=0;i<s1;i++)

{

Console.Write("element - {0} : ",i);

arr1[i] = Convert.ToInt32(Console.ReadLine());

}

Console.Write("Input the no. of elements to be stored in the second array: ");

s2 = Convert.ToInt32(Console.ReadLine());

Console.Write("Input {0} elements in the array :\n",s2);

for(i=0;i<s2;i++)

{

Console.Write("element - {0} : ",i);

arr2[i] = Convert.ToInt32(Console.ReadLine());

}

/\* size of merged array is size of first array and size of second array \*/

s3 = s1 + s2;

/\*----------------- insert in the third array------------------------------------\*/

for(i=0;i<s1; i++)

{

arr3[i] = arr1[i];

}

for(j=0;j<s2; j++)

{

arr3[i] = arr2[j];

i++;

}

/\*----------------- sort the array in ascending order ---------------------------\*/

for(i=0;i<s3; i++)

{

for(k=0;k<s3-1;k++)

{

if(arr3[k]>=arr3[k+1])

{

j=arr3[k+1];

arr3[k+1]=arr3[k];

arr3[k]=j;

}

}

}

/\*--------------- Prints the merged array ------------------------------------\*/

Console.Write("\nThe merged array in ascending order is :\n");

for(i=0; i<s3; i++)

{

Console.Write("{0} ", arr3[i]);

}

Console.Write("\n\n");

}

}

**Sample Output**:

Merge two arrays of same size sorted in ascending order.

------------------------------------------------------------

Input the number of elements to be stored in the first array :2

Input 2 elements in the array :

element - 0 : 1

element - 1 : 2

Inpu2 the number of elements to be stored in the second array :2

Input 2 elements in the array :

element - 0 : 3

element - 1 : 4

The merged array in ascending order is :

1 2 3 4

# C# - Jagged Arrays: An Array of Array

A jagged array is an array of array. Jagged arrays store arrays instead of literal values.

A jagged array is initialized with two square brackets [][]. The first bracket specifies the size of an array, and the second bracket specifies the dimensions of the array which is going to be stored.

The following example declares jagged arrays.

Example: Jagged Arrays

int[][] jArray1 = new int[2][]; // can include two single-dimensional arrays

int[][,] jArray2 = new int[3][,]; // can include three two-dimensional arrays

II

n the above example, jArray1 can store up to two single-dimensional arrays. jArray2 can store up to three two-dimensional, arrays [,] specifies the two-dimensional array.

Example: Jagged Array

int[][] jArray = new int[2][];

jArray[0] = new int[3]{1, 2, 3};

jArray[1] = new int[4]{4, 5, 6, 7 };

You can also initialize a jagged array upon declaration like the below.

Example: Jagged Array

int[][] jArray = new int[2][]{

new int[3]{1, 2, 3},

new int[4]{4, 5, 6, 7}

};

jArray[0][0]; //returns 1

jArray[0][1]; //returns 2

jArray[0][2]; //returns 3

jArray[1][0]; //returns 4

jArray[1][1]; //returns 5

jArray[1][2]; //returns 6

jArray[1][3]; //returns 7

You can access a jagged array using two for loops, as shown below.

Example: Jagged Array

int[][] jArray = new int[2][]{

new int[3]{1, 2, 3},

new int[4]{4, 5, 6, 7}

};

for(int i=0; i<jArray.Length; i++)

{

for(int j=0; j < (jArray[i]).Length; j++)

Console.WriteLine(jArray[i][j]);

}

Console.WriteLine(jArray[i][j]);

}

The following jagged array stores two-dimensional arrays where the second bracket [,] indicates the two-dimensional array.

Example: Jagged Array

int[][,] jArray = new int[2][,];

jArray[0] = new int[3, 2] { { 1, 2 }, { 3, 4 }, { 5, 6 } };

jArray[1] = new int[2, 2] { { 7, 8 }, { 9, 10 } };

jArray[0][1, 1]; //returns 4

jArray[1][1, 0]; //returns 9

jArray[1][1, 1]; //returns 10

If you add one more bracket then it will be array of array of arry.

Example: Jagged Array

int[][][] intJaggedArray = new int[2][][]

{

new int[2][]

{

new int[3] { 1, 2, 3},

new int[2] { 4, 5}

},

new int[1][]

{

new int[3] { 7, 8, 9}

}

};

Console.WriteLine(intJaggedArray[0][0][0]); // 1

Console.WriteLine(intJaggedArray[0][1][1]); // 5

Console.WriteLine(intJaggedArray[1][0][2]); // 9

In the above example of a jagged array, three brackets [][][] means an array of array of array. So, intJaggedArray will contain two elements, which means two arrays. Now, each of these arrays also contains an array (single-dimension). intJaggedArray[0][0][0] points to the first element of first inner array. intJaggedArray[1][0][2] points to the third element of the second inner array. The following figure illustrates this.

[Diagram

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/jagged-array.png)

# C# - Collections

C# includes specialized classes that store series of values or objects are called collections.

.NET supports two types of collections, generic collections and non-generic collections. Prior to .NET 2.0, it was just collections and when generics were added to .NET, generics collections were added as well.

The System.CollectionsSystem.Collections namespace contains the non-generic collection types and System.Collections.Generic the System.Collections.Generic namespace includes generic collection types.

In most cases, it is recommended to use the generic collections because they perform faster than non-generic collections and also minimize exceptions by giving compile-time errors.

Collections standardize the way of which the objects are handled by your program. In other words, it contains a set of classes to contain elements in a generalized manner. With the help of collections, the user can perform several operations on objects like the store, update, delete, retrieve, search, sort etc.

C# collection types are designed to store, manage and manipulate similar data more efficiently. Data manipulation includes adding, removing, finding, and inserting data in the collection. Collection types implement the following common functionality:

* Adding and inserting items to a collection
* Removing items from a collection
* Finding, sorting, searching items
* Replacing items
* Copy and clone collections and items
* Capacity and Count properties to find the capacity of the collection and number of items in the collection

## Non-generic Collections

Non-Generic collection in C# is defined in System.Collections namespace. It is a general-purpose data structure that works on object references, so it can handle any type of object, but not in a safe-type manner. Non-generic collections are defined by the set of interfaces and classes.

In non-generic collections, each element can represent a value of a different type. The collection size is not fixed. Items from the collection can be added or removed at runtime.

| Non-generic Collections | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| ArrayList | ArrayList stores objects of any type like an array. However, there is no need to specify the size of the ArrayList like with an array as it grows automatically. |
| SortedList | SortedList stores key and value pairs. It automatically arranges elements in ascending order of key by default. C# includes both, generic and non-generic SortedList collection. |
| Stack | Stack stores the values in LIFO style (Last In First Out). It provides a Push() method to add a value and Pop() & Peek() methods to retrieve values. C# includes both, generic and non-generic Stack. |
| Queue | Queue stores the values in FIFO style (First In First Out). It keeps the order in which the values were added. It provides an Enqueue() method to add values and a Dequeue() method to retrieve values from the collection. C# includes generic and non-generic Queue. |
| Hashtable | Hashtable stores key and value pairs. It retrieves the values by comparing the hash value of the keys. |
| BitArray | BitArray manages a compact array of bit values, which are represented as Booleans, where true indicates that the bit is on (1) and false indicates the bit is off (0). |

## Generic Collections

Generic Collections work on the specific type that is specified in the program whereas non-generic collections work on the object type.

1. Specific type
2. Array Size is not fixed
3. Elements can be added / removed at runtime.

Generic collection in C# is defined in `System.Collections.Generic` namespace. It provides a generic implementation of standard data structure like linked lists, stacks, queues, and dictionaries. These collections are type-safe because they are generic, meaning only those items that are type-compatible with the type of the collection can be stored in a generic collection, it eliminates accidental type mismatches. Generic collections are defined by the set of interfaces and classes.

Below table contains the frequently used classes of the `System.Collections.Generic` namespace:

| Generic Collections | Description |
| --- | --- |
| List<T> | Generic List<T> contains elements of specified type. It grows automatically as you add elements in it. |
| Dictionary<TKey,TValue> | Dictionary<TKey,TValue> contains key-value pairs. |
| SortedList<TKey,TValue> | SortedList stores key and value pairs. It automatically adds the elements in ascending order of key by default. |
| Queue<T> | Queue<T> stores the values in FIFO style (First In First Out). It keeps the order in which the values were added. It provides an Enqueue() method to add values and a Dequeue() method to retrieve values from the collection. |
| Stack<T> | Stack<T> stores the values as LIFO (Last In First Out). It provides a Push() method to add a value and Pop() & Peek() methods to retrieve values. |
| Hashset<T> | Hashset<T> contains non-duplicate elements. It eliminates duplicate elements. |

## Generic Classes

**Generic** is a class which allows the user to define classes and methods with the placeholder. Generics were added to version 2.0 of the C# language. The basic idea behind using Generic is to allow type (Integer, String, … etc and user-defined types) to be a parameter to methods, classes, and interfaces. A primary limitation of collections is the absence of effective type checking. This means that you can put any object in a collection because all classes in the C# programming language extend from the object base class. This compromises type safety and contradicts the basic definition of C# as a type-safe language. In addition, using collections involves a significant performance overhead in the form of implicit and explicit type casting that is required to add or retrieve objects from a collection.

To address the type safety issue, the .NET framework provides generics to create classes, structures, interfaces, and methods that have placeholders for the types they use. Generics are commonly used to create type-safe collections for both reference and value types. The .NET framework provides an extensive set of interfaces and classes in the `System.Collections.Generic` namespace for implementing generic collections.

Generics in C# and .NET provide many of the benefits of strongly-typed collections as well as provide a higher quality of, and a performance boost for code. Generics are very similar to C++ templates but having a slight difference in such a way that the source code of C++ templates is required when a templates is instantiated with a specific type and .NET Generics are not limited to classes only. In fact, they can also be implemented with Interfaces, Delegates and Methods. The detailed specification for each collection is found under the `System.Collections.Generic` namespace.

### Boxing and Unboxing

.Net defines two major categories of data type termed value type and reference type to represent a variable. This is where boxing and unboxing are needed. Boxing is a mechanism to explicitly convert a value type to a reference type by storing the variable into `System.Object`; when you box the value the CLR allocates a new object into the heap and copies the value type's value into that instance. For example, you have created a variable of `int` type as:

int a = 20;

object b = a; //boxing

The opposite operation is Unboxing which is the process of converting back the reference type into the value type. This process verifies that the receiving data type is equivalent to the boxed type as:

int c = (int)b; // unboxing

There are series of operations performed by .NET CLR, such as, first an object is allocated in the managed heap, then in boxing the value is transformed into the memory location and during unboxing the value is stored on the heap and must be transferred back to the stack. So the Boxing and Unboxing process has a significant importance in Generics from the performance point of view because this process is more resource-intensive rather than using Generics.

### Generic Classes

The Generic class can be defined by putting the `<T>` sign after the class name. It isn't mandatory to put the "T" word in the Generic type definition. You can use any word in the `TestClass<>` class declaration.

public class TestClass<T> { }

The `System.Collections.Generic` namespace also defines a number of classes that implement many of these key interfaces.

There are some significant characteristics of Generic types that make them special to the conventional non-generics type as follows:

* Type Safety
* Performance
* Binary Code reuse

#### Type Safety

One of the most significant features of Generics is Type Safety. In the case of the non-generic ArrayList class, if objects are used, any type can be added to the collections that can sometimes result in a great disaster. The following example shows adding an integer, string and object to the collection of an ArrayList type:

ArrayList obj = new ArrayList();

obj.Add(50);

obj.Add("Dog");

obj.Add(new TestClass());

Now, if the collection is iterated through the `foreach` statement using integer elements, the compiler accepts the code but because all the elements in the collection are not an integer, a runtime exception occurs:

foreach(int i in obj)

{

Console.WriteLine(i);

}

The rule of thumb in programming is that Errors should be detected as early as possible. With the generic class `Test<T>`, the generic type T defines what types are allowed. With the definition of `Test<int>`, only an integer type can be added to the collection. The compiler doesn't compile the code because the `Add()` method has invalid arguments as follows;

Test<int> obj = new Test<int>();

obj.Add(50);

obj.Add("Dog"); //compiler error

#### Performance

Another feature of Generics is performance. Using value types with non-generic collection classes result in boxing and unboxing overhead when a value type is converted to reference type and vice-versa.

In the following example, the ArrayList class stores objects and the `Add()` method is defined to store some integer type argument. So an integer type is boxed. When the value from ArrayList is read using the `foreach` statement, unboxing occurrs.

ArrayList obj = new ArrayList();

obj.Add(50); //boxing- convert value type to reference type

int x= (int)obj[0]; //unboxing

foreach(int i in obj)

{

Console.WriteLine(i); // unboxing

}

**Note**: Generics are faster than other collections such as ArrayList.

Instead of using objects, a Generics type of the `TestClass<T>` class is defined as an `int`, so an `int` type is used inside the class that is generated dynamically from the compiler. Therefore boxing and unboxing no longer occurs as in the following;

using System.Collections.Generic;

TestClass<int> obj = new TestClass<int>();

obj.Add(50); //No boxing

int x= obj[0]; // No unboxing

foreach(int i in obj)

{

Console.WriteLine(i); //No unboxing

}

#### Binary Code reuse

Generics provide a kind of source code protection. A Generic class can be defined once and can be instantiated with many different types. Generics can be defined in one CLR supported language and used from another .NET language. The following `TestClass<T>` is instantiated with an `int` and `string` types:

TestClass<int> obj = new TestClass<int>();

obj.Add(50);

TestClass<string> obj1 = new TestClass<string>();

obj1.Add("hello");

## C# - Array List

In C#, the ArrayList is a non-generic collection of objects whose size increases dynamically. It is the same as Array except that its size increases dynamically.

An ArrayList can be used to add unknown data where you don't know the types and the size of the data.

### Create an ArrayList

The ArrayList class included in the System.Collections namespace. Create an object of the ArrayList using the new keyword.

Example: Create an ArrayList

using System.Collections;

ArrayList arlist = new ArrayList();

// or

var arlist = new ArrayList(); // recommended

## Adding Elements in ArrayList

Use the Add() method or object initializer syntax to add elements in an ArrayList.

An ArrayList can contain multiple null and duplicate values.

Example: Adding Elements in ArrayList

// adding elements using ArrayList.Add() method

var arlist1 = new ArrayList();

arlist1.Add(1);

arlist1.Add("Bill");

arlist1.Add(" ");

arlist1.Add(true);

arlist1.Add(4.5);

arlist1.Add(null);

// adding elements using object initializer syntax

var arlist2 = new ArrayList()

{

2, "Steve", " ", true, 4.5, null

};

};

Use the AddRange(ICollection c) method to add an entire Array, HashTable, SortedList, rrayList, BitArray, Queue, and Stack in the ArrayList.

Example: Adding Entire Array/ArrayList into ArrayList

var arlist1 = new ArrayList();

var arlist2 = new ArrayList()

{

1, "Bill", " ", true, 4.5, null

};

int[] arr = { 100, 200, 300, 400 };

Queue myQ = new Queue();

myQ.Enqueue("Hello");

myQ.Enqueue("World!");

arlist1.AddRange(arlist2); //adding arraylist in arraylist

arlist1.AddRange(arr); //adding array in arraylist

arlist1.AddRange(myQ); //adding Queue in arraylist

### Accessing an ArrayList

The ArrayList class implements the IList interface. So, elements can be accessed using indexer, in the same way as an array. Index starts from zero and increases by one for each subsequent element.

An explicit casting to the appropriate types is required, or use the var keyword.

Example: Accessing Elements of ArrayList

var arlist = new ArrayList()

{

1,

"Bill",

300,

4.5f

};

//Access individual item using indexer

int firstElement = (int) arlist[0]; //returns 1

string secondElement = (string) arlist[1]; //returns "Bill"

//int secondElement = (int) arlist[1]; //Error: cannot convert string to int

//using var keyword without explicit casting

var firstElement = arlist[0]; //returns 1

var secondElement = arlist[1]; //returns "Bill"

//var fifthElement = arlist[5]; //Error: Index out of range

//update elements

arlist[0] = "Steve";

arlist[1] = 100;

//arlist[5] = 500; //Error: Index out of range

### Iterate an ArrayList

The ArrayList implements the ICollection interface that supports iteration of the collection types. So, use the foreach and the for loop to iterate an ArrayList. The Count property of an ArrayList returns the total number of elements in an ArrayList.

Example: Iterate ArrayList

ArrayList arlist = new ArrayList()

{

1,

"Bill",

300,

4.5F

};

foreach (var item in arlist)

Console.Write(item + ", "); //output: 1, Bill, 300, 4.5,

for(int i = 0 ; i < arlist.Count; i++)

Console.Write(arlist[i] + ", "); //output: 1, Bill, 300, 4.5,

### Insert Elements in ArrayList

Use the Insert() method to insert an element at the specified index into an ArrayList.

Signature: *void Insert(int index, Object value)*

Example: Insert Element in ArrayList

ArrayList arlist = new ArrayList()

{

1,

"Bill",

300,

4.5f

};

arlist.Insert(1, "Second Item");

foreach (var val in arlist)

Console.WriteLine(val);

Use the InsertRange() method to insert a collection in an ArrayList at the specfied index.

Signature: *Void InsertRange(int index, ICollection c)*

Example: Insert Collection in ArrayList

ArrayList arlist1 = new ArrayList()

{

100, 200, 600

};

ArrayList arlist2 = new ArrayList()

{

300, 400, 500

};

arlist1.InsertRange(2, arlist2);

foreach(var item in arlist1)

Console.Write(item + ", "); //output: 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600,

### Remove Elements from ArrayList

Use the Remove(), RemoveAt(), or RemoveRange methods to remove elements from an ArrayList.

Example: Remove Elements from ArrayList

ArrayList arList = new ArrayList()

{

1,

null,

"Bill",

300,

" ",

4.5f,

300,

};

arList.Remove(null); //Removes first occurrence of null

arList.RemoveAt(4); //Removes element at index 4

arList.RemoveRange(0, 2);//Removes two elements starting from 1st item (0 index)

### Check Element in ArrayList

Use the Contains() method to determine whether the specified element exists in the ArrayList or not. It returns true if exists otherwise returns false.

Example: Check for Elements

ArrayList arList = new ArrayList()

{

1,

"Bill",

300,

4.5f,

300

};

Console.WriteLine(arList.Contains(300)); // true

Console.WriteLine(arList.Contains("Bill")); // true

Console.WriteLine(arList.Contains(10)); // false

Console.WriteLine(arList.Contains("Steve")); // false

It is not recommended to use the ArrayList class due to performance issue. Instead, use List<object> to store heterogeneous objects. To store data of same data type, use Generic List<T>.

### ArrayList Class

The following diagram illustrates the ArrayList class.

[Diagram

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/arraylist.png)

### ArrayList Properties

| Properties | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Capacity | Gets or sets the number of elements that the ArrayList can contain. |
| Count | Gets the number of elements actually contained in the ArrayList. |
| IsFixedSize | Gets a value indicating whether the ArrayList has a fixed size. |
| IsReadOnly | Gets a value indicating whether the ArrayList is read-only. |
| Item | Gets or sets the element at the specified index. |

### ArrayList Methods

| Methods | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Add()/AddRange() | Add() method adds single elements at the end of ArrayList. AddRange() method adds all the elements from the specified collection into ArrayList. |
| Insert()/InsertRange() | Insert() method insert a single elements at the specified index in ArrayList. InsertRange() method insert all the elements of the specified collection starting from specified index in ArrayList. |
| Remove()/RemoveRange() | Remove() method removes the specified element from the ArrayList. RemoveRange() method removes a range of elements from the ArrayList. |
| RemoveAt() | Removes the element at the specified index from the ArrayList. |
| Sort() | Sorts entire elements of the ArrayList. |
| Reverse() | Reverses the order of the elements in the entire ArrayList. |
| Contains | Checks whether specified element exists in the ArrayList or not. Returns true if exists otherwise false. |
| Clear | Removes all the elements in ArrayList. |
| CopyTo | Copies all the elements or range of elements to compitible Array. |
| GetRange | Returns specified number of elements from specified index from ArrayList. |
| IndexOf | Search specified element and returns zero based index if found. Returns -1 if element not found. |
| ToArray | Returns compitible array from an ArrayList. |

## C# - List

The List<T> List<T> is a collection of strongly typed objects that can be accessed by index and having methods for sorting, searching, and modifying list. It is the generic version of the ArrayList that comes under System.Collections.GenericSystem.Collection.Generic namespace.

### List<T> Characteristics

* List<T>List<T> equivalent of the ArrayList by implementing the IList<T> interface.
* It comes under System.Collections.Generic namespace.
* It is different from the arrays. A List<T> can be resized dynamically, but arrays cannot.
* List<T> class can accept null as a valid value for reference types and it also allows duplicate elements.
* List<T> can contain elements of the specified type. It provides compile-time type checking and doesn't perform boxing-unboxing because it is generic.
* Elements can be added using the Add(), AddRange() methods or collection-initializer syntax.
* Elements can be accessed by passing an index e.g. myList[0]. Indexes start from zero.
* If the Count becomes equals to Capacity, then the capacity of the List is increased automatically by reallocating the internal array. The existing elements will be copied to the new array before the addition of the new element.
* Capacity is the number of the elements which the List can store before resizing of List needed. But Count is the number of the elements which are actually present in the List.
* List<T> performs faster and less error-prone than the ArrayList.

### Creating a List

The List<T> List<T> is a generic collection, so you need to specify a type parameter for the type of data it can store. The following example shows how to create list and add elements.

Example: Adding elements in List

List<int> primeNumbers = new List<int>();

primeNumbers.Add(1); // adding elements using add() method

primeNumbers.Add(3);

primeNumbers.Add(5);

primeNumbers.Add(7);

var cities = new List<string>();

cities.Add("New York");

cities.Add("London");

cities.Add("Mumbai");

cities.Add("Chicago");

cities.Add(null);// nulls are allowed for reference type list

//adding elements using collection-initializer syntax

var bigCities = new List<string>()

{

"New York",

"London",

"Mumbai",

"Chicago"

};

};

In the above example, List<int> primeNumbers = new List<int>(); creates a list of int type. In the same way, cities and bigCities are string type list. You can then add elements in a list using the Add() method or the collection-initializer syntax.

You can also add elements of the custom classes using the collection-initializer syntax. The following adds objects of the Student class in the List<Student>.

Example: Add Custom Class Objects in List

var students = new List<Student>() {

new Student(){ Id = 1, Name="Bill"},

new Student(){ Id = 2, Name="Steve"},

new Student(){ Id = 3, Name="Ram"},

new Student(){ Id = 4, Name="Abdul"}

};

};

### Adding an Array in a List

Use the AddRange() method to add all the elements from an array or another collection to List.

AddRange() signature: void AddRange(IEnumerable<T> collection)

Example: Add Arrays in List

string[] cities = new string[3]{ "Mumbai", "London", "New York" };

var popularCities = new List<string>();

// adding an array in a List

popularCities.AddRange(cities);

var favouriteCities = new List<string>();

// adding a List

favouriteCities.AddRange(popularCities);

favouriteCities.AddRange(popularCities);

### Accessing a List

A list can be accessed by an index, a for/foreach loop, and using LINQ queries. Indexes of a list start from zero. Pass an index in the square brackets to access individual list items, same as array. Use a foreach or for loop to iterate a List<T> collection.

Example: Accessing List

List<int> numbers = new List<int>() { 1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 10 };

Console.WriteLine(numbers[0]); // prints 1

Console.WriteLine(numbers[1]); // prints 2

Console.WriteLine(numbers[2]); // prints 5

Console.WriteLine(numbers[3]); // prints 7

// using foreach LINQ method

numbers.ForEach(num => Console.WriteLine(num + ", "));//prints 1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 10,

// using for loop

for(int i = 0; i < numbers.Count; i++)

Console.WriteLine(numbers[i]);

### Accessing a List using LINQ

The List<T> implements the IEnumerable interface. So, we can query a list using LINQ query syntax or method syntax, as shown below.

Example: LINQ Query on List

var students = new List<Student>() {

new Student(){ Id = 1, Name="Bill"},

new Student(){ Id = 2, Name="Steve"},

new Student(){ Id = 3, Name="Ram"},

new Student(){ Id = 4, Name="Abdul"}

};

//get all students whose name is Bill

var result = from s in students

where s.Name == "Bill"

select s;

foreach(var student in result)

Console.WriteLine(student.Id + ", " + student.Name);

### Insert Elements in List

Use the Insert() method inserts an element into the List<T> collection at the specified index.

Insert() signature:void Insert(int index, T item);

Example: Insert elements into List

var numbers = new List<int>(){ 10, 20, 30, 40 };

numbers.Insert(1, 11);// inserts 11 at 1st index: after 10.

foreach (var num in numbers)

Console.Write(num);

### Remove Elements from List

Use the Remove() method to remove the first occurrence of the specified element in the List<T> collection. Use the RemoveAt() method to remove an element from the specified index. If no element at the specified index, then the ArgumentOutOfRangeException will be thrown.

Remove() signature: bool Remove(T item)

RemoveAt() signature: void RemoveAt(int index)

Example: Remove elements from List

var numbers = new List<int>(){ 10, 20, 30, 40, 10 };

numbers.Remove(10); // removes the first 10 from a list

numbers.RemoveAt(2); //removes the 3rd element (index starts from 0)

//numbers.RemoveAt(10); //throws ArgumentOutOfRangeException

foreach (var el in intList)

Console.Write(el); //prints 20 30

### Check Elements in List

Use the Contains() method to determine whether an element is in the List<T> or not.

Example: Contains()

var numbers = new List<int>(){ 10, 20, 30, 40 };

numbers.Contains(10); // returns true

numbers.Contains(11); // returns false

numbers.Contains(20); // returns true

### List<T> Class Hierarchy

The following diagram illustrates the List<T> hierarchy.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/list.png)

### List<T> Class Properties and Methods

The following table lists the important properties and methods of List<T> class:

| Property | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Items | Gets or sets the element at the specified index |
| Count | Returns the total number of elements exists in the List<T> |

| Method | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Add | Adds an element at the end of a List<T>. |
| AddRange | Adds elements of the specified collection at the end of a List<T>. |
| BinarySearch | Search the element and returns an index of the element. |
| Clear | Removes all the elements from a List<T>. |
| Contains | Checks whether the specified element exists or not in a List<T>. |
| Find | Finds the first element based on the specified predicate function. |
| Foreach | Iterates through a List<T>. |
| Insert | Inserts an element at the specified index in a List<T>. |
| InsertRange | Inserts elements of another collection at the specified index. |
| Remove | Removes the first occurrence of the specified element. |
| RemoveAt | Removes the element at the specified index. |
| RemoveRange | Removes all the elements that match the supplied predicate function. |
| Sort | Sorts all the elements. |
| TrimExcess | Sets the capacity to the actual number of elements. |
| TrueForAll | Determines whether every element in the List<T> matches the conditions defined by the specified predicate. |

## C# - SortedList<TKey, TValue>

The SortedList<TKey, TValue>, and SortedList are collection classes that can store key-value pairs that are sorted by the keys based on the associated IComparer implementation. For example, if the keys are of primitive types, then sorted in ascending order of keys.

C# supports generic and non-generic SortedList. It is recommended to use generic SortedList<TKey, TValue> because it performs faster and less error-prone than the non-generic SortedList.

### SortedList Characteristics

* SortedList<TKey, TValue> SortedList<TKey, TValue> is an array of key-value pairs sorted by keys.
* Sorts elements as soon as they are added. Sorts primitive type keys in ascending order and object keys based on IComparer<T>.
* Comes under System.Collection.Generic namespace.
* A key must be unique and cannot be null.
* A value can be null or duplicate.
* A value can be accessed by passing associated key in the indexer mySortedList[key]
* Contains elements of type KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue>
* It uses less memory than SortedDictionary<TKey,TValue>.
* It is faster in the retrieval of data once sorted, whereas SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue> is faster in insertion and removing key-value pairs.

### Creating a SortedList

The following example demonstrates how to create a generic SortedList<TKey, TValue>, and add key-value pairs in it.

Example: Create a SortedList and Add Elements

//SortedList of int keys, string values

SortedList<int, string> numberNames = new SortedList<int, string>();

numberNames.Add(3, "Three");

numberNames.Add(1, "One");

numberNames.Add(2, "Two");

numberNames.Add(4, null);

numberNames.Add(10, "Ten");

numberNames.Add(5, "Five");

//The following will throw exceptions

//numberNames.Add("Three", 3); //Compile-time error: key must be int type

//numberNames.Add(1, "One"); //Run-time exception: duplicate key

//numberNames.Add(null, "Five");//Run-time exception: key cannot be null

In the above example, a generic SortedList<TKey, TValue> object is created by specifying the type of keys and values it is going to store. The SortedList<int, string> will store keys of int type and values of string type.

The Add() method is used to add a single key-value pair in a SortedList. Keys cannot be null or duplicate. If found, it will throw a run-time exception. Values can be duplicate and null if the type is nullable.

Use the collection-initializer syntax to initialize a SortedList with multiple key-value pairs at the time of instantiating, as shown below.

//Creating a SortedList of string keys, string values

//using collection-initializer syntax

SortedList<string,string> cities = new SortedList<string,string>()

{

{"London", "UK"},

{"New York", "USA"},

{ "Mumbai", "India"},

{"Johannesburg", "South Africa"}

};

};

The SortedList rearranges key-value pairs in the ascending order of keys as soon as a key-value pair added. The following example displays all the keys and values using foreach loop.

Example: SortedList Elements Default Sorting Order

SortedList<int,string> numberNames = new SortedList<int,string>()

{

{3, "Three"},

{5, "Five"},

{1, "One"}

};

Console.WriteLine("---Initial key-values--");

foreach(KeyValuePair<int, string> kvp in numberNames)

Console.WriteLine("key: {0}, value: {1}", kvp.Key , kvp.Value );

numberNames.Add(6, "Six");

numberNames.Add(2, "Two");

numberNames.Add(4, "Four");

Console.WriteLine("---After adding new key-values--");

foreach(var kvp in numberNames)

Console.WriteLine("key: {0}, value: {1}", kvp.Key , kvp.Value );

Microsoft To Launch Cross-Platform Email Client Codenamed Project Monarch

### Accessing SortedList

Specify a key in the indexer sortedList[key], to get or set a value in the SortedList.

Example: Access SortedList Values

SortedList<int,string> numberNames = new SortedList<int,string>()

{

{3, "Three"},

{1, "One"},

{2, "Two"}

};

Console.WriteLine(numberNames[1]); //output: One

Console.WriteLine(numberNames[2]); //output: Two

Console.WriteLine(numberNames[3]); //output: Three

//Console.WriteLine(numberNames[10]); //run-time KeyNotFoundException

numberNames[2] = "TWO"; //updates value

numberNames[4] = "Four"; //adds a new key-value if a key does not exists

Above, numberNames[10] will throw a KeyNotFoundException because specified key 10 does not exist in a sortedlist. To prevent this exception, use ContainsKey() or TryGetValue() methods, as shown below.

Example: ContainsKey() and TryGetValue()

SortedList<int, string> numberNames = new SortedList<int,string>()

{

{3, "Three"},

{1, "One"},

{2, "Two"}

};

if(numberNames.ContainsKey(4)){

numberNames[4] = "four";

}

int result;

if(numberNames.TryGetValue(4, out result))

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}", 4, result);

Output:

Key:4, Value: Four

Use Keys and Values properties if you want to iterate a SortedList using a for loop.

Example: Iterate SortedList using For Loop

SortedList<int, string> numberNames = new SortedList<int,string>()

{

{3, "Three"},

{1, "One"},

{2, "Two"}

};

for (int i = 0; i < numberNames.Count; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine("key: {0}, value: {1}", numberNames.Keys[i], numberNames.Values[i]);

}

}



### Remove Elements from SortedList

Use the Remove(key) and RemoveAt(index) methods to remove key-value pairs from a SortedList.

Example: Remove Elements

SortedList<int,string> numberNames = new SortedList<int,string>()

{

{3, "Three"},

{1, "One"},

{2, "Two"},

{5, "Five"},

{4, "Four"}

};

numberNames.Remove(1);//removes key 1 pair

numberNames.Remove(10);//removes key 1 pair, no error if not exists

numberNames.RemoveAt(0);//removes key-value pair from index 0

//numberNames.RemoveAt(10);//run-time exception: ArgumentOutOfRangeException

foreach(var kvp in numberNames)

Console.WriteLine("key: {0}, value: {1}", kvp.Key , kvp.Value );

Console.WriteLine("key: {0}, value: {1}", kvp.Key , kvp.Value );



### SortedList Class Hierarchy

The following diagram illustrates the SortedList hierarchy.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/sortedlist-generic.png)

## C# - Dictionary<TKey, TValue>

The Dictionary<TKey, TValue> is a generic collection that stores key-value pairs in no particular order.

### Dictionary Characteristics

* Dictionary<TKey, TValue>Dictionary<TKey, TValue> stores key-value pairs.
* Comes under System.Collections.Generic namespace.
* Implements IDictionary<TKey, TValue> interface.
* Keys must be unique and cannot be null.
* Values can be null or duplicate.
* Values can be accessed by passing associated key in the indexer e.g., myDictionary[key]
* Elements are stored as KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue> objects.

### Creating a Dictionary

You can create the Dictionary<TKey, TValue> object by passing the type of keys and values it can store. The following example shows how to create a dictionary and add key-value pairs.

Example: Create Dictionary and Add Elements

IDictionary<int, string> numberNames = new Dictionary<int, string>();

numberNames.Add(1,"One"); //adding a key/value using the Add() method

numberNames.Add(2,"Two");

numberNames.Add(3,"Three");

//The following throws run-time exception: key already added.

//numberNames.Add(3, "Three");

foreach(KeyValuePair<int, string> kvp in numberNames)

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}", kvp.Key, kvp.Value);

//creating a dictionary using collection-initializer syntax

var cities = new Dictionary<string, string>(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

foreach(var kvp in cities)

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}", kvp.Key, kvp.Value);

In the above example, numberNames is a Dictionary<int, string> type dictionary, so it can store int keys and string values. In the same way, cities is a Dictionary<string, string> type dictionary, so it can store string keys and string values. Dictionary cannot include duplicate or null keys, whereas values can be duplicated or null. Keys must be unique otherwise, it will throw a runtime exception.

### Access Dictionary Elements

The Dictionary can be accessed using indexer. Specify a key to get the associated value. You can also use the ElementAt() method to get a KeyValuePair from the specified index.

Example: Access Dictionary Elements

var cities = new Dictionary<string, string>(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

Console.WriteLine(cities["UK"]); //prints value of UK key

Console.WriteLine(cities["USA"]);//prints value of USA key

//Console.WriteLine(cities["France"]); // run-time exception: Key does not exist

//use ContainsKey() to check for an unknown key

if(cities.ContainsKey("France")){

Console.WriteLine(cities["France"]);

}

//use TryGetValue() to get a value of unknown key

string result;

if(cities.TryGetValue("France", out result))

{

Console.WriteLine(result);

}

//use ElementAt() to retrieve key-value pair using index

for (int i = 0; i < cities.Count; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}",

cities.ElementAt(i).Key,

cities.ElementAt(i).Value);

}

cities.ElementAt(i).Key,

cities.ElementAt(i).Value);

}

### Update Dictionary

Update the value of a key by specifying a key in the indexer. It will throw the KeyNotFoundException if a key does not exist in the dictionary, therefore use the ContainsKey() method before accessing unknown keys.

Example: Update Dictionary Elements

var cities = new Dictionary<string, string>(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

cities["UK"] = "Liverpool, Bristol"; // update value of UK key

cities["USA"] = "Los Angeles, Boston"; // update value of USA key

//cities["France"] = "Paris"; //throws run-time exception: KeyNotFoundException

if(cities.ContainsKey("France")){

cities["France"] = "Paris";

}

}

### Remove Elements in Dictionary

The Remove() method deletes an existing key-value pair from a dictionary. The Clear() method deletes all the elements of the dictionary.

Example: Remove Dictionary Elements

var cities = new Dictionary<string, string>(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

cities.Remove("UK"); // removes UK

//cities.Remove("France"); //throws run-time exception: KeyNotFoundException

if(cities.ContainsKey("France")){ // check key before removing it

cities.Remove("France");

}

cities.Clear(); //removes all elements

### Dictionary Class Hierarchy

The following diagram illustrates the generic Dictionary class hierarchy.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/generic-dictionary.png)

## C# - Hashtable

The Hashtable Hashtable is a non-generic collection that stores key-value pairs, similar to generic Dictionary<TKey, TValue> collection. It optimizes lookups by computing the hash code of each key and stores it in a different bucket internally and then matches the hash code of the specified key at the time of accessing values.

### Hashtable Characteristics

* HashtableHashtable stores key-value pairs.
* Comes under System.Collection namespace.
* Implements IDictionary interface.
* Keys must be unique and cannot be null.
* Values can be null or duplicate.
* Values can be accessed by passing associated key in the indexer e.g. myHashtable[key]myHashtable[key]
* Elements are stored as DictionaryEntry objects.

### Creating a Hashtable

The following example demonstrates creating a Hashtable and adding elements.

Example: Create and Add Elements

Hashtable numberNames = new Hashtable();

numberNames.Add(1,"One"); //adding a key/value using the Add() method

numberNames.Add(2,"Two");

numberNames.Add(3,"Three");

//The following throws run-time exception: key already added.

//numberNames.Add(3, "Three");

foreach(DictionaryEntry de in numberNames)

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}", de.Key, de.Value);

//creating a Hashtable using collection-initializer syntax

var cities = new Hashtable(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

foreach(DictionaryEntry de in cities)

Console.WriteLine("Key: {0}, Value: {1}", de.Key, de.Value);

The HashtableHashtable collection can include all the elements of Dictionary, as shown below.

Example: Add Dictionary in Hashtable

Dictionary<int, string> dict = new Dictionary<int, string>();

dict.Add(1, "one");

dict.Add(2, "two");

dict.Add(3, "three");

Hashtable ht = new Hashtable(dict);

### Update Hashtable

You can retrieve the value of an existing key from the Hashtable by passing a key in indexer. The Hashtable is a non-generic collection, so you must type cast values while retrieving it.

Example: Update Hashtable

//creating a Hashtable using collection-initializer syntax

var cities = new Hashtable(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

string citiesOfUK = (string) cities["UK"]; //cast to string

string citiesOfUSA = (string) cities["USA"]; //cast to string

Console.WriteLine(citiesOfUK);

Console.WriteLine(citiesOfUSA);

cities["UK"] = "Liverpool, Bristol"; // update value of UK key

cities["USA"] = "Los Angeles, Boston"; // update value of USA key

if(!cities.ContainsKey("France")){

cities["France"] = "Paris";

}

}

### Remove Elements in Hashtable

The Remove() method removes the key-value that match with the specified in the Hashtable. It throws the KeyNotfoundException if the specified key not found in the Hashtable, so check for an existing key using the ContainsKey() method before removing.

Use the Clear() method to remove all the elements in one shot.

Example: Remove Elements from Hashtable

var cities = new Hashtable(){

{"UK", "London, Manchester, Birmingham"},

{"USA", "Chicago, New York, Washington"},

{"India", "Mumbai, New Delhi, Pune"}

};

cities.Remove("UK"); // removes UK

//cities.Remove("France"); //throws run-time exception: KeyNotFoundException

if(cities.ContainsKey("France")){ // check key before removing it

cities.Remove("France");

}

cities.Clear(); //removes all elements

### Hashtable Class Hierarchy

The following diagram illustrates the Hashtable class hierarchy.

[Diagram

Description automatically generated](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/hashtable.png)

## C# - Stack<T>

StackStack is a special type of collection that stores elements in LIFO style (Last In First Out). C# includes the generic Stack<T> and non-generic Stack collection classes. It is recommended to use the generic Stack<T> collection.

Stack is useful to store temporary data in LIFO style, and you might want to delete an element after retrieving its value.

### Stack<T> Characteristics

* Stack<T>Stack<T> is Last In First Out collection.
* It comes under System.Collection.Generic namespace.
* Stack<T> can contain elements of the specified type. It provides compile-time type checking and doesn't perform boxing-unboxing because it is generic.
* Elements can be added using the Push() method. Cannot use collection-initializer syntax.
* Elements can be retrieved using the Pop() and the Peek() methods. It does not support an indexer.

### Creating a Stack

You can create an object of the Stack<T> by specifying a type parameter for the type of elements it can store. The following example creates and adds elements in the Stack<T> using the Push() method. Stack allows null (for reference types) and duplicate values.

Example: Create and Add Elements in Stack

Stack<int> myStack = new Stack<int>();

myStack.Push(1);

myStack.Push(2);

myStack.Push(3);

myStack.Push(4);

foreach (var item in myStack)

Console.Write(item + ","); //prints 4,3,2,1,

You can also create a Stack from an array, as shown below.

Example: Create and Add Elements in Stack

int[] arr = new int[]{ 1, 2, 3, 4};

Stack<int> myStack = new Stack<int>(arr);

foreach (var item in myStack)

Console.Write(item + ","); //prints 4,3,2,1,

### Stack<T> Properties and Methods:

| Property | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Count | Returns the total count of elements in the Stack. |

| Method | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Push(T) | Inserts an item at the top of the stack. |
| Peek() | Returns the top item from the stack. |
| Pop() | Removes and returns items from the top of the stack. |
| Contains(T) | Checks whether an item exists in the stack or not. |
| Clear() | Removes all items from the stack. |

### Pop()

The Pop() method returns the last element and removes it from a stack. If a stack is empty, then it will throw the InvalidOperationException. So, always check for the number of elements in a stack before calling the Pop() method.

Example: Access Stack using Pop()

Stack<int> myStack = new Stack<int>();

myStack.Push(1);

myStack.Push(2);

myStack.Push(3);

myStack.Push(4);

Console.Write("Number of elements in Stack: {0}", myStack.Count);

while (myStack.Count > 0)

Console.Write(myStack.Pop() + ",");

Console.Write("Number of elements in Stack: {0}", myStack.Count);



### Peek()

The Peek() method returns the lastly added value from the stack but does not remove it. Calling the Peek() method on an empty stack will throw the InvalidOperationException. So, always check for elements in the stack before retrieving elements using the Peek() method.

Example: Retrieve Elements usign Peek()

Stack<int> myStack = new Stack<int>();

myStack.Push(1);

myStack.Push(2);

myStack.Push(3);

myStack.Push(4);

Console.Write("Number of elements in Stack: {0}", myStack.Count);// prints 4

if(myStack.Count > 0){

Console.WriteLine(myStack.Peek()); // prints 4

Console.WriteLine(myStack.Peek()); // prints 4

}

Console.Write("Number of elements in Stack: {0}", myStack.Count);// prints 4

### Contains()

The Contains() Contains() method checks whether the specified element exists in a Stack collection or not. It returns true if it exists, otherwise false.

Example: Contains()

Stack<int> myStack = new Stack<int>();

myStack.Push(1);

myStack.Push(2);

myStack.Push(3);

myStack.Push(4);

myStack.Contains(2); // returns true

myStack.Contains(10); // returns false

## C# - Queue<T>

QueueQueue is a special type of collection that stores the elements in FIFO style (First In First Out), exactly opposite of the Stack<T> collection. It contains the elements in the order they were added. C# includes generic Queue<T> and non-generic Queue collection. It is recommended to use the generic Queue<T> collection.

### Queue<T> Characteristics

* Queue<T>Queue<T> is FIFO (First In First Out) collection.
* It comes under System.Collection.Generic namespace.
* Queue<T> can contain elements of the specified type. It provides compile-time type checking and doesn't perform boxing-unboxing because it is generic.
* Elements can be added using the Enqueue() method. Cannot use collection-initializer syntax.
* Elements can be retrieved using the Dequeue() and the Peek() methods. It does not support an indexer.

The following figure illustrates the Queue collection:

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/csharp-queue.png)

### Creating a Queue

You can create an object of the Queue<T> by specifying a type parameter for the type of elements it can store. The following example creates and adds elements in the Queue<T> using the Enqueue() method. A Queue collection allows null (for reference types) and duplicate values.

Example: Create and Add Elements in the Queue

Queue<int> callerIds = new Queue<int>();

callerIds.Enqueue(1);

callerIds.Enqueue(2);

callerIds.Enqueue(3);

callerIds.Enqueue(4);

foreach(var id in callerIds)

Console.Write(id); //prints 1234

### Queue<T> Properties and Methods

| Property | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Count | Returns the total count of elements in the Queue. |

| Method | Usage |
| --- | --- |
| Enqueue(T) | Adds an item into the queue. |
| Dequeue | Returns an item from the beginning of the queue and removes it from the queue. |
| Peek(T) | Returns an first item from the queue without removing it. |
| Contains(T) | Checks whether an item is in the queue or not |
| Clear() | Removes all the items from the queue. |

### Retrieve Elements from a Queue

The Dequeue() and the Peek() method is used to retrieve the first element in a queue collection. The Dequeue() removes and returns the first element from a queue because the queue stores elements in FIFO order. Calling the Dequeue() method on an empty queue will throw the InvalidOperation exception. So, always check that the total count of a queue is greater than zero before calling it.

Example: Reading Queue

Queue<string> strQ = new Queue<string>();

strQ.Enqueue("H");

strQ.Enqueue("e");

strQ.Enqueue("l");

strQ.Enqueue("l");

strQ.Enqueue("o");

Console.WriteLine("Total elements: {0}", strQ.Count); //prints 5

while (strQ.Count > 0)

Console.WriteLine(strQ.Dequeue()); //prints Hello

Console.WriteLine("Total elements: {0}", strQ.Count); //prints 0

The Peek() method always returns the first item from a queue collection without removing it from the queue. Calling the Peek() method on an empty queue will throw a run-time exception InvalidOperationException.

Example: Peek()

Queue<string> strQ = new Queue<string>();

strQ.Enqueue("H");

strQ.Enqueue("e");

strQ.Enqueue("l");

strQ.Enqueue("l");

strQ.Enqueue("o");

Console.WriteLine("Total elements: {0}", strQ.Count); //prints 5

if(strQ.Count > 0){

Console.WriteLine(strQ.Peek()); //prints H

Console.WriteLine(strQ.Peek()); //prints H

}

Console.WriteLine("Total elements: {0}", strQ.Count); //prints 5

### Contains()

The Contains() method checks whether an item exists in a queue or not. It returns true if the specified item exists, otherwise returns false.

Contains() Signature: bool Contains(object obj);

Example: Contains()

Queue<int> callerIds = new Queue<int>();

callerIds.Enqueue(1);

callerIds.Enqueue(2);

callerIds.Enqueue(3);

callerIds.Enqueue(4);

callerIds.Contains(2); //true

callerIds.Contains(10); //false

## C# - HashSet

In C#, HashSet is an unordered collection of unique elements. This collection is introduced in *.NET 3.5*. It supports the implementation of sets and uses the hash table for storage. This collection is of the generic type collection and it is defined under *System.Collections.Generic* namespace. It is generally used when we want to prevent duplicate elements from being placed in the collection. The performance of the HashSet is much better in comparison to the list.

Important Points:

* The HashSet class implements the ICollection, IEnumerable, IReadOnlyCollection, ISet, IEnumerable, IDeserializationCallback, and ISerializable interfaces.
* In HashSet, the order of the element is not defined. You cannot sort the elements of HashSet.
* In HashSet, the elements must be unique.
* In HashSet, duplicate elements are not allowed.
* It provides many mathematical set operations, such as intersection, union, and difference.
* The capacity of a HashSet is the number of elements it can hold.
* A HashSet is a dynamic collection, meaning the size of the HashSet is automatically increased when the new elements are added.
* In HashSet, you can only store the same type of elements.

### How to create a HashSet?

The HashSet class provides*7 different types of constructors* which are used to create a HashSet, here we only use *HashSet()*, constructor.

HashSet(): It is used to create an instance of the HashSet class that is empty and uses the default equality comparer for the set type.

Step 1: Include System.Collections.Generic namespace in your program with the help of using keyword:

using System.Collections.Generic;

Step 2: Create a HashSet using the HashSet class as shown below:

HashSet<Type\_of\_hashset> Hashset\_name = new HashSet<Type\_of\_hashset>();

Step 3: If you want to add elements in your HashSet, then use *Add()* method to add elements in your HashSet. And you can also store elements in your HashSet using collection initializer.

Step 4: The elements of HashSet is accessed by using a *foreach*loop. As shown in the below example.

**Example:**

// C# program to illustrate how to

// create hashset

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

class GFG {

// Main Method

static public void Main()

{

// Creating HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash1 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash1.Add("C");

myhash1.Add("C++");

myhash1.Add("C#");

myhash1.Add("Java");

myhash1.Add("Ruby");

Console.WriteLine("Elements of myhash1:");

// Accessing elements of HashSet

// Using foreach loop

foreach(var val in myhash1)

{

Console.WriteLine(val);

}

// Creating another HashSet

// using collection initializer

// to initialize HashSet

HashSet<int> myhash2 = new HashSet<int>() {10,

100,1000,10000,100000};

// Display elements of myhash2

Console.WriteLine("Elements of myhash2:");

foreach(var value in myhash2)

{

Console.WriteLine(value);

}

}

}

**Output**:

Elements of myhash1:

C

C++

C#

Java

Ruby

Elements of myhash2:

10

100

1000

10000

100000

### How to remove elements from the HashSet?

In HashSet, you are allowed to remove elements from the HashSet. HashSet<T> class provides three different methods to remove elements and the methods are:

* Remove(T): This method is used to remove the specified element from a HashSet object.
* RemoveWhere(Predicate): This method is used to remove all elements that match the conditions defined by the specified predicate from a HashSet collection.
* Clear: This method is used to remove all elements from a HashSet object.

**Example 1:**

// C# program to illustrate how to

// remove elements of HashSet

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

class GFG {

// Main Method

static public void Main()

{

// Creating HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash.Add("C");

myhash.Add("C++");

myhash.Add("C#");

myhash.Add("Java");

myhash.Add("Ruby");

// Before using Remove method

Console.WriteLine("Total number of elements present (Before Removal)"+

" in myhash: {0}", myhash.Count);

// Remove element from HashSet

// Using Remove method

myhash.Remove("Ruby");

// After using Remove method

Console.WriteLine("Total number of elements present (After Removal)"+

" in myhash: {0}", myhash.Count);

// Remove all elements from HashSet

// Using Clear method

myhash.Clear();

Console.WriteLine("Total number of elements present"+

" in myhash:{0}", myhash.Count);

}

}

**Output:**

Total number of elements present in myhash: 5

Total number of elements present in myhash: 4

Total number of elements present in myhash:0

### Set Operations

HashSet class also provides some methods that are used to perform different operations on sets and the methods are:

* [UnionWith(IEnumerable)](https://www.geeksforgeeks.org/c-union-of-two-hashset/): This method is used to modify the current HashSet object to contain all elements that are present in itself, the specified collection, or both.  
  Example:

// C# program to illustrate set operations

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

class GFG {

static public void Main()

{

// Creating HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash1 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash1.Add("C");

myhash1.Add("C++");

myhash1.Add("C#");

myhash1.Add("Java");

myhash1.Add("Ruby");

// Creating another HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash2 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash2.Add("PHP");

myhash2.Add("C++");

myhash2.Add("Perl");

myhash2.Add("Java");

// Using UnionWith method

myhash1.UnionWith(myhash2);

foreach(var ele in myhash1)

{

Console.WriteLine(ele);

}

}

}

**Output**:

C

C++

C#

Java

Ruby

PHP

Perl

* [IntersectWith(IEnumerable)](https://www.geeksforgeeks.org/c-intersection-of-two-hashsets/): This method is used to modify the current HashSet object to contain only elements that are present in that object and in the specified collection.  
  Example:

// C# program to illustrate set operations

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

class GFG {

// Main Method

static public void Main()

{

// Creating HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash1 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash1.Add("C");

myhash1.Add("C++");

myhash1.Add("C#");

myhash1.Add("Java");

myhash1.Add("Ruby");

// Creating another HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash2 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash2.Add("PHP");

myhash2.Add("C++");

myhash2.Add("Perl");

myhash2.Add("Java");

// Using IntersectWith method

myhash1.IntersectWith(myhash2);

foreach(var ele in myhash1)

{

Console.WriteLine(ele);

}

}

}

**Output**:

C++

Java

* [ExceptWith(IEnumerable)](https://www.geeksforgeeks.org/c-remove-all-elements-in-a-collection-from-a-hashset/): This method is used to remove all elements in the specified collection from the current HashSet object.

Example:

// C# program to illustrate set operations

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

class GFG {

// Main Method

static public void Main()

{

// Creating HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash1 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash1.Add("C");

myhash1.Add("C++");

myhash1.Add("C#");

myhash1.Add("Java");

myhash1.Add("Ruby");

// Creating another HashSet

// Using HashSet class

HashSet<string> myhash2 = new HashSet<string>();

// Add the elements in HashSet

// Using Add method

myhash2.Add("PHP");

myhash2.Add("C++");

myhash2.Add("Perl");

myhash2.Add("Java");

// Using ExceptWith method

myhash1.ExceptWith(myhash2);

foreach(var ele in myhash1)

{

Console.WriteLine(ele);

}

}

}

**Output**:

C

C#

Ruby

Let us see an example to remove duplicate strings using C# HashSet.

**Example:**

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

class Program {

   static void Main() {

      string[] arr1 = {"Table","Chair","Pen","Clip","Table"};

      Console.WriteLine(string.Join(",", arr1));

      // HashSet

      var h = new HashSet<string>(arr1);

      // eliminates duplicate words

      string[] arr2 = h.ToArray();

      Console.WriteLine(string.Join(",", arr2));

   }

}

# C# - Type Conversions (Type Casting)

Type conversion happens when we assign the value of one data type to another. If the data types are compatible, then C# does Automatic Type Conversion. If not comparable, then they need to be converted explicitly which is known as Explicit Type conversion. For example, assigning an int value to a long variable.

## Implicit Type Casting / Automatic Type Conversion

It happens when:

* The two data types are compatible.
* When we assign value of a smaller data type to a bigger data type.

For Example, in C#, the numeric data types are compatible with each other but no automatic conversion is supported from numeric type to char or boolean. Also, char and boolean are not compatible with each other. Before converting, the compiler first checks the compatibility according to the following figure and then it decides whether it is alright or there some error.

**Following table shows the implicit types of conversion that is supported by C# :**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Convert from Data Type | **Convert to Data Type** |
| byte | short, int, long, float, double |
| short | int, long, float, double |
| int | long, float, double |
| long | float, double |
| float | double |

**Example**:

// C# program to demonstrate the

// Implicit Type Conversion

using System;

namespace Casting{

class GFG {

// Main Method

public static void Main(String []args)

{

int i = 57;

// automatic type conversion

long l = i;

// automatic type conversion

float f = l;

// Display Result

Console.WriteLine("Int value " +i);

Console.WriteLine("Long value " +l);

Console.WriteLine("Float value " +f);

}

}

}

**Output**:

Int value 57

Long value 57

Float value 57

## Explicit Type Casting

There may be compilation error when types not compatible with each other. For example, assigning double value to int data type:

// C# program to illustrate incompatible data

// type for explicit type conversion

using System;

namespace Casting{

class GFG {

// Main Method

public static void Main(String []args)

{

double d = 765.12;

// Incompatible Data Type

int i = d;

// Display Result

Console.WriteLine("Value of i is ", +i);

}

}

}

**Error**:

prog.cs(14,21): error CS0266: Cannot implicitly convert type `double' to `int'.

An explicit conversion exists (are you missing a cast?)

So, if we want to assign a value of larger data type to a smaller data type we perform explicit type casting.

* This is useful for incompatible data types where automatic conversion cannot be done.
* Here, target-type specifies the desired type to convert the specified value to.
* Sometimes, it may result into the lossy conversion.

**Example**:

// C# program to demonstrate the

// Explicit Type Conversion

using System;

namespace Casting{

class GFG {

// Main Method

public static void Main(String []args)

{

double d = 765.12;

// Explicit Type Casting

int i = (int)d;

// Display Result

Console.WriteLine("Value of i is " +i);

}

}

}

**Output**:

Value of i is 765

**Explanation**:   
Here due to lossy conversion, the value of i becomes 765 and there is a loss of 0.12 value.

C# provides built-in methods for Type-Conversions as follows:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Method** |  | **Description** |
| ToBoolean |  | It will converts a type to Boolean value |
| ToChar |  | It will converts a type to a character value |
| ToByte |  | It will converts a value to Byte Value |
| ToDecimal |  | It will converts a value to Decimal point value |
| ToDouble |  | It will converts a type to double data type |
| ToInt16 |  | It will converts a type to 16-bit integer |
| ToInt32 |  | It will converts a type to 32 bit integer |
| ToInt64 |  | It will converts a type to 64 bit integer |
| ToString |  | It will converts a given type to string |
| ToUInt16 |  | It will converts a type to unsigned 16 bit integer |
| ToUInt32 |  | It will converts a type to unsigned 32 bit integer |
| ToUInt64 |  | It will converts a type to unsigned 64 bit integer |

**Example**:

// C# program to demonstrate the

// Built- In Type Conversion Methods

using System;

namespace Casting{

class GFG {

// Main Method

public static void Main(String []args)

{

int i = 12;

double d = 765.12;

float f = 56.123F;

// Using Built- In Type Conversion

// Methods & Displaying Result

Console.WriteLine(Convert.ToString(f));

Console.WriteLine(Convert.ToInt32(d));

Console.WriteLine(Convert.ToUInt32(f));

Console.WriteLine(Convert.ToDouble(i));

Console.WriteLine("AjaySingala");

}

}

}

**Output**:

56.123

765

56

12

AjaySingala

# C# - Serialization

Serialization is the process of converting an object into a stream of bytes to store the object or transmit it to memory, a database, or a file. Its main purpose is to save the state of an object to be able to recreate it when needed. The reverse process is called deserialization.

Often, we need to store objects to a physical storage so it can be read back and converted back to an object. The process of storing an object to a physical storage is called serialization. The process of reading a serialized object back into memory is deserialization.

**Note**: Serialization and Deserialization are also known as Marshal and Unmarshal respectively.

In simple words serialization in C# is a process of storing the object instance to a persistent storage. Serialization stores state of objects i.e., member variable values to persistent storage such as a disk. Deserialization is reverse of serialization. It is a process of reading objects from a file where they have been stored. In this code sample we will see how to serialize and deserialize objects using C#.

## How serialization works

This illustration shows the overall process of serialization:



The object is serialized to a stream that carries the data. The stream may also have information about the object's type, such as its version, culture, and assembly name. From that stream, the object can be stored in a database, a file, or memory.

## Namespaces involved

Following namespaces are involved in serialization process,

* System.Runtime.Serialization
* System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter
* System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary
* System.Text.Json
* System.Text.Json.Serialization
* System.Xml.Serialization

## Uses for serialization

Serialization allows the developer to save the state of an object and re-create it as needed, providing storage of objects as well as data exchange. Through serialization, a developer can perform actions such as:

* Sending the object to a remote application by using a web service
* Passing an object from one domain to another
* Passing an object through a firewall as a JSON or XML string
* Maintaining security or user-specific information across applications

## JSON serialization

The System.Text.Json namespace contains classes for JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) serialization and deserialization. JSON is an open standard that is commonly used for sharing data across the web.

JSON serialization serializes the public properties of an object into a string, byte array, or stream that conforms to the RFC 8259 JSON specification. To control the way JsonSerializer serializes or deserializes an instance of the class:

* Use a JsonSerializerOptions object
* Apply attributes from the System.Text.Json.Serialization namespace to classes or properties
* Implement custom converters

## Binary and XML serialization

The System.Runtime.Serialization namespace contains classes for binary and XML serialization and deserialization.

Binary serialization uses binary encoding to produce compact serialization for uses such as storage or socket-based network streams. In binary serialization, all members, even members that are read-only, are serialized, and performance is enhanced.

**Warning:** Binary serialization can be dangerous.

XML serialization serializes the public fields and properties of an object, or the parameters and return values of methods, into an XML stream that conforms to a specific XML Schema definition language (XSD) document. XML serialization results in strongly typed classes with public properties and fields that are converted to XML. System.Xml.Serialization contains classes for serializing and deserializing XML. You apply attributes to classes and class members to control the way the XmlSerializer serializes or deserializes an instance of the class.

## Making an object serializable

For binary or XML serialization, you need:

* The object to be serialized
* A stream to contain the serialized object
* A System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter instance

Apply the SerializableAttribute attribute to a type to indicate that instances of the type can be serialized. An exception is thrown if you attempt to serialize but the type doesn't have the SerializableAttribute attribute.

To prevent a field from being serialized, apply the NonSerializedAttribute attribute. If a field of a serializable type contains a pointer, a handle, or some other data structure that is specific to a particular environment, and the field cannot be meaningfully reconstituted in a different environment, then you may want to make it nonserializable.

If a serialized class contains references to objects of other classes that are marked SerializableAttribute, those objects will also be serialized.

## Basic and custom serialization

Binary and XML serialization can be performed in two ways, basic and custom.

Basic serialization uses .NET to automatically serialize the object. The only requirement is that the class has the SerializableAttribute attribute applied. The NonSerializedAttribute can be used to keep specific fields from being serialized.

When you use basic serialization, the versioning of objects may create problems. You would use custom serialization when versioning issues are important. Basic serialization is the easiest way to perform serialization, but it does not provide much control over the process.

In custom serialization, you can specify exactly which objects will be serialized and how it will be done. The class must be marked SerializableAttribute and implement the ISerializable interface. If you want your object to be deserialized in a custom manner as well, use a custom constructor.

## Example 1: Binary Serialization

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

public class SerialTest {

public void SerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize c = new ClassToSerialize();

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Create);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

b.Serialize(s, c);

s.Close();

}

public void DeSerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize c = new ClassToSerialize();

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Open);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

c = (ClassToSerialize) b.Deserialize(s);

Console.WriteLine(c.name);

s.Close();

}

public static void Main(string[] s) {

SerialTest st = new SerialTest();

st.SerializeNow();

st.DeSerializeNow();

}

}

public class ClassToSerialize {

public int age = 100;

public string name = "bipin";

}

### Explanation

Here we have our own class named ClassToSerialize. This class has two public valiables name and age with some default values. We will write this class to a disk file (temp.dat) using SerializeTest class.

SerializeTest class has two methods SerializeNow() and DeSerializeNow() which perform the task of serialization and deserialization respectively.

The general steps for serializing are,

* Create an instance of File that will store serialized object.
* Create a stream from the file object.
* Create an instance of BinaryFormatter.
* Call serialize method of the instance passing it stream and object to serialize.

The steps for de-serializing the object are similar. The only change is that you need to call deserialize method of BinaryFormatter object.

## Example 2: Class / Object Serialization

Now, let us see an example where we have used 'real' class with public and shared members and properties to encapsulate them. The class also uses another supporting class. This is just to make clear that if your class contains further classes, all the classes in the chain will be serialized.

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

public class SerialTest {

public void SerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize c = new ClassToSerialize();

c.Name = "bipin";

c.Age = 26;

ClassToSerialize.CompanyName = "xyz";

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Create);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

b.Serialize(s, c);

s.Close();

}

public void DeSerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize c = new ClassToSerialize();

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Open);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

c = (ClassToSerialize) b.Deserialize(s);

Console.WriteLine("Name :" + c.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Age :" + c.Age);

Console.WriteLine("Company Name :" + ClassToSerialize.CompanyName);

Console.WriteLine("Company Name :" + c.GetSupportClassString());

s.Close();

}

public static void Main(string[] s) {

SerialTest st = new SerialTest();

st.SerializeNow();

st.DeSerializeNow();

}

}

public class ClassToSerialize {

private int age;

private string name;

static string companyname;

SupportClass supp = new SupportClass();

public ClassToSerialize() {

supp.SupportClassString = "In support class";

}

public int Age {

get {

return age;

}

set {

age = value;

}

}

public string Name {

get {

return name;

}

set {

name = value;

}

}

public static string CompanyName {

get {

return companyname;

}

set {

companyname = value;

}

}

public string GetSupportClassString() {

return supp.SupportClassString;

}

}

public class SupportClass {

public string SupportClassString;

}

## Example 3: Array Serialization

This example shows how to serialize array of objects.

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

public class SerialTest {

public void SerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize[] c = new ClassToSerialize[3];

c[0] = new ClassToSerialize();

c[0].Name = "bipin";

c[0].Age = 26;

c[1] = new ClassToSerialize();

c[1].Name = "abc";

c[1].Age = 75;

c[2] = new ClassToSerialize();

c[2].Name = "pqr";

c[2].Age = 50;

ClassToSerialize.CompanyName = "xyz";

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Create);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

b.Serialize(s, c);

s.Close();

}

public void DeSerializeNow() {

ClassToSerialize[] c;

File f = new File("temp.dat");

Stream s = f.Open(FileMode.Open);

BinaryFormatter b = new BinaryFormatter();

c = (ClassToSerialize[]) b.Deserialize(s);

Console.WriteLine("Name :" + c[2].Name);

Console.WriteLine("Age :" + c[2].Age);

Console.WriteLine("Company Name :" + ClassToSerialize.CompanyName);

s.Close();

}

public static void Main(string[] s) {

SerialTest st = new SerialTest();

st.SerializeNow();

st.DeSerializeNow();

}

}

public class ClassToSerialize {

private int age;

private string name;

static string companyname;

public int Age {

get {

return age;

}

set {

age = value;

}

}

public string Name {

get {

return name;

}

set {

name = value;

}

}

public static string CompanyName {

get {

return companyname;

}

set {

companyname = value;

}

}

}

## Example 4: Serialize Class / Object

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Linq;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace DemoApplication

{

[Serializable]

class Tutorial

{

public int ID;

public String Name;

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Tutorial obj = new Tutorial();

obj.ID = 1;

obj.Name = ".Net";

IFormatter formatter = new BinaryFormatter();

Stream stream = new FileStream(@"E:\ExampleNew.txt",FileMode.Create,FileAccess.Write);

formatter.Serialize(stream, obj);

stream.Close();

stream = new FileStream(@"E:\ExampleNew.txt",FileMode.Open,FileAccess.Read);

Tutorial objnew = (Tutorial)formatter.Deserialize(stream);

Console.WriteLine(objnew.ID);

Console.WriteLine(objnew.Name);

Console.ReadKey();

}

}

}

### Code Explanation:

1. The class which needs to be serialized needs to have the [Serializable] attribute. This is a keyword in C#. This keyword is then attached to the Tutorial class. If you don’t mention this attribute, you will get an error when you try to serialize the class.
2. Next is the definition of the class which will be serialized. Here we are defining a class called “Tutorial” and providing 2 properties, one is “ID” and the other is “Name.”
3. First, we create an object of the Tutorial class. We then assign the value of “1” to ID and “.net” to the name property.
4. We then use the formatter class which is used to serialize or convert the object to a binary format. The data in the file in serialization is done in binary format. Next, we create a file stream object. The file stream object is used to open the file Example.txt for writing purposes. The keywords FileMode.Create and FileMode.Write is used to specifically mention that the file should be opened for writing purposes.
5. Finally, we use the Serialize method to transfer the binary data to the file. We then close the stream since the write operation is complete.
6. Ensure that the data is present in the file, we use deserialization to deserialize the object from the file.
7. We create the object “stream” to open the file Example.txt in reading only mode.
8. We then use the formatter class which is used to deserialize the object, which is stored in the Example.txt file. The object returned is set to the object objnew.
9. Finally, we display the properties of the object “objnew” to the console using the “ID” and “name” properties.

## Serialize and Deserialize JSON

Let’s see how to use the System.Text.Json namespace to serialize to and deserialize from JavaScript Object Notation (JSON).

The code samples here:

* Use the library directly, not through a framework such as ASP.NET Core.
* Use the JsonSerializer class with custom types to serialize from and deserialize into.
* Use the WriteIndented option to format the JSON for human readability when that is helpful.

For production use, you would typically accept the default value of false for this setting, since adding unnecessary whitespace may incur a negative impact on performance and bandwidth usage.

## Namespaces

The System.Text.Json namespace contains all the entry points and the main types. The System.Text.Json.Serialization namespace contains attributes and APIs for advanced scenarios and customization specific to serialization and deserialization. The code examples shown in this article require using directives for one or both namespaces:

using System.Text.Json;

using System.Text.Json.Serialization;

**Important:** Attributes from the **System.Runtime.Serialization** namespace aren't supported in System.Text.Json.

## Serialize (Write) .NET objects as JSON

To write JSON to a string or to a file, call the JsonSerializer.Serialize method.

### JSON Serialization

The following example creates JSON as a string:

using System;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace SerializeBasic

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot"

};

string jsonString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(weatherForecast);

Console.WriteLine(jsonString);

}

}

}

// output:

//{"Date":"2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00","TemperatureCelsius":25,"Summary":"Hot"}

The JSON output is minified (whitespace, indentation, and new-line characters are removed) by default.

### Serialize JSON to a File

The following example uses synchronous code to create a JSON file:

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace SerializeToFile

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot"

};

string fileName = "WeatherForecast.json";

string jsonString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(weatherForecast);

File.WriteAllText(fileName, jsonString);

Console.WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(fileName));

}

}

}

// output:

//{"Date":"2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00","TemperatureCelsius":25,"Summary":"Hot"}

### Serialize JSON to a File Asynchronously

The following example uses asynchronous code to create a JSON file:

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Text.Json;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace SerializeToFileAsync

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static async Task Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot"

};

string fileName = "WeatherForecast.json";

using FileStream createStream = File.Create(fileName);

await JsonSerializer.SerializeAsync(createStream, weatherForecast);

await createStream.DisposeAsync();

Console.WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(fileName));

}

}

}

// output:

//{"Date":"2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00","TemperatureCelsius":25,"Summary":"Hot"}

### Serialize JSON using Generics

The preceding examples use type inference for the type being serialized. An overload of Serialize() takes a generic type parameter:

using System;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace SerializeWithGenericParameter

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot"

};

string jsonString =

JsonSerializer.Serialize<WeatherForecast>(weatherForecast);

Console.WriteLine(jsonString);

}

}

}

// output:

//{"Date":"2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00","TemperatureCelsius":25,"Summary":"Hot"}

### Serialization of Class with Collections and User Defined Types

Here's an example showing how a class that contains collection properties and a user-defined type is serialized:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace SerializeExtra

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

public string SummaryField;

public IList<DateTimeOffset> DatesAvailable { get; set; }

public Dictionary<string, HighLowTemps> TemperatureRanges { get; set; }

public string[] SummaryWords { get; set; }

}

public class HighLowTemps

{

public int High { get; set; }

public int Low { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot",

SummaryField = "Hot",

DatesAvailable = new List<DateTimeOffset>()

{ DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"), DateTime.Parse("2019-08-02") },

TemperatureRanges = new Dictionary<string, HighLowTemps>

{

["Cold"] = new HighLowTemps { High = 20, Low = -10 },

["Hot"] = new HighLowTemps { High = 60 , Low = 20 }

},

SummaryWords = new[] { "Cool", "Windy", "Humid" }

};

var options = new JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true };

string jsonString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(weatherForecast, options);

Console.WriteLine(jsonString);

}

}

}

// output:

//{

// "Date": "2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00",

// "TemperatureCelsius": 25,

// "Summary": "Hot",

// "DatesAvailable": [

// "2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00",

// "2019-08-02T00:00:00-07:00"

// ],

// "TemperatureRanges": {

// "Cold": {

// "High": 20,

// "Low": -10

// },

// "Hot": {

// "High": 60,

// "Low": 20

// }

// },

// "SummaryWords": [

// "Cool",

// "Windy",

// "Humid"

// ]

//}

## Deserialize (Read) JSON as .NET Objects

A common way to deserialize JSON is to first create a class with properties and fields that represent one or more of the JSON properties. Then, to deserialize from a string or a file, call the JsonSerializer.Deserialize method. For the generic overloads, you pass the type of the class you created as the generic type parameter. For the non-generic overloads, you pass the type of the class you created as a method parameter. You can deserialize either synchronously or asynchronously. Any JSON properties that aren't represented in your class are ignored.

### Deserialize a JSON String

The following example shows how to deserialize a JSON string:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace DeserializeExtra

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

public string SummaryField;

public IList<DateTimeOffset> DatesAvailable { get; set; }

public Dictionary<string, HighLowTemps> TemperatureRanges { get; set; }

public string[] SummaryWords { get; set; }

}

public class HighLowTemps

{

public int High { get; set; }

public int Low { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

string jsonString =

@"{

""Date"": ""2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00"",

""TemperatureCelsius"": 25,

""Summary"": ""Hot"",

""DatesAvailable"": [

""2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00"",

""2019-08-02T00:00:00-07:00""

],

""TemperatureRanges"": {

""Cold"": {

""High"": 20,

""Low"": -10

},

""Hot"": {

""High"": 60,

""Low"": 20

}

},

""SummaryWords"": [

""Cool"",

""Windy"",

""Humid""

]

}

";

WeatherForecast weatherForecast =

JsonSerializer.Deserialize<WeatherForecast>(jsonString);

Console.WriteLine($"Date: {weatherForecast.Date}");

Console.WriteLine($"TemperatureCelsius: {weatherForecast.TemperatureCelsius}");

Console.WriteLine($"Summary: {weatherForecast.Summary}");

}

}

}

// output:

//Date: 8/1/2019 12:00:00 AM -07:00

//TemperatureCelsius: 25

//Summary: Hot

### Deserialize JSON from a File

To deserialize from a file by using synchronous code, read the file into a string, as shown in the following example:

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace DeserializeFromFile

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

string fileName = "WeatherForecast.json";

string jsonString = File.ReadAllText(fileName);

WeatherForecast weatherForecast =

await JsonSerializer.Deserialize<WeatherForecast>(jsonString);

Console.WriteLine($"Date: {weatherForecast.Date}");

Console.WriteLine($"TemperatureCelsius: {weatherForecast.TemperatureCelsius}");

Console.WriteLine($"Summary: {weatherForecast.Summary}");

}

}

}

// output:

//Date: 8/1/2019 12:00:00 AM -07:00

//TemperatureCelsius: 25

//Summary: Hot

### Deserialize JSON from a File Asynchronously

To deserialize from a file by using asynchronous code, call the DeserializeAsync method:

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Text.Json;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace DeserializeFromFileAsync

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static async Task Main()

{

string fileName = "WeatherForecast.json";

using FileStream openStream = File.OpenRead(fileName);

WeatherForecast weatherForecast =

await JsonSerializer.DeserializeAsync<WeatherForecast>(openStream);

Console.WriteLine($"Date: {weatherForecast.Date}");

Console.WriteLine($"TemperatureCelsius: {weatherForecast.TemperatureCelsius}");

Console.WriteLine($"Summary: {weatherForecast.Summary}");

}

}

}

// output:

//Date: 8/1/2019 12:00:00 AM -07:00

//TemperatureCelsius: 25

//Summary: Hot

**Tip**

If you have JSON that you want to deserialize, and you don't have the class to deserialize it into, you have options other than manually creating the class that you need:

* Deserialize into a **JSON DOM (document object model)** and extract what you need from the DOM.
* The DOM lets you navigate to a subsection of a JSON payload and deserialize a single value, a custom type, or an array. For information about the **JsonNode** DOM in .NET 6, see **Deserialize subsections of a JSON payload**. For information about the **JsonDocument** DOM, see **How to search a JsonDocument and JsonElement for sub-elements**.
* Use the **Utf8JsonReader** directly.
* Use Visual Studio 2019 to automatically generate the class you need:
  + Copy the JSON that you need to deserialize.
  + Create a class file and delete the template code.
  + Choose Edit > Paste Special > Paste JSON as Classes. The result is a class that you can use for your deserialization target.

## Serialize to Formatted JSON

To pretty-print the JSON output, set JsonSerializerOptions.WriteIndented to true:

using System;

using System.Text.Json;

namespace SerializeWriteIndented

{

public class WeatherForecast

{

public DateTimeOffset Date { get; set; }

public int TemperatureCelsius { get; set; }

public string Summary { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var weatherForecast = new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Parse("2019-08-01"),

TemperatureCelsius = 25,

Summary = "Hot"

};

var options = new JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true };

string jsonString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(weatherForecast, options);

Console.WriteLine(jsonString);

}

}

}

// output:

//{

// "Date": "2019-08-01T00:00:00-07:00",

// "TemperatureCelsius": 25,

// "Summary": "Hot"

//}

If you use JsonSerializerOptions repeatedly with the same options, don't create a new JsonSerializerOptions instance each time you use it. Reuse the same instance for every call

## Include fields

Use the JsonSerializerOptions.IncludeFields global setting or the [JsonInclude] attribute to include fields when serializing or deserializing, as shown in the following example:

using System;

using System.Text.Json;

using System.Text.Json.Serialization;

namespace Fields

{

public class Forecast

{

public DateTime Date;

public int TemperatureC;

public string Summary;

}

public class Forecast2

{

[JsonInclude]

public DateTime Date;

[JsonInclude]

public int TemperatureC;

[JsonInclude]

public string Summary;

}

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

var json =

@"{""Date"":""2020-09-06T11:31:01.923395"",""TemperatureC"":-1,""Summary"":""Cold""} ";

Console.WriteLine($"Input JSON: {json}");

var options = new JsonSerializerOptions

{

IncludeFields = true,

};

var forecast = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<Forecast>(json, options);

Console.WriteLine($"forecast.Date: {forecast.Date}");

Console.WriteLine($"forecast.TemperatureC: {forecast.TemperatureC}");

Console.WriteLine($"forecast.Summary: {forecast.Summary}");

var roundTrippedJson =

JsonSerializer.Serialize<Forecast>(forecast, options);

Console.WriteLine($"Output JSON: {roundTrippedJson}");

var forecast2 = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<Forecast2>(json);

Console.WriteLine($"forecast2.Date: {forecast2.Date}");

Console.WriteLine($"forecast2.TemperatureC: {forecast2.TemperatureC}");

Console.WriteLine($"forecast2.Summary: {forecast2.Summary}");

roundTrippedJson = JsonSerializer.Serialize<Forecast2>(forecast2);

Console.WriteLine($"Output JSON: {roundTrippedJson}");

}

}

}

// Produces output like the following example:

//

//Input JSON: { "Date":"2020-09-06T11:31:01.923395","TemperatureC":-1,"Summary":"Cold"}

//forecast.Date: 9/6/2020 11:31:01 AM

//forecast.TemperatureC: -1

//forecast.Summary: Cold

//Output JSON: { "Date":"2020-09-06T11:31:01.923395","TemperatureC":-1,"Summary":"Cold"}

//forecast2.Date: 9/6/2020 11:31:01 AM

//forecast2.TemperatureC: -1

//forecast2.Summary: Cold

//Output JSON: { "Date":"2020-09-06T11:31:01.923395","TemperatureC":-1,"Summary":"Cold"}

To ignore read-only fields, use the JsonSerializerOptions.IgnoreReadOnlyFields global setting.

## HttpClient and HttpContent extension methods

Serializing and deserializing JSON payloads from the network are common operations. Extension methods on HttpClient and HttpContent let you do these operations in a single line of code. These extension methods use web defaults for JsonSerializerOptions.

The following example illustrates use of HttpClientJsonExtensions.GetFromJsonAsync and HttpClientJsonExtensions.PostAsJsonAsync:

using System;

using System.Net.Http;

using System.Net.Http.Json;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace HttpClientExtensionMethods

{

public class User

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

public string Username { get; set; }

public string Email { get; set; }

}

public class Program

{

public static async Task Main()

{

using HttpClient client = new()

{

BaseAddress = new Uri("https://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com")

};

// Get the user information.

User user = await client.GetFromJsonAsync<User>("users/1");

Console.WriteLine($"Id: {user.Id}");

Console.WriteLine($"Name: {user.Name}");

Console.WriteLine($"Username: {user.Username}");

Console.WriteLine($"Email: {user.Email}");

// Post a new user.

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.PostAsJsonAsync("users", user);

Console.WriteLine(

$"{(response.IsSuccessStatusCode ? "Success" : "Error")} - {response.StatusCode}");

}

}

}

// Produces output like the following example but with different names:

//

//Id: 1

//Name: Tyler King

//Username: Tyler

//Email: Tyler @contoso.com

//Success - Created

There are also extension methods for System.Text.Json on HttpContent.

## Serialize and Deserialize XML

### Serialize (Read) Data from an XML File

This example reads object data that was previously written to an XML file using the XmlSerializer class.

**Example:**

public class Book

{

public String title;

}

public void ReadXML()

{

// First write something so that there is something to read ...

var b = new Book { title = "Serialization Overview" };

var writer = new System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer(typeof(Book));

var wfile =

new System.IO.StreamWriter(@"c:\temp\SerializationOverview.xml");

writer.Serialize(wfile, b);

wfile.Close();

// Now we can read the serialized book ...

System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer reader =

new System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer(typeof(Book));

System.IO.StreamReader file = new System.IO.StreamReader(

@"c:\temp\SerializationOverview.xml");

Book overview = (Book)reader.Deserialize(file);

file.Close();

Console.WriteLine(overview.title);

}

#### Compiling the Code

Replace the file name "c:\temp\SerializationOverview.xml" with the name of the file containing the serialized data. For more information about serializing data, see [How to write object data to an XML file (C#)](#_Deserializing_a_C#) below.

The class must have a public constructor without parameters.

Only public properties and fields are deserialized.

#### Robust Programming

The following conditions may cause an exception:

* The class being serialized does not have a public, parameterless constructor.
* The data in the file does not represent data from the class to be deserialized.
* The file does not exist (IOException).

### Deserialize (Write) Data to an XML File

This example writes the object from a class to an XML file using the XmlSerializer class.

**Example:**

public class XMLWrite

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

WriteXML();

}

public class Book

{

public String title;

}

public static void WriteXML()

{

Book overview = new Book();

overview.title = "Serialization Overview";

System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer writer =

new System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer(typeof(Book));

var path = Environment.GetFolderPath(Environment.SpecialFolder.MyDocuments) + "//SerializationOverview.xml";

System.IO.FileStream file = System.IO.File.Create(path);

writer.Serialize(file, overview);

file.Close();

}

}

#### Compiling the Code

The class being serialized must have a public constructor without parameters.

#### Robust Programming

The following conditions may cause an exception:

* The class being serialized does not have a public, parameterless constructor.
* The file exists and is read-only (IOException).
* The path is too long (PathTooLongException).
* The disk is full (IOException).

#### A Better Example

#### Serializing XML to C# Object

Let's understand how to convert an XML file into a C# object. Take note of the below small XML file to demonstrate.

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>

<Company xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <Employee name="x" age="30" />

  <Employee name="y" age="32" />

</Company>

To convert this XML into an object, first you need to create a similar class structure in C#.

[XmlRoot(ElementName = "Company")]

**public** **class** Company

{

**public** Company()

    {

        Employees = **new** List<Employee>();

    }

    [XmlElement(ElementName = "Employee")]

**public** List<Employee> Employees { **get**; **set**; }

**public** Employee **this**[**string** name]

    {

**get** { **return** Employees.FirstOrDefault(s => **string**.Equals(s.Name, name, StringComparison.OrdinalIgnoreCase)); }

    }

}

**public** **class** Employee

{

    [XmlAttribute("name")]

**public** **string** Name { **get**; **set**; }

    [XmlAttribute("age")]

**public** **string** Age { **get**; **set**; }

}

Your XML and C# objects are ready. Let's see the final step of converting XML into a C# object. To do that, you need to use System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer to serialize it.

**public** T DeserializeToObject<T>(**string** filepath) where T : **class**

{

    System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer ser = **new** System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer(**typeof**(T));

**using** (StreamReader sr = **new** StreamReader(filepath))

    {

**return** (T)ser.Deserialize(sr);

    }

}

Use the XML file path and use this function. You should see that the XML is converted into a company object with two employee objects.

#### Deserializing a C# Object into XML

Create a C# object, such as a company with a few employees, and then convert it into an XML file.

var company = **new** Company();

company.Employees = **new** List<Employee>() { **new** Employee() { Name = "o", Age = "10"}};

SerializeToXml(company, xmlFilePath);

**public** **static** **void** SerializeToXml<T>(T anyobject, **string** xmlFilePath)

{

    XmlSerializer xmlSerializer = **new** XmlSerializer(anyobject.GetType());

**using** (StreamWriter writer = **new** StreamWriter(xmlFilePath))

    {

        xmlSerializer.Serialize(writer, anyobject);

    }

}

The output should look like the below text after converting it into XML.

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<Company xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">

  <Employee age="10" name="o"/>

</Company>

#### Another XML Example

using System;

public class clsPerson

{

public string FirstName;

public string MI;

public string LastName;

}

class class1

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

clsPerson p=new clsPerson();

p.FirstName = "Jeff";

p.MI = "A";

p.LastName = "Price";

System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer x = new System.Xml.Serialization.XmlSerializer(p.GetType());

x.Serialize(Console.Out, p);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

##### Verification

To verify that your project works, press CTRL+F5 to run the project. A clsPerson object is created and populated with the values that you entered. This state is serialized to XML. The console window shows the following code:

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="IBM437"?>

<clsPerson xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

<FirstName>Jeff</FirstName>

<MI>A</MI>

<LastName>Price</LastName>

</clsPerson>

#### Serializing a Class that Contains a Field Returning a Complex Object

If a property or field returns a complex object (such as an array or a class instance), the XmlSerializer converts it to an element nested within the main XML document. For example, the first class in the following code example returns an instance of the second class.

public class PurchaseOrder

{

public Address MyAddress;

}

public class Address

{

public string FirstName;

}

The serialized XML output might resemble the following.

<PurchaseOrder>

<MyAddress>

<FirstName>George</FirstName>

</MyAddress>

</PurchaseOrder>

#### Serializing an Array of Objects

You can also serialize a field that returns an array of objects, as shown in the following code example.

public class PurchaseOrder

{

public Item [] ItemsOrders;

}

public class Item

{

public string ItemID;

public decimal ItemPrice;

}

The serialized class instance might resemble the following, if two items are ordered.

<PurchaseOrder xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

<ItemsOrders>

<Item>

<ItemID>aaa111</ItemID>

<ItemPrice>34.22</ItemPrice>

</Item>

<Item>

<ItemID>bbb222</ItemID>

<ItemPrice>2.89</ItemPrice>

</Item>

</ItemsOrders>

</PurchaseOrder>

#### Serializing a Class that Implements the ICollection Interface

You can create your own collection classes by implementing the ICollection interface, and use the XmlSerializer to serialize instances of these classes. Note that when a class implements the ICollection interface, only the collection contained by the class is serialized. Any public properties or fields added to the class will not be serialized. The class must include an Add method and an Item property (C# indexer) to be serialized.

using System;

using System.Collections;

using System.IO;

using System.Xml.Serialization;

public class Test {

static void Main(){

Test t = new Test();

t.SerializeCollection("coll.xml");

}

private void SerializeCollection(string filename){

Employees Emps = new Employees();

// Note that only the collection is serialized -- not the

// CollectionName or any other public property of the class.

Emps.CollectionName = "Employees";

Employee John100 = new Employee("John", "100xxx");

Emps.Add(John100);

XmlSerializer x = new XmlSerializer(typeof(Employees));

TextWriter writer = new StreamWriter(filename);

x.Serialize(writer, Emps);

}

}

public class Employees:ICollection {

public string CollectionName;

private ArrayList empArray = new ArrayList();

public Employee this[int index]{

get{return (Employee) empArray[index];}

}

public void CopyTo(Array a, int index){

empArray.CopyTo(a, index);

}

public int Count{

get{return empArray.Count;}

}

public object SyncRoot{

get{return this;}

}

public bool IsSynchronized{

get{return false;}

}

public IEnumerator GetEnumerator(){

return empArray.GetEnumerator();

}

public void Add(Employee newEmployee){

empArray.Add(newEmployee);

}

}

public class Employee {

public string EmpName;

public string EmpID;

public Employee(){}

public Employee(string empName, string empID){

EmpName = empName;

EmpID = empID;

}

}

#### Purchase Order Example – Exercise

You can cut and paste the following example code into a text file renamed with a .cs file name extension. Use the C# to compile the file. Then run it using the name of the executable.

This example uses a simple scenario to demonstrate how an instance of an object is created and serialized into a file stream using the Serialize method. The XML stream is saved to a file, and the same file is then read back and reconstructed into a copy of the original object using the Deserialize method.

In this example, a class named PurchaseOrder is serialized and then deserialized. A second class named Address is also included because the public field named ShipTo must be set to an Address. Similarly, an OrderedItem class is included because an array of OrderedItem objects must be set to the OrderedItems field. Finally, a class named Test contains the code that serializes and deserializes the classes.

The CreatePO method creates the PurchaseOrder, Address, and OrderedItem class objects, and sets the public field values. The method also constructs an instance of the XmlSerializer class that is used to serialize and deserialize the PurchaseOrder. Note that the code passes the type of the class that will be serialized to the constructor. The code also creates a FileStream that is used to write the XML stream to an XML document.

The ReadPo method is a little simpler. It just creates objects to deserialize and reads out their values. As with the CreatePo method, you must first construct an XmlSerializer, passing the type of the class to be deserialized to the constructor. Also, a FileStream is required to read the XML document. To deserialize the objects, call the Deserialize method with the FileStream as an argument. The deserialized object must be cast to an object variable of type PurchaseOrder. The code then reads the values of the deserialized PurchaseOrder. Note that you can also read the PO.xml file that is created to see the actual XML output.

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Xml;

using System.Xml.Serialization;

// The XmlRoot attribute allows you to set an alternate name

// (PurchaseOrder) for the XML element and its namespace. By

// default, the XmlSerializer uses the class name. The attribute

// also allows you to set the XML namespace for the element. Lastly,

// the attribute sets the IsNullable property, which specifies whether

// the xsi:null attribute appears if the class instance is set to

// a null reference.

[XmlRoot("PurchaseOrder", Namespace="http://www.cpandl.com",

IsNullable = false)]

public class PurchaseOrder

{

public Address ShipTo;

public string OrderDate;

// The XmlArray attribute changes the XML element name

// from the default of "OrderedItems" to "Items".

[XmlArray("Items")]

public OrderedItem[] OrderedItems;

public decimal SubTotal;

public decimal ShipCost;

public decimal TotalCost;

}

public class Address

{

// The XmlAttribute attribute instructs the XmlSerializer to serialize the

// Name field as an XML attribute instead of an XML element (XML element is

// the default behavior).

[XmlAttribute]

public string Name;

public string Line1;

// Setting the IsNullable property to false instructs the

// XmlSerializer that the XML attribute will not appear if

// the City field is set to a null reference.

[XmlElement(IsNullable = false)]

public string City;

public string State;

public string Zip;

}

public class OrderedItem

{

public string ItemName;

public string Description;

public decimal UnitPrice;

public int Quantity;

public decimal LineTotal;

// Calculate is a custom method that calculates the price per item

// and stores the value in a field.

public void Calculate()

{

LineTotal = UnitPrice \* Quantity;

}

}

public class Test

{

public static void Main()

{

// Read and write purchase orders.

Test t = new Test();

t.CreatePO("po.xml");

t.ReadPO("po.xml");

}

private void CreatePO(string filename)

{

// Creates an instance of the XmlSerializer class;

// specifies the type of object to serialize.

XmlSerializer serializer =

new XmlSerializer(typeof(PurchaseOrder));

TextWriter writer = new StreamWriter(filename);

PurchaseOrder po=new PurchaseOrder();

// Creates an address to ship and bill to.

Address billAddress = new Address();

billAddress.Name = "Teresa Atkinson";

billAddress.Line1 = "1 Main St.";

billAddress.City = "AnyTown";

billAddress.State = "WA";

billAddress.Zip = "00000";

// Sets ShipTo and BillTo to the same addressee.

po.ShipTo = billAddress;

po.OrderDate = System.DateTime.Now.ToLongDateString();

// Creates an OrderedItem.

OrderedItem i1 = new OrderedItem();

i1.ItemName = "Widget S";

i1.Description = "Small widget";

i1.UnitPrice = (decimal) 5.23;

i1.Quantity = 3;

i1.Calculate();

// Inserts the item into the array.

OrderedItem [] items = {i1};

po.OrderedItems = items;

// Calculate the total cost.

decimal subTotal = new decimal();

foreach(OrderedItem oi in items)

{

subTotal += oi.LineTotal;

}

po.SubTotal = subTotal;

po.ShipCost = (decimal) 12.51;

po.TotalCost = po.SubTotal + po.ShipCost;

// Serializes the purchase order, and closes the TextWriter.

serializer.Serialize(writer, po);

writer.Close();

}

protected void ReadPO(string filename)

{

// Creates an instance of the XmlSerializer class;

// specifies the type of object to be deserialized.

XmlSerializer serializer = new XmlSerializer(typeof(PurchaseOrder));

// If the XML document has been altered with unknown

// nodes or attributes, handles them with the

// UnknownNode and UnknownAttribute events.

serializer.UnknownNode+= new

XmlNodeEventHandler(serializer\_UnknownNode);

serializer.UnknownAttribute+= new

XmlAttributeEventHandler(serializer\_UnknownAttribute);

// A FileStream is needed to read the XML document.

FileStream fs = new FileStream(filename, FileMode.Open);

// Declares an object variable of the type to be deserialized.

PurchaseOrder po;

// Uses the Deserialize method to restore the object's state

// with data from the XML document. \*/

po = (PurchaseOrder) serializer.Deserialize(fs);

// Reads the order date.

Console.WriteLine ("OrderDate: " + po.OrderDate);

// Reads the shipping address.

Address shipTo = po.ShipTo;

ReadAddress(shipTo, "Ship To:");

// Reads the list of ordered items.

OrderedItem [] items = po.OrderedItems;

Console.WriteLine("Items to be shipped:");

foreach(OrderedItem oi in items)

{

Console.WriteLine("\t"+

oi.ItemName + "\t" +

oi.Description + "\t" +

oi.UnitPrice + "\t" +

oi.Quantity + "\t" +

oi.LineTotal);

}

// Reads the subtotal, shipping cost, and total cost.

Console.WriteLine(

"\n\t\t\t\t\t Subtotal\t" + po.SubTotal +

"\n\t\t\t\t\t Shipping\t" + po.ShipCost +

"\n\t\t\t\t\t Total\t\t" + po.TotalCost

);

}

protected void ReadAddress(Address a, string label)

{

// Reads the fields of the Address.

Console.WriteLine(label);

Console.Write("\t"+

a.Name +"\n\t" +

a.Line1 +"\n\t" +

a.City +"\t" +

a.State +"\n\t" +

a.Zip +"\n");

}

protected void serializer\_UnknownNode

(object sender, XmlNodeEventArgs e)

{

Console.WriteLine("Unknown Node:" + e.Name + "\t" + e.Text);

}

protected void serializer\_UnknownAttribute

(object sender, XmlAttributeEventArgs e)

{

System.Xml.XmlAttribute attr = e.Attr;

Console.WriteLine("Unknown attribute " +

attr.Name + "='" + attr.Value + "'");

}

}

The XML output might resemble the following:

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>

<PurchaseOrder xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns="http://www.cpandl.com">

<ShipTo Name="Teresa Atkinson">

<Line1>1 Main St.</Line1>

<City>AnyTown</City>

<State>WA</State>

<Zip>00000</Zip>

</ShipTo>

<OrderDate>Wednesday, June 27, 2001</OrderDate>

<Items>

<OrderedItem>

<ItemName>Widget S</ItemName>

<Description>Small widget</Description>

<UnitPrice>5.23</UnitPrice>

<Quantity>3</Quantity>

<LineTotal>15.69</LineTotal>

</OrderedItem>

</Items>

<SubTotal>15.69</SubTotal>

<ShipCost>12.51</ShipCost>

<TotalCost>28.2</TotalCost>

</PurchaseOrder>

# C# - OOP

## OOP Principles

* Abstraction
* Encapsulation
* Polymorphism
* Inheritance
* Overriding
* Overloading
* Abstract
* Interface

## C# Classes and Objects

* Class
* Object (instance)

## C# Class Members

* Fields
* Properties
* Methods
* Indexers

### Indexers

C# indexers are usually known as smart arrays. A C# indexer is a class property that allows you to access a member variable of a class or struct using the features of an array. In C#, indexers are created using this keyword. Indexers in C# are applicable on both classes and structs.

Defining an indexer allows you to create a class like that can allows its items to be accessed an array.  Instances of that class can be accessed using the [] array access operator.

#### Creating an Indexer

<modifier> <**return** type> **this** [argument list]

{

**get**

{

// your get block code

}

**set**

{

// your set block code

}

}

In the above code:

**<modifier>** can be private, public, protected or internal.

**<return type>** can be any valid C# types.

**this** his is a special keyword in C# to indicate the object of the current class.

**[argument list]** The formal-argument-list specifies the parameters of the indexer.

**Important points to remember on indexers:**

* Indexers are always created with **this** keyword.
* Parameterized property are called indexer.
* Indexers are implemented through get and set accessors for the [ ] operator.
* ref and out parameter modifiers are not permitted in indexer.
* The formal parameter list of an indexer corresponds to that of a method and at least one parameter should be specified.
* Indexer is an instance member so can't be static but property can be static.
* Indexers are used on group of elements.
* Indexer is identified by its signature where as a property is identified it's name.
* Indexers are accessed using indexes where as properties are accessed by names.
* Indexer can be overloaded.

Indexer are defined in pretty much same way as properties, with get and set functions. The main difference is that the name of the indexer is the keyword this.

Indexers are commonly used for classes, which represents some data structure, an array, list, map and so on.

Following program demonstrates how to use an indexer.

**using** System;

**namespace** Indexer\_example1

{

**class** Program

    {

**class** IndexerClass

        {

**private** **string**[] names = **new** **string**[10];

**public** **string** **this**[**int** i]

            {

**get**

                {

**return** names[i];

                }

**set**

                {

                    names[i] = value;

                }

            }

        }

**static** **void** Main(**string**[] args)

        {

            IndexerClass Team = **new** IndexerClass();

            Team[0] = "Rocky";

            Team[1] = "Teena";

            Team[2] = "Ana";

            Team[3] = "Victoria";

            Team[4] = "Yani";

            Team[5] = "Mary";

            Team[6] = "Gomes";

            Team[7] = "Arnold";

            Team[8] = "Mike";

            Team[9] = "Peter";

**for** (**int** i = 0; i < 10; i++)

            {

                Console.WriteLine(Team[i]);

            }

            Console.ReadKey();

        }

    }

}

### Difference between Indexers and Properties

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Indexers | Properties |
| Indexers are created with this keyword. | Properties don't require this keyword. |
| Indexers are identified by signature. | Properties are identified by their names. |
| Indexers are accessed using indexes. | Properties are accessed by their names. |
| Indexer are instance member, so can't be static. | Properties can be static as well as instance members. |
| A get accessor of an indexer has the same formal parameter list as the indexer. | A get accessor of a property has no parameters. |
| A set accessor of an indexer has the same formal parameter list as the indexer, in addition to the value parameter. | A set accessor of a property contains the implicit value parameter. |

## Static Constructors

A non-static class can contain a parameterless static constructor. It can be defined with the static keyword and without access modifiers like public, private, and protected.

The following example demonstrates the difference between static constructor and instance constructor.

using System;

public class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

StopWatch.DisplayInfo(); // static constructor called here

StopWatch.DisplayInfo(); // none of the constructors called here

//StopWatch sw1 = new StopWatch(); // First static constructor and then instance constructor called

//StopWatch sw2 = new StopWatch();// only instance constructor called

//StopWatch.DisplayInfo();

}

}

public class StopWatch

{

// static constructor

static StopWatch()

{

Console.WriteLine("Static constructor called");

}

// instance constructor

public StopWatch()

{

Console.WriteLine("Instance constructor called");

}

// static method

public static void DisplayInfo()

{

Console.WriteLine("DisplayInfo called");

}

// instance method

public void Start() { }

// instance method

public void Stop() { }

}

# C# - Access Modifiers

**Keywords**:

* private
* public
* protected
* internal

## protected

A protected member is accessible within its class and by derived class instances.

A protected member of a base class is accessible in a derived class only if the access occurs through the derived class type. For example, consider the following code segment.

**Example 1**:

class A

{

protected int x = 123;

}

class B : A

{

static void Main()

{

var a = new A();

var b = new B();

// Error CS1540, because x can only be accessed by

// classes derived from A.

// a.x = 10;

// OK, because this class derives from A.

b.x = 10;

}

}

The statement a.x = 10 generates an error because it is made within the static method Main, and not an instance of class B.

Struct members cannot be protected because the struct cannot be inherited.

**Example 2**:

In this example, the class DerivedPoint is derived from Point. Therefore, you can access the protected members of the base class directly from the derived class.

class Point

{

protected int x;

protected int y;

}

class DerivedPoint: Point

{

static void Main()

{

var dpoint = new DerivedPoint();

// Direct access to protected members.

dpoint.x = 10;

dpoint.y = 15;

Console.WriteLine($"x = {dpoint.x}, y = {dpoint.y}");

}

}

// Output: x = 10, y = 15

If you change the access levels of x and y to private, the compiler will issue the error messages:

'Point.y' is inaccessible due to its protection level.

'Point.x' is inaccessible due to its protection level.

## internal

The internal keyword is an access modifier for types and type members.

This section covers internal access. The internal keyword is also part of the protected internal access modifier.

Internal types or members are accessible only within files in the same assembly, as in this example:

public class BaseClass

{

// Only accessible within the same assembly.

internal static int x = 0;

}

A common use of internal access is in component-based development because it enables a group of components to cooperate in a private manner without being exposed to the rest of the application code. For example, a framework for building graphical user interfaces could provide Control and Form classes that cooperate by using members with internal access. Since these members are internal, they are not exposed to code that is using the framework.

It is an error to reference a type or a member with internal access outside the assembly within which it was defined.

**Example 1**:

This example contains two files, Assembly1.cs and Assembly1\_a.cs. The first file contains an internal base class, BaseClass. In the second file, an attempt to instantiate BaseClass will produce an error.

// Assembly1.cs

// Compile with: /target:library

internal class BaseClass

{

public static int intM = 0;

}

C#Copy

// Assembly1\_a.cs

// Compile with: /reference:Assembly1.dll

class TestAccess

{

static void Main()

{

var myBase = new BaseClass(); // CS0122

}

}

**Example 2**:

In this example, use the same files you used in example 1, and change the accessibility level of BaseClass to public. Also change the accessibility level of the member intM to internal. In this case, you can instantiate the class, but you cannot access the internal member.

// Assembly2.cs

// Compile with: /target:library

public class BaseClass

{

internal static int intM = 0;

}

C#Copy

// Assembly2\_a.cs

// Compile with: /reference:Assembly2.dll

public class TestAccess

{

static void Main()

{

var myBase = new BaseClass(); // Ok.

BaseClass.intM = 444; // CS0117

}

}

# C# - Modifiers

## Virtual

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos>

**Project**: GeneralDemos

**Virtual methods are a fundamental concept of object-oriented programming.** They allow their behavior to be overridden in a derived class by a method with the same signature. The overriding is optional, and the derived class can still use the base class’s behavior.

Methods are, by default, non-virtual and cannot be overridden. We declare virtual methods by adding the virtual keyword in the method signature before the method’s return type. They may or may not have a return type:

We cannot use the virtual keyword when the method:

* is static
* is abstract
* is a constructor or an accessor (get and set)
* already overrides the virtual method from the base class
* is sealed (or the class is sealed)
* is private

### Late Binding

C# implements two types of bindings: early binding and late binding.

Early binding, also known as static binding or compile-time binding, resolves implementing the method during compile time and is used for non-virtual methods.

On the other hand,**late binding is known as dynamic binding or run-time polymorphism.** This is a programming concept where we determine the actual implementation of a method at run-time. In other words, we resolve the specific implementation of the method during program execution based on the actual type of the object. We achieve late binding using virtual methods.

### Dynamic Dispatch

**When a class in .NET contains a virtual method, the compiler automatically creates a virtual method table (v-table) for that class.**The v-table contains a list of pointers to the virtual methods in the class. We use these pointers whenever we invoke a virtual method from the instance.

The pointers identify the applicable method implementation because we may not know whether to call the base or derived class’s method during compile time. We call this process a **dynamic dispatch,** and its responsibility is calling the correct implementation of the virtual method at run-time based on the actual type rather than the declared type of the object.

### Virtual Methods Implementation

Let’s define a base class Shape with two virtual methods and one non-virtual method:

public class Shape

**{**

public virtual double CalculateArea**()**

**{**

return 0;

**}**

public virtual string GetShapeType**()**

**{**

return "This is a generic shape";

**}**

public string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a generic shape";

**}**

**}**

Next, we will define two derived classes to inherit from the base class to demonstrate how they interact with the base class.

Let’s define the Rectangle class:

public class Rectangle : Shape

**{**

public double Width **{** get; set; **}**

public double Height **{** get; set; **}**

public override double CalculateArea**()**

**{**

return Width \* Height;

**}**

public override string GetShapeType**()**

**{**

return "This is a rectangle";

**}**

public new string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a rectangle";

**}**

**}**

And the Circle class:

public class Circle : Shape

**{**

public double Radius **{** get; set; **}**

public override double CalculateArea**()**

**{**

return Math.PI \* Radius \* Radius;

**}**

public new string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a circle";

**}**

**}**

The CalculateArea() method in the derived classes overrides the virtual method of the base class and provides its implementation. Please visit [**Method Overriding in C#**](https://code-maze.com/csharp-method-overriding/) to learn more about method overriding.

However, we cannot override a non-virtual method. Let’s see what happens if we try to override this non-virtual method:

public override string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a circle";

**}**

If we try to do so, we get an error message showing we cannot override the Draw() method because it is not marked virtual:

'Circle.Draw()': cannot override inherited member 'Circle.Draw()' because it is not marked virtual, abstract, or override<br>

If we try to leave the same method as is without the override keyword:

public string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a circle";

**}**

The compiler will show us the warning that this implementation hides the inherited method and suggest adding a new keyword:

'Circle.Draw()' hides inherited member 'Shape.Draw()'. Use the new keyword if hiding was intended.<br>

Let’s follow the suggestion and use the new keyword. This keyword will instruct the compiler that we intentionally hide the method from the base class:

public new string Draw**()**

**{**

return "Drawing a circle";

**}**

After successfully creating the base and derived classes, let’s start using the classes.

Firstly, let’s instantiate all three classes and call their CalculateArea() methods to demonstrate method overriding:

var shape = new Shape**()**;

var circle = new Circle**()** **{** Radius = 2 **}**;

var rectangle = new Rectangle**()** **{** Height = 2, Width = 3 **}**;

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Shape area: {shape.CalculateArea()}"**)**; // Shape area: 0

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Circle area: {circle.CalculateArea()}"**)**; // Circle area: 12,566370614359172

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Rectangle area: {rectangle.CalculateArea()}"**)**; // Rectangle area: 6

The CalculateArea() method in the derived classes will override the method with the same signature in the base class. This results in different outputs for each call, as described in the code comments.

**Note**: that overriding a virtual method is not mandatory. If the derived class doesn’t override the virtual method, the method implementation from the base class will be executed.

Let’s try to call the GetShapeType() method, which we override in the Rectangle class, but not in the Circle class:

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Shape type: {shape.GetShapeType()}"**)**; // Shape type: This is a generic shape

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Circle type: {circle.GetShapeType()}"**)**; // Circle type: This is a generic shape

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Rectangle type: {rectangle.GetShapeType()}"**)**; // Rectangle type: This is a rectangle

Next, let’s try to call the Draw() method on the base and derived classes, but this time we will declare Circle class as Shape:

Shape circleAsShape = new Circle**()** **{** Radius = 2 **}**;

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Shape draw: {shape.Draw()}"**)**; // Shape draw: Drawing a generic shape

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Circle draw: {circleAsShape.Draw()}"**)**; // Circle draw: Drawing a generic shape

Console.WriteLine**(**$"Rectangle draw: {rectangle.Draw()}"**)**; // Rectangle draw: Drawing a rectangle

The compiler resolves non-virtual methods based on the declared type, not the actual type. The output shows that the Circle class executes the method from the base class, while the Rectangle class executes the derived class implementation.

### Virtual – More Examples

The virtual keyword is used to modify a method, property, indexer, or event declaration and allow for it to be overridden in a derived class. For example, this method can be overridden by any class that inherits it:

public virtual double Area()

{

return x \* y;

}

The implementation of a virtual member can be changed by an overriding member in a derived class.

When a virtual method is invoked, the run-time type of the object is checked for an overriding member. The overriding member in the most derived class is called, which might be the original member, if no derived class has overridden the member.

By default, methods are non-virtual. You cannot override a non-virtual method.

You cannot use the virtual modifier with the static, abstract, private, or override modifiers. The following example shows a virtual property:

class MyBaseClass

{

// virtual auto-implemented property. Overrides can only

// provide specialized behavior if they implement get and set accessors.

public virtual string Name { get; set; }

// ordinary virtual property with backing field

private int \_num;

public virtual int Number

{

get { return \_num; }

set { \_num = value; }

}

}

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass

{

private string \_name;

// Override auto-implemented property with ordinary property

// to provide specialized accessor behavior.

public override string Name

{

get

{

return \_name;

}

set

{

if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(value))

{

\_name = value;

}

else

{

\_name = "Unknown";

}

}

}

}

Virtual properties behave like virtual methods, except for the differences in declaration and invocation syntax.

* It is an error to use the virtual modifier on a static property.
* A virtual inherited property can be overridden in a derived class by including a property declaration that uses the override modifier.

**Example**:

In this example, the Shape class contains the two coordinates x, y, and the Area() virtual method. Different shape classes such as Circle, Cylinder, and Sphere inherit the Shape class, and the surface area is calculated for each figure. Each derived class has its own override implementation of Area().

Notice that the inherited classes Circle, Sphere, and Cylinder all use constructors that initialize the base class, as shown in the following declaration.

public Cylinder(double r, double h): base(r, h) {}

The following program calculates and displays the appropriate area for each figure by invoking the appropriate implementation of the Area() method, according to the object that is associated with the method.

class TestClass

{

public class Shape

{

public const double PI = Math.PI;

protected double \_x, \_y;

public Shape()

{

}

public Shape(double x, double y)

{

\_x = x;

\_y = y;

}

public virtual double Area()

{

return \_x \* \_y;

}

}

public class Circle : Shape

{

public Circle(double r) : base(r, 0)

{

}

public override double Area()

{

return PI \* \_x \* \_x;

}

}

public class Sphere : Shape

{

public Sphere(double r) : base(r, 0)

{

}

public override double Area()

{

return 4 \* PI \* \_x \* \_x;

}

}

public class Cylinder : Shape

{

public Cylinder(double r, double h) : base(r, h)

{

}

public override double Area()

{

return 2 \* PI \* \_x \* \_x + 2 \* PI \* \_x \* \_y;

}

}

static void Main()

{

double r = 3.0, h = 5.0;

Shape c = new Circle(r);

Shape s = new Sphere(r);

Shape l = new Cylinder(r, h);

// Display results.

Console.WriteLine("Area of Circle = {0:F2}", c.Area());

Console.WriteLine("Area of Sphere = {0:F2}", s.Area());

Console.WriteLine("Area of Cylinder = {0:F2}", l.Area());

}

}

/\*

Output:

Area of Circle = 28.27

Area of Sphere = 113.10

Area of Cylinder = 150.80

\*/

## Override

The override modifier is required to extend or modify the abstract or virtual implementation of an inherited method, property, indexer, or event.

In the following example, the Square class must provide an overridden implementation of GetArea because GetArea is inherited from the abstract Shape class:

abstract class Shape

{

public abstract int GetArea();

}

class Square : Shape

{

private int \_side;

public Square(int n) => \_side = n;

// GetArea method is required to avoid a compile-time error.

public override int GetArea() => \_side \* \_side;

static void Main()

{

var sq = new Square(12);

Console.WriteLine($"Area of the square = {sq.GetArea()}");

}

}

// Output: Area of the square = 144

An override method provides a new implementation of the method inherited from a base class. The method that is overridden by an override declaration is known as the overridden base method. An override method must have the same signature as the overridden base method. Beginning with C# 9.0, override methods support covariant return types. In particular, the return type of an override method can derive from the return type of the corresponding base method. In C# 8.0 and earlier, the return types of an override method and the overridden base method must be the same.

You cannot override a non-virtual or static method. The overridden base method must be virtual, abstract, or override.

An override declaration cannot change the accessibility of the virtual method. Both the override method and the virtual method must have the same access level modifier.

You cannot use the new, static, or virtual modifiers to modify an override method.

An overriding property declaration must specify exactly the same access modifier, type, and name as the inherited property. Beginning with C# 9.0, read-only overriding properties support covariant return types. The overridden property must be virtual, abstract, or override.

**Example**:

This example defines a base class named Employee, and a derived class named SalesEmployee. The SalesEmployee class includes an extra field, salesbonus, and overrides the method CalculatePay in order to take it into account.

class TestOverride

{

public class Employee

{

public string Name { get; }

// Basepay is defined as protected, so that it may be

// accessed only by this class and derived classes.

protected decimal \_basepay;

// Constructor to set the name and basepay values.

public Employee(string name, decimal basepay)

{

Name = name;

\_basepay = basepay;

}

// Declared virtual so it can be overridden.

public virtual decimal CalculatePay()

{

return \_basepay;

}

}

// Derive a new class from Employee.

public class SalesEmployee : Employee

{

// New field that will affect the base pay.

private decimal \_salesbonus;

// The constructor calls the base-class version, and

// initializes the salesbonus field.

public SalesEmployee(string name, decimal basepay, decimal salesbonus)

: base(name, basepay)

{

\_salesbonus = salesbonus;

}

// Override the CalculatePay method

// to take bonus into account.

public override decimal CalculatePay()

{

return \_basepay + \_salesbonus;

}

}

static void Main()

{

// Create some new employees.

var employee1 = new SalesEmployee("Alice", 1000, 500);

var employee2 = new Employee("Bob", 1200);

Console.WriteLine($"Employee1 {employee1.Name} earned: {employee1.CalculatePay()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Employee2 {employee2.Name} earned: {employee2.CalculatePay()}");

}

}

/\*

Output:

Employee1 Alice earned: 1500

Employee2 Bob earned: 1200

\*/

## Readonly

The readonly keyword is a modifier that can be used in four contexts:

* In a field declaration, readonly indicates that assignment to the field can only occur as part of the declaration or in a constructor in the same class. A readonly field can be assigned and reassigned multiple times within the field declaration and constructor.

A readonly field can't be assigned after the constructor exits. This rule has different implications for value types and reference types:

* Because value types directly contain their data, a field that is a readonly value type is immutable.
* Because reference types contain a reference to their data, a field that is a readonly reference type must always refer to the same object. That object isn't immutable. The readonly modifier prevents the field from being replaced by a different instance of the reference type. However, the modifier doesn't prevent the instance data of the field from being modified through the read-only field.
* In a readonly struct type definition, readonly indicates that the structure type is immutable. For more information, see the readonly struct section of the Structure types article.
* In an instance member declaration within a structure type, readonly indicates that an instance member doesn't modify the state of the structure.
* In a ref readonly method return, the readonly modifier indicates that method returns a reference and writes aren't allowed to that reference.

The readonly struct and ref readonly contexts were added in C# 7.2. readonly struct members were added in C# 8.0

**Readonly field example**:

In this example, the value of the field year can't be changed in the method ChangeYear, even though it's assigned a value in the class constructor:

class Age

{

private readonly int \_year;

Age(int year)

{

\_year = year;

}

void ChangeYear()

{

//\_year = 1967; // Compile error if uncommented.

}

}

You can assign a value to a readonly field only in the following contexts:

* When the variable is initialized in the declaration, for example:

public readonly int y = 5;

* In an instance constructor of the class that contains the instance field declaration.
* In the static constructor of the class that contains the static field declaration.

These constructor contexts are also the only contexts in which it's valid to pass a readonly field as an out or ref parameter.

**Note**:

The readonly keyword is different from the **const** keyword. A const field can only be initialized at the declaration of the field. A readonly field can be assigned multiple times in the field declaration and in any constructor. Therefore, readonly fields can have different values depending on the constructor used. Also, while a const field is a compile-time constant, the readonly field can be used for run-time constants as in the following example:

public static readonly uint timeStamp = (uint)DateTime.Now.Ticks;

public class SamplePoint

{

public int x;

// Initialize a readonly field

public readonly int y = 25;

public readonly int z;

public SamplePoint()

{

// Initialize a readonly instance field

z = 24;

}

public SamplePoint(int p1, int p2, int p3)

{

x = p1;

y = p2;

z = p3;

}

public static void Main()

{

SamplePoint p1 = new SamplePoint(11, 21, 32); // OK

Console.WriteLine($"p1: x={p1.x}, y={p1.y}, z={p1.z}");

SamplePoint p2 = new SamplePoint();

p2.x = 55; // OK

Console.WriteLine($"p2: x={p2.x}, y={p2.y}, z={p2.z}");

}

/\*

Output:

p1: x=11, y=21, z=32

p2: x=55, y=25, z=24

\*/

}

In the preceding example, if you use a statement like the following example:

p2.y = 66; // Error

you'll get the compiler error message:

**A readonly field cannot be assigned to (except in a constructor or a variable initializer)**

## Static

Use the static modifier to declare a static member, which belongs to the type itself rather than to a specific object. The static modifier can be used to declare static classes. In classes, interfaces, and structs, you may add the static modifier to fields, methods, properties, operators, events, and constructors. The static modifier can't be used with indexers or finalizers.

Beginning with C# 8.0, you can add the static modifier to a local function. A static local function can't capture local variables or instance state.

Beginning with C# 9.0, you can add the static modifier to a lambda expression or anonymous method. A static lambda or anonymous method can't capture local variables or instance state.

**Example - static class**:

The following class is declared as static and contains only static methods:

static class CompanyEmployee

{

public static void DoSomething() { /\*...\*/ }

public static void DoSomethingElse() { /\*...\*/ }

}

A constant or type declaration is implicitly a static member. A static member can't be referenced through an instance. Instead, it's referenced through the type name. For example, consider the following class:

public class MyBaseC

{

public struct MyStruct

{

public static int x = 100;

}

}

To refer to the static member x, use the fully qualified name, MyBaseC.MyStruct.x, unless the member is accessible from the same scope:

Console.WriteLine(MyBaseC.MyStruct.x);

While an instance of a class contains a separate copy of all instance fields of the class, there's only one copy of each static field.

It isn't possible to use this to reference static methods or property accessors.

If the static keyword is applied to a class, all the members of the class must be static.

Classes, interfaces, and static classes may have static constructors. A static constructor is called at some point between when the program starts, and the class is instantiated.

**Example - static field and method**:

This example reads the name and ID of a new employee, increments the employee counter by one, and displays the information for the new employee and the new number of employees. This program reads the current number of employees from the keyboard.

public class Employee4

{

public string id;

public string name;

public Employee4()

{

}

public Employee4(string name, string id)

{

this.name = name;

this.id = id;

}

public static int employeeCounter;

public static int AddEmployee()

{

return ++employeeCounter;

}

}

class MainClass : Employee4

{

static void Main()

{

Console.Write("Enter the employee's name: ");

string name = Console.ReadLine();

Console.Write("Enter the employee's ID: ");

string id = Console.ReadLine();

// Create and configure the employee object.

Employee4 e = new Employee4(name, id);

Console.Write("Enter the current number of employees: ");

string n = Console.ReadLine();

Employee4.employeeCounter = Int32.Parse(n);

Employee4.AddEmployee();

// Display the new information.

Console.WriteLine($"Name: {e.name}");

Console.WriteLine($"ID: {e.id}");

Console.WriteLine($"New Number of Employees: {Employee4.employeeCounter}");

}

}

/\*

Input:

Matthias Berndt

AF643G

15

\*

Sample Output:

Enter the employee's name: Matthias Berndt

Enter the employee's ID: AF643G

Enter the current number of employees: 15

Name: Matthias Berndt

ID: AF643G

New Number of Employees: 16

\*/

**Example - static initialization**:

This example shows that you can initialize a static field by using another static field that is not yet declared. The results will be undefined until you explicitly assign a value to the static field.

class Test

{

static int x = y;

static int y = 5;

static void Main()

{

Console.WriteLine(Test.x);

Console.WriteLine(Test.y);

Test.x = 99;

Console.WriteLine(Test.x);

}

}

/\*

Output:

0

5

99

\*/

# C# - Partial Classes and Methods

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/partial-classes-and-methods>

It is possible to split the definition of a [class](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/class), a [struct](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/struct), an [interface](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/interface) or a method over two or more source files. Each source file contains a section of the type or method definition, and all parts are combined when the application is compiled.

There are several situations when splitting a class definition is desirable:

* When working on large projects, spreading a class over separate files enables multiple programmers to work on it at the same time.
* When working with automatically generated source, code can be added to the class without having to recreate the source file. Visual Studio uses this approach when it creates Windows Forms, Web service wrapper code, and so on. You can create code that uses these classes without having to modify the file created by Visual Studio.
* When using [source generators](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/roslyn-sdk/source-generators-overview) to generate additional functionality in a class.

To split a class definition, use the [partial](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/partial-type) keyword modifier, as shown here:

public partial class Employee

{

public void DoWork()

{

}

}

public partial class Employee

{

public void GoToLunch()

{

}

}

The partial keyword indicates that other parts of the class, struct, or interface can be defined in the namespace. All the parts must use the partial keyword. All the parts must be available at compile time to form the final type. All the parts must have the same accessibility, such as public, private, and so on.

If any part is declared abstract, then the whole type is considered abstract. If any part is declared sealed, then the whole type is considered sealed. If any part declares a base type, then the whole type inherits that class.

All the parts that specify a base class must agree, but parts that omit a base class still inherit the base type. Parts can specify different base interfaces, and the final type implements all the interfaces listed by all the partial declarations. Any class, struct, or interface members declared in a partial definition are available to all the other parts. The final type is the combination of all the parts at compile time.

**Note**: The partial modifier is not available on delegate or enumeration declarations.

The following example shows that nested types can be partial, even if the type they are nested within is not partial itself.

class Container

{

partial class Nested

{

void Test() { }

}

partial class Nested

{

void Test2() { }

}

}

At compile time, attributes of partial-type definitions are merged. For example, consider the following declarations:

[SerializableAttribute]

partial class Moon { }

[ObsoleteAttribute]

partial class Moon { }

They are equivalent to the following declarations:

[SerializableAttribute]

[ObsoleteAttribute]

class Moon { }

The following are merged from all the partial-type definitions:

* XML comments
* interfaces
* generic-type parameter attributes
* class attributes
* members

For example, consider the following declarations:

partial class Earth : Planet, IRotate { }

partial class Earth : IRevolve { }

They are equivalent to the following declarations:

class Earth : Planet, IRotate, IRevolve { }

## Restrictions

There are several rules to follow when you are working with partial class definitions:

* All partial-type definitions meant to be parts of the same type must be modified with partial. For example, the following class declarations generate an error:

public partial class A { }

//public class A { } // Error, must also be marked partial

* The partial modifier can only appear immediately before the keywords class, struct, or interface.
* Nested partial types are allowed in partial-type definitions as illustrated in the following example:

partial class ClassWithNestedClass

{

partial class NestedClass { }

}

partial class ClassWithNestedClass

{

partial class NestedClass { }

}

* All partial-type definitions meant to be parts of the same type must be defined in the same assembly and the same module (.exe or .dll file). Partial definitions cannot span multiple modules.
* The class name and generic-type parameters must match on all partial-type definitions. Generic types can be partial. Each partial declaration must use the same parameter names in the same order.
* The following keywords on a partial-type definition are optional, but if present on one partial-type definition, cannot conflict with the keywords specified on another partial definition for the same type:
  + [public](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/public)
  + [private](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/private)
  + [protected](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/protected)
  + [internal](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/internal)
  + [abstract](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/abstract)
  + [sealed](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/sealed)
  + base class
  + [new](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/new-modifier) modifier (nested parts)
  + generic constraints

## Examples

In the following example, the fields and the constructor of the class, Coords, are declared in one partial class definition, and the member, PrintCoords, is declared in another partial class definition.

public partial class Coords

{

private int x;

private int y;

public Coords(int x, int y)

{

this.x = x;

this.y = y;

}

}

public partial class Coords

{

public void PrintCoords()

{

Console.WriteLine("Coords: {0},{1}", x, y);

}

}

class TestCoords

{

static void Main()

{

Coords myCoords = new Coords(10, 15);

myCoords.PrintCoords();

// Keep the console window open in debug mode.

Console.WriteLine("Press any key to exit.");

Console.ReadKey();

}

}

// Output: Coords: 10,15

The following example shows that you can also develop partial structs and interfaces.

partial interface ITest

{

void Interface\_Test();

}

partial interface ITest

{

void Interface\_Test2();

}

partial struct S1

{

void Struct\_Test() { }

}

partial struct S1

{

void Struct\_Test2() { }

}

## Partial Methods

A partial class or struct may contain a partial method. One part of the class contains the signature of the method. An implementation can be defined in the same part or another part. If the implementation is not supplied, then the method and all calls to the method are removed at compile time. Implementation may be required depending on method signature. A partial method isn't required to have an implementation in the following cases:

* It doesn't have any accessibility modifiers (including the default [private](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/private)).
* It returns [void](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/void).
* It doesn't have any [out](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/out-parameter-modifier) parameters.
* It doesn't have any of the following modifiers [virtual](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/virtual), [override](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/override), [sealed](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/sealed), [new](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/new-modifier), or [extern](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/extern).

Any method that doesn't conform to all those restrictions (for example, public virtual partial void method), must provide an implementation. That implementation may be supplied by a source generator.

Partial methods enable the implementer of one part of a class to declare a method. The implementer of another part of the class can define that method. There are two scenarios where this is useful: templates that generate boilerplate code, and source generators.

* **Template code**: The template reserves a method name and signature so that generated code can call the method. These methods follow the restrictions that enable a developer to decide whether to implement the method. If the method is not implemented, then the compiler removes the method signature and all calls to the method. The calls to the method, including any results that would occur from evaluation of arguments in the calls, have no effect at run time. Therefore, any code in the partial class can freely use a partial method, even if the implementation is not supplied. No compile-time or run-time errors will result if the method is called but not implemented.
* **Source generators**: Source generators provide an implementation for methods. The human developer can add the method declaration (often with attributes read by the source generator). The developer can write code that calls these methods. The source generator runs during compilation and provides the implementation. In this scenario, the restrictions for partial methods that may not be implemented often aren't followed.

// Definition in file1.cs

partial void OnNameChanged();

// Implementation in file2.cs

partial void OnNameChanged()

{

// method body

}

* Partial method declarations must begin with the contextual keyword [partial](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/partial-type).
* Partial method signatures in both parts of the partial type must match.
* Partial methods can have [static](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/static) and [unsafe](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/unsafe) modifiers.
* Partial methods can be generic. Constraints are put on the defining partial method declaration, and may optionally be repeated on the implementing one. Parameter and type parameter names do not have to be the same in the implementing declaration as in the defining one.
* You can make a [delegate](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/reference-types) to a partial method that has been defined and implemented, but not to a partial method that has only been defined.

# C# - Conversion – Boxing & Unboxing, User Defined

Boxing and unboxing is an important concept in **C#**. C# Type System contains **three data types**: **Value Types (int, char, etc)**, **Reference Types (object)** and **Pointer Types**. Basically it convert a Value Type to a Reference Type, and vice versa. Boxing and Unboxing enables a unified view of the type system in which a value of any type can be treated as an object.

## Boxing

* The process of Converting a **Value Type (char, int etc.) to a Reference Type(object)** is called **Boxing**.
* Boxing is implicit conversion process in which object type (super type) is used.
* The Value type is always stored in Stack. The Referenced Type is stored in Heap.

**Example**

int num = 23; // 23 will assigned to num

Object Obj = num; // Boxing

**Description:** First declare a value type variable (num), which is integer type and assigned it with value 23. Now create a references object type (obj) and applied Explicit operation which results in num value type to be copied and stored in object reference type obj

Let’s understand **Boxing** with a C# programming code:

|  |
| --- |
| // C# implementation to demonstrate  // the Boxing  **using** System;  **class** GFG {      // Main Method  **static** **public** **void** Main()      {          // assigned int value          // 2020 to num  **int** num = 2020;            // boxing  **object** obj = num;            // value of num to be change          num = 100;            System.Console.WriteLine          ("Value - type value of num is : {0}", num);          System.Console.WriteLine          ("Object - type value of obj is : {0}", obj);      }  } |

**Output:**

Value - type value of num is : 100

Object - type value of obj is : 2020

## Unboxing

* The process of convertingreference type**into the**value type is known as **Unboxing**.
* It is explicit conversion process.

**Example:**

int num = 23; // value type is int and assigned value 23

Object Obj = num; // Boxing

int i = (int)Obj; // Unboxing

**Description :** Declaration a value type variable (num), which is integer type and assigned with integer value 23. Now, create a reference object type (obj).The explicit operation for boxing create an value type integer i and applied casting method. Then the referenced type residing on Heap is copy to stack

Let’s understand **Unboxing** with a C# programming code:

// C# implementation to demonstrate

// the Unboxing

**using** System;

**class** GFG {

    // Main Method

**static** **public** **void** Main()

    {

        // assigned int value

        // 23 to num

**int** num = 23;

        // boxing

**object** obj = num;

        // unboxing

**int** i = (**int**)obj;

        // Display result

        Console.WriteLine("Value of ob object is : " + obj);

        Console.WriteLine("Value of i is : " + i);

    }

}

**Output:**

Value of ob object is : 23

Value of i is : 23

## User Defined Conversion

In C# programming, a situation may arise when we have to convert a data type into our own custom type or vice-versa. The custom type may be any class, object, or struct that we created. To perform these types of special conversions, we have to define a special method. The syntax of these special methods is shown below.

**static** **public** **implicit**/**explicit** **operator** ConvertToType(ConvertFromDataType value)

{

    // Conversion implementation and return type of this method must be 'ConvertToType'

**return** ConvertToType;

}

Here, in the above method, '*ConvertFromDataType*' is the data type we are going to change and '*ConvertToType*' will be the converted type. We use implicit or explicit depending on the situation. The return type of this method should be of Converted type. Understand the below example to have more clarity around it.

**using** System;

**namespace** Tutpoint

{

**class** Program

    {

**class** Student

        {

**public** **string** Name { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **int** Roll\_No { **get**; **set**; }

            // This method used to convert int value into 'Student' type

**static** **public** **implicit** **operator** Student(**int** value)

            {

                // Return type of this method should be of 'Student' type

**return** **new** Student { Name = "jainy", Roll\_No = value };

            }

            // This method used to convert 'Student' type value into 'int' type

**static** **public** **explicit** **operator** **int**(Student student)

            {

                // Return type of this method should be of 'int' type

**return** student.Roll\_No;

            }

        }

**static** **void** Main(**string**[] args)

        {

            // Object of Student class is initialised

            Student student = **new** Student();

**int** value = 100;

            // On below line, int value is converted to student type, implicit

            student = value;

            Console.WriteLine("Student name" + student.Name + " Student Roll No." + student.Roll\_No);

            // On below line, value is assigned from student.Roll\_No

            value = student.Roll\_No;

            Console.WriteLine("Roll No. " + value);

            // On below line, student type is converted to int type

            value = (**int**)student;

            Console.WriteLine("Roll No. " + value);

            Console.ReadKey();

        }

    }

}

In this example, we have created a class named '*Student*' which contains two property members '*Name*' and '*Roll\_No*'. We have also written two special conversion methods to convert from type '*Student*' to type '*int*' and vice-versa.

The conversion from "int" to "Student" can be performed directly. As we are converting from smaller to larger data types, so we use implicit on method definition, while the conversion from '*Student*' to '*int*' requires a cast operator as we are converting from larger to smaller type and we use explicit on method definition.

In '*Main*' method, we have directly assigned an int value to Student type without compiling for errors due to the method defined above otherwise, an error will produce as "Cannot implicitly convert type 'int' to 'Tutpoint.Program.Student'". The same happens for conversion from "student" to "int" type.

# C# - Exceptions

## Built-in Exception Classes in C#

C# .NET includes built-in exception classes for every possible error. The Exception class is the base class of all the exception classes.

The following is a hierarchy of exception classes in .NET:

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/exception-classes.png)Exception Classes in .NET

In the above figure, the Exception class is the base class of the SystemException and ApplicationException classes. The SystemException class is the base class for all the built-in exception classes in .NET Framework.

The ApplicationException was recommended to be base class for all your custom exceptions classes (The custom exeception class should be created if non of the system exception classes can be used and you need new exception class for business rule violations or for other application related errors). It was meant to differentiates between exceptions defined by applications versus exceptions defined by the system. However, Microsoft now recommends to derive custom exception classes from the Exception class rather than the ApplicationException class .

## Built-in Exception Classes

The following table lists important built-in exception classes in .NET.

| **Exception Class** | **Description** |
| --- | --- |
| [ArgumentException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.argumentexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a non-null argument that is passed to a method is invalid. |
| [ArgumentNullException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.argumentnullexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when null argument is passed to a method. |
| [ArgumentOutOfRangeException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.argumentoutofrangeexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when the value of an argument is outside the range of valid values. |
| [DivideByZeroException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.dividebyzeroexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when an integer value is divide by zero. |
| [FileNotFoundException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.io.filenotfoundexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a physical file does not exist at the specified location. |
| [FormatException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.formatexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a value is not in an appropriate format to be converted from a string by a conversion method such as Parse. |
| [IndexOutOfRangeException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.indexoutofrangeexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when an array index is outside the lower or upper bounds of an array or collection. |
| [InvalidOperationException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.invalidoperationexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a method call is invalid in an object's current state. |
| [KeyNotFoundException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.collections.generic.keynotfoundexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when the specified key for accessing a member in a collection is not exists. |
| [NotSupportedException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.notsupportedexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a method or operation is not supported. |
| [NullReferenceException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.nullreferenceexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when program access members of null object. |
| [OverflowException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.overflowexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when an arithmetic, casting, or conversion operation results in an overflow. |
| [OutOfMemoryException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.outofmemoryexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a program does not get enough memory to execute the code. |
| [StackOverflowException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.stackoverflowexception?view=netframework-4.8) | Raised when a stack in memory overflows. |
| [TimeoutException](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.timeoutexception?view=netframework-4.8) | The time interval allotted to an operation has expired. |

When an error occurs, either the application code or the default handler handles the exception.

## Exception Handling in C#

Exceptions in the application must be handled to prevent crashing of the program and unexpected result, log exceptions and continue with other functionalities. C# provides built-in support to handle the exception using try, catch & finally blocks.

try

{

// put the code here that may raise exceptions

}

catch

{

// handle exception here

}

finally

{

// final cleanup code

}

**try block:** Any suspected code that may raise exceptions should be put inside a try{ } block. During the execution, if an exception occurs, the flow of the control jumps to the first matching catch block.

**catch block:** The catch block is an exception handler block where you can perform some action such as logging and auditing an exception. The catch block takes a parameter of an exception type using which you can get the details of an exception.

**finally block:** The finally block will always be executed whether an exception raised or not. Usually, a finally block should be used to release resources, e.g., to close any stream or file objects that were opened in the try block.

The following may throw an exception if you enter a non-numeric character.

**Example: C# Program**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("Enter a number: ");

var num = int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());

Console.WriteLine($"Squre of {num} is {num \* num}");

}

}

To handle the possible exceptions in the above example, wrap the code inside a try block and handle the exception in the catch block, as shown below.

**Example: Exception handling using try-catch blocks**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

try

{

Console.WriteLine("Enter a number: ");

var num = int.parse(Console.ReadLine());

Console.WriteLine($"Squre of {num} is {num \* num}");

}

catch

{

Console.Write("Error occurred.");

}

finally

{

Console.Write("Re-try with a different number.");

}

}

}

In the above example, we wrapped this code inside a try block. If an exception occurs inside a try block, then the program will jump to the catch block. Inside a catch block, we display a message to instruct the user about his mistake, and in the finally block, we display a message about what to do after running a program.

**Note**:

A try block must be followed by catch or finally or both blocks. The try block without a catch or finally block will give a compile-time error.

Ideally, a catch block should include a parameter of a built-in or custom exception class to get an error detail. The following includes the Exception type parameter that catches all types of exceptions.

**Example: Exception handling using try catch block**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

try

{

Console.WriteLine("Enter a number: ");

var num = int.parse(Console.ReadLine());

Console.WriteLine($"Squre of {num} is {num \* num}");

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.Write("Error info:" + ex.Message);

}

finally

{

Console.Write("Re-try with a different number.");

}

}

}

## Exception Filters

You can use multiple catch blocks with the different exception type parameters. This is called exception filters. Exception filters are useful when you want to handle different types of exceptions in different ways.

**Example: Exception Filters**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.Write("Please enter a number to divide 100: ");

try

{

int num = int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());

int result = 100 / num;

Console.WriteLine("100 / {0} = {1}", num, result);

}

catch(DivideByZeroException ex)

{

Console.Write("Cannot divide by zero. Please try again.");

}

catch(InvalidOperationException ex)

{

Console.Write("Invalid operation. Please try again.");

}

catch(FormatException ex)

{

Console.Write("Not a valid format. Please try again.");

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.Write("Error occurred! Please try again.");

}

}

}

In the above example, we have specified multiple catch blocks with different exception types. We can display an appropriate message to the user, depending upon the error, so the user does not repeat the same mistake again.

**Note**:

Multiple catch blocks with the same exception type are not allowed. A catch block with the base Exception type must be the last block.

### Invalid catch Block

A parameterless catch block and a catch block with the Exception parameter are not allowed in the same try-catch statements, because they both do the same thing.

**Example: Invalid catch**

try

{

//code that may raise an exception

}

catch //cannot have both catch and catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine("Exception occurred");

}

catch(Exception ex) //cannot have both catch and catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine("Exception occurred");

}

Also, parameterless catch block catch{ } or general catch block catch(Exception ex){ } must be the last block. The compiler will give an error if you have other catch blocks after a catch{ } or catch(Exception ex) block.

**Example: Invalid catch**

try

{

//code that may raise an exception

}

catch

{

// this catch block must be last block

}

catch (NullReferenceException nullEx)

{

Console.WriteLine(nullEx.Message);

}

catch (InvalidCastException inEx)

{

Console.WriteLine(inEx.Message);

}

## finally Block

The finally block is an optional block and should come after a try or catch block. The finally block will always be executed whether or not an exception occurred. The finally block generally used for cleaning-up code e.g., disposing of unmanaged objects.

**Example: finally Block**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

FileInfo file = null;

try

{

Console.Write("Enter a file name to write: ");

string fileName = Console.ReadLine();

file = new FileInfo(fileName);

file.AppendText("Hello World!")

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine("Error occurred: {0}", ex.Message );

}

finally

{

// clean up file object here;

file = null;

}

}

**Note**:

Multiple finally blocks are not allowed. Also, the finally block cannot have the return, continue, or break keywords. It doesn't let control to leave the finally block.

## Nested try-catch

C# allows nested try-catch blocks. When using nested try-catch blocks, an exception will be caught in the first matching catch block that follows the try block where an exception occurred.

**Example: Nested try-catch**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

var divider = 0;

try

{

try

{

var result = 100/divider;

}

catch

{

Console.WriteLine("Inner catch");

}

}

catch

{

Console.WriteLine("Outer catch");

}

}

**Output:**

Inner catch

An inner catch block will be executed in the above example because it is the first catch block that handles all exception types.

If there isn't an inner catch block that matches with raised exception type, then the control will flow to the outer catch block until it finds an appropriate exception filter. Consider the following example.

**Example: Nested try-catch**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

var divider = 0;

try

{

try

{

var result = 100/divider;

}

catch(NullReferenceException ex)

{

Console.WriteLine("Inner catch");

}

}

catch

{

Console.WriteLine("Outer catch");

}

}

**Output:**

Outer catch

In the above example, an exception of type DivideByZeroException will be raised. Because an inner catch block handles only the NullReferenceTypeException, it will be handle by an outer catch block.

## C# - throw keyword

We have seen in the previous section how to handle exceptions which are automatically raised by CLR. Here, we will see how to raise an exception manually.

An exception can be raised manually by using the throw keyword. Any type of exceptions which is derived from *Exception* class can be raised using the throw keyword.

**Example: throw an exception**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Student std = null;

try

{

PrintStudentName(std);

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.Message );

}

Console.ReadKey();

}

private static void PrintStudentName( Student std)

{

if (std == null)

throw new NullReferenceException("Student object is null.");

Console.WriteLine(std.StudentName);

}

**Output:**

Student object is null.

In the above example, PrintStudentName() method raises NullReferenceException if Student object is null.

Please notice that throw creates an object of any valid exception type using the new keyword. The throw keyword cannot be used with any other type which does not derive from the Exception class.

## Re-throwing an Exception

You can also re-throw an exception from the catch block to pass on to the caller and let the caller handle it the way they want. The following example re-throws an exception.

**Example: throw an exception**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

try

{

Method1();

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);

}

}

static void Method1()

{

try

{

Method2();

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

throw;

}

}

static void Method2()

{

string str = null;

try

{

Console.WriteLine(str[0]);

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

throw;

}

}

In the above example, an exception occurs in Method2(). The catch block simply throws that exception using only throw keyword (not throw e). This will be handled in catch block in Method1() where it again re-throw the same exception and finally it is being handled in the Main() method. The stack trace of this exception will give you the full detail of where exactly this exception occurred.

If you re-throw an exception using exception parameter then it will not preserve the original exception and creates a new exception. The following example demonstrates this.

**Example: throw an exception**

static void Main(string[] args)

{

try

{

Method1();

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);

}

}

static void Method1()

{

try

{

Method2();

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

throw ex;

}

}

static void Method2()

{

string str = null;

try

{

Console.WriteLine(str[0]);

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

throw;

}

}

In the above example, exception caught in the Main() method will display stack trace from Method1 and Main method. It will not display Method1 in stack trace as we re-throw exception in Method1() using throw ex. So, never throw an exception using throw <exception parameter>.

## Custom Exception Type in C#

C# includes the built-in exception types such as NullReferenceException, MemoryOverflowException, etc. However, you often like to raise an exception when the business rule of your application gets violated. So, for this, you can create a custom exception class by deriving the ApplicationException class.

The .Net framework includes ApplicationException class since .Net v1.0. It was designed to use as a base class for the custom exception class. However, Microsoft now recommends Exception class to create a custom exception class. You should not throw an ApplicationException exception in your code, and you should not catch an ApplicationException exception unless you intend to re-throw the original exception.

For example, create InvalidStudentNameException class in a school application, which does not allow any special character or numeric value in a name of any of the students.

**Example: ApplicationException**

class Student

{

public int StudentID { get; set; }

public string StudentName { get; set; }

}

[Serializable]

class InvalidStudentNameException : Exception

{

public InvalidStudentNameException() { }

public InvalidStudentNameException(string name)

: base(String.Format("Invalid Student Name: {0}", name))

{

}

}

Now, you can raise InvalidStudentNameException in your program whenever the name contains special characters or numbers. Use the **throw** keyword to raise an exception.

**Example: throw custom exception**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Student newStudent = null;

try

{

newStudent = new Student();

newStudent.StudentName = "James007";

ValidateStudent(newStudent);

}

catch(InvalidStudentNameException ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.Message );

}

Console.ReadKey();

}

private static void ValidateStudent(Student std)

{

Regex regex = new Regex("^[a-zA-Z]+$");

if (!regex.IsMatch(std.StudentName))

**throw new InvalidStudentNameException(std.StudentName);**

}

}

**Output:**

Invalid Student Name: James000

Thus, you can create custom exception classes to differentiate from system exceptions.

# C# - Serialization – File I/O, XML

## File I/O

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/article/serializing-objects-in-C-Sharp/#:~:text=Serialization%20in%20C%23%20is%20the,reverse%20process%20is%20called%20deserialization>.

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Serialization>

Project: FileSer.csproj

Often, we need to store objects to a physical storage so it can be read back and converted back to an object. The process of storing an object to a physical storage is called serialization. The process of reading a serialized object back into memory is deserialization.

In simple words serialization in C# is a process of storing the object instance to a persistant storage. Serialization stores state of objects i.e. member variable values to persostant storage such as a disk. Deserialization is reverse of serialization. It is a process of reading objects from a file where they have been stored. In this code sample we will see how to serialize and deserialize objects using C#.

Here is how serialization works.



### Namespaces involved

Following namespaces are involved in serialization process,

* System.Runtime.Serialization
* System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary

In order to persist the values for the Loan class, you must first mark the class with the Serializable attribute.

### **Example 1**: Simple Serialization

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

public class SerialTest

{

public void SerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Writing to file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize cls = new ClassToSerialize();

Stream saveFileStream = File.Create(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

serializer.Serialize(saveFileStream, cls);

saveFileStream.Close();

Console.WriteLine($"Done!");

}

public void DeSerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Reading file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize cls = new ClassToSerialize();

if (File.Exists(filename))

{

Stream openFileStream = File.OpenRead(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

cls = (ClassToSerialize)serializer.Deserialize(openFileStream);

Console.WriteLine(cls.name);

openFileStream.Close();

}

Console.WriteLine($"Done!");

}

public static void Main(string[] s)

{

SerialTest st = new SerialTest();

st.SerializeNow();

st.DeSerializeNow();

}

}

[Serializable]

public class ClassToSerialize

{

public int age = 100;

public string name = "Ajay Singala";

//[field: NonSerialized()]

public string city = "Boston";

}

**Explanation**

Here we have our own class named ClassToSerialize. This class has two public valiables name and age with some default values. We will write this class to a disk file (temp.dat) using SerializeTest class.

SerializeTest class has two methods SerializeNow() and DeSerializeNow() which perform the task of serialization and deserialization respectively.

The general steps for serializing are,

* Create an instance of File that will store serialized object.
* Create a stream from the file object.
* Create an instance of BinaryFormatter.
* Call serialize method of the instance passing it stream and object to serialize.

The steps for de-serializing the object are similar. The only change is that you need to call deserialize method of BinaryFormatter object.

Now, let us see an example where we have used 'real' class with public and shared members and properties to encapsulate them. The class also uses another supporting class. This is just to make clear that if your class contains further classes, all the classes in the chain will be serialized.

### **Example 2: Serialize Sub-class.**

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

namespace FileSer

{

public class SerSubClass

{

public void SerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp2.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Writing to file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize2 cls = new ClassToSerialize2();

cls.Name = "Mary Jane";

cls.Age = 26;

ClassToSerialize2.CompanyName = "xyz";

Stream saveFileStream = File.Create(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

serializer.Serialize(saveFileStream, cls);

saveFileStream.Close();

}

public void DeSerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp2.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Reading file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize2 cls = new ClassToSerialize2();

if (File.Exists(filename))

{

Stream openFileStream = File.OpenRead(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

cls = (ClassToSerialize2)serializer.Deserialize(openFileStream);

Console.WriteLine("Name :" + cls.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Age :" + cls.Age);

Console.WriteLine("Company Name :" + ClassToSerialize2.CompanyName);

Console.WriteLine("Company Name :" + cls.GetSupportClassString());

openFileStream.Close();

}

}

}

[Serializable]

public class ClassToSerialize2

{

private int age;

private string name;

static string companyname;

SupportClass supp = new SupportClass();

public ClassToSerialize2()

{

supp.SupportClassString = "In support class";

}

public int Age

{

get

{

return age;

}

set

{

age = value;

}

}

public string Name

{

get

{

return name;

}

set

{

name = value;

}

}

public static string CompanyName

{

get

{

return companyname;

}

set

{

companyname = value;

}

}

public string GetSupportClassString()

{

return supp.SupportClassString;

}

}

[Serializable]

public class SupportClass

{

public string SupportClassString;

}

}

**Example 3 :Serialize Array of Objects.**The final example shows how to serialize array of objects.

using System;

using System.IO;

using System.Runtime.Serialization;

using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;

namespace FileSer

{

public class SerArrayOfObjects

{

public void SerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp3.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Writing to file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize3[] cls = new ClassToSerialize3[3];

cls[0] = new ClassToSerialize3();

cls[0].Name = "bipin";

cls[0].Age = 26;

cls[1] = new ClassToSerialize3();

cls[1].Name = "abc";

cls[1].Age = 75;

cls[2] = new ClassToSerialize3();

cls[2].Name = "pqr";

cls[2].Age = 50;

ClassToSerialize3.CompanyName = "xyz";

Stream saveFileStream = File.Create(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

serializer.Serialize(saveFileStream, cls);

saveFileStream.Close();

}

public void DeSerializeNow()

{

var filename = @"c:\temp\temp3.dat";

Console.WriteLine($"Reading file {filename}...");

ClassToSerialize3[] cls;

if (File.Exists(filename))

{

Stream openFileStream = File.OpenRead(filename);

BinaryFormatter serializer = new BinaryFormatter();

cls = (ClassToSerialize3[])serializer.Deserialize(openFileStream);

foreach (var item in cls)

{

Console.WriteLine($"Name: {item.Name} Age: {item.Age} Company Name: {ClassToSerialize3.CompanyName}");

}

openFileStream.Close();

}

}

}

[Serializable]

public class ClassToSerialize3

{

private int age;

private string name;

static string companyname;

public int Age

{

get

{

return age;

}

set

{

age = value;

}

}

public string Name

{

get

{

return name;

}

set

{

name = value;

}

}

public static string CompanyName

{

get

{

return companyname;

}

set

{

companyname = value;

}

}

}

}

## XML Serialization

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/standard/serialization/how-to-serialize-an-object>

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/standard/serialization/examples-of-xml-serialization>

Serialization is the process of converting an object into a form that can be readily transported. For example, you can serialize an object and transport it over the Internet using HTTP between a client and a server. On the other end, deserialization reconstructs the object from the stream.

XML serialization serializes only the public fields and property values of an object into an XML stream. XML serialization does not include type information. For example, if you have a **Book** object that exists in the **Library** namespace, there is no guarantee that it is deserialized into an object of the same type.

**Note**

XML serialization does not convert methods, indexers, private fields, or read-only properties (except read-only collections). To serialize all an object's fields and properties, both public and private, use the [**DataContractSerializer**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.runtime.serialization.datacontractserializer) instead of XML serialization.

The central class in XML serialization is the [XmlSerializer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.xml.serialization.xmlserializer) class, and the most important methods in this class are the **Serialize** and **Deserialize** methods. The [XmlSerializer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.xml.serialization.xmlserializer) creates C# files and compiles them into .dll files to perform this serialization. The [XML Serializer Generator Tool (Sgen.exe)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/standard/serialization/xml-serializer-generator-tool-sgen-exe) is designed to generate these serialization assemblies in advance to be deployed with your application and improve startup performance.

The data in your objects is described using programming language constructs like classes, fields, properties, primitive types, arrays, and even embedded XML in the form of **XmlElement** or **XmlAttribute** objects. You have the option of creating your own classes, annotated with attributes, or using the XML Schema Definition tool to generate the classes based on an existing XML Schema.

### Items That Can Be Serialized

The following items can be serialized using the **XmlSerializer** class:

* Public read/write properties and fields of public classes.
* Classes that implement **ICollection** or **IEnumerable**.

**Note**: Only collections are serialized, not public properties.

* **XmlElement** objects.
* **XmlNode** objects.
* **DataSet** objects.

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Serialization>

Project: XmlSer.csproj

### Serialize an Object

To serialize an object, first create the object that is to be serialized and set its public properties and fields. To do this, you must determine the transport format in which the XML stream is to be stored, either as a stream or as a file. For example, if the XML stream must be saved in a permanent form, create a [FileStream](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.io.filestream) object.

Demo: MySerializableClass.cs

### Serializing a Class that Contains a Field Returning a Complex Object

If a property or field returns a complex object (such as an array or a class instance), the XmlSerializer converts it to an element nested within the main XML document. For example, the first class in the following code example returns an instance of the second class.

Demo: SerClasses.cs

### Serializing an Array of Objects

You can also serialize a field that returns an array of objects, as shown in the following code example.

Demo: SerArrayOfObjects.cs

### Serializing a Class that Implements the ICollection Interface

You can create your own collection classes by implementing the ICollection interface, and use the XmlSerializer to serialize instances of these classes. Note that when a class implements the ICollection interface, only the collection contained by the class is serialized. Any public properties or fields added to the class will not be serialized. The class must include an **Add** method and an **Item** property (C# indexer) to be serialized.

Demo: SerCollection.cs

# C# - Generics

**Generic**is a class which allows the user to define classes and methods with the placeholder. Generics were added to version 2.0 of the C# language. The basic idea behind using Generic is to allow type (Integer, String, … etc and user-defined types) to be a parameter to methods, classes, and interfaces. A primary limitation of collections is the absence of effective type checking. This means that you can put any object in a collection because all classes in the C# programming language extend from the object base class. This compromises type safety and contradicts the basic definition of C# as a type-safe language. In addition, using collections involves a significant performance overhead in the form of implicit and explicit type casting that is required to add or retrieve objects from a collection.  
To address the type safety issue, the **.NET**framework provides generics to create classes, structures, interfaces, and methods that have placeholders for the types they use. Generics are commonly used to create type-safe collections for both reference and value types. The **.NET** framework provides an extensive set of interfaces and classes in the System.Collections.Generic namespace for implementing generic collections.

## **Generic Class**

Generics in C# is its most powerful feature. It allows you to define the type-safe data structures. This out-turn in a remarkable performance boost and high-grade code, because it helps to reuse data processing algorithms without replicating type-specific code. Generics are similar to templates in C++ but are different in implementation and capabilities. Generics introduces the concept of type parameters, because of which it is possible to create methods and classes that defers the framing of data type until the class or method is declared and is instantiated by client code. Generic types perform better than normal system types because they reduce the need for boxing, unboxing, and type casting the variables or objects.

Parameter types are specified in generic class creation.

Generic means the general form, not specific. In C#, generic means not specific to a particular data type.

C# allows you to define generic classes, interfaces, abstract classes, fields, methods, static methods, properties, events, delegates, and operators using the [type parameter](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/generics/generic-type-parameters) and without the specific data type. A type parameter is a placeholder for a particular type specified when creating an instance of the generic type.

A generic type is declared by specifying a type parameter in an angle brackets after a type name, e.g. TypeName<T> where T is a type parameter.

Generic classes are defined using a type parameter in an angle brackets after the class name. The following defines a generic class.

Example: Define Generic Class

class DataStore<T>

{

public T Data { get; set; }

}

Above, the DataStore is a generic class. T is called type parameter, which can be used as a type of fields, properties, method parameters, return types, and delegates in the DataStore class. For example, Data is generic property because we have used a type parameter T as its type instead of the specific data type.

**Note**: It is not required to use T as a type parameter. You can give any name to a type parameter. Generally, T is used when there is only one type parameter. It is recommended to use a more readable type parameter name as per requirement like TSession, TKey, TValue etc. Learn more about [Type Parameter Naming Guidelines](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/generics/generic-type-parameters#type-parameter-naming-guidelines)

You can also define multiple type parameters separated by a comma.

Example: Generic Class with Multiple Type Parameters

class KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue>

{

public TKey Key { get; set; }

public TValue Value { get; set; }

}

## Instantiating Generic Class

You can create an instance of generic classes by specifying an actual type in angle brackets. The following creates an instance of the generic class DataStore.

DataStore<string> store = new DataStore<string>();

Above, we specified the string type in the angle brackets while creating an instance. So, T will be replaced with a string type wherever T is used in the entire class at compile-time. Therefore, the type of Data property would be a string.

The following figure illustrates how generics works.



You can assign a string value to the Data property. Trying to assign values other than string will result in a compile-time error.

DataStore<string> store = new DataStore<string>();

store.Data = "Hello World!";

//store.Data = 123; //compile-time error

You can specify the different data types for different objects, as shown below.

Example: Generic class

DataStore<string> strStore = new DataStore<string>();

strStore.Data = "Hello World!";

//strStore.Data = 123; // compile-time error

DataStore<int> intStore = new DataStore<int>();

intStore.Data = 100;

//intStore.Data = "Hello World!"; // compile-time error

KeyValuePair<int, string> kvp1 = new KeyValuePair<int, string>();

kvp1.Key = 100;

kvp1.Value = "Hundred";

KeyValuePair<string, string> kvp2 = new KeyValuePair<string, string>();

kvp2.Key = "IT";

kvp2.Value = "Information Technology";

### Generic Class Characteristics

* A generic class increases the reusability. The more type parameters mean more reusable it becomes. However, too much generalization makes code difficult to understand and maintain.
* A generic class can be a base class to other generic or non-generic classes or abstract classes.
* A generic class can be derived from other generic or non-generic interfaces, classes, or abstract classes.

## Generic Fields

A generic class can include generic fields. However, it cannot be initialized.

Example: Generic Field

class DataStore<T>

{

public T data;

}

The following declares a generic array.

Example: Generic Array

class DataStore<T>

{

public T[] data = new T[10];

}

## Generic Methods

A method declared with the type parameters for its return type or parameters is called a generic method.

Example: Generic Methods

class DataStore<T>

{

private T[] \_data = new T[10];

public void AddOrUpdate(int index, T item)

{

if(index >= 0 && index < 10)

\_data[index] = item;

}

public T GetData(int index)

{

if(index >= 0 && index < 10)

return \_data[index];

else

return default(T);

}

}

Above, the AddorUpdate() and the GetData() methods are generic methods. The actual data type of the item parameter will be specified at the time of instantiating the DataStore<T> class, as shown below.

Example: Generic Methods

DataStore<string> cities = new DataStore<string>();

cities.AddOrUpdate(0, "Mumbai");

cities.AddOrUpdate(1, "Chicago");

cities.AddOrUpdate(2, "London");

DataStore<int> empIds = new DataStore<int>();

empIds.AddOrUpdate(0, 50);

empIds.AddOrUpdate(1, 65);

empIds.AddOrUpdate(2, 89);

The generic parameter type can be used with multiple parameters with or without non-generic parameters and return type. The followings are valid generic method overloading.

Example: Generic Method Overloading

public void AddOrUpdate(int index, T data) { }

public void AddOrUpdate(T data1, T data2) { }

public void AddOrUpdate<U>(T data1, U data2) { }

public void AddOrUpdate(T data) { }

A non-generic class can include generic methods by specifying a type parameter in angle brackets with the method name, as shown below.

Example: Generic Method in Non-generic Class

class Printer

{

public void Print<T>(T data)

{

Console.WriteLine(data);

}

}

Printer printer = new Printer();

printer.Print<int>(100);

printer.Print(200); // type infer from the specified value

printer.Print<string>("Hello");

printer.Print("World!"); // type infer from the specified value

## Advantages of Generics

1. Generics increase the reusability of the code. You don't need to write code to handle different data types.
2. Generics are type-safe. You get compile-time errors if you try to use a different data type than the one specified in the definition.
3. Generic has a performance advantage because it removes the possibilities of boxing and unboxing.

## More Examples

// C# program to show working of

// user defined Generic classes

**using** System;

// We use < > to specify Parameter type

**public** **class** GFG<T> {

    // private data members

**private** T data;

    // using properties

**public** T value

    {

        // using accessors

**get**

        {

**return** **this**.data;

        }

**set**

        {

**this**.data = value;

        }

    }

}

// Driver class

**class** Test {

    // Main method

**static** **void** Main(**string**[] args)

    {

        // instance of string type

        GFG<**string**> name = **new** GFG<**string**>();

        name.value = "GeeksforGeeks";

        // instance of float type

        GFG<**float**> version = **new** GFG<**float**>();

        version.value = 5.0F;

        // display GeeksforGeeks

        Console.WriteLine(name.value);

        // display 5

        Console.WriteLine(version.value);

    }

}

**Output:**

GeeksforGeeks

5

**Explanation:** The preceding example defines a generic class, GFG, which uses a generic type parameter ‘T’. In the Main() method, two instances of GFG have been created by replacing ‘T’ with ‘string’ and ‘float’ data types. These objects are used to store ‘string’ and ‘float’ values respectively. The GFG class ensures type safety by accepting the required type in its constructor.

**A Generic method with various parameters:** Just as a method can take one argument, generics can take various parameters. One argument can be passed as a familiar type and other as a generic type, as shown below:

**Example**:

// C# program to show multiple

// type parameters in Generics

**using** System;

**public** **class** GFG {

    // Generics method

**public** **void** Display<TypeOfValue>(**string** msg, TypeOfValue value)

    {

        Console.WriteLine("{0}:{1}", msg, value);

    }

}

// Driver class

**public** **class** Example {

    // Main Method

**public** **static** **int** Main()

    {

        // creating object of class GFG

        GFG p = **new** GFG();

        // calling Generics method

        p.Display<**int**>("Integer", 122);

        p.Display<**char**>("Character", 'H');

        p.Display<**double**>("Decimal", 255.67);

**return** 0;

    }

}

**Output**:

Integer:122

Character:H

Decimal:255.67

## Features of Generics

Generics is a technique that improves your programs in many ways such as:

* It helps you in code reuse, performance and type safety.
* You can create your own generic classes, methods, interfaces and delegates.
* You can create generic collection classes. The .NET framework class library contains many new generic collection classes in System.Collections.Generic namespace.
* You can get information on the types used in generic data type at run-time.

## Advantages of Generics

* **Reusability:** You can use a single generic type definition for multiple purposes in the same code without any alterations. For example, you can create a generic method to add two numbers. This method can be used to add two integers as well as two floats without any modification in the code.
* **Type Safety:** Generic data types provide better type safety, especially in the case of collections. When using generics, you need to define the type of objects to be passed to a collection. This helps the compiler to ensure that only those object types that are defined in the definition can be passed to the collection.
* **Performance:** Generic types provide better performance as compared to normal system types because they reduce the need for boxing, unboxing, and typecasting of variables or objects.

## The yield Keyword

yield statement - provide the next element.

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: GeneralDemos/YieldDemo

You use the yield statement in an [iterator](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/iterators) to provide the next value or signal the end of an iteration. The yield statement has the two following forms:

* yield return: to provide the next value in iteration, as the following example shows:

foreach (int i in ProduceEvenNumbers(9))

{

Console.Write(i);

Console.Write(" ");

}

// Output: 0 2 4 6 8

IEnumerable<int> ProduceEvenNumbers(int upto)

{

for (int i = 0; i <= upto; i += 2)

{

yield return i;

}

}

* yield break: to explicitly signal the end of iteration, as the following example shows:

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(" ", TakeWhilePositive(new[] { 2, 3, 4, 5, -1, 3, 4})));

// Output: 2 3 4 5

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(" ", TakeWhilePositive(new[] { 9, 8, 7 })));

// Output: 9 8 7

IEnumerable<int> TakeWhilePositive(IEnumerable<int> numbers)

{

foreach (int n in numbers)

{

if (n > 0)

{

yield return n;

}

else

{

yield break;

}

}

}

Iteration also finishes when control reaches the end of an iterator.

# C# - Lambda Expressions

C# Lambda Expression is a short block of code that accepts parameters and returns a value. It is defined as an anonymous function (function without a name). For example,

num => num \* 7

Here, num is an input parameter and num \* 7 is a return value. The lambda expression does not execute on its own. Instead, we use it inside other methods or variables.

## How to Define a Lambda Expression

We can define lambda expression in C# as,

(parameterList) => lambda body

Here,

* parameterList - list of input parameters
  + - - a lambda operator
* lambda body - can be an expression or statement

Based on lambda body, the C# lambda expression is divided into two types.

## Types of Lambda Expression

The two types of lambda expressions are:

1. Expression Lambda
2. Statement Lambda

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos>

**Project**: GeneralDemos

### **Expression Lambda:**

Expression lambda contains a single expression in the lambda body. For example,

(int num) => num \* 5;

The above expression lambda contains a single expression num \* 5 in the lambda body. It takes an int input, multiplies it by **5**, and returns the output.

### **Statement Lambda**

Statement lambda encloses one or more statements in the lambda body. We use curly braces {} to wrap the statements. For example,

(int a, int b) =>

{

var sum = a + b;

return sum;

};

The above expression is a statement lambda which contains two statements in the lambda body. This takes two int inputs and returns its sum.

Let's see examples to get a clear understanding of C# lambda.

## Example: C# Expression Lambda

using System;

class Program

{

static void Main()

{

// expression lambda that returns the square of a number

var square = (int num) => num \* num;

// passing input to the expression lambda

Console.WriteLine("Square of number: " + square(5));

}

}

**Output**

Square of number: 25

In the above example, the expression lambda is

(int num) => num \* num;

Here, the expression lambda returns the square of num. We have then assigned the expression lambda to the square variable.

So, when we pass **5** as an input in square, we get **25** as an output.

## Example: C# Statement Lambda

using System;

class Program

{

static void Main()

{

// statement lambda that takes two int inputs and returns the sum

var resultingSum = (int a, int b) =>

{

int calculatedSum = a + b;

return calculatedSum;

};

// find the sum of 5 and 6

Console.WriteLine("Total sum: " + resultingSum(5, 6));

}

}

**Output**

Total sum: 11

In the above example, we have used the statement lambda as,

(int a, int b) =>

{

int calculatedSum = a + b;

return calculatedSum;

}

Here, the statement lambda takes two integer parameters - a and b. On the right side of the lambda operator => we have enclosed two statements that:

* calculate the sum of a and b
* return the sum

# C# - Local Methods / Functions

<https://www.geeksforgeeks.org/local-function-in-c-sharp/>

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/local-functions>

The local function feature is introduced in **C# 7.0**. It allows you to declare a method inside the body of an already defined method. Or in other words, we can say that a local function is a private function of a function whose scope is limited to that function in which it is created. The type of local function is similar to the type of function in which it is defined. You can only call the local function from their container members.  
**Important Points:**

* Local functions are declared inside methods, constructors, property accessors, event accessors, anonymous methods, lambda expressions, finalizers, and other local functions.
* You cannot declare a local function in the expression-bodied member.
* Local function makes your program more readable and also save you from mistakenly call method because you cannot call a local function directly.
* In local function, you are allowed to use *async*and *unsafe*modifiers.
* Local function can access the local variables that are defined inside the container method including method parameters.
* You are not allowed to use any member access modifiers in the local function definition, including private keyword because they are by default private and you are not allowed to make them public.
* You are also not allowed to use static keyword with local function.
* You are also not allowed to apply attributes to the local function, or to its parameters, or to its parameter type.
* Multiple local functions are allowed.
* Overloading is not allowed for local functions.

**Example #1**:

**using** System;

**public** **class** Program {

    // Main method

**public** **static** **void** Main()

    {

        // Local Function

**void** AddValue(**int** a, **int** b)

        {

            Console.WriteLine("Value of a **is**: " + a);

            Console.WriteLine("Value of b **is**: " + b);

            Console.WriteLine("Sum of a and b **is**: {0}", a + b);

            Console.WriteLine();

        }

        // Calling Local function

        AddValue(20, 40);

        AddValue(40, 60);

    }

}

**Example #2**:

C# program to illustrate local function accessing the variable of the container function.

**using** System;

**public** **class** Program {

    // Main method

**public** **static** **void** Main()

    {

        // Variables of main method

**int** x = 40;

**int** y = 60;

        // Local Function

**void** AddValue(**int** a, **int** b)

        {

            Console.WriteLine("Value of a **is**: " + a);

            Console.WriteLine("Value of b **is**: " + b);

            Console.WriteLine("Value of x **is**: " + x);

            Console.WriteLine("Value of y **is**: " + y);

            Console.WriteLine("Sum: {0}", a + b + x + y);

            Console.WriteLine();

        }

        // Calling Local function

        AddValue(50, 80);

        AddValue(79, 70);

    }

}

**Example #3**:

C# program to illustrate how to create local generic function.

**using** System;

**public** **class** Program {

    // Main method

**public** **static** **void** Main()

    {

        // Local Generic Function

**void** MyMethod<MyValue>(MyValue value)

        {

            Console.WriteLine("Value **is**: " + value);

        }

        // Calling local generic function

        MyMethod<**int**>(123);

        MyMethod<**string**>("Welcome to Local Functions in C#.");

        MyMethod<**char**>('A');

        MyMethod<**double**>(45453.5656);

    }

}

## Local functions and exceptions

One of the useful features of local functions is that they can allow exceptions to surface immediately. For iterator methods, exceptions are surfaced only when the returned sequence is enumerated, and not when the iterator is retrieved. For async methods, any exceptions thrown in an async method are observed when the returned task is awaited.

The following example defines an OddSequence method that enumerates odd numbers in a specified range. Because it passes a number greater than 100 to the OddSequence enumerator method, the method throws an [ArgumentOutOfRangeException](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.argumentoutofrangeexception). As the output from the example shows, the exception surfaces only when you iterate the numbers, and not when you retrieve the enumerator.

### Example

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: YieldDemos

**Methods**: IteratorWithoutLocalExample() and OddSequence()

static void IteratorWithoutLocalExample()

{

IEnumerable<int> xs = OddSequence(50, 110);

Console.WriteLine("Retrieved enumerator...");

foreach (var x in xs) // line 11

{

Console.Write($"{x} ");

}

}

static IEnumerable<int> OddSequence(int start, int end)

{

if (start < 0 || start > 99)

throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(start), "start must be between 0 and 99.");

if (end > 100)

throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(end), "end must be less than or equal to 100.");

if (start >= end)

throw new ArgumentException("start must be less than end.");

for (int i = start; i <= end; i++)

{

if (i % 2 == 1)

yield return i;

}

}

If you put iterator logic into a local function, argument validation exceptions are thrown when you retrieve the enumerator, as the following example shows:

**Project**: YieldDemos

**Methods**: IteratorWithLocalExample() and OddSequence2()

static void IteratorWithLocalExample()

{

IEnumerable<int> xs = OddSequence2(50, 110);

Console.WriteLine("Retrieved enumerator...");

foreach (var x in xs) // line 11

{

Console.Write($"{x} ");

}

}

public static IEnumerable<int> OddSequence2(int start, int end)

{

if (start < 0 || start > 99)

throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(start), "start must be between 0 and 99.");

if (end > 100)

throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(end), "end must be less than or equal to 100.");

if (start >= end)

throw new ArgumentException("start must be less than end.");

return GetOddSequenceEnumerator();

IEnumerable<int> GetOddSequenceEnumerator()

{

for (int i = start; i <= end; i++)

{

if (i % 2 == 1)

yield return i;

}

}

}

## Local functions vs. lambda expressions

At first glance, local functions and [lambda expressions](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/operators/lambda-expressions) are very similar. In many cases, the choice between using lambda expressions and local functions is a [matter of style and personal preference](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/fundamentals/code-analysis/style-rules/ide0039). However, there are real differences in where you can use one or the other that you should be aware of.

Local functions are explicitly named like methods. Lambda expressions are anonymous methods and need to be assigned to variables of a delegate type, typically either Action or Func types. When you declare a local function, the process is like writing a normal method; you declare a return type and a function signature.

Let's examine the differences between the local function and lambda expression implementations of the factorial algorithm. Here's the version using a local function:

public static int LocalFunctionFactorial(int n)

{

return nthFactorial(n);

int nthFactorial(int number) => number < 2

? 1

: number \* nthFactorial(number - 1);

}

This version uses lambda expressions:

public static int LambdaFactorial(int n)

{

Func<int, int> nthFactorial = default(Func<int, int>);

nthFactorial = number => number < 2

? 1

: number \* nthFactorial(number - 1);

return nthFactorial(n);

}

## Usage of the yield keyword

One final advantage not demonstrated in this sample is that local functions can be implemented as iterators, using the yield return syntax to produce a sequence of values.

public IEnumerable<string> SequenceToLowercase(IEnumerable<string> input)

{

if (!input.Any())

{

throw new ArgumentException("There are no items to convert to lowercase.");

}

return LowercaseIterator();

IEnumerable<string> LowercaseIterator()

{

foreach (var output in input.Select(item => item.ToLower()))

{

yield return output;

}

}

}

The yield return statement is not allowed in lambda expressions.

While local functions may seem redundant to lambda expressions, they actually serve different purposes and have different uses. Local functions are more efficient for the case when you want to write a function that is called only from the context of another method.

# C# - Logging (Serilog)

We shall be leveraging **DI** (Dependency Injection) framework to inject the Serilog logger object into the Console application pipeline.

Unlike ASP.NET Core the Console application doesn’t have dependency injection by default.

In ASP.NET WebAPI it was easy to configure and use **ILogger**through DI.

**ILogger**interface works very nicely with the .NET Core ecosystem and today in this post we will learn how to enable logging in to a .NET Core Console application.

*File/Rolling file logging providers are still not available through the .NET Core Framework. We need to rely on external solutions for high-end logging requirements like file or database logging.*

*Microsoft recommends using a third-party logger framework like a****Serilog****or****NLog****and many other frameworks for other high-end logging requirements like****Database or File/Rolling File logging****.*

## Minimum level

Serilog implements the common concept of a 'minimum level' for log event processing.

Log.Logger = new LoggerConfiguration()

.MinimumLevel.Debug()

.WriteTo.Console()

.CreateLogger();

The MinimumLevel configuration object provides for one of the log event levels to be specified as the minimum. In the example above, log events with level Debug and higher will be processed and ultimately written to the console.

**Default Level** - if no MinimumLevel is specified, then Information level events and higher will be processed.

| **Level** | **Usage** |
| --- | --- |
| Verbose | Verbose is the noisiest level, rarely (if ever) enabled for a production app. |
| Debug | Debug is used for internal system events that are not necessarily observable from the outside, but useful when determining how something happened. |
| Information | Information events describe things happening in the system that correspond to its responsibilities and functions. Generally, these are the observable actions the system can perform. |
| Warning | When service is degraded, endangered, or may be behaving outside of its expected parameters, Warning level events are used. |
| Error | When functionality is unavailable or expectations broken, an Error event is used. |
| Fatal | The most critical level, Fatal events demand immediate attention. |

## Getting Started

### Let’s create a .NET Core Console application

Here I have used the .NET Core 3.1 or .NET 5 Console application, but the below technique will work in any lower version also.

Update the **Main()**method as below,

**static** **void** Main(**string**[] args)

        {

**var** services = **new** ServiceCollection();

            ConfigureServices(services);

**using** (ServiceProvider serviceProvider = services.BuildServiceProvider())

            {

                MyApplication app = serviceProvider.GetService<MyApplication>();

                app.Run();

            }

        }

Above is a basic DI Container code which will help us in doing DI (Dependency Injection) of logger or business objects.

Please add below NuGet packages explicitly to your application.

* Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection
* Microsoft.Extensions.Logging
* Serilog.Extensions.Logging

### Add basic File Logging

Install-Package **Serilog.Sinks.File** -Version 4.1.0

**private** **static** **void** ConfigureServices(ServiceCollection services)

       {

           services.AddTransient<MyApplication>()

                   .AddScoped<IBusinessLayer, CBusinessLayer>()

                   .AddSingleton<IDataAccessLayer, CDataAccessLayer>();

**var** serilogLogger = **new** LoggerConfiguration()

           .WriteTo.File("TheCodeBuzz.txt")

           .CreateLogger();

           services.AddLogging(builder =>

           {

               builder.SetMinimumLevel(LogLevel.Information);

               builder.AddSerilog(logger: serilogLogger, dispose: **true**);

           });

In the above code, we added logging and custom Startup MyApplication to services collection and built the ***ServiceProvider***for the required services which include **Serilog**object and other business objects.

### Add Rolling File Logging

If you need to enable rolling file logging please install below NuGet package.

Install-Package **Serilog.Sinks.RollingFile** -Version 3.3.0

Updated ConfigureServices method as below,

**AddTransient()** - This method creates a Transient service. A new instance of a Transient service is created each time it is requested.

**AddScoped()** - This method creates a Scoped service. A new instance of a Scoped service is created once per request within the scope. For example, in a web application it creates 1 instance per each http request but uses the same instance in the other calls within that same web request.

**private** **static** **void** ConfigureServices(ServiceCollection services)

        {

            services.AddTransient<MyApplication>()

                    .AddScoped<IBusinessLayer, CBusinessLayer>()

                    .AddSingleton<IDataAccessLayer, CDataAccessLayer>();

**var** serilogLogger = **new** LoggerConfiguration()

            .WriteTo.RollingFile("Rolling-TheCodeBuzz.txt")

            .CreateLogger();

            services.AddLogging(builder =>

            {

                builder.SetMinimumLevel(LogLevel.Information);

                builder.AddSerilog(logger: serilogLogger, dispose: **true**);

            });

        }

Implementation for class ‘MyApplication’ as below,



Let’s run the application and check log file generated in a file.

Log files shall be generated in the app root folder itself by default (if the path is not specified).



## Another Example

We are going to build a sample application which will mimic connecting to a database through dependency injection as well as outputting logs.

We will start by creating our application, inside our terminal

dotnet new console -n "SampleApp"

Once the application has been create, open the application in Visual Studio Code and let us build and the application to make sure everything is working.

dotnet build

dotnet run

The next step is installing the packages that we need.

**.NET 6**:

dotnet add <CSPROJ PATH> package Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting

dotnet add <CSPROJ PATH> package Serilog.Extensions.Hosting

dotnet add <CSPROJ PATH> package Serilog.Settings.Configuration

dotnet add <CSPROJ PATH> package Serilog.Sinks.Console

**Before .NET 6**:

dotnet add package Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting

dotnet add package Serilog.Extensions.Hosting

dotnet add package Serilog.Settings.Configuration

dotnet add package Serilog.Sinks.Console

The next step will be adding our appsettings.json, to do that in root directory of our application right-click select New File. Name the file appsettings.json

Inside the appsettings we are going to add all of the configuration that we need to setup serilog as well as the connectionString to mimic a database connection

{

"Serilog" : {

"MinimalLevel": {

"Default": "Information",

"Override": {

"Microsoft": "Information",

"System": "Warning"

}

}

},

"ConnectionStrings": {

"DefaultConnection": "DataSource=app.db;Cache=Shared"

}

}

We will start by implementing the logging mechanism. Inside our Program.cs Add the following code, this code responsibility is reading the appsetting.json and making it available to our application.

static void BuildConfig(IConfigurationBuilder builder)

{

// Check the current directory that the application is running on

// Then once the file 'appsetting.json' is found, we are adding it.

// We add env variables, which can override the configs in appsettings.json

builder.SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())

.AddJsonFile("appsettings.json", optional: false, reloadOnChange: true)

.AddEnvironmentVariables();

}

Now we need to create another method which will be out startup method for our application, it will responsible to put everything together. We will define Serilog as well our dependency injection mechanism in .Net Core.

static IHost AppStartup()

{

var builder = new ConfigurationBuilder();

BuildConfig(builder);

// Specifying the configuration for serilog

Log.Logger = new LoggerConfiguration() // initiate the logger configuration

.ReadFrom.Configuration(builder.Build()) // connect serilog to our configuration folder

.Enrich.FromLogContext() //Adds more information to our logs from built in Serilog

.WriteTo.Console() // decide where the logs are going to be shown

.CreateLogger(); //initialise the logger

Log.Logger.Information("Application Starting");

var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder() // Initialising the Host

.ConfigureServices((context, services) => { // Adding the DI container for configuration

})

.UseSerilog() // Add Serilog

.Build(); // Build the Host

return host;

}

Now let us implement data service which will mimic a database

Let us create a new class called DataService and an interface called IDataService

// Interface

public interface IDataService

{

void Connect();

}

// Class

public class DataService : IDataService

{

private readonly ILogger<DataService> \_log;

private readonly IConfiguration \_config;

public DataService(ILogger<DataService> log, IConfiguration config)

{

\_log = log;

\_config = config;

}

public void Connect()

{

// Connect to the database

var connectionString = \_config.GetValue<string>("ConnectionStrings:DefaultConnection");

\_log.LogInformation("Connection String {cs}", connectionString);

}

}

Now we need to update our AppStartup method in the Program.cs class to inject the DataService

var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder() // Initialising the Host

.ConfigureServices((context, services) => { // Adding the DI container for configuration

\*\*services.AddTransient<IDataService, DataService>(); // Add transient mean give me an instance each time it is being requested.\*\*

})

.UseSerilog() // Add Serilog

.Build(); // Build the Host

And finally let us put everything together in our main method

static void Main(string[] args)

{

var host = AppStartup();

var service = ActivatorUtilities.CreateInstance<DataService>(host.Services);

service.Connect();

}

## Serilog Configuration File

Add the following settings to the appsettings.json file:

"Serilog": {

"Using": [ "Serilog.Sinks.Console" ],

"MinimumLevel": {

"Default": "Verbose",

"Override": {

"Microsoft": "Warning",

"Microsoft.AspNetCore": "Warning",

"System": "Error"

}

},

"WriteTo": [

{

"Name": "Async",

"Args": {

"configure": [

{

"Name": "Console",

"Args": {

"formatter": "Serilog.Formatting.Compact.RenderedCompactJsonFormatter, Serilog.Formatting.Compact"

}

}

]

}

}

]

}

The Using section defines the types of Sinks that will be used. A **Sink** is just the destination of the logs. So, just **download the Serilog.Sinks.Console NuGet package** and add that value to the Using array to use the Console as a Sink.

Then, we have the MinimumLevel object: it defines the minimum levels of logs that will be taken into consideration. Here the default value is Verbose, but you'll probably want it to be Warning in your production environment. In this way, all the logs with a level lower than Warning will be ignored.

Lastly, we have the WriteTo section, which defines the exact configurations of the sinks. Notice the Async value: we need this value because writing logs is an asynchronous operation - logs must be printed in real-time. So, **after you've installed the Serilog.Sinks.Async NuGet package**, you must add the Async value to that object. And then you can configure the different Sinks: here I'm adding some simple JSON Formatters to the Console Sink.

## File Sink

Add the following settings to the appsettings.json file:

"Serilog": {

"Using": [ "Serilog.Sinks.Console", "Serilog.Sinks.File" ],

:

},

"WriteTo": [

{

:

},

{

"Name": "Logger",

"Args": {

"configureLogger": {

"WriteTo": [

{

"Name": "File",

"Args": {

"path": "Logs/applog\_.log",

"outputTemplate": "{Timestamp:o} [Thread:{ThreadId}] [{Level:u3}] ({SourceContext}) {Message}{NewLine}{Exception}",

"rollingInterval": "Day",

"retainedFileCountLimit": 7

}

}

]

}

}

}

]

}

## Overriding per sink

Sometimes it is desirable to write detailed logs to one medium, but less detailed logs to another.

Log.Logger = new LoggerConfiguration()

.MinimumLevel.Debug()

.WriteTo.File("log.txt")

.WriteTo.Console(restrictedToMinimumLevel: LogEventLevel.Information)

.CreateLogger();

In this example debug logs will be written to the rolling file, while only Information level logs and higher will be written to the console.

All provided sinks support the restrictedToMinimumLevel configuration parameter.

**Logger vs. sink minimums** - it is important to realize that the logging level can only be raised for sinks, not lowered. So, if the logger's MinimumLevel is set to Information then a sink with Debug as its specified level will still only see Information level events. This is because the logger-level configuration controls which logging statements will result in the creation of events, while the sink-level configuration only filters these. To create a single logger with a more verbose level, use a separate LoggerConfiguration.

## Enrichers

Enrichers are simple components that add, remove or modify the properties attached to a log event. This can be used for the purpose of attaching a thread id to each event, for example.

class ThreadIdEnricher : ILogEventEnricher

{

public void Enrich(LogEvent logEvent, ILogEventPropertyFactory propertyFactory)

{

logEvent.AddPropertyIfAbsent(propertyFactory.CreateProperty(

"ThreadId", Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId));

}

}

Enrichers are added using the Enrich configuration object.

Log.Logger = new LoggerConfiguration()

.Enrich.With(new ThreadIdEnricher())

.WriteTo.Console(

outputTemplate: "{Timestamp:HH:mm} [{Level}] ({ThreadId}) {Message}{NewLine}{Exception}")

.CreateLogger();

The configuration above shows how a property added by an enricher can be used in output formatting.

If the enriched property value is constant throughout the application run, the shortcut WithProperty method can be used to simplify configuration.

Log.Logger = new LoggerConfiguration()

.Enrich.WithProperty("Version", "1.0.0")

.WriteTo.Console()

.CreateLogger();

Enrichers and the properties they attach are generally more useful with sinks that use structured storage, where the property values can be viewed and filtered.

## Refs

<https://github.com/serilog/serilog/wiki/Configuration-Basics>

<https://www.code4it.dev/blog/serilog-log-on-console>

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/40880261/configuring-serilog-rollingfile-with-appsettings-json>

<https://ivorywolf.medium.com/ive-used-the-ubiquitous-log4net-for-as-long-as-i-can-remember-4cfdd60f8b65>

<https://betterstack.com/community/guides/logging/net/how-to-start-logging-with-serilog>

# Extension Methods

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/extension-methods>

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/uploadfile/puranindia/extension-methods-in-C-Sharp-3-0/>

Extension methods enable you to "add" methods to existing types without creating a new derived type, recompiling, or otherwise modifying the original type. Extension methods are static methods, but they're called as if they were instance methods on the extended type.

The following example shows an extension method defined for the [System.String](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.string) class. It's defined inside a non-nested, non-generic static class:

namespace ExtensionMethods

{

public static class MyExtensions

{

public static int WordCount(this string str)

{

return str.Split(new char[] { ' ', '.', '?' },

StringSplitOptions.RemoveEmptyEntries).Length;

}

}

}

The WordCount extension method can be brought into scope with this using directive:

using ExtensionMethods;

And it can be called from an application by using this syntax:

string s = "Hello Extension Methods";

int i = s.WordCount();

You invoke the extension method in your code with instance method syntax. The intermediate language (IL) generated by the compiler translates your code into a call on the static method. The principle of encapsulation is not really being violated. Extension methods cannot access private variables in the type they are extending.

Both the MyExtensions class and the WordCount method are static, and it can be accessed like all other static members. The WordCount method can be invoked like other static methods as follows:

string s = "Hello Extension Methods";

int i = MyExtensions.WordCount(s);

The preceding C# code:

* Declares and assigns a new string named s with a value of "Hello Extension Methods".
* Calls MyExtensions.WordCount given argument s

## Example #2

**Class1.cs**

using System;

using System.Text;

namespace ExtensionMethodDemo

{

public class Class1

{

public string Display()

{

return ("I m in Display");

}

public string Print()

{

return ("I m in Print");

}

}

}

**MyExtensions.cs**

using System;

using System.Text;

namespace ExtensionMethodDemo

{

public static class MyExtensions

{

public static void NewMethod(this Class1 ob)

{

Console.WriteLine("Hello I m extended method");

}

}

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Class1 ob = new Class1();

ob.Display();

ob.Print();

ob.NewMethod();

Console.ReadKey();

}

}

}

# C# - Record

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/record>

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/article/c-sharp-9-0-introduction-to-record-types/>

Beginning with C# 9, you use the record modifier to define a [reference type](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/reference-types) that provides built-in functionality for encapsulating data. C# 10 allows the record class syntax as a synonym to clarify a reference type, and record struct to define a [value type](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/builtin-types/value-types) with similar functionality.

When you declare a [primary constructor](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/instance-constructors#primary-constructors) on a record, the compiler generates public properties for the primary constructor parameters. The primary constructor parameters to a record are referred to as positional parameters. The compiler creates positional properties that mirror the primary constructor or positional parameters. The compiler doesn't synthesize properties for primary constructor parameters on types that don't have the record modifier.

The following two examples demonstrate record (or record class) reference types:

public record Person(string FirstName, string LastName);

public record Person

{

public required string FirstName { get; init; }

public required string LastName { get; init; }

};

The following two examples demonstrate record struct value types:

public readonly record struct Point(double X, double Y, double Z);

public record struct Point

{

public double X { get; init; }

public double Y { get; init; }

public double Z { get; init; }

}

You can also create records with mutable properties and fields:

public record Person

{

public required string FirstName { get; set; }

public required string LastName { get; set; }

};

Record structs can be mutable as well, both positional record structs and record structs with no positional parameters:

public record struct DataMeasurement(DateTime TakenAt, double Measurement);

public record struct Point

{

public double X { get; set; }

public double Y { get; set; }

public double Z { get; set; }

}

While records can be mutable, they're primarily intended for supporting immutable data models. They also have support for inheritance.

The preceding examples show some distinctions between records that are reference types and records that are value types:

* A record or a record class declares a reference type. The class keyword is optional, but can add clarity for readers. A record struct declares a value type.
* Positional properties are *immutable* in a record class and a readonly record struct. They're *mutable* in a record struct.

**Example:**

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: RecordTypeDemos

**Example #1**: PersonDemo()

public record Person(string FirstName, string LastName);

public record Person2

{

public string FirstName { get; set; }

public string LastName { get; set; }

public string City { get; init; }

}

static void PersonDemo()

{

Person person = new("Nancy", "Davolio");

Console.WriteLine(person);

Console.WriteLine($"{person.FirstName} {person.LastName}");

////person.FirstName = "John"; // ERROR!

//Person2 person2 = new Person2 { City = "NYC" };

//person2.FirstName = "Nancy";

//person2.LastName = "Davolio";

////person2.City = "Dallas"; // ERROR!

//Console.WriteLine(person);

//Console.WriteLine($"{person.FirstName} {person.LastName}");

//person2.FirstName = "John";

//Console.WriteLine(person2);

}

## Immutability

A positional record and a positional readonly record struct declare init-only properties. A positional record struct declares read-write properties. You can override either of those defaults, as shown in the previous section.

Immutability can be useful when you need a data-centric type to be thread-safe or you're depending on a hash code remaining the same in a hash table. Immutability isn't appropriate for all data scenarios, however. [Entity Framework Core](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/), for example, doesn't support updating with immutable entity types.

Init-only properties, whether created from positional parameters (record class, and readonly record struct) or by specifying init accessors, have shallow immutability. After initialization, you can't change the value of value-type properties or the reference of reference-type properties. However, the data that a reference-type property refers to can be changed. The following example shows that the content of a reference-type immutable property (an array in this case) is mutable:

**Example #2**: ImmutabilityDemo().

public record Person3(string FirstName, string LastName, string[] PhoneNumbers);

static void ImmutabilityDemo()

{

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("ImmutabilityDemo()...");

Person3 person = new("Nancy", "Davolio", new string[1] { "555-1234" });

Console.WriteLine(person.PhoneNumbers[0]); // output: 555-1234

person.PhoneNumbers[0] = "555-6789";

Console.WriteLine(person.PhoneNumbers[0]); // output: 555-6789

}

## Value equality

If you don't override or replace equality methods, the type you declare governs how equality is defined:

* For class types, two objects are equal if they refer to the same object in memory.
* For struct types, two objects are equal if they are of the same type and store the same values.
* For types with the record modifier (record class, record struct, and readonly record struct), two objects are equal if they are of the same type and store the same values.

The definition of equality for a record struct is the same as for a struct. The difference is that for a struct, the implementation is in [ValueType.Equals(Object)](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.valuetype.equals#system-valuetype-equals(system-object)) and relies on reflection. For records, the implementation is compiler synthesized and uses the declared data members.

Reference equality is required for some data models. For example, [Entity Framework Core](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/) depends on reference equality to ensure that it uses only one instance of an entity type for what is conceptually one entity. For this reason, records and record structs aren't appropriate for use as entity types in Entity Framework Core.

The following example illustrates value equality of record types:

**Example #3**: ValueEqualityDemo()

public record Person4(string FirstName, string LastName, string[] PhoneNumbers);

public static void ValueEqualityDemo()

{

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("ValueEqualityDemo()...");

var phoneNumbers = new string[2];

Person4 person1 = new("Nancy", "Davolio", phoneNumbers);

Person4 person2 = new("Nancy", "Davolio", phoneNumbers);

Console.WriteLine(person1 == person2); // output: True

person1.PhoneNumbers[0] = "555-1234";

Console.WriteLine(person1 == person2); // output: True

Console.WriteLine(ReferenceEquals(person1, person2)); // output: False

}

## Nondestructive mutation (using *with*)

If you need to copy an instance with some modifications, you can use a with expression to achieve nondestructive mutation. A with expression makes a new record instance that is a copy of an existing record instance, with specified properties and fields modified. You use [object initializer](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/classes-and-structs/object-and-collection-initializers) syntax to specify the values to be changed, as shown in the following example:

Example #4: NonDestructiveMutationDemo ()

public record Person5(string FirstName, string LastName)

{

public string[] PhoneNumbers { get; init; }

}

public static void NonDestructiveMutationDemo()

{

Person5 person1 = new("Nancy", "Davolio") { PhoneNumbers = new string[1] };

Console.WriteLine($"Person 1: {person1}");

// output: Person { FirstName = Nancy, LastName = Davolio, PhoneNumbers = System.String[] }

Person5 person2 = person1 with { FirstName = "John" };

Console.WriteLine($"Person 2: {person2}");

// output: Person { FirstName = John, LastName = Davolio, PhoneNumbers = System.String[] }

Console.WriteLine($"person1 == person2? {person1 == person2}"); // output: False

person2 = person1 with { PhoneNumbers = new string[2] };

Console.WriteLine($"Person 2 after PhoneNumbers: {person2}");

// output: Person { FirstName = Nancy, LastName = Davolio, PhoneNumbers = System.String[] }

Console.WriteLine($"Person 1 PhoneNumbers Count: {person1.PhoneNumbers.Count()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Person 2 PhoneNumbers Count: {person2.PhoneNumbers.Count()}");

person2.PhoneNumbers[0] = "555-7890";

Console.WriteLine($"Person 1 PhoneNumbers: {person1.PhoneNumbers[0]}");

Console.WriteLine($"Person 2 PhoneNumbers: {person2.PhoneNumbers[0]}");

Console.WriteLine($"person1 == person2? {person1 == person2}"); // output: False

person2 = person1 with { };

Console.WriteLine($"Person 1 without 'with': {person1}");

Console.WriteLine($"Person 2 without 'with': {person2}");

Console.WriteLine($"person1 == person2? {person1 == person2}"); // output: True

}

The with expression can set positional properties or properties created by using standard property syntax. Explicitly declared properties must have an init or set accessor to be changed in a with expression.

The result of a with expression is a shallow copy, which means that for a reference property, only the reference to an instance is copied. Both the original record and the copy end up with a reference to the same instance.

## Positional parameters in derived record types

The derived record declares positional parameters for all the parameters in the base record primary constructor. The base record declares and initializes those properties. The derived record doesn't hide them, but only creates and initializes properties for parameters that aren't declared in its base record.

The following example illustrates inheritance with positional property syntax:

Example: InheritanceDemo()

public abstract record Person6(string FirstName, string LastName);

public record Teacher(string FirstName, string LastName, int Grade)

: Person6(FirstName, LastName);

public static void InheritanceDemo()

{

Person6 teacher = new Teacher("Nancy", "Davolio", 3);

Console.WriteLine(teacher);

// output: Teacher { FirstName = Nancy, LastName = Davolio, Grade = 3 }

}

## Equality in inheritance hierarchies

This section applies to record class types, but not record struct types. For two record variables to be equal, the run-time type must be equal. The types of the containing variables might be different. Inherited equality comparison is illustrated in the following code example:

**Example**: EqualityInInheritanceDemo()

public abstract record Person7(string FirstName, string LastName);

public record Teacher2(string FirstName, string LastName, int Grade)

: Person7(FirstName, LastName);

public record Student(string FirstName, string LastName, int Grade)

: Person7(FirstName, LastName);

public static void EqualityInInheritanceDemo()

{

Person7 teacher = new Teacher2("Nancy", "Davolio", 3);

Person7 student = new Student("Nancy", "Davolio", 3);

Console.WriteLine($"Teacher: {teacher}");

Console.WriteLine($"Student: {student}");

Console.WriteLine($"teacher == student {teacher == student}"); // output: False

Student student2 = new Student("Nancy", "Davolio", 3);

Console.WriteLine($"Student2: {student2}");

Console.WriteLine($"student2 == student {student2 == student}"); // output: True

}

# C# - Attributes

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/advanced-topics/reflection-and-attributes/attribute-tutorial>

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/advanced-topics/reflection-and-attributes/creating-custom-attributes>

<https://www.tutorialspoint.com/csharp/csharp_attributes.htm>

Attributes provide a way of associating information with code in a declarative way. They can also provide a reusable element that can be applied to various targets. Consider the [ObsoleteAttribute](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.obsoleteattribute). It can be applied to classes, structs, methods, constructors, and more. It declares that the element is obsolete. It's then up to the C# compiler to look for this attribute and do some action in response.

[Obsolete]

public class MyClass

{

}

[Obsolete("ThisClass is obsolete. Use ThisClass2 instead.")]

public class ThisClass

{

}

The string is being passed as an argument to an ObsoleteAttribute constructor, as if you were writing var attr = new ObsoleteAttribute("some string").

Parameters to an attribute constructor are limited to simple types/literals: bool, int, double, string, Type, enums, etc and arrays of those types. You can't use an expression or a variable. You're free to use positional or named parameters.

## Custom Attributes

You can create your own custom attributes by defining an attribute class, a class that derives directly or indirectly from [Attribute](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.attribute), which makes identifying attribute definitions in metadata fast and easy.

**Example:**

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/GeneralDemos/GeneralDemos.sln>

**Project**: AttributeDemo

**DeBugInfoAttribute.cs**

[AttributeUsage(

AttributeTargets.Class |

AttributeTargets.Constructor |

AttributeTargets.Field |

AttributeTargets.Method |

AttributeTargets.Property,

AllowMultiple = true)

]

public class DeBugInfoAttribute : System.Attribute

{

public DeBugInfoAttribute(int bugNumber, string developer, string lastReviewOn)

{

BugNo = bugNumber;

Developer = developer;

LastReview = lastReviewOn;

}

public int BugNo { get; }

public string Developer { get; }

public string LastReview { get; }

public string Message { get; set; }

}

**AuthorAttribute.cs**

[AttributeUsage(System.AttributeTargets.Class |

System.AttributeTargets.Struct)

]

public class AuthorAttribute : Attribute

{

private string Name;

public double Version { get; set; }

public AuthorAttribute(string name)

{

Name = name;

Version = 1.0;

}

}

**Rectangle.cs**

[DeBugInfo(45, "John Smith", "12/02/2023", Message = "Return type mismatch")]

[DeBugInfo(49, "Mary Jane", "10/01/2023", Message = "Unused variable")]

[Author("Ajay Singala", Version=0.1)]

public class Rectangle

{

protected double length;

protected double width;

public Rectangle(double l, double w)

{

length = l;

width = w;

}

[DeBugInfo(55, "John Smith", "19/02/2023", Message = "Return type mismatch")]

public double GetArea()

{

return length \* width;

}

[DeBugInfo(56, "John Smith", "19/02/2023")]

public void Display()

{

Console.WriteLine("Length: {0}", length);

Console.WriteLine("Width: {0}", width);

Console.WriteLine("Area: {0}", GetArea());

}

}

AttributeUsage has a named parameter, AllowMultiple, with which you can make a custom attribute single-use or multiuse. In the following code example, a multiuse attribute is created.

[AttributeUsage(System.AttributeTargets.Class |

System.AttributeTargets.Struct,

AllowMultiple = true)

]

You can then apply multiple attributes of the same type to a class:

[Author("John Smith"), Author("Mary Jane", Version = 2.0)]

public class Rectangle

{

// ...

}

You can view the attribute’s metadata for the class where it is applied using ILDASM.

# Unit Testing using xUnit and Mocking using Moq

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/article/moq-mocking-framework-with-xunit-net-testing-fr/>

## What are Mocking Frameworks?

Mocking Frameworks (Moq, NSubstitute, Rhino Mocks, FakeItEasy, and NMock3) are used to create fake objects. We can stub, i.e., completely replace the body of member and function. It is used to isolate each dependency and help developers in performing unit testing in a concise, quick, and reliable way.  
  
Creating mock objects manually is very difficult and time-consuming. So, to increase your productivity, you can go for the automatic generation of mock objects by using a Mocking Framework. A developer can build his/her unit test by using any of the NUnit, MbUnit, MSTest, xUnit etc. unit test frameworks.

**Example:** <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/UnitTestDemos>

* Calculator.Lib
* Calculator.Lib.Tests

**Steps:**

* Create an empty solution.
* Add a class library Calculator.Lib.
* Create an interface ICalculator (ICalcultor.cs) with the following code:

namespace Calculator.Lib

{

public interface ICalculator

{

decimal Add(decimal num1, decimal num2);

decimal Substract(decimal num1, decimal num2);

decimal Multiply(decimal num1, decimal num2);

decimal Divide(decimal num1, decimal num2);

}

}

* So far, we have not implemented interface "ICalculator.cs". Now, let's try to write a unit test case. What do you think? Is it possible to write a unit test case for ICalculator interface without using a mocking framework? Think for a while! No, absolutely not, because you cannot create an instance of an interface so you can't write a unit test for the interface without a mocking framework.
* Add a new xUnit project named Calculator.Lib.Tests to the solution.
* Rename the default class file to CalculatorTests.cs
* Add a Project Reference to the Calculator.Lib project to the test project.
* Add the following code to CalculatorTests.cs:

using Calculator.Lib;

namespace Calculator.Lib.Tests

{

public class CalculatorTests

{

[Fact]

public void PassingTest()

{

// This will not work!

var calculator = new ICalculator();

Assert.Equal(4, calculator.Add(2, 2));

}

}

}

* Error as we cannot instantiate an interface.
* Comment out the code.
* Install the Moq mocking framework. Make sure the Calculator.Lib.Tests is selected.

Install-Package Moq

* Replace the code in CalculatorTests.cs with the following code:

using Calculator.Lib;

using Moq;

namespace Calculator.Lib.Tests

{

public class CalculatorTests

{

[Fact]

public void PassingTest()

{

//// This will not work!

//var calculator = new ICalculator();

//Assert.Equal(4, calculator.Add(2, 2));

var calculator = new Mock<ICalculator>();

calculator.Setup(x => x.Add(2, 2)).Returns(4);

Assert.Equal(4, calculator.Object.Add(2, 2));

}

}

}

* Build the code.
* From the Test Explorer, Run Tests for Calculator.Lib.Tests.
* Passes.
* Create a “fake” class FakeCalculator in the Calculator.Lib project that implements the ICalculator interface:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace Calculator.Lib

{

public class FakeCalculator : ICalculator

{

public decimal Add(decimal num1, decimal num2)

{

return num1 + num2;

}

public decimal Divide(decimal num1, decimal num2)

{

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

public decimal Multiply(decimal num1, decimal num2)

{

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

public decimal Substract(decimal num1, decimal num2)

{

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

}

}

* Only the Add method is implemented.
* Add the following functions to the test class:

public class CalculatorTests

{

[Fact]

public void AddTest()

{

var calculator = new FakeCalculator();

Assert.Equal(5, calculator.Add(2, 3));

}

[Fact]

public void MultiplyTest()

{

var calculator = new FakeCalculator();

Assert.Equal(6, calculator.Multiply(2, 3));

}

:

}

* Run the tests again.
* AddTest() succeeds. But MultiplyTest() fails because we are explicitly throwing an exception.
* We cannot write a meaningful unit test for not-implemented methods without a mock test framework.
* Now, let's try to write the unit test cases for implemented and not implemented methods with a mock testing framework.
* Add the virtual keyword to the FakeCalculator.Multiply method as follows:

public virtual decimal Multiply(decimal num1, decimal num2)

{

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

* Now change the test method for multiply as follows:

[Fact]

public void MultiplyTest()

{

//var calculator = new FakeCalculator();

//Assert.Equal(6, calculator.Multiply(2, 3));

var calculator = new Mock<FakeCalculator>();

calculator.Setup(x => x.Multiply(2, 3)).Returns(6);

Assert.Equal(6, calculator.Object.Multiply(2, 3));

}

* Rerun the tests.
* Passes.

# Unit Testing using xUnit

## Create the solution

In this section, a solution is created that contains the source and test projects. The completed solution has the following directory structure:

/unit-testing-using-dotnet-test

unit-testing-using-dotnet-test.sln

/PrimeService

PrimeService.cs

PrimeService.csproj

/PrimeService.Tests

PrimeService\_IsPrimeShould.cs

PrimeServiceTests.csproj

The following instructions provide the steps to create the test solution.

Open a shell window.

* Run the following command:

dotnet new sln -o unit-testing-using-dotnet-test

The [dotnet new sln](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-new) command creates a new solution in the unit-testing-using-dotnet-test directory.

* Change directory to the *unit-testing-using-dotnet-test* folder.
* Run the following command:

dotnet new classlib -o PrimeService

The [dotnet new classlib](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/tools/dotnet-new) command creates a new class library project in the PrimeService folder. The new class library will contain the code to be tested.

* Rename *Class1.cs* to *PrimeService.cs*.
* Replace the code in *PrimeService.cs* with the following code:

using System;

namespace Prime.Services

{

public class PrimeService

{

public bool IsPrime(int candidate)

{

throw new NotImplementedException("Not implemented.");

}

}

}

* The preceding code:
  + Throws a NotImplementedException with a message indicating it's not implemented.
  + Is updated later in the tutorial.
* In the *unit-testing-using-dotnet-test* directory, run the following command to add the class library project to the solution:

dotnet sln add ./PrimeService/PrimeService.csproj

* Create the *PrimeService.Tests* project by running the following command:

dotnet new xunit -o PrimeService.Tests

* The preceding command:
  + - Creates the PrimeService.Tests project in the PrimeService.Tests directory. The test project uses xUnit as the test library.
    - Configures the test runner by adding the following <PackageReference />elements to the project file:
      * Microsoft.NET.Test.Sdk
      * xunit
      * xunit.runner.visualstudio
      * coverlet.collector
* Add the test project to the solution file by running the following command:

dotnet sln add ./PrimeService.Tests/PrimeService.Tests.csproj

* Add the PrimeService class library as a dependency to the *PrimeService.Tests* project:

dotnet add ./PrimeService.Tests/PrimeService.Tests.csproj reference ./PrimeService/PrimeService.csproj

### Commands to create the solution

This section summarizes all the commands in the previous section. Skip this section if you've completed the steps in the previous section.

The following commands create the test solution on a windows machine. For macOS and Unix, update the ren command to the OS version of ren to rename a file:

dotnet new sln -o unit-testing-using-dotnet-test

cd unit-testing-using-dotnet-test

dotnet new classlib -o PrimeService

ren .\PrimeService\Class1.cs PrimeService.cs

dotnet sln add ./PrimeService/PrimeService.csproj

dotnet new xunit -o PrimeService.Tests

dotnet add ./PrimeService.Tests/PrimeService.Tests.csproj reference ./PrimeService/PrimeService.csproj

dotnet sln add ./PrimeService.Tests/PrimeService.Tests.csproj

Follow the instructions for "Replace the code in PrimeService.cs with the following code" in the previous section.

## Create a test

A popular approach in test driven development (TDD) is to write a test before implementing the target code. This tutorial uses the TDD approach. The IsPrime method is callable, but not implemented. A test call to IsPrime fails. With TDD, a test is written that is known to fail. The target code is updated to make the test pass. You keep repeating this approach, writing a failing test and then updating the target code to pass.

Update the PrimeService.Tests project:

* Delete PrimeService.Tests/UnitTest1.cs.
* Create a PrimeService.Tests/PrimeService\_IsPrimeShould.cs file.
* Replace the code in PrimeService\_IsPrimeShould.cs with the following code:

using Xunit;

using Prime.Services;

namespace Prime.UnitTests.Services

{

public class PrimeService\_IsPrimeShould

{

[Fact]

public void IsPrime\_InputIs1\_ReturnFalse()

{

var primeService = new PrimeService();

bool result = primeService.IsPrime(1);

Assert.False(result, "1 should not be prime");

}

}

}

The [Fact] attribute declares a test method that's run by the test runner. From the PrimeService.Tests folder, run dotnet test. The dotnet test command builds both projects and runs the tests. The xUnit test runner contains the program entry point to run the tests. dotnet test starts the test runner using the unit test project.

The test fails because IsPrime hasn't been implemented. Using the TDD approach, write only enough code so this test passes. Update IsPrime with the following code:

public bool IsPrime(int candidate)

{

if (candidate == 1)

{

return false;

}

throw new NotImplementedException("Not fully implemented.");

}

Run dotnet test. The test passes.

## Add more tests

Add prime number tests for 0 and -1. You could copy the test created in the preceding step and make copies of the following code to test 0 and -1. But don't do it, as there's a better way.

var primeService = new PrimeService();

bool result = primeService.IsPrime(1);

Assert.False(result, "1 should not be prime");

Copying test code when only a parameter changes results in code duplication and test bloat. The following xUnit attributes enable writing a suite of similar tests:

* [Theory] represents a suite of tests that execute the same code but have different input arguments.
* [InlineData] attribute specifies values for those inputs.

Rather than creating new tests, apply the preceding xUnit attributes to create a single theory. Replace the following code:

[Fact]

public void IsPrime\_InputIs1\_ReturnFalse()

{

var primeService = new PrimeService();

bool result = primeService.IsPrime(1);

Assert.False(result, "1 should not be prime");

}

with the following code:

[Theory]

[InlineData(-1)]

[InlineData(0)]

[InlineData(1)]

public void IsPrime\_ValuesLessThan2\_ReturnFalse(int value)

{

var result = \_primeService.IsPrime(value);

Assert.False(result, $"{value} should not be prime");

}

In the preceding code, [Theory] and [InlineData] enable testing several values less than two. Two is the smallest prime number.

Add the following code after the class declaration and before the [Theory] attribute:

private readonly PrimeService \_primeService;

public PrimeService\_IsPrimeShould()

{

\_primeService = new PrimeService();

}

Run dotnet test, and two of the tests fail. To make all of the tests pass, update the IsPrime method with the following code:

public bool IsPrime(int candidate)

{

if (candidate < 2)

{

return false;

}

throw new NotImplementedException("Not fully implemented.");

}

Following the TDD approach, add more failing tests, then update the target code.

# Unit Test Code Coverage & Reporting

Unit tests help to ensure functionality and provide a means of verification for refactoring efforts. Code coverage is a measurement of the amount of code that is run by unit tests - either lines, branches, or methods. As an example, if you have a simple application with only two conditional branches of code (branch a, and branch b), a unit test that verifies conditional branch a will report branch code coverage of 50%.

This article discusses the usage of code coverage for unit testing with Coverlet and report generation using ReportGenerator. While this article focuses on C# and xUnit as the test framework, both MSTest and NUnit would also work. Coverlet is an open source project on GitHub that provides a cross-platform code coverage framework for C#. Coverlet is part of the .NET foundation. Coverlet collects Cobertura coverage test run data, which is used for report generation.

Additionally, this article details how to use the code coverage information collected from a Coverlet test run to generate a report. The report generation is possible using another open source project on GitHub - ReportGenerator. ReportGenerator converts coverage reports generated by Cobertura among many others, into human-readable reports in various formats.

## System under test

The "system under test" refers to the code that you're writing unit tests against, this could be an object, service, or anything else that exposes testable functionality. For this article, you'll create a class library that will be the system under test, and two corresponding unit test projects.

### Create a class library

From a command prompt in a new directory named UnitTestingCodeCoverage, create a new .NET standard class library using the dotnet new classlib command:

dotnet new classlib -n Numbers

The snippet below defines a simple PrimeService class that provides functionality to check if a number is prime. Copy the snippet below and replace the contents of the Class1.cs file that was automatically created in the Numbers directory. Rename the Class1.cs file to PrimeService.cs.

namespace System.Numbers

{

public class PrimeService

{

public bool IsPrime(int candidate)

{

if (candidate < 2)

{

return false;

}

for (int divisor = 2; divisor <= Math.Sqrt(candidate); ++divisor)

{

if (candidate % divisor == 0)

{

return false;

}

}

return true;

}

}

}

**Tip**

It is worth mentioning that the Numbers class library was intentionally added to the System namespace. This allows for **System.Math** to be accessible without a using System; namespace declaration. For more information, see **namespace (C# Reference)**.

### Create test projects

Create two new **xUnit Test Project (.NET Core)** templates from the same command prompt using the dotnet new xunit command:

dotnet new xunit -n XUnit.Coverlet.Collector

dotnet new xunit -n XUnit.Coverlet.MSBuild

Both of the newly created xUnit test projects need to add a project reference of the Numbers class library. This is so that the test projects have access to the PrimeService for testing. From the command prompt, use the dotnet add command:

dotnet add XUnit.Coverlet.Collector\XUnit.Coverlet.Collector.csproj reference Numbers\Numbers.csproj

dotnet add XUnit.Coverlet.MSBuild\XUnit.Coverlet.MSBuild.csproj reference Numbers\Numbers.csproj

The MSBuild project is named appropriately, as it will depend on the coverlet.msbuild NuGet package. Add this package dependency by running the dotnet add package command:

cd XUnit.Coverlet.MSBuild && dotnet add package coverlet.msbuild && cd ..

The previous command changed directories effectively scoping to the MSBuild test project, then added the NuGet package. When that was done, it then changed directories, stepping up one level.

Open both of the UnitTest1.cs files, and replace their contents with the following snippet. Rename the UnitTest1.cs files to PrimeServiceTests.cs.

using System.Numbers;

using Xunit;

namespace XUnit.Coverlet

{

public class PrimeServiceTests

{

readonly PrimeService \_primeService;

public PrimeServiceTests() => \_primeService = new PrimeService();

[

Theory,

InlineData(-1), InlineData(0), InlineData(1)

]

public void IsPrime\_ValuesLessThan2\_ReturnFalse(int value) =>

Assert.False(\_primeService.IsPrime(value), $"{value} should not be prime");

[

Theory,

InlineData(2), InlineData(3), InlineData(5), InlineData(7)

]

public void IsPrime\_PrimesLessThan10\_ReturnTrue(int value) =>

Assert.True(\_primeService.IsPrime(value), $"{value} should be prime");

[

Theory,

InlineData(4), InlineData(6), InlineData(8), InlineData(9)

]

public void IsPrime\_NonPrimesLessThan10\_ReturnFalse(int value) =>

Assert.False(\_primeService.IsPrime(value), $"{value} should not be prime");

}

}

### Create a solution

From the command prompt, create a new solution to encapsulate the class library and the two test projects. Using the dotnet sln command:

dotnet new sln -n XUnit.Coverage

This will create a new solution file name XUnit.Coverage in the UnitTestingCodeCoverage directory. Add the projects to the root of the solution.

**For Windows (bash)**:

dotnet sln XUnit.Coverage.sln add \*\*/\*.csproj --in-root

~~dotnet sln XUnit.Coverage.sln add (ls \*\*/\*.csproj) --in-root~~

**For Linux**:

dotnet sln XUnit.Coverage.sln add \*\*/\*.csproj --in-root

Build the solution using the dotnet build command:

dotnet build

If the build is successful, you've created the three projects, appropriately referenced projects and packages, and updated the source code correctly. Well done!

## Code coverage tooling

There are two types of code coverage tools:

* **DataCollectors:** DataCollectors monitor test execution and collect information about test runs. They report the collected information in various output formats, such as XML and JSON. For more information, see your first DataCollector.
* **Report generators:** Use data collected from test runs to generate reports, often as styled HTML.

In this section, the focus is on data collector tools. To use Coverlet for code coverage, an existing unit test project must have the appropriate package dependencies, or alternatively rely on .NET global tooling and the corresponding coverlet.console NuGet package.

## Integrate with .NET test

The xUnit test project template already integrates with coverlet.collector by default. From the command prompt, change directories to the XUnit.Coverlet.Collector project, and run the dotnet test command:

cd XUnit.Coverlet.Collector && dotnet test --collect:"XPlat Code Coverage"

**Note**: The "XPlat Code Coverage" argument is a friendly name that corresponds to the data collectors from Coverlet. This name is required but is case insensitive.

As part of the dotnet test run, a resulting coverage.cobertura.xml file is output to the TestResults directory. The XML file contains the results. This is a cross-platform option that relies on the .NET CLI, and it is great for build systems where MSBuild is not available.

**Tip**: As an alternative, you could use the MSBuild package if your build system already makes use of MSBuild. From the command prompt, change directories to the XUnit.Coverlet.MSBuild project, and run the dotnet test command:

dotnet test /p:CollectCoverage=true /p:CoverletOutputFormat=cobertura

(*On bash, it may give an error “MSBUILD : error MSB1008: Only one project can be specified.”. IF so, run on Powershell or CMD*).

The resulting coverage.cobertura.xml file is output.

## Generate reports

Now that you're able to collect data from unit test runs, you can generate reports using ReportGenerator. To install the ReportGenerator NuGet package as a .NET global tool, use the dotnet tool install command:

dotnet tool install -g dotnet-reportgenerator-globaltool

Run the tool and provide the desired options, given the output coverage.cobertura.xml file from the previous test run.

**For the coverlet project**:

reportgenerator

-reports:"Path\To\TestProject\TestResults\{guid}\coverage.cobertura.xml"

-targetdir:"coveragereport"

-reporttypes:Html

**For the MSBuild project**:

reportgenerator

-reports:"Path\To\TestProject\coverage.cobertura.xml”

-targetdir:"coverage"

-reporttypes:Html

After running this command, an HTML file represents the generated report.

# Mocking using Moq (Dependency Injection)

When writing automated tests it is sometimes useful to isolate the thing(s) being tested from other parts of the system. These ‘other’ parts may still need to be provided, and sometimes the real versions are too hard or cumbersome to use. In these instances “mocked” versions can be created and used.

A mock version of something is an object that can act like the real thing but can be controlled in test code.

Moq (pronounced “mok u” or “mock”) is a library available on NuGet that allows mock objects to be created in test code and it also supports .NET Core.

Moq allows the manipulation of mock objects in many ways, including setting mock methods to return specific values, setting up properties, and matching specific arguments when the thing being tested calls the mock object.

Install Moq:

install-package Moq

For example, the following code shows a class that requires a constructor dependency to be able to operate:

**using** System;

**namespace** Domain

{

**public** **interface** IThingDependency

    {

**string** JoinUpper(**string** a, **string** b);

**int** Meaning { **get**; }

    }

    // "Real" implementation

**public** **class** ThingDependency : IThingDependency

    {

**public** **string** JoinUpper(**string** a, **string** b)

        {

**throw** **new** NotImplementedException();

        }

**public** **int** Meaning => **throw** **new** NotImplementedException();

    }

    // Class we want to test in isolation of ThingDependency

**public** **class** ThingBeingTested

    {

**private** **readonly** IThingDependency \_thingDependency;

**public** **string** FirstName { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **string** LastName { **get**; **set**; }

**public** ThingBeingTested(IThingDependency thingDependency)

        {

            \_thingDependency = thingDependency;

        }

**public** **string** X()

        {

**var** fullName = \_thingDependency.JoinUpper(FirstName, LastName);

**return** $"{fullName} = {\_thingDependency.Meaning}";

        }

    }

}

Without a mock object, to write a test we could use the real ThingDependency:

[Fact]

**public** **void** TestUsingRealDependency()

{

**var** sut = **new** ThingBeingTested(**new** ThingDependency());

    // test code

}

To isolate the ThingBeingTested from the rest of the system, Moq can create a mock version of an IThingDependency:

[Fact]

**public** **void** TestUsingMockDependency()

{

    // create mock version

**var** mockDependency = **new** Mock<IThingDependency>();

    // set up mock version's method

// mockDep.Setup(t => t.Join("John", "Smith")).Returns("John Smith");

    mockDependency.Setup(x => x.JoinUpper(It.IsAny<**string**>(), It.IsAny<**string**>()))

                  .Returns("A B");

    // set up mock version's property

    mockDependency.Setup(x => x.Meaning)

                  .Returns(42);

    // create thing being tested with a mock dependency

**var** sut = **new** ThingBeingTested(mockDependency.Object);

**var** result = sut.X();

    Assert.Equal("A B = 42", result);

}

In the preceding code, the Setup() method is used to tell the mock how to behave when it is called by the ThingBeingTested.

Moq can also be used to test the correct interactions are occurring between the ThingBeingTested and the IThingDependency:

[Fact]

**public** **void** TestUsingMockDependencyUsingInteractionVerification()

{

    // create mock version

**var** mockDependency = **new** Mock<IThingDependency>();

    // create thing being tested with a mock dependency

**var** sut = **new** ThingBeingTested(mockDependency.Object)

    {

        FirstName = "Sarah",

        LastName = "Smith"

    };

    sut.X();

    // Assert that the JoinUpper method was called with Sarah Smith

    mockDependency.Verify(x => x.JoinUpper("Sarah", "Smith"), Times.Once);

    // Assert that the Meaning property was accessed once

    mockDependency.Verify(x => x.Meaning, Times.Once);

}

In the preceding code, the Verify method is used to check that the mock JoinUpper method is being called exactly once with the values “Sarah” and “Smith”. The test code is also expecting the method to be called exactly once.

Moq can be used to test in isolation other parts of applications such as ASP.NET Core MVC controllers, where the controller requires a dependency (such as an IFooRepository):

[Fact]

**public** **void** ContollerTest()

{

**var** mockDependency = **new** Mock<IFooRepository>();

**var** sut = **new** HomeController(mockDependency.Object);

    // test code

}

## More Examples

Add a Card class as follows:

public class Card

{

public string Name { get; set; }

public int Number { get; set; }

public int CVV { get; set; }

}

Add a Charge() method to the IThingDependency interface:

public interface IThingDependency

{

string Join(string str1, string str2);

int Age { get; }

bool Charge(int amount, Card card);

}

Implement it in the ThingDependency class:

public class ThingDependency : IThingDependency

{

public int Age => throw new NotImplementedException();

public string Join(string str1, string str2)

{

//return $"{str1} {str2}";

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

//public bool Charge(string name, int number, int cvv)

public bool Charge(int amount, Card card)

{

throw new NotImplementedException();

}

}

Add a method to call the Charge() method in the ThingBeingTested class:

public bool ChargeTheCard(int amt, Card crd)

{

return \_thingDependency.Charge(amt, crd);

}

In the ***test*** method, add the following code to mock the interface’s Charge() method:

// Mock the card.

var card = new Card

{

Name = "Peter Quill",

Number = 1234567890,

CVV = 666

};

\_thingDependency.Setup(t => t.Charge(123, card)).Returns(true);

//mockDep.Setup(t => t.Charge(It.IsAny<int>(), card)).Returns(true);

// create thing being tested with a mock dependency

var sut = new ThingBeingTested(mockDependency.Object);

var result = sut.X();

var res2 = sut.ChargeTheCard(122, card);

// Assert here.

# ADO.NET

ADO.NET provides consistent access to data sources such as SQL Server and XML, and to data sources exposed through OLE DB and ODBC. Data-sharing consumer applications can use ADO.NET to connect to these data sources and retrieve, handle, and update the data that they contain.

ADO.NET separates data access from data manipulation into discrete components that can be used separately or in tandem. ADO.NET includes .NET Framework data providers for connecting to a database, executing commands, and retrieving results. Those results are either processed directly, placed in an ADO.NET DataSet object in order to be exposed to the user in an ad hoc manner, combined with data from multiple sources, or passed between tiers. The DataSet object can also be used independently of a .NET Framework data provider to manage data local to the application or sourced from XML.

The ADO.NET classes are found in System.Data.dll, and are integrated with the XML classes found in System.Xml.dll

ADO.NET provides functionality to developers who write managed code similar to the functionality provided to native component object model (COM) developers by ActiveX Data Objects (ADO). We recommend that you use ADO.NET, not ADO, for accessing data in your .NET applications.

ADO.NET provides the most direct method of data access within the .NET Framework.

## ADO.NET Architecture

Data processing has traditionally relied primarily on a connection-based, two-tier model. As data processing increasingly uses multi-tier architectures, programmers are switching to a disconnected approach to provide better scalability for their applications.

The two main components of ADO.NET for accessing and manipulating data are the .NET Framework data providers and the DataSet.

### .NET Framework Data Providers

The .NET Framework Data Providers are components that have been explicitly designed for data manipulation and fast, forward-only, read-only access to data. The Connection object provides connectivity to a data source. The Command object enables access to database commands to return data, modify data, run stored procedures, and send or retrieve parameter information. The DataReader provides a high-performance stream of data from the data source. Finally, the DataAdapter provides the bridge between the DataSet object and the data source. The DataAdapter uses Command objects to execute SQL commands at the data source to both load the DataSet with data and reconcile changes that were made to the data in the DataSet back to the data source.

### The DataSet

The ADO.NET DataSet is explicitly designed for data access independent of any data source. As a result, it can be used with multiple and differing data sources, used with XML data, or used to manage data local to the application. The DataSet contains a collection of one or more DataTable objects consisting of rows and columns of data, and also primary key, foreign key, constraint, and relation information about the data in the DataTable objects.

The following diagram illustrates the relationship between a .NET Framework data provider and a DataSet.

  
ADO.NET architecture

### Choosing a DataReader or a DataSet

When you decide whether your application should use a  or a DataSet, consider the type of functionality that your application requires. Use a DataSet to do the following:

* Cache data locally in your application so that you can manipulate it. If you only need to read the results of a query, the DataReader is the better choice.
* Remote data between tiers or from an XML Web service.
* Interact with data dynamically such as binding to a Windows Forms control or combining and relating data from multiple sources.
* Perform extensive processing on data without requiring an open connection to the data source, which frees the connection to be used by other clients.

If you do not require the functionality provided by the DataSet, you can improve the performance of your application by using the DataReader to return your data in a forward-only, read-only manner. Although the DataAdapter uses the DataReader to fill the contents of a DataSet, by using the DataReader, you can boost performance because you will save memory that would be consumed by the DataSet, and avoid the processing that is required to create and fill the contents of the DataSet.

## LINQ to DataSet

LINQ to DataSet provides query capabilities and compile-time type checking over data cached in a DataSet object. It allows you to write queries in one of the .NET Framework development language, such as C# or Visual Basic.

## LINQ to SQL

Language Integrated Query (*LINQ*) to SQL supports queries against an object model that is mapped to the data structures of a relational database without using an intermediate conceptual model. Each table is represented by a separate class, tightly coupling the object model to the relational database schema. LINQ to SQL translates language-integrated queries in the object model into Transact-SQL and sends them to the database for execution. When the database returns the results, LINQ to SQL translates the results back into objects.

## ADO.NET Entity Framework

The ADO.NET Entity Framework is designed to enable developers to create data access applications by programming against a conceptual application model instead of programming directly against a relational storage schema. The goal is to decrease the amount of code and maintenance required for data-oriented applications.

## WCF Data Services

WCF Data Services is used to deploy data services on the Web or an intranet. The data is structured as entities and relationships according to the specifications of the Entity Data Model. Data deployed on this model is addressable by standard HTTP protocol.

## XML and ADO.NET

ADO.NET leverages the power of XML to provide disconnected access to data. ADO.NET was designed hand-in-hand with the XML classes in the .NET Framework; both are components of a single architecture.

ADO.NET and the XML classes in the .NET Framework converge in the DataSet object. The DataSet can be populated with data from an XML source, whether it is a file or an XML stream. The DataSet can be written as World-Wide Web Consortium (W3C) compliant XML that includes its schema as XML schema definition language (XSD) schema, regardless of the source of the data in the DataSet. Because of the native serialization format of the DataSet is XML, it is an excellent medium for moving data between tiers, making the DataSet an optimal choice for remoting data and schema context to and from an XML Web service.

## LINQ

Language-Integrated Query (LINQ) enables developers to form set-based queries in their application code, without having to use a separate query language. You can write LINQ queries against various enumerable data sources (that is, a data source that implements the IEnumerable interface), such as in-memory data structures, XML documents, SQL databases, and DataSet objects. Although these enumerable data sources are implemented in various ways, they all expose the same syntax and language constructs. Because queries can be formed in the programming language itself, you do not have to use another query language that is embedded as string literals that cannot be understood or verified by the compiler. Integrating queries into the programming language also enables Visual Studio programmers to be more productive by providing compile-time type and syntax checking, and IntelliSense. These features reduce the need for query debugging and error fixing.

Transferring data from SQL tables into objects in memory is often tedious and error-prone. The LINQ provider implemented by LINQ to DataSet and LINQ to SQL converts the source data into IEnumerable-based object collections. The programmer always views the data as an IEnumerable collection, both when you query and when you update. Full IntelliSense support is provided for writing queries against those collections.

There are three separate ADO.NET Language-Integrated Query (LINQ) technologies: LINQ to DataSet, LINQ to SQL, and LINQ to Entities. LINQ to DataSet provides richer, optimized querying over the DataSet and LINQ to SQL enables you to directly query SQL Server database schemas, and LINQ to Entities allows you to query an Entity Data Model.

The following diagram provides an overview of how the ADO.NET LINQ technologies relate to high-level programming languages and LINQ-enabled data sources.



### LINQ to DataSet

The DataSet is a key element of the disconnected programming model that ADO.NET is built on, and is widely used. LINQ to DataSet enables developers to build richer query capabilities into DataSet by using the same query formulation mechanism that is available for many other data sources.

### LINQ to SQL

LINQ to SQL is a useful tool for developers who do not require mapping to a conceptual model. By using LINQ to SQL, you can use the LINQ programming model directly over existing database schema. LINQ to SQL enables developers to generate .NET Framework classes that represent data. Rather than mapping to a conceptual data model, these generated classes map directly to database tables, views, stored procedures, and user-defined functions.

With LINQ to SQL, developers can write code directly against the storage schema using the same LINQ programming pattern as in-memory collections and the DataSet, in addition to other data sources such as XML.

### LINQ to Entities

Most applications are currently written on top of relational databases. At some point, these applications will need to interact with the data represented in a relational form. Database schemas are not always ideal for building applications, and the conceptual models of application are not the same as the logical models of databases. The Entity Data Model is a conceptual data model that can be used to model the data of a particular domain so that applications can interact with data as objects.

Through the Entity Data Model, relational data is exposed as objects in the .NET environment. This makes the object layer an ideal target for LINQ support, allowing developers to formulate queries against the database from the language used to build the business logic. This capability is known as LINQ to Entities.

## .NET Framework Data Providers

A .NET Framework data provider is used for connecting to a database, executing commands, and retrieving results. Those results are either processed directly, placed in a DataSet in order to be exposed to the user as needed, combined with data from multiple sources, or remoted between tiers. .NET Framework data providers are lightweight, creating a minimal layer between the data source and code, increasing performance without sacrificing functionality.

The following table lists the data providers that are included in the .NET Framework.

| **.NET FRAMEWORK DATA PROVIDERS** | |
| --- | --- |
| **.NET Framework data provider** | **Description** |
| .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server | Provides data access for Microsoft SQL Server. Uses the System.Data.SqlClient namespace. |
| .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB | For data sources exposed by using OLE DB. Uses the System.Data.OleDb namespace. |
| .NET Framework Data Provider for ODBC | For data sources exposed by using ODBC. Uses the System.Data.Odbc namespace. |
| .NET Framework Data Provider for Oracle | For Oracle data sources. The .NET Framework Data Provider for Oracle supports Oracle client software version 8.1.7 and later, and uses the System.Data.OracleClient namespace. |
| EntityClient Provider | Provides data access for Entity Data Model (EDM) applications. Uses the System.Data.EntityClient namespace. |
| .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server Compact 4.0. | Provides data access for Microsoft SQL Server Compact 4.0. Uses the System.Data.SqlServerCe namespace. |

### Core Objects of .NET Framework Data Providers

The following table outlines the four core objects that make up a .NET Framework data provider.

| **CORE OBJECTS OF .NET FRAMEWORK DATA PROVIDERS** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Object** | **Description** |
| Connection | Establishes a connection to a specific data source. The base class for all Connection objects is the DbConnection class. |
| Command | Executes a command against a data source. Exposes Parameters and can execute in the scope of a Transaction from a Connection. The base class for all Command objects is the DbCommand class. |
| DataReader | Reads a forward-only, read-only stream of data from a data source. The base class for all DataReader objects is the DbDataReader class. |
| DataAdapter | Populates a DataSet and resolves updates with the data source. The base class for all DataAdapter objects is the DbDataAdapter class. |

In addition to the core classes listed in the table earlier in this document, a .NET Framework data provider also contains the classes listed in the following table.

| **CORE OBJECTS OF .NET FRAMEWORK DATA PROVIDERS** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Object** | **Description** |
| Transaction | Enlists commands in transactions at the data source. The base class for all Transaction objects is the DbTransaction class. ADO.NET also provides support for transactions using classes in the System.Transactions namespace. |
| CommandBuilder | A helper object that automatically generates command properties of a DataAdapter or derives parameter information from a stored procedure and populates the Parameters collection of a Command object. The base class for all CommandBuilder objects is the DbCommandBuilder class. |
| ConnectionStringBuilder | A helper object that provides a simple way to create and manage the contents of connection strings used by the Connection objects. The base class for all ConnectionStringBuilder objects is the DbConnectionStringBuilder class. |
| Parameter | Defines input, output, and return value parameters for commands and stored procedures. The base class for all Parameter objects is the DbParameter class. |
| Exception | Returned when an error is encountered at the data source. For an error encountered at the client, .NET Framework data providers throw a .NET Framework exception. The base class for all Exception objects is the DbException class. |
| Error | Exposes the information from a warning or error returned by a data source. |
| ClientPermission | Provided for .NET Framework data provider code access security attributes. The base class for all ClientPermission objects is the DBDataPermission class. |

### .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server (SqlClient)

The .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server (SqlClient) uses its own protocol to communicate with SQL Server. It is lightweight and performs well because it is optimized to access a SQL Server directly without adding an OLE DB or Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) layer. The following illustration contrasts the .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server with the .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB. The .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB communicates to an OLE DB data source through both the OLE DB Service component, which provides connection pooling and transaction services, and the OLE DB provider for the data source.

**Note**: The .NET Framework Data Provider for ODBC has a similar architecture to the .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB; for example, it calls into an ODBC Service Component.

Comparison of the .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server and the .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB:



The .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server classes are located in the System.Data.SqlClient namespace.

The .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server supports both local and distributed transactions. For distributed transactions, the .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server, by default, automatically enlists in a transaction and obtains transaction details from Windows Component Services or System.Transactions.

The following code example shows how to include the System.Data.SqlClient namespace in your applications.

using System.Data.SqlClient;

## ADO.NET SqlClient Data Provider Examples

**Northwind and Pubs DB**:

<https://github.com/microsoft/sql-server-samples/tree/master/samples/databases/northwind-pubs>

**AdventureWorks Db**:

<https://github.com/Microsoft/sql-server-samples/releases/tag/adventureworks>

The code in this example assumes that you can connect to the Northwind sample database on Microsoft SQL Server. The code creates a SqlCommand to select rows from the Products table, adding a SqlParameter to restrict the results to rows with a UnitPrice greater than the specified parameter value, in this case 5. The SqlConnection is opened inside a using block, which ensures that resources are closed and disposed when the code exits. The code executes the command by using a SqlDataReader, and displays the results in the console window.

### Retrieve Data Using a DataReader

To retrieve data using a **DataReader**, create an instance of the **Command** object, and then create a **DataReader** by calling **Command.ExecuteReader** to retrieve rows from a data source. The **DataReader** provides an unbuffered stream of data that allows procedural logic to efficiently process results from a data source sequentially. The **DataReader** is a good choice when you're retrieving large amounts of data because the data is not cached in memory.

The **DataReader Object** is a stream-based , forward-only, read-only retrieval of query results from the Data Source, which do not update the data in the Data Source. When the **ExecuteReader** method in SqlCommand Object execute , it will instantiate a SqlClient.SqlDataReader Object in C#.

### Closing the DataReader

Always call the **Close** method when you have finished using the **DataReader** object.

If your **Command** contains output parameters or return values, those values are not available until the **DataReader** is closed.

While a **DataReader** is open, the **Connection** is in use exclusively by that **DataReader**. You cannot execute any commands for the **Connection**, including creating another **DataReader**, until the original **DataReader** is closed.

**Note**: Do not call **Close** or **Dispose** on a **Connection**, a **DataReader**, or any other managed object in the **Finalize** method of your class. In a finalizer, only release unmanaged resources that your class owns directly. If your class does not own any unmanaged resources, do not include a **Finalize** method in your class definition.

#### Example

First, add the System.Data.SqlClient NuGet package.

using System;

using System.Data;

using System.Data.SqlClient;

class Program

{

static void Main()

{

string connectionString =

@"Data Source=(local)\SQLEXPRESS;Initial Catalog=Northwind;"

+ "Integrated Security=true";

// Provide the query string with a parameter placeholder.

string queryString =

"SELECT ProductID, UnitPrice, ProductName from dbo.products "

+ "WHERE UnitPrice > @pricePoint "

+ "ORDER BY UnitPrice DESC;";

// Specify the parameter value.

int paramValue = 5;

// Create and open the connection in a using block. This

// ensures that all resources will be closed and disposed

// when the code exits.

using (SqlConnection connection =

new SqlConnection(connectionString))

{

// Create the Command and Parameter objects.

SqlCommand command = new SqlCommand(queryString, connection);

command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@pricePoint", paramValue);

// Open the connection in a try/catch block.

// Create and execute the DataReader, writing the result

// set to the console window.

try

{

connection.Open();

SqlDataReader reader = command.ExecuteReader();

while (reader.Read())

{

Console.WriteLine("\t{0}\t{1}\t{2}",

reader[0], reader[1], reader[2]);

}

reader.Close();

}

catch (Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);

}

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

### Executing a Command

Each .NET Framework data provider included with the .NET Framework has its own command object that inherits from DbCommand. The .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB includes an OleDbCommand object, the .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server includes a SqlCommand object, the .NET Framework Data Provider for ODBC includes an OdbcCommand object, and the .NET Framework Data Provider for Oracle includes an OracleCommand object. Each of these objects exposes methods for executing commands based on the type of command and desired return value, as described in the following table.

| **EXECUTING A COMMAND** | |
| --- | --- |
| Command | Return Value |
| ExecuteReader | Returns a DataReader object. |
| ExecuteScalar | Returns a single scalar value. |
| ExecuteNonQuery | Executes a command that does not return any rows. |
| ExecuteXMLReader | Returns an XmlReader. Available for a SqlCommand object only. |

Each strongly typed command object also supports a CommandType enumeration that specifies how a command string is interpreted, as described in the following table.

| **TABLE 2** | |
| --- | --- |
| **CommandType** | **Description** |
| Text | An SQL command defining the statements to be executed at the data source. |
| StoredProcedure | The name of the stored procedure. You can use the Parameters property of a command to access input and output parameters and return values, regardless of which Execute method is called. When using ExecuteReader, return values and output parameters will not be accessible until the DataReader is closed. |
| TableDirect | The name of a table. |

#### Example

The following code example demonstrates how to create a SqlCommand object to execute a stored procedure by setting its properties. A SqlParameter object is used to specify the input parameter to the stored procedure. The command is executed using the ExecuteReader method, and the output from the SqlDataReader is displayed in the console window.

static void GetSalesByCategory(string connectionString,

string categoryName)

{

using (SqlConnection connection = new SqlConnection(connectionString))

{

// Create the command and set its properties.

SqlCommand command = new SqlCommand();

command.Connection = connection;

command.CommandText = "SalesByCategory";

command.CommandType = CommandType.StoredProcedure;

// Add the input parameter and set its properties.

SqlParameter parameter = new SqlParameter();

parameter.ParameterName = "@CategoryName";

parameter.SqlDbType = SqlDbType.NVarChar;

parameter.Direction = ParameterDirection.Input;

parameter.Value = categoryName;

// Add the parameter to the Parameters collection.

command.Parameters.Add(parameter);

// Open the connection and execute the reader.

connection.Open();

using (SqlDataReader reader = command.ExecuteReader())

{

if (reader.HasRows)

{

while (reader.Read())

{

Console.WriteLine("{0}: {1:C}", reader[0], reader[1]);

}

}

else

{

Console.WriteLine("No rows found.");

}

reader.Close();

}

}

}

## Getting a Single Value from a Table

You may need to return database information that is simply a single value rather than in the form of a table or data stream. For example, you may want to return the result of an aggregate function such as COUNT(\*), SUM(Price), or AVG(Quantity). The **Command** object provides the capability to return single values using the **ExecuteScalar** method. The **ExecuteScalar** method returns, as a scalar value, the value of the first column of the first row of the result set.

The following code example inserts a new value in the database using a SqlCommand. The ExecuteScalar method is used to return the identity column value for the inserted record.

static public int AddProductCategory(string connString, string newName)

{

Console.WriteLine("Getting ID of the new record just created...");

Int32 newProdID = 0;

string sql =

"INSERT INTO Categories(CategoryName, Description) VALUES (@Name, @Desc); "

+ "SELECT CAST(scope\_identity() AS int)";

using (SqlConnection conn = new SqlConnection(connString))

{

SqlCommand cmd = new SqlCommand(sql, conn);

cmd.Parameters.Add("@Name", SqlDbType.VarChar);

cmd.Parameters.Add("@Desc", SqlDbType.VarChar);

cmd.Parameters["@name"].Value = newName;

cmd.Parameters["@desc"].Value = newName;

try

{

conn.Open();

newProdID = (Int32)cmd.ExecuteScalar();

}

catch (Exception ex)

{

Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);

}

}

Console.WriteLine("Done getting ID of the new record just created...");

return (int)newProdID;

}

## Updating Data

SQL statements that modify data (such as INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE) do not return rows. Similarly, many stored procedures perform an action but do not return rows. To execute commands that do not return rows, create a **Command** object with the appropriate SQL command and a **Connection**, including any required **Parameters**. Execute the command with the **ExecuteNonQuery** method of the **Command** object.

The **ExecuteNonQuery** method returns an integer that represents the number of rows affected by the statement or stored procedure that was executed. If multiple statements are executed, the value returned is the sum of the records affected by all of the statements executed.

### Example

The following code example executes an INSERT statement to insert a record into a database using **ExecuteNonQuery**.

// Assumes connection is a valid SqlConnection.

connection.Open();

string queryString = "INSERT INTO Customers " +

"(CustomerID, CompanyName) Values('NWIND', 'Northwind Traders')";

SqlCommand command = new SqlCommand(queryString, connection);

Int32 recordsAffected = command.ExecuteNonQuery();

The following code example executes the stored procedure created by the sample code in Performing Catalog Operations. No rows are returned by the stored procedure, so the **ExecuteNonQuery** method is used, but the stored procedure does receive an input parameter and returns an output parameter and a return value.

For the OleDbCommand object, the **ReturnValue** parameter must be added to the **Parameters** collection first.

// Assumes connection is a valid SqlConnection.

SqlCommand command = new SqlCommand("InsertCategory" , connection);

command.CommandType = CommandType.StoredProcedure;

SqlParameter parameter = command.Parameters.Add(

"@RowCount", SqlDbType.Int);

parameter.Direction = ParameterDirection.ReturnValue;

parameter = command.Parameters.Add(

"@CategoryName", SqlDbType.NChar, 15);

parameter = command.Parameters.Add("@Identity", SqlDbType.Int);

parameter.Direction = ParameterDirection.Output;

command.Parameters["@CategoryName"].Value = "New Category";

command.ExecuteNonQuery();

Int32 categoryID = (Int32) command.Parameters["@Identity"].Value;

Int32 rowCount = (Int32) command.Parameters["@RowCount"].Value;

## Retrieving Multiple Result Sets Using NextResult()

The **DataReader Object** is a stream-based , forward-only, read-only retrieval of query results from the Data Source, which do not update the data in the Data Source. When the **ExecuteReader** method in SqlCommand Object execute , it will instantiate a SqlClient.SqlDataReader Object in C#.

SqlDataReader sqlReader = sqlCmd.ExecuteReader();

In some situations we need to execute multiple SQL statements with the Command Object. In these types of situations the SqlDataReader returns multiple ResultSets also. In order to retrieving multiple ResultSets from SqlDataReader we use the **NextResult()** method of the SqlDataReader.

sqlReader.NextResult();

In the following source code you can see how to get multiple result sets from SqlDataReader() .

**Example:**

using System;

using System.Data.SqlClient;

namespace MultipleResultSets

{

class Program

{

static void Main()

{

{

string connetionString = null;

SqlConnection sqlCnn ;

SqlCommand sqlCmd ;

string sql = null;

connetionString = "Data Source=ServerName;Initial Catalog=DatabaseName;User ID=UserName;Password=Password";

sql = "Select top 2 \* from product; select top 2 \* from ordermaster; select top 2 \* from orderdetails";

sqlCnn = new SqlConnection(connetionString);

try

{

sqlCnn.Open();

sqlCmd = new SqlCommand(sql, sqlCnn);

SqlDataReader sqlReader = sqlCmd.ExecuteReader();

while (sqlReader.Read())

{

MessageBox.Show ("From first SQL - " + sqlReader.GetValue(0) + " - " + sqlReader.GetValue(1));

}

sqlReader.NextResult();

while (sqlReader.Read())

{

MessageBox.Show("From second SQL - " + sqlReader.GetValue(0) + " - " + sqlReader.GetValue(1));

}

sqlReader.NextResult();

while (sqlReader.Read())

{

MessageBox.Show("From third SQL - " + sqlReader.GetValue(0) + " - " + sqlReader.GetValue(1));

}

sqlReader.Close();

sqlCmd.Dispose();

sqlCnn.Close();

}

catch (Exception ex)

{

MessageBox.Show("Can not open connection ! ");

}

}

}

}

## DataSet and DataAdapter

You can use the ADO.NET **DataReader** to retrieve a read-only, forward-only stream of data from a database. Results are returned as the query executes, and are stored in the network buffer on the client until you request them using the **Read** method of the **DataReader**. Using the **DataReader** can increase application performance both by retrieving data as soon as it is available, and (by default) storing only one row at a time in memory, reducing system overhead.

A DataAdapter is used to retrieve data from a data source and populate tables within a DataSet. The DataAdapter also resolves changes made to the DataSet back to the data source. The DataAdapter uses the Connection object of the .NET Framework data provider to connect to a data source, and it uses Command objects to retrieve data from and resolve changes to the data source.

Each .NET Framework data provider included with the .NET Framework has a DbDataReader and a DbDataAdapter object: the .NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB includes an OleDbDataReader and an OleDbDataAdapter object, the .NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server includes a SqlDataReader and a SqlDataAdapter object, the .NET Framework Data Provider for ODBC includes an OdbcDataReader and an OdbcDataAdapter object, and the .NET Framework Data Provider for Oracle includes an OracleDataReader and an OracleDataAdapter object.

The ADO.NET DataSet is a memory-resident representation of data that provides a consistent relational programming model independent of the data source. The DataSet represents a complete set of data that includes tables, constraints, and relationships among the tables. Because the DataSet is independent of the data source, a DataSet can include data local to the application, and data from multiple data sources. Interaction with existing data sources is controlled through the DataAdapter.

The SelectCommand property of the DataAdapter is a Command object that retrieves data from the data source. The InsertCommand, UpdateCommand, and DeleteCommand properties of the DataAdapter are Command objects that manage updates to the data in the data source according to modifications made to the data in the DataSet.

The Fill method of the DataAdapter is used to populate a DataSet with the results of the SelectCommand of the DataAdapter. Fill takes as its arguments a DataSet to be populated, and a DataTable object, or the name of the DataTable to be filled with the rows returned from the SelectCommand.

**Note**: Using the DataAdapter to retrieve all of a table takes time, especially if there are many rows in the table. This is because accessing the database, locating and processing the data, and then transferring the data to the client is time-consuming. Pulling all of the table to the client also locks all of the rows on the server. To improve performance, you can use the WHERE clause to greatly reduce the number of rows returned to the client. You can also reduce the amount of data returned to the client by only explicitly listing required columns in the SELECT statement. Another good workaround is to retrieve the rows in batches (such as several hundred rows at a time) and only retrieve the next batch when the client is finished with the current batch.

The Fill method uses the DataReader object implicitly to return the column names and types that are used to create the tables in the DataSet, and the data to populate the rows of the tables in the DataSet. Tables and columns are only created if they do not already exist; otherwise Fill uses the existing DataSet schema. Column types are created as .NET Framework types according to the tables in Data Type Mappings in ADO.NET. Primary keys are not created unless they exist in the data source and DataAdapter**.**MissingSchemaAction is set to MissingSchemaAction**.**AddWithKey. If Fill finds that a primary key exists for a table, it will overwrite data in the DataSet with data from the data source for rows where the primary key column values match those of the row returned from the data source. If no primary key is found, the data is appended to the tables in the DataSet. Fill uses any mappings that may exist when you populate the DataSet.

**Note**: If the SelectCommand returns the results of an OUTER JOIN, the DataAdapter does not set a PrimaryKey value for the resulting DataTable. You must define the PrimaryKey yourself to make sure that duplicate rows are resolved correctly..

The following code example creates an instance of a SqlDataAdapter that uses a SqlConnection to the Microsoft SQL Server Northwind database and populates a DataTable in a DataSet with the list of customers. The SQL statement and SqlConnection arguments passed to the SqlDataAdapter constructor are used to create the SelectCommand property of the SqlDataAdapter.

### Example

// Assumes that connection is a valid SqlConnection object.

string queryString =

"SELECT CustomerID, CompanyName FROM dbo.Customers";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter(queryString, connString);

DataSet customers = new DataSet();

adapter.Fill(customers, "Customers");

**Note**: The code shown in this example does not explicitly open and close the Connection. The Fill method implicitly opens the Connection that the DataAdapter is using if it finds that the connection is not already open. If Fill opened the connection, it also closes the connection when Fill is finished. This can simplify your code when you deal with a single operation such as a Fill or an Update. However, if you are performing multiple operations that require an open connection, you can improve the performance of your application by explicitly calling the Open method of the Connection, performing the operations against the data source, and then calling the Close method of the Connection. You should try to keep connections to the data source open as briefly as possible to free resources for use by other client applications.

### LINQ to DataSet

LINQ to DataSet queries can be formulated in two different syntaxes: query expression syntax and method-based query syntax.

#### Method-Based Query Syntax

The method-based query syntax is a sequence of direct method calls to LINQ operator methods, passing lambda expressions as the parameters.

This example uses Select to return all the rows from Product and display the product names.

// Assumes that connection is a valid SqlConnection object.

string queryString =

"SELECT ProductID, UnitPrice, ProductName from dbo.products";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter(queryString, connString);

DataSet products = new DataSet();

adapter.Fill(products, "Products");

DataTable products = ds.Tables["Products"];

var query = products.AsEnumerable().

Select(product => new

{

ProductNumber = product.Field<string>("ProductID"),

ProductName = product.Field<string>("ProductName"),

Price = product.Field<decimal>("UnitPrice")

});

Console.WriteLine("Product Info:");

foreach (var productInfo in query)

{

Console.WriteLine("Product name: {0} Product number: {1} List price: ${2} ",

productInfo.ProductName, productInfo.ProductNumber, productInfo.Price);

}

#### Query Expression Syntax

Query expressions are a declarative query syntax. This syntax enables a developer to write queries in C# or Visual Basic in a format similar to SQL. By using query expression syntax, you can perform even complex filtering, ordering, and grouping operations on data sources with minimal code.

The following example uses [Select](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.select) to return all the rows from Product table and display the product names.

// Assumes that connection is a valid SqlConnection object.

string queryString =

"SELECT ProductID, UnitPrice, ProductName from dbo.products";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter(queryString, connString);

DataSet products = new DataSet();

adapter.Fill(products, "Products");

DataTable products = ds.Tables["Products"];

IEnumerable<DataRow> query =

from product in products.AsEnumerable()

select product;

Console.WriteLine("Product Names:");

foreach (DataRow p in query)

{

Console.WriteLine(p.Field<string>("ProductName"));

}

#### Composing Queries

As mentioned earlier in this topic, the query variable itself only stores the query commands when the query is designed to return a sequence of values. If the query does not contain a method that will cause immediate execution, the actual execution of the query is deferred until you iterate over the query variable in a foreach or For Each loop. Deferred execution enables multiple queries to be combined or a query to be extended. When a query is extended, it is modified to include the new operations, and the eventual execution will reflect the changes. In the following example, the first query returns all the products. The second query extends the first by using Where to return all the products of size "L":

// Assumes that connection is a valid SqlConnection object.

string queryString =

"SELECT ProductID, UnitPrice, ProductName from dbo.products";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter(queryString, connString);

DataSet products = new DataSet();

adapter.Fill(products, "Products");

DataTable products = ds.Tables["Product"];

IEnumerable<DataRow> productsQuery =

from product in products.AsEnumerable()

select product;

IEnumerable<DataRow> largeProducts =

productsQuery.Where(p => p.Field<string>("Size") == "L");

Console.WriteLine("Products of size 'L':");

foreach (DataRow product in largeProducts)

{

Console.WriteLine(product.Field<string>("ProductName"));

}

After a query has been executed, no additional queries can be composed, and all subsequent queries will use the in-memory LINQ operators. Query execution will occur when you iterate over the query variable in a foreach or For Each statement, or by a call to one of the LINQ conversion operators that cause immediate execution. These operators include the following: [ToList](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.tolist), [ToArray](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.toarray), [ToLookup](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.tolookup), and [ToDictionary](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.todictionary).

In the following example, the first query returns all the products ordered by list price. The [ToArray](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.toarray) method is used to force immediate query execution:

// Assumes that connection is a valid SqlConnection object.

string queryString =

"SELECT ProductID, UnitPrice, ProductName from dbo.products";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter(queryString, connString);

DataSet products = new DataSet();

adapter.Fill(products, "Products");

DataTable products = ds.Tables["Product"];

IEnumerable<DataRow> query =

from product in products.AsEnumerable()

orderby product.Field<Decimal>("UnitPrice") descending

select product;

// Force immediate execution of the query.

IEnumerable<DataRow> productsArray = query.ToArray();

Console.WriteLine("Every price from highest to lowest:");

foreach (DataRow prod in productsArray)

{

Console.WriteLine(prod.Field<Decimal>("UnitPrice"));

}

### Multiple Result Sets

If the DataAdapter encounters multiple result sets, it creates multiple tables in the DataSet. The tables are given an incremental default name of TableN, starting with "Table" for Table0. If a table name is passed as an argument to the Fill method, the tables are given an incremental default name of TableNameN, starting with "TableName" for TableName0.

#### Populating a DataSet from Multiple DataAdapters

Any number of DataAdapter objects can be used with a DataSet. Each DataAdapter can be used to fill one or more DataTable objects and resolve updates back to the relevant data source. DataRelation and Constraint objects can be added to the DataSet locally, which enables you to relate data from dissimilar data sources. For example, a DataSet can contain data from a Microsoft SQL Server database, an IBM DB2 database exposed through OLE DB, and a data source that streams XML. One or more DataAdapter objects can handle communication to each data source.

#### Example

The following code example populates a list of customers from the Northwind database on Microsoft SQL Server, and a list of orders from the Northwind database stored in Microsoft Access 2000. The filled tables are related with a DataRelation, and the list of customers is then displayed with the orders for that customer

// Assumes that customerConnection is a valid SqlConnection object.

// Assumes that orderConnection is a valid OleDbConnection object.

SqlDataAdapter custAdapter = new SqlDataAdapter(

"SELECT \* FROM dbo.Customers", customerConnection);

OleDbDataAdapter ordAdapter = new OleDbDataAdapter(

"SELECT \* FROM Orders", orderConnection);

DataSet customerOrders = new DataSet();

custAdapter.Fill(customerOrders, "Customers");

ordAdapter.Fill(customerOrders, "Orders");

DataRelation relation = customerOrders.Relations.Add("CustOrders",

customerOrders.Tables["Customers"].Columns["CustomerID"],

customerOrders.Tables["Orders"].Columns["CustomerID"]);

foreach (DataRow pRow in customerOrders.Tables["Customers"].Rows)

{

Console.WriteLine(pRow["CustomerID"]);

foreach (DataRow cRow in pRow.GetChildRows(relation))

Console.WriteLine("\t" + cRow["OrderID"]);

}

### Cross-Table Queries (LINQ to DataSet)

In addition to querying a single table, you can also perform cross-table queries in LINQ to DataSet. This is done by using a join. A join is the association of objects in one data source with objects that share a common attribute in another data source, such as a product or contact ID. In object-oriented programming, relationships between objects are relatively easy to navigate because each object has a member that references another object. In external database tables, however, navigating relationships is not as straightforward. Database tables do not contain built-in relationships. In these cases, the join operation can be used to match elements from each source. For example, given two tables that contain product information and sales information, you could use a join operation to match sales information and products for the same sales order.

The Language-Integrated Query (LINQ) framework provides two join operators, [Join](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.join) and [GroupJoin](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.groupjoin). These operators perform equi-joins: that is, joins that match two data sources only when their keys are equal. (By contrast, Transact-SQL supports join operators other than equals, such as the less than operator.)

In relational database terms, [Join](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.join) implements an inner join. An inner join is a type of join in which only those objects that have a match in the opposite data set are returned.

The [GroupJoin](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.linq.enumerable.groupjoin) operators have no direct equivalent in relational database terms; they implement a superset of inner joins and left outer joins. A left outer join is a join that returns each element of the first (left) collection, even if it has no correlated elements in the second collection.

#### Example

The following example performs a traditional join of the SalesOrderHeader and SalesOrderDetail tables from the AdventureWorks sample database to obtain online orders from the month of August.

// Fill the DataSet.

string query1 = "SELECT \* FROM SalesOrderHeader;”

string query2 = "SELECT \* FROM SalesOrderDetail";

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter();

DataSet ds = new DataSet();

SQLConnection connection = new SqlConnection(connetionString);

connection.Open();

SQLCommand command = new SqlCommand(query1, connection);

adapter.SelectCommand = command;

adapter.Fill(ds, "SalesOrderHeader");

adapter.SelectCommand.CommandText = query2;

adapter.Fill(ds, " SalesOrderDetail ");

DataTable orders = ds.Tables["SalesOrderHeader"];

DataTable details = ds.Tables["SalesOrderDetail"];

var query =

from order in orders.AsEnumerable()

join detail in details.AsEnumerable()

on order.Field<int>("SalesOrderID") equals

detail.Field<int>("SalesOrderID")

where order.Field<bool>("OnlineOrderFlag") == true

&& order.Field<DateTime>("OrderDate").Month == 8

select new

{

SalesOrderID =

order.Field<int>("SalesOrderID"),

SalesOrderDetailID =

detail.Field<int>("SalesOrderDetailID"),

OrderDate =

order.Field<DateTime>("OrderDate"),

ProductID =

detail.Field<int>("ProductID")

};

foreach (var order in query)

{

Console.WriteLine("{0}\t{1}\t{2:d}\t{3}",

order.SalesOrderID,

order.SalesOrderDetailID,

order.OrderDate,

order.ProductID);

}

## Transactions and Concurrency

A transaction consists of a single command or a group of commands that execute as a package. Transactions allow you to combine multiple operations into a single unit of work. If a failure occurs at one point in the transaction, all of the updates can be rolled back to their pre-transaction state.

A transaction must conform to the ACID properties—atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability—in order to guarantee data consistency. Most relational database systems, such as Microsoft SQL Server, support transactions by providing locking, logging, and transaction management facilities whenever a client application performs an update, insert, or delete operation.

**Note**: Transactions that involve multiple resources can lower concurrency if locks are held too long. Therefore, keep transactions as short as possible.

If a transaction involves multiple tables in the same database or server, then explicit transactions in stored procedures often perform better. You can create transactions in SQL Server stored procedures by using the Transact-SQL BEGIN TRANSACTION, COMMIT TRANSACTION, and ROLLBACK TRANSACTION statements.

Transactions involving different resource managers, such as a transaction between SQL Server and Oracle, require a distributed transaction.

### Local Transactions

Transactions in ADO.NET are used when you want to bind multiple tasks together so that they execute as a single unit of work. For example, imagine that an application performs two tasks. First, it updates a table with order information. Second, it updates a table that contains inventory information, debiting the items ordered. If either task fails, then both updates are rolled back.

#### Determining the Transaction Type

A transaction is considered to be a local transaction when it is a single-phase transaction and is handled by the database directly. A transaction is considered to be a distributed transaction when it is coordinated by a transaction monitor and uses fail-safe mechanisms (such as two-phase commit) for transaction resolution.

Each of the .NET Framework data providers has its own Transaction object for performing local transactions. If you require a transaction to be performed in a SQL Server database, select a System.Data.SqlClient transaction. For an Oracle transaction, use the System.Data.OracleClient provider. In addition, there is a DbTransaction class that is available for writing provider-independent code that requires transactions.

**Note**: Transactions are most efficient when they are performed on the server. If you are working with a SQL Server database that makes extensive use of explicit transactions, consider writing them as stored procedures using the Transact-SQL BEGIN TRANSACTION statement.

#### Performing a Transaction Using a Single Connection

In ADO.NET, you control transactions with the Connection object. You can initiate a local transaction with the BeginTransaction method. Once you have begun a transaction, you can enlist a command in that transaction with the Transaction property of a Command object. You can then commit or roll back modifications made at the data source based on the success or failure of the components of the transaction.

**Note**: The EnlistDistributedTransaction method should not be used for a local transaction.

The scope of the transaction is limited to the connection. The following example performs an explicit transaction that consists of two separate commands in the try block. The commands execute INSERT statements against the Production.ScrapReason table in the AdventureWorks SQL Server sample database, which are committed if no exceptions are thrown. The code in the catch block rolls back the transaction if an exception is thrown. If the transaction is aborted or the connection is closed before the transaction has completed, it is automatically rolled back.

#### Example

Follow these steps to perform a transaction.

1. Call the BeginTransaction method of the SqlConnection object to mark the start of the transaction. The BeginTransaction method returns a reference to the transaction. This reference is assigned to the SqlCommand objects that are enlisted in the transaction.
2. Assign the Transaction object to the Transaction property of the SqlCommand to be executed. If a command is executed on a connection with an active transaction, and the Transaction object has not been assigned to the Transaction property of the Command object, an exception is thrown.
3. Execute the required commands.
4. Call the Commit method of the SqlTransaction object to complete the transaction, or call the Rollback method to end the transaction. If the connection is closed or disposed before either the Commit or Rollback methods have been executed, the transaction is rolled back.

The following code example demonstrates transactional logic using ADO.NET with Microsoft SQL Server.

using (SqlConnection connection = new SqlConnection(connectionString))

{

connection.Open();

// Start a local transaction.

SqlTransaction sqlTran = connection.BeginTransaction();

// Enlist a command in the current transaction.

SqlCommand command = connection.CreateCommand();

command.Transaction = sqlTran;

try

{

// Execute two separate commands.

command.CommandText =

"INSERT INTO Production.ScrapReason(Name) VALUES('Wrong size')";

command.ExecuteNonQuery();

command.CommandText =

"INSERT INTO Production.ScrapReason(Name) VALUES('Wrong color')";

command.ExecuteNonQuery();

// Commit the transaction.

sqlTran.Commit();

Console.WriteLine("Both records were written to database.");

}

catch (Exception ex)

{

// Handle the exception if the transaction fails to commit.

Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);

try

{

// Attempt to roll back the transaction.

sqlTran.Rollback();

}

catch (Exception exRollback)

{

// Throws an InvalidOperationException if the connection

// is closed or the transaction has already been rolled

// back on the server.

Console.WriteLine(exRollback.Message);

}

}

}

## Stored Procedures

Stored procedures can accept data as input parameters and can return data as output parameters, result sets, or return values. The sample below illustrates how ADO.NET sends and receives input parameters, output parameters, and return values. The example inserts a new record into a table where the primary key column is an identity column in a SQL Server database.

**Note**; If you are using SQL Server stored procedures to edit or delete data using a **SqlDataAdapter**, make sure that you do not use SET NOCOUNT ON in the stored procedure definition. This causes the rows affected count returned to be zero, which the DataAdapter interprets as a concurrency conflict. In this event, a **DBConcurrencyException** will be thrown.

### Example

The sample uses the following stored procedure to insert a new category into the **Northwind** **Categories** table. The stored procedure takes the value in the **CategoryName** column as an input parameter and uses the SCOPE\_IDENTITY() function to retrieve the new value of the identity field, **CategoryID**, and return it in an output parameter. The RETURN statement uses the @@ROWCOUNT function to return the number of rows inserted.

CREATE PROCEDURE dbo.InsertCategory

@CategoryName nvarchar(15),

@Identity int OUT

AS

INSERT INTO Categories (CategoryName) VALUES(@CategoryName)

SET @Identity = SCOPE\_IDENTITY()

RETURN @@ROWCOUNT

The following code example uses the InsertCategory stored procedure shown above as the source for the InsertCommand of the SqlDataAdapter. The @Identity output parameter will be reflected in the DataSet after the record has been inserted into the database when the Update method of the SqlDataAdapter is called. The code also retrieves the return value.

**Note**: When using the **OleDbDataAdapter**, you must specify parameters with a **ParameterDirection** of **ReturnValue** before the other parameters.

using System;

using System.Data;

using System.Data.SqlClient;

class Program

{

static void Main()

{

string connectionString = GetConnectionString();

ReturnIdentity(connectionString);

// Console.ReadLine();

}

private static void ReturnIdentity(string connectionString)

{

using (SqlConnection connection = new SqlConnection(connectionString))

{

// Create a SqlDataAdapter based on a SELECT query.

SqlDataAdapter adapter = new SqlDataAdapter("SELECT CategoryID, CategoryName FROM dbo.Categories", connection);

// Create a SqlCommand to execute the stored procedure.

adapter.InsertCommand = new SqlCommand("InsertCategory", connection);

adapter.InsertCommand.CommandType = CommandType.StoredProcedure;

// Create a parameter for the ReturnValue.

SqlParameter parameter = adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add("@RowCount", SqlDbType.Int);

parameter.Direction = ParameterDirection.ReturnValue;

// Create an input parameter for the CategoryName.

// You do not need to specify direction for input parameters.

adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add("@CategoryName", SqlDbType.NChar, 15, "CategoryName");

// Create an output parameter for the new identity value.

parameter = adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters.Add("@Identity", SqlDbType.Int, 0, "CategoryID");

parameter.Direction = ParameterDirection.Output;

// Create a DataTable and fill it.

DataTable categories = new DataTable();

adapter.Fill(categories);

// Add a new row.

DataRow categoryRow = categories.NewRow();

categoryRow["CategoryName"] = "New Beverages";

categories.Rows.Add(categoryRow);

// Update the database.

adapter.Update(categories);

// Retrieve the ReturnValue.

Int32 rowCount = (Int32)adapter.InsertCommand.Parameters["@RowCount"].Value;

Console.WriteLine("ReturnValue: {0}", rowCount.ToString());

Console.WriteLine("All Rows:");

foreach (DataRow row in categories.Rows)

{

Console.WriteLine(" {0}: {1}", row[0], row[1]);

}

}

}

static private string GetConnectionString()

{

// To avoid storing the connection string in your code,

// you can retrieve it from a configuration file.

return "Data Source=(local);Initial Catalog=Northwind;Integrated Security=true";

}

}

# Design Pattern – Factory

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/BankingApp/BankingApp.sln>

public enum AccountTypes

{

Savings= 0,

Current = 1

}

public abstract class Account

{

:

}

public abstract class SavingsAccount

{

:

}

public abstract class CurrentAccount

{

:

}

public static class AccountFactory

{

public static Account Get(AccountTypes accountType)

{

var factory = accountFactories[(int)accountType];

return factory();

}

public static Dictionary<int, Func<Account>> accountFactories =

new Dictionary<int, Func<Account>>

{

{0, () => new SavingsAccount() },

{1, () => new CurrentAccount() }

};

}

public void CreateAccount(AccountTypes accountType)

{

var account = AccountFactory.Get(accountType);

:

}

# Design Pattern – Repository and Unit of work

Complex: <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/mvc/overview/older-versions/getting-started-with-ef-5-using-mvc-4/implementing-the-repository-and-unit-of-work-patterns-in-an-asp-net-mvc-application>

<https://enlabsoftware.com/development/how-to-implement-repository-unit-of-work-design-patterns-in-dot-net-core-practical-examples-part-one.html>

Simple: <https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/UploadFile/b1df45/unit-of-work-in-repository-pattern/>

## Repository Design Pattern

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/ADONetDemos>

**Project**: ADONetDemos/ADONetDemos.csproj

**Unit of Work** is the concept related to the effective implementation of the **Repository Pattern**. To understand this concept in better it is important to understand the concept of the Repository Pattern. We will not get into the details of the Repository Pattern in this discussion. But a small idea of this concept is necessary to proceed further.

A repository is nothing but a class defined for an entity, with all the operations possible on that specific entity. For example, a repository for an entity Customer, will have basic CRUD operations and any other possible operations related to it. A Repository Pattern can be implemented in Following ways:

* **One repository per entity (non-generic) :**This type of implementation involves the use of one repository class for each entity. For example, if you have two entities Order and Customer, each entity will have its own repository.
* **Generic repository:** A generic repository is the one that can be used for all the entities, in other words it can be either used for Order or Customer or any other entity.

## Unit of Work Design Pattern

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/ADONetDemos>

**Project**: ADONetDemos/RepoUnitOfWorkDP.csproj

**Unit of Work** is referred to as a single transaction that involves multiple operations of insert/update/delete and so on kinds. To say it in simple words, it means that for a specific user action (say registration on a website), all the transactions like insert/update/delete and so on are done in one single transaction, rather than doing multiple database transactions. This means, one unit of work here involves insert/update/delete operations, all in one single transaction.



1. Walkthrough Entities and DbContext
2. Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer.
3. Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design (required for migrations).
4. Add-Migration CreateECommerceDB
5. Update-Database -verbose
6. Walkthrough **Program.cs**: CreateData() for demo directly with DbContext.
7. Walkthrough RepoDemo(int id) for Repository Design Pattern demo.
8. Walkthrough UnitOfWork() for Unit of Work Design Pattern demo.

# EntityFramework (v6) with .NET Framework (not Core)

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\StandardEntityFramework

* Create a new console project for .NET Framework (not Core).
* Add EF Nuget package to the project:

install-package EntityFramework

* For a specific version of EF:

install-package EntityFramework -Version <version number>

* Create a Customer class:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace StandardEntityFramework.Entities

{

public class Customer

{

public int Id{ get; set; }

public string Firstname { get; set; }

public string Lastname { get; set; }

public string City { get; set; }

}

}

* Create a DBContext class:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Data.Entity;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace StandardEntityFramework.Entities

{

public class CustomerDbContext : DbContext

{

public DbSet<Customer> Customers { get; set;}

}

}

* In the app.config file (for LOCALDB):

<configuration>

:

<connectionStrings>

<add name="CustomerDbContext"

connectionString="Server=(LocalDB)\MSSQLLocalDB;Initial Catalog=CustomerDB;Integrated Security=true;AttachDbFileName=C:\Data\CustomerDB.mdf"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

</configuration>

* In the app.config file (for SQLEXPRESS):

<connectionStrings>

<add name="CustomerDbContext"

connectionString="Server=.\SQLEXPRESS;Initial Catalog=CustomerDB;Integrated Security=true;"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

* Add the following code to Program.cs:

using StandardEntityFramework.Entities;

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace StandardEntityFramework

{

internal class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

CreateCustomer(1, "John", "Smith", "Reston");

CreateCustomer(1, "Mary", "Jane", "NYC");

CreateCustomer(1, "Peter", "Quill", "Boston");

CreateCustomer(1, "Gus", "Sweet Tooth", "Dallas");

CreateCustomer(1, "Angela", "Credence", "Los Angeles");

GetCustomers();

}

static void GetCustomers()

{

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customers = db.Customers.ToList();

foreach(var customer in customers)

{

Console.WriteLine($"Id: {customer.Id} | Name: {customer.Firstname} {customer.Lastname} City: {customer.City}");

}

}

static void CreateCustomer(int id, string fname, string lastname, string city)

{

Customer customer = new Customer

{

Id = 1,

Firstname = fname,

Lastname = lastname,

City = city

};

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customers = db.Customers.Add(customer);

db.SaveChanges();

}

}

}

* Run the program.
* Also, check the folder C:\Data where the local database gets created.

## Entity States

An entity can be in one of five states as defined by the EntityState enumeration. These states are:

* **Added**: the entity is being tracked by the context but does not yet exist in the database
* **Unchanged**: the entity is being tracked by the context and exists in the database, and its property values have not changed from the values in the database
* **Modified**: the entity is being tracked by the context and exists in the database, and some or all of its property values have been modified
* **Deleted**: the entity is being tracked by the context and exists in the database, but has been marked for deletion from the database the next time SaveChanges is called
* **Detached**: the entity is not being tracked by the context

## EF6 – Database First

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFDBFirst

* Add a new Console .NET Framework project (not Core).
* Add EF Nuget package to the project:

install-package EntityFramework

* Create a Customer class:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace EFDBFirst.Entities

{

public class Customer

{

public int Id{ get; set; }

public string Firstname { get; set; }

public string Lastname { get; set; }

public string City { get; set; }

}

}

* Create a DBContext class:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Data.Entity;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace EFDBFirst.Entities

{

public class CustomerDbContext : DbContext

{

public DbSet<Customer> Customers { get; set;}

}

}

* In the app.config file:

<configuration>

:

<connectionStrings>

<add name="CustomerDbContext"

connectionString="Server=(LocalDB)\MSSQLLocalDB;Initial Catalog=CustomerDB;Integrated Security=true;AttachDbFileName=C:\Data\CustomerDB.mdf"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

</configuration>

* In the app.config file (for SQLEXPRESS):

<connectionStrings>

<add name="CustomerDbContext"

connectionString="Server=.\SQLEXPRESS;Initial Catalog=CustomerDB;Integrated Security=true;"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

* Add the following code to Program.cs:

using EFDBFirst.Entities;

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Text;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

using System.Xml.Linq;

using System.Data.Entity;

namespace EFDBFirst

{

internal class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

GetCustomers();

CreateCustomer(101, "Leanne", "Graham", "Reston");

CreateCustomer(102, "Ervin", "Howell", "NYC");

CreateCustomer(103, "Clementine", "Bauch", "Boston");

CreateCustomer(104, "Patricia", "Lebsack", "Dallas");

CreateCustomer(105, "Clementina", "DuBuque", "Los Angeles");

UpdateCustomer();

GetCustomers();

DeleteCustomer();

GetCustomers();

CreateCustomerWithState();

GetCustomers();

}

static void GetCustomers()

{

Console.WriteLine("\nGetCustomers");

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customers = db.Customers.ToList();

foreach (var customer in customers)

{

Console.WriteLine($"Id: {customer.Id} | Name: {customer.Firstname} {customer.Lastname} City: {customer.City}");

}

}

static void CreateCustomer(int id, string fname, string lastname, string city)

{

Console.WriteLine("\nCreateCustomer");

Customer customer = new Customer

{

Id = 1,

Firstname = fname,

Lastname = lastname,

City = city

};

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customers = db.Customers.Add(customer);

db.SaveChanges();

}

static void UpdateCustomer()

{

Console.WriteLine("\nUpdateCustomer");

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customer = db.Customers

.Where(c => c.Id == 1)

.FirstOrDefault<Customer>();

customer.City = "Miami";

db.Entry(customer).State = System.Data.Entity.EntityState.Modified;

db.SaveChanges();

}

static void DeleteCustomer()

{

Console.WriteLine("\nDeleteCustomer");

CreateCustomer(999, "Temp", "Data", "Garbage");

GetCustomers();

Console.WriteLine("\nDeleting...");

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

var customer = db.Customers

.Where(c => c.Firstname == "Temp")

.FirstOrDefault<Customer>();

db.Entry(customer).State = EntityState.Deleted;

db.SaveChanges();

}

static void CreateCustomerWithState(int id, string fname, string lastname, string city)

{

Console.WriteLine("\nCreateCustomerWithState");

Customer customer = new Customer

{

Id = 1,

Firstname = fname,

Lastname = lastname,

City = city

};

CustomerDbContext db = new CustomerDbContext();

db.Entry(customer).State = EntityState.Added;

db.SaveChanges();

}

}

}

* Run the program.

## Rules of Thumb

**Web Applications**

* It is now a common and best practice that for web applications, context is used per request.
* In web applications, we deal with requests that are very short but holds all the server transaction they are therefore the proper duration for the context to live in.

**Desktop Applications**

* For desktop application, like Win Forms/WPF, etc. the context is used per form/dialog/page.
* Since we don’t want to have the context as a singleton for our application we will dispose it when we move from one form to another.
* In this way, we will gain a lot of the context’s abilities and won’t suffer from the implications of long running contexts.

# Relationships in EF 6

## One-to-Many

### Reference Navigation Property

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFRelations

* Show Student and Grade classes.
* Run code in Program.cs under “Reference Navigation Property”.

### Collection Navigation Property

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFRelations

* Show Customer and Order classes.
* Show connection string.
* Run code in Program.cs under “Collection Navigation Property”.
* Won’t show Orders in GetCustomers().
* Show Eager Loading.
* Run again.
* Works!

## Migrations

* Create a project.
* Add EF, an entity, a dbcontext.
* Add connection string.
* Add some code to create and get data.
* Run.
* Works!
* Add another entity.
* Run.
* Errors! Need migrations.
* Run the following commands:

PM> Enable-Migrations

PM> Add-Migration NewEntity

PM> Update-Database -Verbose

* Check if tables created.
* Run code.
* Works!

## Many-to-Many Relationships

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFRelations

* Show Associate and Courses classes.
* Show connection string.
* Run code in Program.cs under “Many-to-Many Relationship”.
* Show tables Courses, Associates and CourseAssociates (created by EF migrations).

# EF 6 Transaction

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/entityframework6/transaction-in-entity-framework.aspx>

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/ef6/saving/transactions>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFTxns

* Create new console .NET Framework project.
* Add EntityFramework package

install-package EntityFramework

* Add connection string in app.config

<connectionStrings>

<add name=" EFTxnsDbContext"

connectionString="Server=(LocalDB)\MSSQLLocalDB;Initial Catalog=EFTxnsDB;Integrated Security=true;AttachDbFileName=C:\Data\EFTxnsDB.mdf"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

* Create entities for Associate and Courses.
* Create EFTxnsDbContext.
* Add code to create Courses and Associates.
* Run.
* Check if DB created.

In Entity Framework, the SaveChanges() method internally creates a transaction and wraps all INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE operations under it. Multiple SaveChanges() calls, create separate transactions, perform CRUD operations and then commit each transaction. The following example demonstrates this.

* Add Standard entity with reference to Associate collection.
* Add Standard reference to Associate entity.
* Run migrations:

PM> Enable-Migrations

PM> Add-Migration Standards

PM> Update-Database -Verbose

* Run CreateStandards()
* Run MapAssociateStandard()
* Show data.
* Show method MultipleTxns()
* Run
* Show log.

In the above example, we log all the database commands to the console. We add a new Standard entity and Student entity and save them to the database using the SaveChanges() method. This will create a new transaction and execute INSERT commands for Standard and Student entities within a transaction and commit them. After this, we add a new Course entity and call SaveChanges(). This will create another transaction, execute the INSERT command and then commit the transaction. Thus, each SaveChanges() method call creates a new transaction and executes database commands within it.

## Multiple SaveChanges() in a Single Transaction

EF 6 and EF Core allow us to create or use a single transaction with multiple SaveChanges() calls using the following methods:

* **DbContext.Database.BeginTransaction():** Creates a new transaction for the underlying database and allows us to commit or roll back changes made to the database using multiple SaveChanges method calls.
* **DbContext.Database.UseTransaction():** Allows us to pass an existing transaction object created out of the scope of a context object. This will allow EF to execute commands within an external transaction object. Alternatively, pass in null to clear the framework's knowledge of that transaction.

**Steps**:

* Show method SingleTxn()
* Run.
* Show log.
* Show data.

## Rollback

* Show method SingleTxn() with “toFail” param = true.
* Run
* Show log.
* Show data. No data!

# EF 6 Async Query

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/entityframework6/async-query-and-save.aspx>

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/ef6/fundamentals/async>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFTxns

## Async Query

* Show method GetAssociateAsync()

As you can see in the above code, the GetStudent() method is marked with the async keyword, which makes it an asynchronous method. The return type of the asynchrounous method must be Task<T>. The GetStudent() method returns an object of the Student entity, so return type must be of Task<Student> type.

Also, the LINQ query is marked with the await keyword. This frees up the calling thread to execute other code until it executes the query and returns the result. We have used the FirstOrDefaultAsync async extension method to get the result. You may use other async methods appropriately such as SingleOrDefaultAsync, ToListAsyn etc.

## Async Save

EF API provides the SaveChangesAsync() method to save entities to the database asynchronously.

* Show method SaveAssociateAsync()

## Getting the async Query Result

* Show method AsyncAssociateQueryAndSave()
* Run.
* Walk-thru the result.

# EF 6 Eager Loading

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/eager-loading-in-entity-framework.aspx>

Eager loading is the process whereby a query for one type of entity also loads related entities as part of the query, so that we don't need to execute a separate query for related entities. Eager loading is achieved using the **Include()** method.

In the following example, it gets all the students from the database along with its standards using the Include() method.

LINQ Method Syntax:

using (var ctx = new SchoolDBEntities())

{

var stud1 = ctx.Students

.Include("Standard")

.Where(s => s.StudentName == "Bill")

.FirstOrDefault<Student>();

}

LINQ Query Syntax:

using (var context = new SchoolDBEntities())

{

var stud1 = (from s in context.Students.Include("Standard")

where s.StudentName == "Bill"

select s).FirstOrDefault<Student>();

}

## Use Lambda Expression

You can also use the LINQ lambda expression as a parameter in the Include method. For this, take a reference of System.Data.Entity namespace and use the lambda expression as shown below:

using System;

**using System.Data.Entity;**

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

using (var ctx = new SchoolDBEntities())

{

var stud1 = ctx.Students.Include(s => s.Standard)

.Where(s => s.StudentName == "Bill")

.FirstOrDefault<Student>();

}

}

}

## Load Multiple Entities

You can also eagerly load multiple levels of related entities. The following example query eagerly loads the Student, Standard and Teacher entities:

using (var ctx = new SchoolDBEntities())

{

var stud1 = ctx.Students.Include("Standard.Teachers")

.Where(s => s.StudentName == "Bill")

.FirstOrDefault<Student>();

}

Or use the lambda expression as below:

using (var ctx = new SchoolDBEntities())

{

var stud1 = ctx.Students.Include(s => s.Standard.Teachers)

.Where(s => s.StudentName == "Bill")

.FirstOrDefault<Student>();

}

# EF 6 Explicit Loading

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/EntityFramework4.3/explicit-loading-with-dbcontext.aspx>

<https://www.tektutorialshub.com/entity-framework/ef-explicit-loading/>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFTxns

Here you will learn how to load related entities in an entity graph explicitly. Explicit loading is valid in EF 6 and EF Core both.

Even with lazy loading disabled (in EF 6), it is still possible to lazily load related entities, but it must be done with an explicit call. Use the Load() method to load related entities explicitly. Consider the following example.

**Steps**:

* Show method ExplicitLoading()
* First run with error (without .Load()).
* Add the .Load() line and run again.
* Also show code for .Reference().

db.Entry(associate).Reference(a => a.Standard).Load();

db.Entry(associate).Collection(a => a.Courses).Load();

# EF 6 Seeding Data

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/code-first/seed-database-in-code-first.aspx>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/StandardEntityFramework/StandardEntityFramework.sln>

**Project**: StandardEntityFramework\EFSeed

You can insert data into your database tables during the database initialization process. This will be important if you want to provide some test data for your application or some default master data for your application.

To seed data into your database, you have to create a custom DB initializer, as you created in the [DB Initialization Strategy](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/code-first/database-initialization-strategy-in-code-first.aspx) chapter, and override the Seed method.

## Database Initialization Strategies in EF 6 Code-First

You already created a database after running your Code-First application the first time, but what about the second time onwards? Will it create a new database every time you run the application? What about the production environment? How do you alter the database when you change your domain model? To handle these scenarios, you must use one of the database initialization strategies.

There are four different database initialization strategies:

1. **CreateDatabaseIfNotExists:** This is the **default** initializer. As the name suggests, it will create the database if none exists as per the configuration. However, if you change the model class and then run the application with this initializer, then it will throw an exception.
2. **DropCreateDatabaseIfModelChanges:** This initializer drops an existing database and creates a new database, if your model classes (entity classes) have been changed. So, you don't have to worry about maintaining your database schema, when your model classes change.
3. **DropCreateDatabaseAlways:** As the name suggests, this initializer drops an existing database every time you run the application, irrespective of whether your model classes have changed or not. This will be useful when you want a fresh database every time you run the application, for example when you are developing the application.
4. **Custom DB Initializer:** You can also create your own custom initializer, if the above do not satisfy your requirements or you want to do some other process that initializes the database using the above initializer.

To use one of the above DB initialization strategies, you must set the DB Initializer using the Database class in a context class.

**Steps**:

* Create project using .NET Framework, not Core.

install-package EntityFramework

* Add connection string in app.config

<connectionStrings>

<add name=" EFSeedDbContext"

connectionString="Server=(LocalDB)\MSSQLLocalDB;Initial Catalog=EFSeedDB;Integrated Security=true;AttachDbFileName=C:\Data\EFSeedDB.mdf"

providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />

</connectionStrings>

* Create entities for Associate and Courses.
* Create EFSeedDbContext.
* Enable migrations and create the db.

Enable-Migrations

Add-Migration Init

Update-Database -Verbose

* Open the Configuration.cs file created by migrations.
* Add code to create Standards and Associates in Seed() the Configuration class.
* Update the database:

Update-Database -Verbose

* Run code to check if data is created.

**Note**: Remove-Migration works with EF Core only!

# EF 6 Multiple DbContexts

<https://www.dotnettricks.com/learn/entityframework/entity-framework-6-code-first-migrations-with-multiple-data-contexts>

<https://www.tutorialspoint.com/entity_framework/entity_framework_multiple_dbcontext.htm>

**Note**: For associates to try themselves.

# EntityFramework Core

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/entity-framework-core-console-application.aspx>

1. Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer.
2. Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design (required for migrations)
3. Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory (for in-memory DB)

**Create Web Api with EF Core Migrations (Code First approach - VS):**

* Install-Package Microsoft.VisualStudio.Web.CodeGeneration.Design
* Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design
* Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer
* dotnet tool install -g dotnet-aspnet-codegenerator
* Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Tools

**Scaffold a controller (create a controller based on the model VSC)**:

* dotnet add package Microsoft.VisualStudio.Web.CodeGeneration.Design
* dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design
* dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer
* dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory (for in-memory DB)
* dotnet tool install -g dotnet-aspnet-codegenerator
* dotnet aspnet-codegenerator controller -name TodoItemsController -async -api -m TodoItem -dc TodoContext -outDir Controllers

## Read JSON Config in Console .NET Core App

* Install these packages:

install-package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore

install-package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer

* To read JSON config file, install these packages:

install-package Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration

install-package Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration.Json

install-package Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting

* For Code First approach / migrations, install these packages:

install-package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Tools

* Later in the code, for model changes:

Add-Migration <name>

Update-Database [-Verbose]

* appSettings.json (*enable* ***Copy to Output Directory = Copy Always***)

{

"Settings": {

"KeyOne": 1,

"KeyTwo": true,

"KeyThree": {

"Message": "**Thanks** for checking this out!"

}

},

"IPAddressRange": [

"46.36.198.123",

"46.36.198.124",

"46.36.198.125"

],

"ConnectionStrings": {

"northwind": "Server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;Initial Catalog=northwind;Integrated Security=true;TrustServerCertificate=True;",

}

}

* Settings.cs

public sealed class Settings

{

public int KeyOne { get; set; }

public bool KeyTwo { get; set; }

public NestedSettings KeyThree { get; set; } = null!;

}

public sealed class NestedSettings

{

public string Message { get; set; } = null!;

}

* Main program:

internal class Program

{

static IConfigurationRoot \_config;

static string \_nwConnectionString = "";

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Build a config object, using env vars and JSON providers.

var builder = new ConfigurationBuilder()

.AddJsonFile("appSettings.json")

.AddEnvironmentVariables();

var services = new ServiceCollection();

\_config = builder.Build();

ReadConfig();

}

static void ReadConfig()

{

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("ReadConfig()...");

\_nwConnectionString = \_config.GetConnectionString("northwind");

Settings settings = \_config.GetRequiredSection("Settings").Get<Settings>();

// Write the values to the console.

Console.WriteLine($"KeyOne = {settings?.KeyOne}");

Console.WriteLine($"KeyTwo = {settings?.KeyTwo}");

Console.WriteLine($"KeyThree:Message = {settings?.KeyThree?.Message}");

var connStrN = \_config.GetConnectionString("northwind");

var connStrP = \_config.GetConnectionString("pubs");

Console.WriteLine($"Northwind Connection String: {connStrN}");

Console.WriteLine($"Pubs Connection String: {connStrP}");

var ipOne = \_config["IPAddressRange:0"];

Console.WriteLine($"{ipOne}");

Console.WriteLine($"{\_config["IPAddressRange:1"]}");

Console.WriteLine($"{\_config["IPAddressRange:2"]}");

}

}

* DbContext class:

public class NWDbContext : DbContext

{

private readonly IConfiguration \_iConfiguration;

private readonly string \_connectionString;

public NWDbContext()

{

// Build a config object, using env vars and JSON providers.

var builder = new ConfigurationBuilder()

.AddJsonFile("appSettings.json");

//.AddEnvironmentVariables();

\_iConfiguration = builder.Build();

\_connectionString = \_iConfiguration.GetConnectionString("northwind");

}

protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

{

optionsBuilder.UseSqlServer(\_connectionString);

}

## Writing SQL Queries in EntityFramework Core

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/raw-sql-queries-in-ef-core.aspx>

Entity Framework Core provides the DbSet.FromSql() method to execute raw SQL queries for the underlying database and get the results as entity objects.

The following example demonstrates executing a raw SQL query to MS SQL Server database.

var context = new SchoolContext();

var students = context.Students

.FromSql("Select \* from Students where Name = 'Bill'")

.ToList();

In the above example, the FromSql() method is used after the Students entity set (DbSet<Student>), so the specified SQL query must return records from the Students table which will transform in Student entities. Entity Framework Core will execute the specified query to the database i.e. Select \* from Students where Name = 'Bill' in the above example.

### Parameterized Query

The FromSql method allows parameterized queries using string interpolation syntax in C#, as shown below.

string name = "Bill";

var context = new SchoolContext();

var students = context.Students

.FromSql($"Select \* from Students where Name = '{name}'")

.ToList();

The following is also valid.

string name = "Bill";

var context = new SchoolContext();

var students = context.Students

.FromSql("Select \* from Students where Name = '{0}'", name)

.ToList();

The examples above will execute the following SQL query to the SQL Server database:

exec sp\_executesql N'Select \* from Students where Name = ''@p0''

',N'@p0 nvarchar(4000)',@p0=N'Bill'

go

### LINQ Operators

You can also use LINQ Operators after a raw query using FromSql method.

string name = "Bill";

var context = new SchoolContext();

var students = context.Students

.FromSql("Select \* from Students where Name = '{0}'", name)

.OrderBy(s => s.StudentId)

.ToList();

In the above example, EF Core executes the following query by combining FromSql method and OrderBy operator.

exec sp\_executesql N'SELECT [s].[StudentId], [s].[Name]

FROM (

Select \* from Students where Name = ''@p0''

) AS [s]

ORDER BY [s].[StudentId]',N'@p0 nvarchar(4000)',@p0=N'Bill'

go

### FromSql Limitations

1. SQL queries must return entities of the same type as DbSet<T> type. e.g. the specified query cannot return the Course entities if FromSql is used after Students. Returning ad-hoc types from FromSql() method is in the [backlog](https://github.com/aspnet/EntityFrameworkCore/issues/1862).
2. The SQL query must return all the columns of the table. e.g. context.Students.FromSql("Select StudentId, LastName from Students).ToList() will throw an exception.
3. The SQL query cannot include JOIN queries to get related data. Use [Include](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/querying-in-ef-core.aspx#include-in-ef-core) method to load related entities after FromSql() method.

## .NET EF Core – How to store enum to the database ?

<https://thecodeblogger.com/2021/07/08/net-ef-core-how-to-store-enum-to-the-database/>

## Exception Handling in EntityFramework Core

<https://riptutorial.com/efcore-exceptions/learn/100002/exceptions-handling>

<https://dotnetcoretutorials.com/2022/01/29/better-exception-handling-with-entityframeworkcore-exceptions/>

<https://www.giorgi.dev/entity-framework/introducing-entityframework-exceptions/>

# Create a Web API with ASP.NET Core and EF Core

* Create a new Web API ASP.NET Core project
* Install EF Core packages:

Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore

Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer

* Add model class(es) to Models folder.
* Create DbContext class in the Models folder.
* Add DbSet<> properties to the DbContext class.
* Define connection string in appsettings.json

"ConnectionStrings": {

"CustomerDbContext": "server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;initial catalog=CustomerDB;Trusted\_Connection=True;TrustServerCertificate=True;"

}

* In Program.cs, extract the connection string:

var connectionString =

builder.Configuration.GetConnectionString("CustomerDbContext");

* Add the DbContext class as a Dependency Injection (DI):

builder.Services.AddDbContext<CustomerDbContext>(options =>

options.UseSqlServer(connectionString));

* Implement the ctor of the DbContext class to receive the DbContext options object, which must be passed back to the base class:

public CustomerDbContext(DbContextOptions<CustomerDbContext> options)

:base(options)

{

}

* Create a new API controller.
* Implement the ctor of the controller to receive the DbContext object via DI.
* Assign the DbContext object in the ctor to a class level variable.
* Use the class level DbContext object to fetch data.
* Sample Controller Code:

[ApiController]

[Route("[controller]")]

public class CustomerController : ControllerBase

{

CustomerDbContext \_db;

public CustomerController(CustomerDbContext dbContext)

{

\_db = dbContext;

}

[HttpGet]

public Customer Index()

{

var customer = \_db.Customers.Find(1);

return customer;

}

}

# Create a MVC Web App and Web API with ASP.NET .NET Framework and EF6 with Dependency Injecting using Unity

## MVC Web App

* Create a new ASP.NET Web Application (.NET Framework) project.
* Select .NET Framework 4.8.
* Select Web API.
* In Web.config, add the connection string:

<connectionStrings>

<add name="CustomerDbContext" connectionString="server=.\SQLEXPRESS;initial catalog=CustomerDB;Trusted\_Connection=True;"/>

</connectionStrings>

* Install EF6 package:

Install-Package EntityFramework

* Add a model class in the Models folder.
* Add a DbContext class in the Models folder.
* Add DbSet<> properties to the DbContext class.
* Implement the ctor of the DbContext class to receive the DbContext options object, which must be passed back to the base class:

public CustomerDbContext(DbContextOptions<CustomerDbContext> options)

:base(options)

{

}

* Create a new API controller.
* Implement the ctor of the controller to receive the DbContext object via DI.
* Assign the DbContext object in the ctor to a class level variable.
* Use the class level DbContext object to fetch data.
* Sample Web App Controller Code:

public class HomeController : Controller

{

CustomerDbContext \_db;

public HomeController(CustomerDbContext dbContext)

{

\_db = dbContext;

}

public string Get()

{

var customer = \_db.Customers.Find(1);

return customer.Firstname;

}

}

* We will use Unity.Mvc5 for Dependency Injection in MVC5 projects.
* Install the Unity.Mvc5 package:

Install-Package Unity.Mvc5

* It creates a file named UnityConfig.cs in the App\_Start folder.
* In the RegisterComponents() method of UnityConfig class, add the following line to inject the DbContext class:

container.RegisterType<CustomerDbContext, CustomerDbContext>();

* In the Application\_Start() method of Global.asax.cs file, add the following code to register the DI:

UnityConfig.RegisterComponents();

* Run the app and navigate to /Home/Get. It should show the result.

## MVC Web API

The Unity.Mvc5 package works only with pure MVC web applications. It does not work with Web API. For Web API, we have to use Unity.WebAPI package. So, install that.

Install-Package Unity.WebAPI

If Unity.Mvc5 is already installed, installing Unity.WebAPI package will give you a warning that the UnityConfig.cs will be over-written and ask you if you want to proceed. This means only one of the two can be installed in a single project as they both use the same UnitConfig.cs file.

But, you can select “No” to not over-write the file and add just one line of code to use both packages in the same project.

Once the Unity.WebAPI package is installed (not over-writing UnityConfig.cs), add the following line of code to the RegisterComponents() method of the UnityConfig class:

GlobalConfiguration.Configuration.DependencyResolver =

new Unity.WebApi.UnityDependencyResolver(container);

So, your UnityConfig.cs file should look something like this:

public static class UnityConfig

{

public static void RegisterComponents()

{

var container = new UnityContainer();

// register all your components with the container here

// it is NOT necessary to register your controllers

// e.g. container.RegisterType<ITestService, TestService>();

container.RegisterType<CustomerDbContext, CustomerDbContext>();

DependencyResolver.SetResolver(new UnityDependencyResolver(container));

// For Unity.WebAPI.

GlobalConfiguration.Configuration.DependencyResolver =

new Unity.WebApi.UnityDependencyResolver(container);

}

}

Now, let’s use it with an API controller:

* Create a new API controller.
* Implement the ctor of the controller to receive the DbContext object via DI.
* Assign the DbContext object in the ctor to a class level variable.
* Use the class level DbContext object to fetch data.
* Sample Web App Controller Code:

public class CustomerController : ApiController

{

CustomerDbContext \_db;

public CustomerController(CustomerDbContext dbContext)

{

\_db = dbContext;

}

public Customer Get()

{

var customer = \_db.Customers.Find(1);

return customer;

}

}

* Run the app and navigate to /api/customer.
* You should see the result.

## The Repository Pattern for ASP.NET MVC 4.8 Projects

* Create an interface.

public interface ICustomerRepository

{

List<Customer> Get();

Customer Get(int id);

}

* Implement the interface.
  + Create a ctor for the implemented class to have the DbContext as the DI.
  + Also add a default ctor to create a default DbContext instance in case not provided.

public class CustomerRepository : ICustomerRepository

{

CustomerDbContext \_db;

public CustomerRepository(CustomerDbContext dbContext)

{

\_db = dbContext;

}

public CustomerRepository()

{

\_db = new CustomerDbContext();

}

List<Customer> ICustomerRepository.Get()

{

var customer = \_db.Customers.ToList();

return customer;

}

public Customer Get(int id)

{

var customer = \_db.Customers.Find(id);

return customer;

}

}

* Change the ctor of the Controller to have the repository as the DI.
  + Also add a default ctor to create a default repository instance in case not provided.

public class NewCustomerController : ApiController

{

ICustomerRepository \_repo;

public NewCustomerController(ICustomerRepository repository)

{

\_repo = repository;

}

public NewCustomerController()

{

\_repo = new CustomerRepository();

}

// GET api/<controller>

public IEnumerable<Customer> Get()

{

var customers = \_repo.Get();

return customers;

}

// GET api/<controller>/5

public Customer Get(int id)

{

var customer = \_repo.Get(id);

return customer;

}

}

# How to Implement a Soft Delete Strategy with Entity Framework Core

<https://blog.jetbrains.com/dotnet/2023/06/14/how-to-implement-a-soft-delete-strategy-with-entity-framework-core/>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/EFSoftDeleteDemo/EFSoftDeleteDemo.sln>

I’m sure we’ve all had a turbulent relationship with the definition of “delete” throughout our development careers. So what does the user mean when they say “**delete**my data”? Well, if you’re anything like me, you’ll quickly realize the user wants to logically delete information from cluttering the user interface and **not** permanently delete records out of existence… Oops 😬.

With hard lessons learned, many developers will turn to a **Soft Delete**strategy allowing them to reverse accidental deletes, maintain data integrity, and general administrative oversight. You may also be required by law to retain data for a certain period, and this strategy can help you accomplish those requirements.

This post will explore how to implement a **Soft Delete**strategy with Entity Framework Core and how to use it during writing and reading to your database engine of choice.

## What is a Soft Delete?

As alluded to in the introduction, there are two kinds of deletes in application development: physical and logical.

A physical delete removes a record from a data store and is highly destructive. Data deleted through a physical delete is lost, and only system administrators can recover the data, typically using extreme measures or backups. Physical deletes commonly use a mechanism of the data storage engine to execute a non-reversible command. For example, SQL-based databases can run DELETE statements to remove records from a table (hands up if you’ve ever accidentally forgotten the WHERE clause).

**DELETE** **FROM** dbo.Movies

**WHERE** Movies.Id = '1'

Conversely, a soft delete is a logical decision made by the development team to mark records to ignore during queries. Root elements of a data model will have a flag of some kind, either a boolean flag or a timestamp indicating the time of deletion. Queries applied to root elements must explicitly specify whether to use the deletion indicator as a factor in producing a result set.

For example, here’s a SQL query returning a record, but only if the IsDeleted bit column is set to 0 for “false”.

**SELECT** \* **FROM** dbo.Movies

**WHERE** Movies.Id = '1' AND Movies.IsDeleted = 0

If you or your user would like to recover data, recovering deleted data is as straightforward as changing the value of the deletion indicator.

**UPDATE** Movies

**SET** Movies.IsDeleted = 0

**WHERE** Id = '1';

Soft delete markers are more challenging to implement into an existing system, as it takes some thought about when and where to apply deletion indicators. Additionally, there can be some overhead in the form of additional indexes and a growing record count. These are drawbacks worth considering if you have limited disk space or I/O limitations.

Now that you have a general idea of what constitutes a **Soft Delete**strategy let’s go ahead and implement it using Entity Framework Core.

## Entity Framework soft deletes with Interceptors

Entity Framework Core includes a concept of **interceptors** – an approach to extending the execution pipeline. There are several types of interceptors, and standard implementations allow you to modify the SQL command, alter entities before you save any changes, and use auditing techniques.

In this example, you’ll use an interceptor to modify entities during the writing phase of the application. First, let’s define a Movie entity, which you will adjust to support soft deletes.

**public** **class** Movie

{

**public** **int** Id { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **string** Title { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Writer { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Director { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **int** ReleaseYear { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **override** **string** ToString()

=> $"{Id}: {Title} ({ReleaseYear})";

}

To allow for increased reuse, we’ll create an ISoftDelete interface, giving you shared properties and implementation to undo any delete. Any of the properties, IsDeleted or DeletedAt, is sufficient for a soft delete strategy, but I’ve added both in this example for maximum verbosity. If you want to adopt this soft-delete approach, you’’ probably only want to have one of these properties.

**public** **interface** ISoftDelete

{

**public** **bool** IsDeleted { **get**; **set**; }

**public** DateTimeOffset? DeletedAt { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **void** Undo()

{

IsDeleted = **false**;

DeletedAt = **null**;

}

}

Apply the interface to the Movie entity, and look at the final entity definition.

**public** **class** Movie : ISoftDelete

{

**public** **int** Id { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **string** Title { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Writer { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Director { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **int** ReleaseYear { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **override** **string** ToString()

=> $"{Id}: {Title} ({ReleaseYear})";

**public** **bool** IsDeleted { **get**; **set**; }

**public** DateTimeOffset? DeletedAt { **get**; **set**; }

}

While you could set the deleted flag on every entity you want to delete, that would be tedious and not to mention error-prone. So, let’s take advantage of EF Core infrastructure and write a SoftDeleteInterceptor.

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;*

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Diagnostics;*

**public** **class** SoftDeleteInterceptor : SaveChangesInterceptor

{

**public** **override** InterceptionResult<**int**> SavingChanges(

DbContextEventData eventData,

InterceptionResult<**int**> result)

{

**if** (eventData.Context **is** **null**) **return** result;

**foreach** (**var** entry in eventData.Context.ChangeTracker.Entries())

{

**if** (entry **is** not { State: EntityState.Deleted, Entity: ISoftDelete delete }) **continue**;

entry.State = EntityState.Modified;

delete.IsDeleted = **true**;

delete.DeletedAt = DateTimeOffset.UtcNow;

}

**return** result;

}

}

As you call SaveChanges on a DbContext instance, this interceptor will check to see if any entry in the change tracker implements ISoftDelete. If so, the interceptor will change the entity state of Deleted to Modified and set all soft delete properties.

As you can see in the implementation, this interceptor works with EF Core constructs before invoking any database-specific functionality. This interceptor will work with any database provider supported by EF Core, including, but not limited to, SQL Server, PostgreSQL, SQLite, and MySQL. For this sample, I’ve used the Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory package, but feel free to substitute your favorite provider.

The final step to complete your writing phase modifications is registering the interceptor with a DbContext definition using the call to AddInterceptors during the OnConfiguring phase of initialization.

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;*

**public** **class** Database : DbContext

{

**public** DbSet<Movie> Movies => Set<Movie>();

**protected** **override** **void** OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

=> optionsBuilder

.UseInMemoryDatabase("test")

.AddInterceptors(new SoftDeleteInterceptor());

**protected** **override** **void** OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

}

}

Any attempt to remove an entity from the database using the EF Core DbContext will switch from a delete to an update statement. Let’s go ahead and see it in action.

**var** db = new Database();

**var** firstMovie = db.Movies.First();

Console.WriteLine($"{firstMovie.Title} ({firstMovie.ReleaseYear})");

// delete operation (actually an update)

db.Movies.Remove(firstMovie);

db.SaveChanges();

Console.WriteLine($"Deleted \"{firstMovie}\"");

As you may have noticed, the code looks like regular old EF Core. What about reading data? How do you filter out deleted records? You’ll see how to do that in the next section.

## Automatically filter soft-deleted records

Marking records to be deleted is only half the story. With a single configuration, you can tell EF Core to ignore soft-deleted records when executing queries, and you can do that using **query filters** on our entity definitions. For example, the modified DbContext definition with a query filter on the Movies collection is here.

**public** **class** Database : DbContext

{

**public** DbSet<Movie> Movies => Set<Movie>();

**protected** **override** **void** OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

=> optionsBuilder

.UseInMemoryDatabase("test")

.AddInterceptors(new SoftDeleteInterceptor());

**protected** **override** **void** OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

// Automatically adding query filter to

// all LINQ queries that use Movie

modelBuilder.Entity<Movie>()

.HasQueryFilter(x => x.IsDeleted == **false**);

}

}

You can apply as many query filters as you like, but I suggest limiting query filters to what’s necessary, as they are typically invisible in a LINQ query. The “invisible” nature of query filters means developers on your team have to understand and manage these concepts in their minds. With too many filters, it can get confusing and lead to unexpected bugs.

## Putting it all together with reads and writes

I’ve created a quick sample application below, something you might expect to see given the DbContext from previous sections.

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;*

**using** *SoftDeletes.Models;*

// save test data of movies

Movies.Initialize();

**var** db = new Database();

**var** firstMovie = db.Movies.First();

Console.WriteLine($"{firstMovie.Title} ({firstMovie.ReleaseYear})");

// delete operation

db.Movies.Remove(firstMovie);

db.SaveChanges();

Console.WriteLine($"Deleted \"{firstMovie}\"");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Movies: {db.Movies.Count()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Movies (including deleted): {db.Movies.IgnoreQueryFilters().Count()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Deleted: {db.Movies.IgnoreQueryFilters().Count(x => x.IsDeleted)}");

**public** **static** **class** Movies

{

**public** **static** **readonly** IReadOnlyList<Movie> All = new List<Movie> {

new() { Id = 1, Title = "Glass Onion", Director = "Rian Johnson", Writer = "Rian Johnson", ReleaseYear = 2022 },

new() { Id = 2, Title = "Avatar: The Way of Water", Director ="James Cameron", Writer = "James Cameron", ReleaseYear = 2022 },

new() { Id = 3, Title = "The Shawshank Redemption", Writer = "Stephen King", Director = "Frank Darabont", ReleaseYear = 1994 },

new() { Id = 4, Title = "Pulp Fiction", Writer = "Quentin Tarantino", Director = "Quentin Tarantino", ReleaseYear = 1994 },

new() { Id = 5, Title = "Seven Samurai", Writer = "Akira Kurosawa", Director = "Akira Kurosawa", ReleaseYear = 1954 },

new() { Id = 6, Title = "Gladiator", Writer = "David Franzoni", Director = "Ridley Scott", ReleaseYear = 2000 },

new() { Id = 7, Title = "Old Boy", Writer = "Garon Tsuchiya", Director = "Park Chan-wook", ReleaseYear = 2003 },

new() { Id = 8, Title = "A Clockwork Orange", Director = "Stanley Kubrick", Writer = "Stanley Kubrick", ReleaseYear = 1971 },

new() { Id = 9, Title = "Metroplis", Director = "Fritz Lang", Writer = "Thea von Harbou", ReleaseYear = 1927 },

new() { Id = 10, Title = "The Thing", Director = "John Carpenter", Writer = "Bill Lancaster", ReleaseYear = 1982 }

};

**public** **static** **void** Initialize()

{

**var** db = new Database();

db.Movies.AddRange(All);

db.SaveChanges();

}

}

You’ll notice no mention of the IsDeleted flag anywhere in the code. The lack of ISoftDelete properties in read/write usage is because the EF Core interceptor and query filter use the properties transparently.

Additionally, to negate query filters, you can use IgnoreQueryFilters on any LINQ query, and you’ll get unadulterated access to form a LINQ query.

// after a delete

db.Movies.Count(); // 9

db.Movies.IgnoreQueryFilters().Count(); // 10

Let’s take a look at the complete application in a single file.

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;*

**using** *Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Diagnostics;*

// save test data of movies

Movies.Initialize();

**var** db = new Database();

**var** firstMovie = db.Movies.First();

Console.WriteLine($"{firstMovie.Title} ({firstMovie.ReleaseYear})");

// delete operation

db.Movies.Remove(firstMovie);

db.SaveChanges();

Console.WriteLine($"Deleted \"{firstMovie}\"");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Movies: {db.Movies.Count()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Movies (including deleted): {db.Movies.IgnoreQueryFilters().Count()}");

Console.WriteLine($"Total Deleted: {db.Movies.IgnoreQueryFilters().Count(x => x.IsDeleted)}");

**public** **static** **class** Movies

{

**public** **static** **readonly** IReadOnlyList<Movie> All = new List<Movie> {

new() { Id = 1, Title = "Glass Onion", Director = "Rian Johnson", Writer = "Rian Johnson", ReleaseYear = 2022 },

new() { Id = 2, Title = "Avatar: The Way of Water", Director ="James Cameron", Writer = "James Cameron", ReleaseYear = 2022 },

new() { Id = 3, Title = "The Shawshank Redemption", Writer = "Stephen King", Director = "Frank Darabont", ReleaseYear = 1994 },

new() { Id = 4, Title = "Pulp Fiction", Writer = "Quentin Tarantino", Director = "Quentin Tarantino", ReleaseYear = 1994 },

new() { Id = 5, Title = "Seven Samurai", Writer = "Akira Kurosawa", Director = "Akira Kurosawa", ReleaseYear = 1954 },

new() { Id = 6, Title = "Gladiator", Writer = "David Franzoni", Director = "Ridley Scott", ReleaseYear = 2000 },

new() { Id = 7, Title = "Old Boy", Writer = "Garon Tsuchiya", Director = "Park Chan-wook", ReleaseYear = 2003 },

new() { Id = 8, Title = "A Clockwork Orange", Director = "Stanley Kubrick", Writer = "Stanley Kubrick", ReleaseYear = 1971 },

new() { Id = 9, Title = "Metroplis", Director = "Fritz Lang", Writer = "Thea von Harbou", ReleaseYear = 1927 },

new() { Id = 10, Title = "The Thing", Director = "John Carpenter", Writer = "Bill Lancaster", ReleaseYear = 1982 }

};

**public** **static** **void** Initialize()

{

**var** db = new Database();

db.Movies.AddRange(All);

db.SaveChanges();

}

}

**public** **class** SoftDeleteInterceptor : SaveChangesInterceptor

{

**public** **override** InterceptionResult<**int**> SavingChanges(

DbContextEventData eventData,

InterceptionResult<**int**> result)

{

**if** (eventData.Context **is** **null**) **return** result;

**foreach** (**var** entry in eventData.Context.ChangeTracker.Entries())

{

**if** (entry **is** not { State: EntityState.Deleted, Entity: ISoftDelete delete }) **continue**;

entry.State = EntityState.Modified;

delete.IsDeleted = **true**;

delete.DeletedAt = DateTimeOffset.UtcNow;

}

**return** result;

}

}

**public** **class** Database : DbContext

{

**public** DbSet<Movie> Movies => Set<Movie>();

**protected** **override** **void** OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

=> optionsBuilder

.UseInMemoryDatabase("test")

.AddInterceptors(new SoftDeleteInterceptor());

**protected** **override** **void** OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

modelBuilder.Entity<Movie>()

.HasQueryFilter(x => x.IsDeleted == **false**);

}

}

**public** **class** Movie : ISoftDelete

{

**public** **int** Id { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **string** Title { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Writer { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **string** Director { **get**; **set**; } = "";

**public** **int** ReleaseYear { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **override** **string** ToString()

=> $"{Id}: {Title} ({ReleaseYear})";

**public** **bool** IsDeleted { **get**; **set**; }

**public** DateTimeOffset? DeletedAt { **get**; **set**; }

}

**public** **interface** ISoftDelete

{

**public** **bool** IsDeleted { **get**; **set**; }

**public** DateTimeOffset? DeletedAt { **get**; **set**; }

**public** **void** Undo()

{

IsDeleted = **false**;

DeletedAt = **null**;

}

}

Executing the program above will give you the following output.

Glass Onion (2022)

Deleted "1: Glass Onion (2022)"

Total Movies: 9

Total Movies (including deleted): 10

Total Deleted: 1

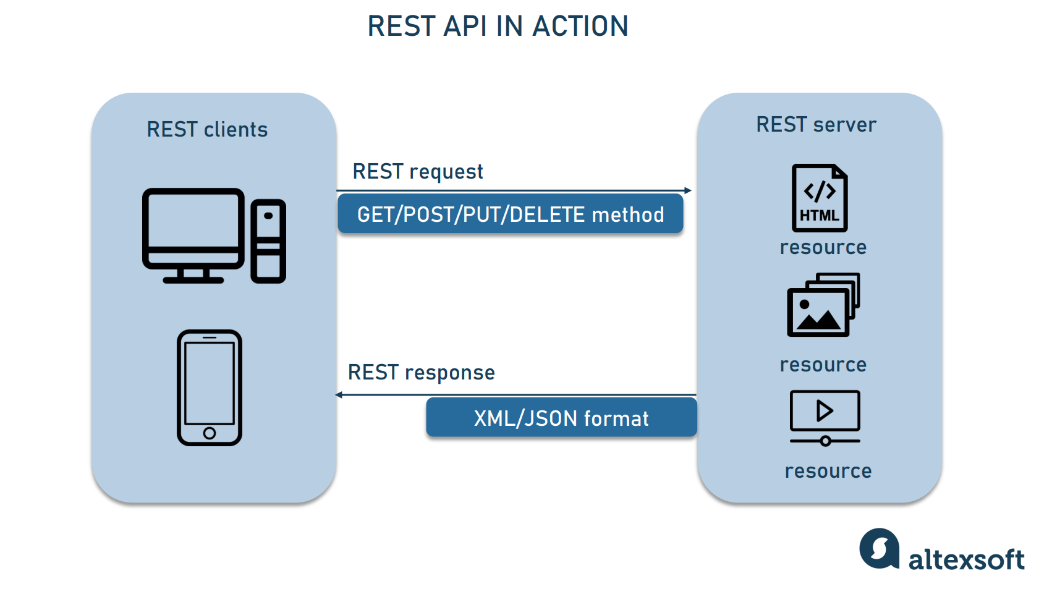
So straightforward and much easier to accomplish now with EF Core than in previous iterations. This a reminder that no data is physically deleted, only logically “deleted”. The code to insert/delete entities remains the same, and querying also does not look any different from routine EF queries. All thanks to the power of EF interceptors.

# REST and SOA

## What Is REST API and How Does It Work

<https://www.altexsoft.com/blog/rest-api-design/>

REST is short for **Representational State Transfer,**an architectural style for building web services that interact via an HTTP protocol. Its principles were formulated in 2000 by computer scientist Roy Fielding and gained popularity as a scalable and flexible alternative to older methods of machine-to-machine communication. It still remains the gold standard for public APIs.



A REST client can interact with each resource by sending an HTTP request.

### REST API Concepts

The key elements of the [REST API](https://www.altexsoft.com/glossary/rest-apis/) paradigm are

* a **client**or software that runs on a user’s computer or smartphone and initiates communication;
* a **server**that offers an API as a means of access to its data or features; and
* a **resource**, which is any piece of content that the server can provide to the client (for example, a video or a text file).

To get access to a resource, the client sends an **HTTP request**. In return, the server generates an **HTTP response**with encoded data on the resource. Both types of REST messages are self-descriptive, meaning they contain information on how to interpret and process them.

### REST API Methods and Request Structure

Any REST request includes four essential parts: an HTTP method, an endpoint, headers, and a body.

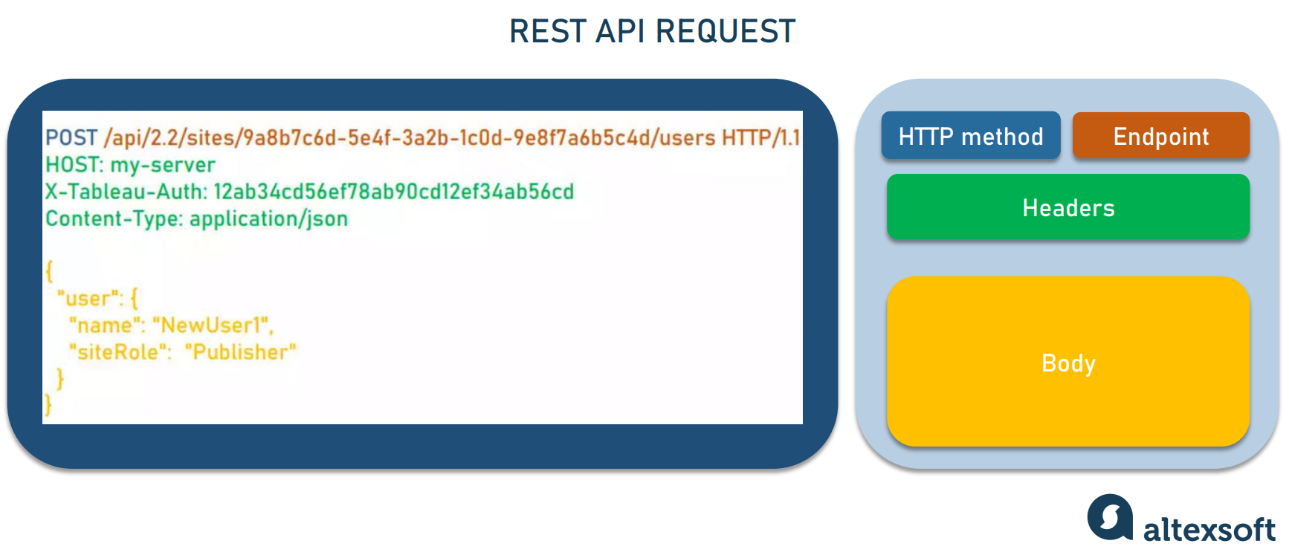
The **HTTP method** describes what is to be done with a resource. There are four basic methods also named CRUD operations:

* POST to Create a resource,
* GET to Retrieve a resource,
* PUT to Update a resource, and
* DELETE to Delete a resource.

An **endpoint** contains a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) indicating where and how to find the resource on the Internet. The most common type of URI is a Unique Resource Location (URL), serving as a complete web address.

**Headers** store information relevant to both the client and server. Mainly, headers provide authentication data — such as an API key, the name or IP address of the computer where the server is installed, and the information about the response format.

A**body**is used to convey additional information to the server. For instance, it may be a piece of data you want to add or replace.

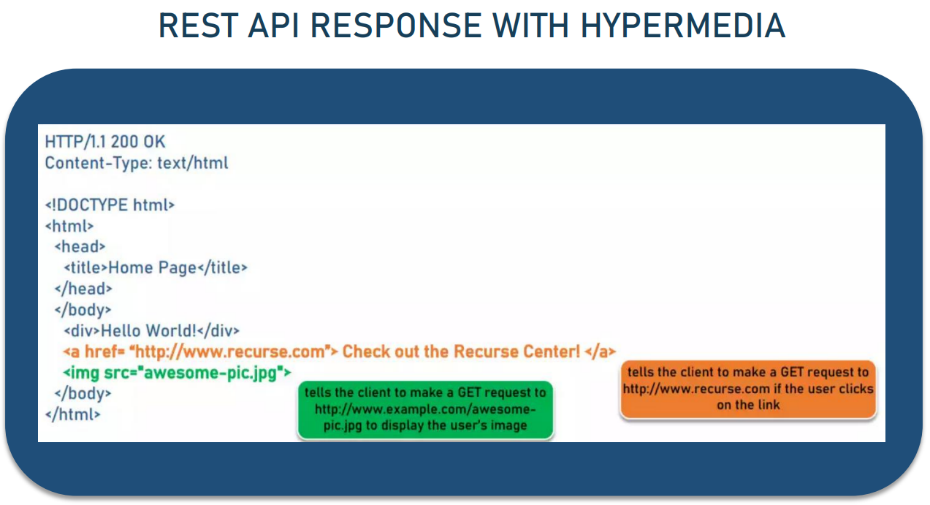


REST request for creating a new user where the response will return the ID of the created resource.

### REST Response Structure

In response, the server sends not the sought-for resource itself, but its **representation**— a machine-readable description of its current state. The same resource can be represented in different formats, but the most popular ones are XML and [JSON](https://www.json.org/json-en.html).

Whenever relevant, a server includes in the response hyperlinks or **hypermedia** that links to other related resources. This way, the server gives instructions on what the client can do next and what further requests it can make.



## REST best practices: what makes an API RESTful

REST isn’t linked to any particular technology or platform. Nor does it dictate exactly how to build an API. Instead, it introduces best practices known as constraints. They describe how the server processes requests and responds to them. Operating within these constraints, the system gains desirable properties.

### Client-server autonomy

**Properties gained:**modifiability, better system reliability

In the REST API system, the client and server work independently, using different tech stacks. The client doesn’t need to know anything about business logic, while the server has no idea about the user interface. The separation of responsibilities means that API providers and API consumers can be modified and it won’t backfire on their communication.

### Uniform interface

**Properties gained:**ease of use, shared understanding

A uniform interface is a key attribute that distinguishes REST APIS from non-REST APIs. It dictates a standardized way to communicate with a given server, no matter the client app or device that runs it. We already mentioned some fundamentals supporting this practice, which are

* a unique identifier (URI) assigned to each resource,
* self-descriptive messages explaining how to interpret them and what to do next,
* the ability to manipulate a resource through its representation in JSON or XML, and
* hypermedia linking to related resources.

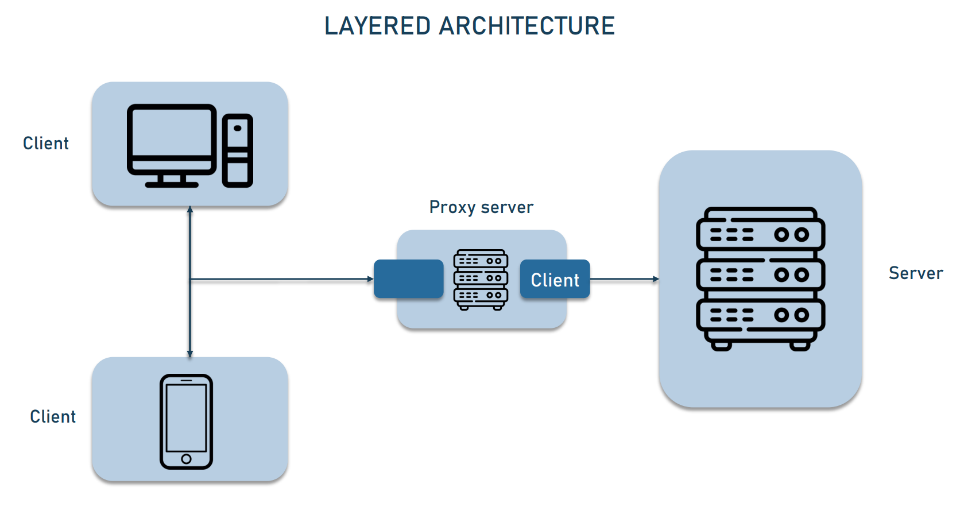
A uniform interface helps developers easily grasp the logic of an API. [Todd Main](https://www.linkedin.com/in/todd-main-a956a51/), Director of Software Development at [Envysion](https://envysion.com/) admits being relieved if a partner company has chosen a REST approach: “I know that I can just browse a list of objects, which I am usually already familiar with, and see what properties I can get or supply.” Todd adds that code implementation with a RESTful API is also easy: “The objects passed around translate directly into data structures in my programming language.”

### Layered architecture

**Properties gained:** improved system scalability and security

The RESTful system has a layered structure in which each layer works independently and interacts only with the layers directly connected to it. When calling a server, a client doesn’t know whether there are any intermediaries along the way.

Due to the layered architecture, you can place a proxy or load balancer between the client and server and thus improve scalability. Adding security as a separate layer enhances system safety. Although these services are involved in producing the response, the client doesn’t have to worry about what’s behind the interface.



### Caching

**Properties gained:** low server latency, increase in app speed and responsiveness

REST APIs allow clients to store frequently accessed data on their side instead of requesting them again and again. As a result, the app makes fewer calls, which reduces the load on the server and its latency. In turn, the application becomes more responsive and reliable.

### Stateless interactions

**Properties gained:** enhanced performance, app reliability

The word stateless indicates that an API doesn’t store any information related to the previous sessions, treating each request independently. All data on the current client’s state is contained in the request body.

Being stateless, REST APIs don’t have to deal with the server-side state synchronization logic. Another advantage of session independence is that any server can process requests. This improves the performance of the application and reduces the risk of going down.

“Going stateless means fewer side effects,” [Pál Váradi Nagy](https://www.linkedin.com/in/p%C3%A1l-v%C3%A1radi-nagy-07966aa0/?originalSubdomain=ro), a developer at Hanna Instruments, argues. “In FTP for example, we have an ongoing session with commands that modify the state of the session. This state can and sometimes will be lost. So, for REST it was a decision to go as pure as possible. Meaning that it relies on PURE functions that always return the same output when given the same input, and doesn’t affect anything else.”

### Code on Demand (CoD)

**Properties gained:** feature customization, extended functionality

Instead of sending back JSON representations, the server may return a piece of executable code on the client’s demand. The CoD practice gives the client more control over the features and allows for extended functionality.

## Service Oriented Architecture

Service-oriented architecture (SOA) was an overused term and has meant different things to different people. But as a common denominator, SOA means that you structure your application by decomposing it into multiple services (most commonly as HTTP services) that can be classified as different types like subsystems or tiers.

Docker containers are useful (but not required) for both traditional service-oriented architectures and the more advanced microservices architectures.

Microservices derive from SOA, but SOA is different from microservices architecture. Features like large central brokers, central orchestrators at the organization level, and the Enterprise Service Bus (ESB) are typical in SOA. But in most cases, these are anti-patterns in the microservice community. In fact, some people argue that "The microservice architecture is SOA done right."

SOA just makes it easier for software components over various networks to work with each other.

Web services which are built as per the SOA architecture tend to make web service more independent. The web services themselves can exchange data with each other and because of the underlying principles on which they are created, they don’t need any sort of human interaction and also don’t need any code modifications. It ensures that the web services on a network can interact with each other seamlessly.

## Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Principles

There are 9 types of SOA design principles which are mentioned below

**1. Standardized Service Contract**

Services adhere to a service description. A service must have some sort of description which describes what the service is about. This makes it easier for client applications to understand what the service does.

**2. Loose Coupling**

Less dependency on each other. This is one of the main characteristics of web services which just states that there should be as less dependency as possible between the web services and the client invoking the web service. So, if the service functionality changes at any point in time, it should not break the client application or stop it from working.

**3. Service Abstraction**

Services hide the logic they encapsulate from the outside world. The service should not expose how it executes its functionality; it should just tell the client application on what it does and not on how it does it.

**4. Service Reusability**

Logic is divided into services with the intent of maximizing reuse. In any development company re-usability is a big topic because obviously one wouldn’t want to spend time and effort building the same code again and again across multiple applications which require them. Hence, once the code for a web service is written it should have the ability work with various application types.

**5. Service Autonomy**

Services should have control over the logic they encapsulate. The service knows everything on what functionality it offers and hence should also have complete control over the code it contains.

**6. Service Statelessness**

Ideally, services should be stateless. This means that services should not withhold information from one state to the other. This would need to be done from the client application. An example can be an order placed on a shopping site. Now you can have a web service which gives you the price of a particular item. But if the items are added to a shopping cart and the web page navigates to the page where you do the payment, the responsibility of the price of the item to be transferred to the payment page should not be done by the web service. Instead, it needs to be done by the web application.

**7. Service Discoverability**

Services can be discovered (usually in a service registry). We have already seen this in the concept of the UDDI, which performs a registry which can hold information about the web service.

**8. Service Composability**

Services break big problems into little problems. One should never embed all functionality of an application into one single service but instead, break the service down into modules each with a separate business functionality.

**9. Service Interoperability**

Services should use standards that allow diverse subscribers to use the service. In web services, standards as XML and communication over HTTP is used to ensure it conforms to this principle.

## Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Terminology

* **Service Consumer**: It finds records in the broker registry using different find services and then binds to the service provider to invoke one of its web services. Which service the service-consumers require, they should take it into the Registry, bind it with several services, and after that work on it. However, they can reach various services if the service gives various services.
* **Service registry**: It is a service provider that transfer service offers to one or more further service providers. It is also known as a service broker and also called it a repository.
* **Service provider**: It generates a web service and produces the information to the service registry or broker — each provider discusses which service to give more attention: security or easy availability.

## Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) Advantages

* **Service Reusability**: These applications are built from existing services. Thus, services can be re-used to create many other applications.
* **Platform Independent**: The services are platform independent as people can interact with separate applications over a common language.
* **Easy Maintenance**: As services are independent of each other, they can be updated and transformed easily without harming other services.
* **Availability**: These facilities are effortlessly available to anyone on demand.
* **Parallel Development:** This architecture supports the layer-based design; it gives parallel development.
* **Reliability**: These applications are extra secure because it is simple to test short code rather than large codes
* **Scalability**: Services can work on various servers within an environment, this improves scalability.

## **Disadvantages of**Service-Oriented Architecture **(SOA)**

* SOA depends on the implementation of standards. Without standards, communication between applications requires a lot of time and code.
* SOA is not for: applications with a high level of data transfer, applications that do not require the implementation of the request/response type, and applications that have a short life span.
* Increasingly it becomes difficult and expensive to be able to comply with protocols and speak to service.
* It implies knowing the business processes, classifying them, extracting the functions that are common to them, standardizing them, and forming with them layers of services that will be required by any business process.

## Asynchronous Programming (async, await, Task, Thread)

You can avoid performance bottlenecks and enhance the overall responsiveness of your application by using asynchronous programming. However, traditional techniques for writing asynchronous applications can be complicated, making them difficult to write, debug, and maintain.

C# 5 introduced a simplified approach, async programming, that leverages asynchronous support in the .NET Framework 4.5 and higher, .NET Core, and the Windows Runtime. The compiler does the difficult work that the developer used to do, and your application retains a logical structure that resembles synchronous code. As a result, you get all the advantages of asynchronous programming with a fraction of the effort.

### Async improves responsiveness

Asynchrony is essential for activities that are potentially blocking, such as web access. Access to a web resource sometimes is slow or delayed. If such an activity is blocked in a synchronous process, the entire application must wait. In an asynchronous process, the application can continue with other work that doesn't depend on the web resource until the potentially blocking task finishes.

The following table shows typical areas where asynchronous programming improves responsiveness. The listed APIs from .NET and the Windows Runtime contain methods that support async programming.

| **ASYNC IMPROVES RESPONSIVENESS** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Application area** | **.NET types with async methods** | **Windows Runtime types with async methods** |
| Web access | HttpClient | Windows.Web.Http.HttpClient SyndicationClient |
| Working with files | JsonSerializer StreamReader StreamWriter XmlReader XmlWriter | StorageFile |
| Working with images |  | MediaCapture BitmapEncoder BitmapDecoder |
| WCF programming | Synchronous and Asynchronous Operations |  |

Asynchrony proves especially valuable for applications that access the UI thread because all UI-related activity usually shares one thread. If any process is blocked in a synchronous application, all are blocked. Your application stops responding, and you might conclude that it has failed when instead it's just waiting.

When you use asynchronous methods, the application continues to respond to the UI. You can resize or minimize a window, for example, or you can close the application if you don't want to wait for it to finish.

The async-based approach adds the equivalent of an automatic transmission to the list of options that you can choose from when designing asynchronous operations. That is, you get all the benefits of traditional asynchronous programming but with much less effort from the developer.

### Async methods are easy to write

The async and await keywords in C# are the heart of async programming. By using those two keywords, you can use resources in .NET Framework, .NET Core, or the Windows Runtime to create an asynchronous method almost as easily as you create a synchronous method. Asynchronous methods that you define by using the async keyword are referred to as async methods.

The following example shows an async method. Almost everything in the code should look familiar to you.

public async Task<int> GetUrlContentLengthAsync()

{

var client = new HttpClient();

Task<string> getStringTask =

client.GetStringAsync("https://docs.microsoft.com/dotnet");

DoIndependentWork();

string contents = await getStringTask;

return contents.Length;

}

void DoIndependentWork()

{

Console.WriteLine("Working...");

}

You can learn several practices from the preceding sample. Start with the method signature. It includes the async modifier. The return type is Task<int> (See "Return Types" section for more options). The method name ends in Async. In the body of the method, GetStringAsync returns a Task<string>. That means that when you await the task you'll get a string (contents). Before awaiting the task, you can do work that doesn't rely on the string from GetStringAsync.

Pay close attention to the await operator. It suspends GetUrlContentLengthAsync:

* GetUrlContentLengthAsync can't continue until getStringTask is complete.
* Meanwhile, control returns to the caller of GetUrlContentLengthAsync.
* Control resumes here when getStringTask is complete.
* The await operator then retrieves the string result from getStringTask.

The return statement specifies an integer result. Any methods that are awaiting GetUrlContentLengthAsync retrieve the length value.

If GetUrlContentLengthAsync doesn't have any work that it can do between calling GetStringAsync and awaiting its completion, you can simplify your code by calling and awaiting in the following single statement.

string contents = await client.GetStringAsync("https://docs.microsoft.com/dotnet");

The following characteristics summarize what makes the previous example an async method:

* The method signature includes an async modifier.
* The name of an async method, by convention, ends with an "Async" suffix.
* The return type is one of the following types:
  + Task<TResult> if your method has a return statement in which the operand has type TResult.
  + Task if your method has no return statement or has a return statement with no operand.
  + void if you're writing an async event handler.
  + Any other type that has a GetAwaiter method (starting with C# 7.0).
* The method usually includes at least one await expression, which marks a point where the method can't continue until the awaited asynchronous operation is complete. In the meantime, the method is suspended, and control returns to the method's caller. The next section of this topic illustrates what happens at the suspension point.

### What happens in an async method

The most important thing to understand in asynchronous programming is how the control flow moves from method to method. The following diagram leads you through the process:



The numbers in the diagram correspond to the following steps, initiated when a calling method calls the async method.

1. A calling method calls and awaits the GetUrlContentLengthAsync async method.
2. GetUrlContentLengthAsync creates an HttpClient instance and calls the GetStringAsync asynchronous method to download the contents of a website as a string.
3. Something happens in GetStringAsync that suspends its progress. Perhaps it must wait for a website to download or some other blocking activity. To avoid blocking resources, GetStringAsync yields control to its caller, GetUrlContentLengthAsync.

GetStringAsync returns a Task<TResult>, where TResult is a string, and GetUrlContentLengthAsync assigns the task to the getStringTask variable. The task represents the ongoing process for the call to GetStringAsync, with a commitment to produce an actual string value when the work is complete.

1. Because getStringTask hasn't been awaited yet, GetUrlContentLengthAsync can continue with other work that doesn't depend on the final result from GetStringAsync. That work is represented by a call to the synchronous method DoIndependentWork.
2. DoIndependentWork is a synchronous method that does its work and returns to its caller.
3. GetUrlContentLengthAsync has run out of work that it can do without a result from getStringTask. GetUrlContentLengthAsync next wants to calculate and return the length of the downloaded string, but the method can't calculate that value until the method has the string.

Therefore, GetUrlContentLengthAsync uses an await operator to suspend its progress and to yield control to the method that called GetUrlContentLengthAsync. GetUrlContentLengthAsync returns a Task<int> to the caller. The task represents a promise to produce an integer result that's the length of the downloaded string.

**Note**: If GetStringAsync (and therefore getStringTask) completes before GetUrlContentLengthAsync awaits it, control remains in GetUrlContentLengthAsync. The expense of suspending and then returning to GetUrlContentLengthAsync would be wasted if the called asynchronous process getStringTask has already completed and GetUrlContentLengthAsync doesn't have to wait for the final result.

Inside the calling method the processing pattern continues. The caller might do other work that doesn't depend on the result from GetUrlContentLengthAsync before awaiting that result, or the caller might await immediately. The calling method is waiting for GetUrlContentLengthAsync, and GetUrlContentLengthAsync is waiting for GetStringAsync.

1. GetStringAsync completes and produces a string result. The string result isn't returned by the call to GetStringAsync in the way that you might expect. (Remember that the method already returned a task in step 3.) Instead, the string result is stored in the task that represents the completion of the method, getStringTask. The await operator retrieves the result from getStringTask. The assignment statement assigns the retrieved result to contents.
2. When GetUrlContentLengthAsync has the string result, the method can calculate the length of the string. Then the work of GetUrlContentLengthAsync is also complete, and the waiting event handler can resume. In the full example at the end of the topic, you can confirm that the event handler retrieves and prints the value of the length result. If you are new to asynchronous programming, take a minute to consider the difference between synchronous and asynchronous behavior. A synchronous method returns when its work is complete (step 5), but an async method returns a task value when its work is suspended (steps 3 and 6). When the async method eventually completes its work, the task is marked as completed and the result, if any, is stored in the task.

### Another Simpler Example

**Example 1**

In this example, we are going to take two methods, which are not dependent on each other.

**Code sample**

using System;

namespace AsyncDemoTwo

{

public class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("Starting Async Demo Two...");

Method1();

Method2();

Console.WriteLine("Finishing Async Demo Two...");

Console.ReadKey();

}

public static async Task Method1()

{

await Task.Run(() =>

{

for (int i = 0; i < 100; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine(" Method 1");

// Do something

Task.Delay(100).Wait();

}

});

}

public static void Method2()

{

for (int i = 0; i < 25; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine(" Method 2");

// Do something

Task.Delay(100).Wait();

}

}

}

}

In the code given above, Method1 and Method2 are not dependent on each other and we are calling from the Main method.

Here, we can clearly see Method1, and Method2 are not waiting for each other.

Now, coming to the second example, suppose we have Method3, which is dependent on Method1

**Example 2**

In this example, Method1 is returning the total length as an integer value and we are passing a parameter as a length in a Method3, which is coming from Method1.

Here, we have to use await keyword before passing a parameter in Method3 and for it, we have to use the async keyword from the calling method.

**Note**: If we are using C# 7 or less, then we cannot use async keyword in the Main method for the console Application because it will give the error below.



We are going to create a new method as callMethod and in this method, we are going to call our all Methods as Method1, Method2, and Method3, respectively (*Refer to C#9 code for demo*).

using System;

namespace AsyncDemoThree

{

public class Program

{

//static void Main(string[] args) // For C#7.

static async Task Main(string[] args) // For C#9.

{

Console.WriteLine("Starting Async Demo Three...");

//callMethod(); // For C#7

await callMethod2(); // For C#9

Console.WriteLine("Finishing Async Demo Three...");

Console.ReadKey();

}

// For C#7.

public static async void callMethod()

{

Task<int> task = Method1();

Method2();

int count = await task;

Method3(count);

}

// For C#9.

public static async Task callMethod2()

{

Task<int> task = Method1();

Method2();

int count = await task;

Method3(count);

}

public static async Task<int> Method1()

{

int count = 0;

await Task.Run(() =>

{

for (int i = 0; i < 100; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine($" Method 1 - {i}");

count += 1;

}

});

return count;

}

public static void Method2()

{

for (int i = 0; i < 25; i++)

{

Console.WriteLine($" Method 2 - {i}");

}

}

public static void Method3(int count)

{

Console.WriteLine("Total count is " + count);

}

}

}

In the code given above, Method3 requires one parameter, which is the return type of Method1. Here, await keyword is playing a vital role for waiting of Method1 task completion.

### Async File I/O

In this example, we are going to read all the characters from a large text file asynchronously and get the total length of all the characters.

using System;

namespace AsyncFileIO

{

public class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("Starting Async File I/O Demo...");

Task task = new Task(CallMethod);

task.Start();

task.Wait();

Console.WriteLine("Finishing Async File I/O Demo...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

static async void CallMethod()

{

string filePath = @"C:\Temp\TheNotebooksofLeonardoDaVinci.txt";

Task<int> task = ReadFile(filePath);

Console.WriteLine(" Other Work 1");

Console.WriteLine(" Other Work 2");

Console.WriteLine(" Other Work 3");

int length = await task;

Console.WriteLine(" Total length: " + length);

Console.WriteLine(" After work 1");

Console.WriteLine(" After work 2");

}

static async Task<int> ReadFile(string file)

{

int length = 0;

Console.WriteLine(" File reading is stating");

using (StreamReader reader = new StreamReader(file))

{

// Reads all characters from the current position to the end of

// the stream asynchronously and returns them as one string.

string s = await reader.ReadToEndAsync();

//// Sleep just to show the delay.

//Thread.Sleep(1000);

length = s.Length;

}

Console.WriteLine(" File reading is completed");

return length;

}

}

}

In the code given above, we are calling a ReadFile method to read the contents of a text file and get the length of the total characters present in the text file.

In our sampleText.txt, the file contains too many characters, so It will take a long time to read all the characters.

Here, we are using async programming to read all the contents from the file, so it will not wait to get a return value from this method and execute the other lines of code. Still it has to wait for the line of code given below because we are using await keywords, and we are going to use the return value for the line of code given below.

int length = await task;

Console.WriteLine(" Total length: " + length);

Subsequently, other lines of code will be executed sequentially.

Console.WriteLine(" After work 1");

Console.WriteLine(" After work 2");

# Reflection in .NET

## What is .NET Reflection?

.NET Framework's Reflection API allows you to fetch Type (Assembly) information at runtime or programmatically. We can also implement late binding using .NET Reflection. At runtime, Reflection uses the PE file to read the metadata about an assembly. Reflection enables you to use code that was not available at compile time. .NET Reflection allows application to collect information about itself and also manipulate on itself. It can be used effectively to find all the types in an assembly and/or dynamically invoke methods in an assembly. This includes information about the type, properties, methods, and events of an object. With reflection, we can dynamically create an instance of a type, bind the type to an existing object, or get the type from an existing object and invoke its methods or access its fields and properties. We can also access attributes using Reflection. In short, Reflection can be very useful if you don't know much about an assembly.

Using reflection, you can get the kind of information that you will see in the Class Viewer, Object Explorer, or a Class Explorer. You can see all the types in an assembly, their members, their types, and metadata. Here is an example of the Class View in Visual Studio.

Graphical user interface, text, application

Description automatically generated

## Roadmap

The System.Reflection namespace and System.Type class play an important role in .NET Reflection. These two works together and allow you to reflect over many other aspects of a type.

Table

Description automatically generated

## System.Reflection Namespace

System.Reflection Namespace contains classes and interfaces that provide a managed view of loaded types, methods, and fields, with the ability to dynamically create and invoke types; this process is known as Reflection in .NET framework. The following table describes some of the commonly used classes:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Class | Description |
| Assembly | Represents an assembly, which is a reusable, versionable, and self-describing building block of a common language runtime application. This class contains a number of methods that allow you to load, investigate, and manipulate an assembly. |
| Module | Performs reflection on a module. This class allows you to access a given module within a multifile assembly. |
| AssemblyName | This class allows you to discover numerous details behind an assembly's identity. An assembly's identity consists of the following: • Simple name.  • Version number.  • Cryptographic key pair.  • Supported culture |
| EventInfo | This class holds information for a given event. Use the EventInfo class to inspect events and to bind to event handlers FieldInfo. This class holds information for a given field.  Fields are variables defined in the class. FieldInfo provides access to the metadata for a field within a class and provides dynamic set and get functionality for the field. The class is not loaded into memory until invoke or get is called on the object. |
| MemberInfo | The MemberInfo class is the abstract base class for classes used to obtain information about all members of a class (constructors, events, fields, methods, and properties). |
| MethodInfo | This class contains information for a given method. |
| ParameterInfo | This class holds information for a given parameter. |
| PropertyInfo | This class holds information for a given property. |

Before we start using Reflection, it is also necessary to understand the System.Type class.  
  
In order to continue with all the examples given in this article, I am using Car class as an example, it will look like this:

**ICar.cs – Interface**

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

public interface ICar

{

bool IsMoving();

}

}

**Car.cs – Class**

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

public class Car : ICar

{

//public variables

public string Color;

//private variables

//String licensePlate; // e.g. "California 111 222"

//double maxSpeed; // in kilometers per hour

//int startMiles; // Stating odometer reading

//int endMiles; // Ending odometer reading

//double gallons; // Gallons of gas used between the readings

//private vaiables

private int \_speed;

//Speed - read-only property to return the speed

public int Speed

{

get { return \_speed; }

}

//Accelerate - add mph to the speed

public void Accelerate(int accelerateBy)

{

//Adjust the speed

\_speed += accelerateBy;

}

//IsMoving - is the car moving?

public bool IsMoving()

{

//Is the car's speed zero?

if (Speed == 0)

{

return false;

}

else

{

return true;

}

}

//Constructor

public Car()

{

//Set the default values

Color = "White";

\_speed = 0;

}

//Over loaded constructor

public Car(string color, int speed)

{

Color = color;

\_speed = speed;

}

//methods

public double calculateMPG(int startMiles, int endMiles, double gallons)

{

return (endMiles - startMiles) / gallons;

}

}

}

**SportsCar.cs – Class**

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

internal class SportsCar : Car

{

//Constructor

public SportsCar()

{

//Change the default values

Color = "Green";

}

}

}

## The System.Type Class

The System.Type class is the main class for the .NET Reflection functionality to access metadata. The System.Type class is an abstract class and represents a type in the Common Type System (CLS). It represents type declarations: class types, interface types, array types, value types, enumeration types, type parameters, generic type definitions, and open or closed constructed generic types.

 The Type class and its members are used to get information about a type declaration and its members such as constructors, methods, fields, properties, and events of a class, as well as the module and the assembly in which the class is deployed.

There are three ways to obtain a Type reference.

Diagram

Description automatically generated

### Using System.Object.GetType()

This method returns a Type object that represents the type of an object. Obviously, this approach will only work if you have the compile-time knowledge of the type.  
  
**Program.cs –** ObjectGetTypeDemo()

using System;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

ObjectGetTypeDemo();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

static void ObjectGetTypeDemo()

{

Car c = new Car();

Type t = c.GetType();

Console.WriteLine(t.FullName);

}

}

}

**Output:**

ReflectionsDemos.Car

### Using System.Type.GetType()

Another way of getting Type information, which is more flexible is using the GetType() static method of Type class. This method gets the type with the specified name, performing a case-sensitive search.  
  
The Type.GetType() is an overloaded method and accepts the following parameters:

1. fully qualified string name of the type you are interested in examining
2. exception should be thrown if the type cannot be found
3. establishes the case sensitivity of the string

**Program.cs –** TypeGetTypeDemo()

using System;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

TypeGetTypeDemo();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

static void TypeGetTypeDemo()

{

Console.WriteLine("Entering TypeGetTypeDemo()...");

// Obtain type information using the static Type.GetType() method.

// (don't throw an exception if Car cannot be found and ignore case).

Type t = Type.GetType("ReflectionDemos.Car", false, true);

Console.WriteLine(t.FullName);

Console.WriteLine("Entering TypeGetTypeDemo()...");

}

}

}

**Output:**

ReflectionsDemos.Car

### Using typeof() C# operator

The final way to obtain a type information is using the C# typeof operator. This operator takes the name of the type as a parameter.

**Program.cs –** TypeofDemo()

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

TypeofDemo();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

static void TypeofDemo()

{

Console.WriteLine("Entering TypeofDemo()...");

// Get the Type using typeof.

Type t = typeof(Car);

Console.WriteLine(t.FullName);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting TypeofDemo()...");

}

}

}

**Output:**

ReflectionsDemos.Car

## Type Properties

The System.Type class defines a number of members that can be used to examine a type's metadata. You can split these properties into three categories,

1. A number of properties retrieve the strings containing various names associated with the class, as shown in the following table:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Property | Returns |
| Name | The name of the data type |
| FullName | The fully qualified name of the data type (including the namespace name) |
| Namespace | The name of the namespace in which the data type is defined |

1. It is also possible to retrieve references to further type objects that represent related classes, as shown in the following table:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Property | Returns Type Reference Corresponding To |
| BaseType | Immediate base type of this type |
| UnderlyingSystemType | The type that this type maps to in the .NET runtime (recall that certain .NET base types actually map to specific predefined types recognized by IL) |

1. A number of Boolean properties indicate whether this type is, for example, a class, an enum, and so on.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Type | Meaning in Life |
| IsAbstract IsArray IsClass IsCOMObject IsEnum IsGenericTypeDefinition IsGenericParameter IsInterface IsPrimitive IsPublic IsNestedPrivate IsNestedPublic IsSealed IsValueType IsPointer | These properties (among others) allow you to discover a number of basic traits about the Type you are referring to (e.g., if it is an abstract method, an array, a nested class, and so forth) |

Here is the example of displaying type information using System.Type class properties:

**Program.cs –** GetTypeProperties()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Modify this line to retrieve details of any other data type

// Get name of type

Type t = typeof(Car);

GetTypeProperties(t);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

public static void GetTypeProperties(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetTypeProperties()...");

StringBuilder OutputText = new StringBuilder();

//properties retrieve the strings

OutputText.AppendLine("Analysis of type " + t.Name);

OutputText.AppendLine("Type Name: " + t.Name);

OutputText.AppendLine("Full Name: " + t.FullName);

OutputText.AppendLine("Namespace: " + t.Namespace);

//properties retrieve references

Type tBase = t.BaseType;

if (tBase != null)

{

OutputText.AppendLine("Base Type: " + tBase.Name);

}

Type tUnderlyingSystem = t.UnderlyingSystemType;

if (tUnderlyingSystem != null)

{

OutputText.AppendLine("UnderlyingSystem Type: " + tUnderlyingSystem.Name);

//OutputText.AppendLine("UnderlyingSystem Type Assembly: " + tUnderlyingSystem.Assembly);

}

//properties retrieve boolean

OutputText.AppendLine("Is Abstract Class: " + t.IsAbstract);

OutputText.AppendLine("Is an Arry: " + t.IsArray);

OutputText.AppendLine("Is a Class: " + t.IsClass);

OutputText.AppendLine("Is a COM Object : " + t.IsCOMObject);

OutputText.AppendLine("\nPUBLIC MEMBERS:");

MemberInfo[] Members = t.GetMembers();

foreach (MemberInfo NextMember in Members)

{

OutputText.AppendLine(NextMember.DeclaringType + " " +

NextMember.MemberType + " " + NextMember.Name);

}

Console.WriteLine(OutputText);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetTypeProperties()...");

}

}

}

## Type Methods

Most of the methods of System.Type are used to obtain details of the members of the corresponding data type - constructors, properties, methods, events, and so on. There is a long list of methods exist, but they all follow the same pattern.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Returned Type | Methods (The Method with the Plural Name Returns an Array) | Description |
| ConstructorInfo | GetConstructor(), GetConstructors() | These methods allow you to obtain an array representing the items (interface, method, property, etc.) you are interested in. Each method returns a related array (e.g., GetFields() returns a FieldInfo array, GetMethods() returns a MethodInfo array, etc.). Be aware that each of these methods has a singular form (e.g., GetMethod(), GetProperty(), etc.) that allows you to retrieve a specific item by name, rather than an array of all related items. |
| EventInfo | GetEvent(), GetEvents() |
| FieldInfo | GetField(), GetFields() |
| InterfaceInfo | GetInterface(), GetInterfaces() |
| MemberInfo | GetMember(), GetMembers() |
| MethodInfo | GetMethod(), GetMethods() |
| PropertyInfo | GetProperty(), GetProperties() |
|  | FindMembers() | This method returns an array of MemberInfo types based on search criteria. |
| Type | GetType() | This static method returns a Type instance given a string name. |
|  | InvokeMember() | This method allows late binding to a given item. |

For example, two methods retrieve details of the methods of the data type: GetMethod() and GetMethods().

Type t = **typeof**(Car);

MethodInfo[] methods = t.GetMethods();

**foreach** (MethodInfo nextMethod **in** methods)

{

                // etc.

}

### Reflecting on Methods

GetMethod() returns a reference to a System.Reflection.MethodInfo object, which contains details of a method. Searches for the public method with the specified name.

GetMethods() returns an array of such references. The difference is that GetMethods() returns details of all the methods, whereas GetMethod() returns details of just one method with a specified parameter list.  
Both methods have overloads that take an extra parameter, a BindingFlags enumerated value that indicates which members should be returned - for example, whether to return public members, instance members, static members, and so on.

MethodInfo is derived from the abstract class MethodBase, which inherits MemberInfo. Thus, the properties and methods defined by all three of these classes are available for your use.

Diagram

Description automatically generated

**Program.cs –** GetMethod() and GetMethods()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Type Methods.

// Get name of type

Type t2 = typeof(Car);

GetMethod(t2);

GetMethods(t2);

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

public static void GetMethods(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* Methods \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetMethods()...");

MethodInfo[] mi = t.GetMethods();

foreach (MethodInfo m in mi)

Console.WriteLine("->{0}", m.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetMethods()...");

}

// Display method name of type.

public static void GetMethod(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* Method \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetMethod()...");

//This searches for name is case-sensitive.

//The search includes public static and public instance methods.

MethodInfo mi = t.GetMethod("IsMoving");

Console.WriteLine("->{0}", mi.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetMethod()...");

}

}

}

## Reflecting on Fields and Properties

Behavior of the Type.GetField() and Type.GetFields() is exactly similar to above two methods except Type.GetField() returns to references of System.Reflection.MethodInfo and Type.GetFields() returns to references of System.Reflection.MethodInfo array. Similarly Type.GetProperty() and Type.GetProperties() too.

The logic to display a type's properties is similar:

**Program.cs –** GetFields() and GetField()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Type Methods.

// Get name of type

Type t3 = typeof(Car);

GetFields(t3);

GetProperties(t3);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

// Display field names of type.

public static void GetFields(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* Fields \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetFields()...");

FieldInfo[] fi = t.GetFields();

foreach (FieldInfo field in fi)

Console.WriteLine("->{0}", field.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetFields()...");

}

// Display property names of type.

public static void GetProperties(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* Properties \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetProperties()...");

PropertyInfo[] pi = t.GetProperties();

foreach (PropertyInfo prop in pi)

Console.WriteLine("->{0}", prop.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetProperties()...");

}

}

}

## Reflecting on Implemented Interfaces

GetInterfaces() returns an array of System.Types. his should make sense given that interfaces are, indeed, types:

**Program.cs –** GetInterfaces()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Get name of type

Type t = typeof(Car);

// Reflecting on Interfaces.

GetInterfaces(t);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

// Display implemented interfaces.

public static void GetInterfaces(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* Interfaces \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetInterfaces()...");

Type[] ifaces = t.GetInterfaces();

foreach (Type i in ifaces)

Console.WriteLine("->{0}", i.Name);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetInterfaces()...");

}

}

}

## Reflecting on Method Parameters and Return Values

To play with method parameters and their return types, we first need to build MethodInfo[] array using GetMethods() function. The MethodInfo type provides the ReturnType property and GetParameters() method for these very tasks.

**Program.cs –** GetParametersInfo()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Get name of type

Type t = typeof(Car);

// Reflecting on Methods Parameters and Return Values.

GetParametersInfo(t);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

//Display Method return Type and paralmeters list

public static void GetParametersInfo(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* GetParametersInfo \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering GetParametersInfo()...");

MethodInfo[] mi = t.GetMethods();

foreach (MethodInfo m in mi)

{

// Get return value.

string retVal = m.ReturnType.FullName;

StringBuilder paramInfo = new StringBuilder();

paramInfo.Append("(");

// Get params.

foreach (ParameterInfo pi in m.GetParameters())

{

paramInfo.Append(string.Format("{0} {1} ", pi.ParameterType, pi.Name));

}

paramInfo.Append(")");

// Now display the basic method sig.

Console.WriteLine("->{0} {1} {2}", retVal, m.Name, paramInfo);

}

Console.WriteLine("Exiting GetParametersInfo()...");

}

}

}

## Reflecting on Constructor

GetConstractors() function returns an array of ConstractorInfo elements, which we can use to get constructors' information.

**Program.cs –** GetConstructorsInfo()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Get name of type

Type t = typeof(Car);

// Reflecting on Constructor.

GetConstructorsInfo(t);

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

// Display method names of type.

public static void GetConstructorsInfo(Type t)

{

Console.WriteLine("\*\*\*\*\* ConstructorsInfo \*\*\*\*\*");

Console.WriteLine("Entering ConstructorsInfo()...");

ConstructorInfo[] ci = t.GetConstructors();

foreach (ConstructorInfo c in ci)

Console.WriteLine(c.ToString());

Console.WriteLine("Exiting ConstructorsInfo()...");

}

}

}

## Assembly Class

System.Reflection namespace provide a class called Assembly. We can use this Assembly class to fetch the information about the assembly and manipulate it; this class allows us to load modules and assemblies at run time. Assembly class contacts with PE file to fetch the metadata information about the assembly at runtime. Once we load an assembly using this Assembly class, we can search the type information within the assembly. It is also possible to create instance of types return by the Assembly class.

### Dynamically loading an Assembly

Assembly Class provides following methods to load an assembly at runtime,

1. *Load ()*This static overloaded method takes the assembly name as input parameter and searched the given assembly name in the system.
2. LoadFrom ()This static overloaded method take complete path of the an assembly, it will directly look into that particular location instead of searching in the system.
3. *GetExecutingAssembly ()*  
   Assembly class also provide another method to obtain the currently running assembly information using GetExecutingAssembly() methods. This method is not overloaded one.
4. *GetTypes()*Assembly class also provide a nice feature called GetTypes Method which allows you to obtain details of all the types that are defined in the corresponding assembly.
5. *GetCustomAttributes()*This static overloaded method gets the attributes attached to the assembly. You can also call GetCustomAttributes() specifying a second parameter, which is a Type object that indicates the attribute class in which you are interested.

**Program.cs –** LoadAsm()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

LoadAsm();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

static void LoadAsm()

{

Console.WriteLine("Entering LoadAsm()...");

Assembly objAssembly;

// You must supply a valid fully qualified assembly name here.

//objAssembly = Assembly.Load("mscorlib,4.0.0.0,Neutral");

// Loads an assembly using its file name

//objAssembly = Assembly.LoadFrom(@"C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\CasPol.exe");

objAssembly = Assembly.LoadFrom(@"C:\Program Files\dotnet\packs\Microsoft.NETCore.App.Ref\6.0.1\ref\net6.0\mscorlib.dll");

//this loads currnly running process assembly

//objAssembly = Assembly.GetExecutingAssembly();

Type[] Types = objAssembly.GetTypes();

// Display all the types contained in the specified assembly.

foreach (Type objType in Types)

{

Console.WriteLine(objType.Name.ToString());

}

//fetching custom attributes within an assembly

Attribute[] arrayAttributes =

Attribute.GetCustomAttributes(objAssembly);

// assembly1 is an Assembly object

foreach (Attribute attrib in arrayAttributes)

{

Console.WriteLine(attrib.TypeId);

}

Console.WriteLine("Exiting LoadAsm()...");

} }

}

## Late Binding

Late binding is the powerful tool in .NET Reflection, which allows you to create an instance of a given type and invoke its members at runtime without having compile-time knowledge of its existence; this technique is also called dynamic invocation. This technique is useful when working with objects that are does not provide details at compile time. In this technique, developers are responsible for passing the correct signature of methods before invoking them, otherwise it will throw an error. It is very important to take the right decision when using this approach. Use of late binding may also impact the performance of your application.

**Program.cs –** LateBinding()

using System;

using System.Reflection;

using System.Text;

namespace ReflectionDemos

{

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

LateBinding();

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to continue...");

Console.ReadLine();

}

// Late binding.

static void LateBinding()

{

Console.WriteLine("Entering LateBinding()...");

Assembly objAssembly;

// Loads an assembly

objAssembly = Assembly.GetExecutingAssembly();

//get the class type information in which late binding applied

Type classType = objAssembly.GetType("ReflectionDemos.Car");

//create the instance of class using System.Activator class

object obj = Activator.CreateInstance(classType);

//get the method information

MethodInfo mi = classType.GetMethod("IsMoving");

//Late Binding using Invoke method without parameters

bool isCarMoving;

isCarMoving = (bool)mi.Invoke(obj, null);

if (isCarMoving)

{

Console.WriteLine("Car Moving Status is : Moving");

}

else

{

Console.WriteLine("Car Moving Status is : Not Moving");

}

//Late Binding with parameters

object[] parameters = new object[3];

parameters[0] = 32456;//parameter 1 startMiles

parameters[1] = 32810;//parameter 2 end Miles

parameters[2] = 10.6;//parameter 3 gallons

mi = classType.GetMethod("calculateMPG");

double MilesPerGallon;

MilesPerGallon = (double)mi.Invoke(obj, parameters);

Console.WriteLine("Miles per gallon is : " + MilesPerGallon);

Console.WriteLine("Exiting LateBinding()...");

}

}

}

# Design Pattern – Factory Method

Design patterns are reusable solutions to common problems in software design and factory design pattern is one of the common design patterns. In this article, we will learn what a factory design pattern is and how to implement a factory pattern in C#. We will also learn when to apply a factory design pattern in C# and .NET real-world applications.

## Factory design pattern

Before learning Factory Method Pattern, I just want to share a little about "Gang of Four (GoF)" to which the Factory Method pattern belongs.

## **Who is the Gang of Four?**

The Gang of Four is the authors of the book, "Design Patterns: Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software". This important book describes various development techniques and pitfalls in addition to providing 23 object-oriented programming design patterns. The four authors are Erich Gamma, Richard Helm, Ralph Johnson, and John Vlissides.

Now, let's move on to the Factory Method design pattern:

Factory Method is a Design Pattern which defines an interface for creating an object but lets the classes that implement the interface decide which class to instantiate. Factory Pattern lets a class postpone instantiation to sub-classes. The factory pattern is used to replace class constructors, abstracting the process of object generation so that the type of the object instantiated can be determined at run-time.

## Where to Use It?

It is tedious when the client needs to specify the class name while creating the objects. So, to resolve this problem, we can use the Factory Method design pattern. It provides the client with a simple way to create the object.



The classes and objects participating in the above UML class diagram are as follows:

1. Product

This defines the interface of objects the factory method creates

1. ConcreteProduct

This is a class that implements the Product interface.

1. Creator

This is an abstract class and declares the factory method, which returns an object of type Product.

This may also define a default implementation of the factory method that returns a default ConcreteProduct object.

This may call the factory method to create a Product object.

1. ConcreteCreator

This is a class that implements the Creator class and overrides the factory method to return an instance of a ConcreteProduct.

## Factory design pattern in real-world example

Assume you have three different cards which are considered here as classes MoneyBack, Titanium and Platinum, all of them implement abstract class CreditCard. You need to instantiate one of these classes, but you don't know which of them, it depends on the user. This is a perfect scenario for the Factory Method design pattern.



### Who is what?

The classes and objects participating in the above class diagram can be identified as follows:

1. **Product** – CreditCard
2. **ConcreteProduct** – MoneyBackCreditCard, TitaniumCreditCard, PlatinumCreditCard
3. **Creator** – CardFactory
4. **ConcreteCreator** – MoneyBackCardFactory, TitaniumCardFactory, PlatinumCardFactory

Here are the code blocks for each participant:

**Product –** CreditCard

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// The 'Product' Abstract Class

/// </summary>

abstract class CreditCard

{

public abstract string CardType { get; }

public abstract int CreditLimit { get; set; }

public abstract int AnnualCharge { get; set; }

}

}

**ConcreteProduct –** MoneyBackCreditCard

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteProduct' class

/// </summary>

class MoneyBackCreditCard : CreditCard

{

private readonly string \_cardType;

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public MoneyBackCreditCard(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_cardType = "MoneyBack";

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override string CardType

{

get { return \_cardType; }

}

public override int CreditLimit

{

get { return \_creditLimit; }

set { \_creditLimit = value; }

}

public override int AnnualCharge

{

get { return \_annualCharge; }

set { \_annualCharge = value; }

}

}

}

**ConcreteProduct –** TitaniumCreditCard

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteProduct' class

/// </summary>

class TitaniumCreditCard : CreditCard

{

private readonly string \_cardType;

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public TitaniumCreditCard(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_cardType = "Titanium";

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override string CardType

{

get { return \_cardType; }

}

public override int CreditLimit

{

get { return \_creditLimit; }

set { \_creditLimit = value; }

}

public override int AnnualCharge

{

get { return \_annualCharge; }

set { \_annualCharge = value; }

}

}

}

**ConcreteProduct –** PlatinumCreditCard

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteProduct' class

/// </summary>

class PlatinumCreditCard : CreditCard

{

private readonly string \_cardType;

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public PlatinumCreditCard(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_cardType = "Platinum";

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override string CardType

{

get { return \_cardType; }

}

public override int CreditLimit

{

get { return \_creditLimit; }

set { \_creditLimit = value; }

}

public override int AnnualCharge

{

get { return \_annualCharge; }

set { \_annualCharge = value; }

}

}

}

**Creator –** CardFactory

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// The 'Creator' Abstract Class

/// </summary>

// This could be an interface.

abstract class CardFactory

{

public abstract CreditCard GetCreditCard();

}

}

**ConcreteCreator –** MoneyBackFactory

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteCreator' class

/// </summary>

class MoneyBackFactory : CardFactory

{

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public MoneyBackFactory(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override CreditCard GetCreditCard()

{

return new MoneyBackCreditCard(\_creditLimit, \_annualCharge);

}

}

}

**ConcreteCreator –** TitaniumFactory

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteCreator' class

/// </summary>

class TitaniumFactory : CardFactory

{

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public TitaniumFactory(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override CreditCard GetCreditCard()

{

return new TitaniumCreditCard(\_creditLimit, \_annualCharge);

}

}

}

**ConcreteCreator –** PlatinumFactory

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

/// <summary>

/// A 'ConcreteCreator' class

/// </summary>

class PlatinumFactory : CardFactory

{

private int \_creditLimit;

private int \_annualCharge;

public PlatinumFactory(int creditLimit, int annualCharge)

{

\_creditLimit = creditLimit;

\_annualCharge = annualCharge;

}

public override CreditCard GetCreditCard()

{

return new PlatinumCreditCard(\_creditLimit, \_annualCharge);

}

}

}

**Factory Pattern Client Program**

using System;

namespace FactoryMethodDP

{

public class Program

{

public static void Main(string[] args)

{

Console.WriteLine("Starting Factory Method Design Pattern Demo...");

RunDemo();

Console.WriteLine("Press any key to continue...");

Console.ReadKey();

}

static void RunDemo()

{

bool toEnd = false;

do

{

CardFactory factory = null;

Console.Write("Enter the card type you would like to create (Moneyback, Titanium or Platinum): ");

string card = Console.ReadLine();

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(card))

continue;

switch (card.ToLower())

{

case "quit":

case "exit":

toEnd = true;

break;

case "moneyback":

factory = new MoneyBackFactory(50000, 0);

break;

case "titanium":

factory = new TitaniumFactory(100000, 500);

break;

case "platinum":

factory = new PlatinumFactory(500000, 1000);

break;

default:

Console.WriteLine("Invalid card type selected. Please retry...");

continue;

//break;

}

if (!toEnd)

{

CreditCard creditCard = factory.GetCreditCard();

Console.WriteLine("\nYour card details are below : \n");

Console.WriteLine("Card Type: {0}\nCredit Limit: {1}\nAnnual Charge: {2}",

creditCard.CardType, creditCard.CreditLimit, creditCard.AnnualCharge);

}

} while (!toEnd);

}

}

}

# HTTP

## Introduction to HTTP

* Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is a protocol that provides a standardized way for computers to communicate with each other.
* It has been the foundation for data communication over the internet since 1990 and is integral to understanding how client-server communication functions.
* HTTP is a protocol that allows the fetching of resources, such as HTML documents.
* It is the foundation of any data exchange on the Web and it is a client-server protocol, which means requests are initiated by the recipient, usually the Web browser.
* A complete document is reconstructed from the different sub-documents fetched, for instance, text, layout description, images, videos, scripts, and more.

### Features

Connectionless: When a request is sent, the client opens the connection; once a response is received, the client closes the connection.

* The client and server only maintain a connection during the response and request.
* Future responses are made on a new connection.

**Stateless**: There is no dependency between successive requests.

**Not Sessionless**: Utilizing headers and cookies, sessions can be created to allow each HTTP request to share the same context.

**Media Independent**: Any type of data can be sent over HTTP as long as both the client and server know how to handle the data format.

### Elements

**Universal Resource Identifiers (URIs)**:

* An example URI is <http://www.example.com/tasks/term=homework>.

**It has certain components:**

**Scheme**: specifies the protocol used to access the resource, HTTP or HTTPS. In our example HTTP.

**Host**: specifies the host that holds the resources.

* In our example [www.example.com](http://www.example.com/).

**Path**: specifies the specific resource being requested.

* In our example, /tasks.

**Query**: an optional component, the query string provides information the resource can use for some purpose such as a search parameter.

* In our example, /term=homework.

#### Side Note: URI vs URL

* You may be unsure what the difference is between a URI (Universal Resource Identifier) and a URL (Universal Resource Locator).
* These terms tend to get confused a lot, and are even frequently used interchangeably—but there is a distinction.
* The term URI can refer to any identifier for a resource—for example, it could be either the name of a resource or the address of a resource (since both the name and address are identifiers of that resource).
* In contrast, URL only refers to the location of a resource—in other words, it only ever refers to an address.
* So, "URI" could refer to a name or an address, while "URL" only refers to an address.
* Thus, URLs are a specific type of URI that is used to locate a resource on the internet when a client makes a request to a server.

### HTTP Requests

* HTTP requests are sent from the client to the server to initiate some operation.
* In addition to the URL, HTTP requests have other elements to specify the requested resource.

#### Elements

**Method**: Defines the operation to be performed.

**Path**: The URL of the resource to be fetched, excluding the scheme and host.

HTTP Version: HTTP/2.0

**Headers**: optional information, success as Accept-Language.

**Body**: optional information, usually for methods such as POST and PATCH, which contain the resource being sent to the server.

#### Request Methods

* Different request methods indicate different operations to be performed.
* It's essential to attend to this to correctly format your requests and properly structure an API.

#### Methods

**GET**: ONLY retrieves information for the requested resource of the given URI.

**POST**: Send data to the server to create a new resource.

**PUT**: Replaces all of the representation of the target resource with the request data.

**PATCH**: Partially modifies the representation of the target resource with the request data.

**DELETE**: Removes all of the representation of the resource specified by the URI.

**OPTIONS**: Sends the communication options for the requested resource.

### HTTP Responses

* After the request has been received by the server and processed, the server returns an HTTP response message to the client.
* The response informs the client of the outcome of the requested operation.

#### Elements

Status Code & Status Message.

HTTP Version.

**Headers**: similar to the request headers, provides information about the response and resource representation. Some common headers include:

* Date
* Content-Type: the media type of the body of the request

**Body**: optional data containing the requested resource.

#### Status Codes

* As an API developer, it's important to send the correct status code.
* As a developer using an API, the status codes—particularly the error codes—are important for understanding what caused an error and how to proceed.

**Codes fall into five categories**:

* 100 Informational
* 200 Success
* 300 Redirection
* 400 Client Error
* 500 Server Error

**Common Codes**:

* 200: OK
* 201: Created
* 304: Not Modified
* 400: Bad Request
* 401: Unauthorized
* 404: Not Found
* 405: Method Not Allowed
* 500: Internal Server Error

## HTTP Request Lifecycle



HTTP is a quite simple text-based protocol. I use Telnet to show what’s going on behind the scenes when you request a file in the browser. Don’t be intimidated by what you see on the screen right now.

**Install Telnet on Windows**

1. Click Start.
2. Select Control Panel.
3. Choose Programs and Features.
4. Click Turn Windows features on or off.
5. Select the Telnet Client option.
6. Click OK. A dialog box appears to confirm installation. The telnet command should now be available.

Open a terminal windows and type telnet google.com 80.

I’ll break it down for you. First, I connect to the server, in this case Google.com on port 80. That’s the standard HTTP port. If the request should be encrypted, you would use port 443, which you know as HTTPS in your browser. Your browser knows this and selects the right port depending on if you use HTTP or HTTPS. My local system will now make a call to the domain name service, which resolves the domain name to an IP address. Once it knows it, it will try to connect to this IP address on port 80, and the system will hopefully reply that we are now connected.

Now the actual HTTP protocol starts. I type GET /, which means give me the index page of this web server. The web server will first tell me if the request went through successfully. It communicates this by HTTP status code, in this case 200, which means okay. Then the server replies with a bunch of headers that instruct the browser to do specific things, like setting a cookie and the html, which is quite a lot when it comes to Google.

The command GET as we used it here is a so-called HTTP verb. It is usually used to retrieve data. The other word that is used often in browsers is POST. It is used to send the data with a request like when you submit a form. And there are a few other verbs that are not used when you browse the web but are relevant when you work with so called REST APIs. These are application programming interfaces that use regular HTTP and its verbs to programmatically communicate between systems.

Graphical user interface, text, application

Description automatically generated

### Routes

What are routes? You see that we have a path here on every HTTP verb. A path is a part of the unique resource locator or URL. That is everything in the browser address bar including: protocol, domain name, path, and query string. In my Google example this was the route path, which is identified by a slash.

A picture containing graphical user interface

Description automatically generated

But of course, if you look into the address bar of your browser path can be much longer. They are similar to how a folder structure works actually to identify a document on the web. On today’s web applications that serve dynamic data, those URLs usually don’t point to a specific document, but to a handler that knows what to return for a given path. These handlers are often referred to as routes. In my example from before we also saw a status code, in this case it was 200. Status codes are used to tell the browser the outcome of a request, and there are plenty of it.

Chart, bar chart

Description automatically generated

We will only cover the most important here. Everything from status code 200 to 299 indicates a successful request. 200 is used most commonly, and it simply means OK. Code 300 to 399 tell the browser to redirect to another page. For instance, 301 means Moved Permanently, and you often use it to tell the crawl of a search engine to replace an indexed page by a new one.

Anything from 400 to 499 indicates a problem on the client. Like, some kind of bad request indicated with 400. Insufficient privileges like with 403: Forbidden or a non-existing URL indicated by 404: File Not Found. And then there are the errors from 500 to 599. They indicate a server problem. Most commonly you will see 500, which means Internal Server Error.

# Swagger UI

<https://swagger.io/tools/swagger-ui/>

<https://petstore.swagger.io/>

**OAS**: OpenAPI Specification

Initially, it was named as swagger specification, but later it was renamed as **Open API Specification**. The Open API specification is a specification where the specification is a set of rules that specifies how to do something. Therefore, Open API specification is a set of rules that describes how to specify our Restful APIs in a language. Irrespective of the technology that the API use, such as JAVA, PHP, .NET, or something else, we want our API to be easily consumed by the other developers that they are building. In order to understand the API properly, we should know all the following about the API: What are the available endpoints like /customers, /employees, /orders, etc., available operation at each endpoint like GET, PUT, POST, DELETE, etc. what operations are available at each endpoint exposed by our API? What parameters to pass and their data types? What will be API return and its data type, authentication methods to use?

[**Swagger**](https://swagger.io/swagger-ui/) (now known as the [OpenAPI](https://www.openapis.org/)Initiative, under the structure of the Linux Foundation) is a framework for describing your API by using a common language that is easy to read and understand by developers and testers, even if they have weak source code knowledge.

You can think of it as a blueprint for a house. You can use whatever building materials you like, but you can't step outside the parameters of the blueprint.

## What is Swagger?

Swagger provides an editor for the Open API Specification files. To visit the swagger editor website, go to the following link:

**http://editor2.swagger.io**

Swagger is one of the popular tools used for generating an interactive documentation. It generates an interactive API for the users so that they can understand about the API more quickly.

### **Difference between the Swagger and Open API specification**

The OpenAPI is a specification whereas the Swagger is a tool used for implementing the specification. The development of the OpenAPI specification is done by the OpenAPI initiative that involves more than 30 organizations from the different areas of the world. Smartbear software is the company that developed the Swagger tool is also a member of the OpenAPI initiative, so it also helped in developing the specification.

Swagger is a tool associated with widely used tools for implementing the OpenAPI specification. The swagger toolset includes open source, free and commercial tools used at the different stages of the API lifecycle.

**The following are the tools included in the Swagger:**

1. **Swagger Editor:** It is a tool that allows us to edit the Open API specifications in YAML inside the browser and can also preview the documentation is real time.
2. **Swagger UI:** It is a tool which is a collection of HTML, Javascript, and CSS assets that allows us to generate the beautiful documentation dynamically.
3. **Swagger Codegen:** It allows us to generate the API client libraries, server stubs, and documentation automatically.
4. **Swagger core:** It consists of java related libraries which are used for creating, consuming and working with API definitions.
5. **Swagger Inspector:** It is an API testing tool that allows you to validate your APIs and generate OpenAPI definitions from an existing API.

**Swagger** has certain benefits compared with other frameworks, such as:

* **It's comprehensible for developers and non-developers.**Product managers, partners, and even potential clients can have input into the design of your API, because they can see it clearly mapped out in the friendly UI.
* **It's human readable and machine readable.** This means that not only can this be shared with your team internally, but the same documentation can be used to automate API-dependent processes.
* **It's easily adjustable.** This makes it great for testing and debugging API problems

Swagger UI, a part of Swagger, is an open-source tool that generates a web page that documents the APIs generated by the Swagger specification. This UI presentation of the APIs is user friendly and easy to understand, with all logic complexity kept behind the screen. This enables developers to execute and monitor the API requests they sent and the results they received, making it a great tool for developers, testers, and end consumers to understand the endpoints they are testing.

Swagger UI represents APIs within a browser, so it is more intuitive than other tools such as Postman, [SoapUI](https://www.soapui.org/), and others.



When you open the webpage, the browser will load the webpage from the web server, and trigger requests to the API server to get data from a database. SwaggerUI is automatically generated from any API defined in the OpenAPI Specification and can be viewed within a browser.

**Sample**: petstore.swagger.io

# ASP.NET Core – Minimal APIs

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/minimal-apis?view=aspnetcore-6.0>

<http://www.developerslearnit.com/2022/07/how-to-encrypt-decrypt-connection-strings-in-asp-net-core-6-0.html>

<https://code-maze.com/aspnet-configuration-securing-sensitive-data/>

The minimal APIs consist of:

* New hosting APIs
* WebApplication and WebApplicationBuilder
* New routing APIs

## WebApplication

The following code is generated by an ASP.NET Core template:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run();

The preceding code can be created via dotnet new web on the command line or selecting the Empty Web template in Visual Studio.

The following code creates a WebApplication (app) without explicitly creating a WebApplicationBuilder:

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run();

WebApplication.Create initializes a new instance of the WebApplication class with preconfigured defaults.

## Working with ports

When a web app is created with Visual Studio or dotnet new, a Properties/launchSettings.json file is created that specifies the ports the app responds to. In the port setting samples that follow, running the app from Visual Studio returns an error dialog Unable to connect to web server 'AppName'. Run the following port changing samples from the command line.

The following sections set the port the app responds to.

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run("http://localhost:3000");

In the preceding code, the app responds to port 3000.

### Multiple ports

In the following code, the app responds to port 3000 and 4000.

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.Urls.Add("http://localhost:3000");

app.Urls.Add("http://localhost:4000");

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run();

### Set the port from the command line

The following command makes the app respond to port 7777:

dotnet run --urls="https://localhost:7777"

If the Kestrel endpoint is also configured in the appsettings.json file, the appsettings.json file specified URL is used.

### Read the port from environment

The following code reads the port from the environment:

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

var port = Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("PORT") ?? "3000";

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run($"http://localhost:{port}");

The preferred way to set the port from the environment is to use the ASPNETCORE\_URLS environment variable, which is shown in the following section.

### Set the ports via the ASPNETCORE\_URLS environment variable

The ASPNETCORE\_URLS environment variable is available to set the port:

ASPNETCORE\_URLS=http://localhost:3000

ASPNETCORE\_URLS supports multiple URLs:

ASPNETCORE\_URLS=http://localhost:3000;https://localhost:5000

## Listen on all interfaces

The following samples demonstrate listening on all interfaces

### http://\*:3000

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.Urls.Add("http://\*:3000");

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run();

### http://+:3000

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.Urls.Add("http://+:3000");

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run();

### http://0.0.0.0:3000

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.Urls.Add("http://0.0.0.0:3000");

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run();

### Listen on all interfaces using ASPNETCORE\_URLS

The preceding samples can use ASPNETCORE\_URLS

ASPNETCORE\_URLS=http://\*:3000;https://+:5000;http://0.0.0.0:5005

### Specify HTTPS with development certificate

var app = WebApplication.Create(args);

app.Urls.Add("https://localhost:3000");

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World");

app.Run();

For more information on the development certificate, see [Trust the ASP.NET Core HTTPS development certificate on Windows and macOS](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust).

## Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and ADO.NET

**IMPORTANT:**

**REFER TO NOTES FROM SECTION** [**Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and EF Core**](#_Tutorial:_Create_a) **AND THEN SHOW DEMO OF MINIMALAPI\_ADO.**

### Overview

This tutorial creates the following API:

| **API** | **Description** | **Request body** | **Response body** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| GET / | Browser test, "Hello World" | None | Hello World! |
| GET /categories | Get all to-do items | None | Array of category items |
| GET /categories/{id} | Get an item by ID | None | category item |
| POST /categories | Add a new item | To-do item | category item |
| PUT /categories/{id} | Update an existing item | To-do item | None |
| DELETE /todoitems/{id} | Delete an item | None | None |

**Source**: dotNET\dotNETCore\MinimalAPI\_ADO

**Github**: [https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/MinimalAPI\_ADO](https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/MinimalAPI_ADO%20)

* Walk-through Category.cs, CategoryRepository.cs, Program.cs

## Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and EF Core

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/min-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0&tabs=visual-studio>

Minimal APIs are architected to create HTTP APIs with minimal dependencies. They are ideal for microservices and apps that want to include only the minimum files, features, and dependencies in ASP.NET Core.

This tutorial teaches the basics of building a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core. For a tutorial on creating a web API project based on [controllers](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/?view=aspnetcore-6.0) that contains more features, see [Create a web API](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/first-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0). For a comparison, see [Differences between minimal APIs and APIs with controllers](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/min-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0&tabs=visual-studio#diff-v6) in this document.

### Overview

This tutorial creates the following API:

| **API** | **Description** | **Request body** | **Response body** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| GET / | Browser test, "Hello World" | None | Hello World! |
| GET /todoitems | Get all to-do items | None | Array of to-do items |
| GET /todoitems/complete | Get completed to-do items | None | Array of to-do items |
| GET /todoitems/{id} | Get an item by ID | None | To-do item |
| POST /todoitems | Add a new item | To-do item | To-do item |
| PUT /todoitems/{id} | Update an existing item | To-do item | None |
| DELETE /todoitems/{id} | Delete an item | None | None |

**Source**: dotNET\dotNETCore\Minimal API\TodoApi

**Github**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Minimal%20API/TodoApi>

### Prerequisites

* [Visual Studio 2022 latest preview version](https://visualstudio.microsoft.com/vs/#download)
  + with the **ASP.NET and web development** workload.
* [Visual Studio Code](https://code.visualstudio.com/download)
  + [C# for Visual Studio Code (latest version)](https://marketplace.visualstudio.com/items?itemName=ms-dotnettools.csharp)
  + [.NET 7.0 SDK](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download/dotnet/7.0)

The Visual Studio Code instructions use the .NET CLI for ASP.NET Core development functions such as project creation. You can follow these instructions on macOS, Linux, or Windows and with any code editor. Minor changes may be required if you use something other than Visual Studio Code.

* [Postman](https://www.getpostman.com/downloads/)

### Create a Web API project

**Visual Studio**

* Start Visual Studio 2022 and select **Create a new project**.
* In the **Create a new project** dialog:
  + Enter API in the **Search for templates** search box.
  + Select the **ASP.NET Core Web API** template and select **Next**.
* Name the project *TodoApi* and select **Next**.
* In the **Additional information** dialog:
  + Select .NET 6.0 (Long-term support)
  + Remove Use controllers (uncheck to use minimal APIs)
  + Select Create

**Visual Studio Code**

* Open the [integrated terminal](https://code.visualstudio.com/docs/editor/integrated-terminal).
* Change directories (cd) to the folder that will contain the project folder.
* Run the following commands:

dotnet new webapi -minimal -o TodoApi

cd TodoApi

code -r ../TodoApi

* When a dialog box asks if you want to trust the authors, select **Yes**.
* When a dialog box asks if you want to add required assets to the project, select **Yes**.

The preceding command creates a new web minimal API project and opens it in Visual Studio Code.

### Examine the code

The Program.cs file contains the following code:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

// Learn more about configuring Swagger/OpenAPI at https://aka.ms/aspnetcore/swashbuckle

builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseSwagger();

app.UseSwaggerUI();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

var summaries = new[]

{

"Freezing", "Bracing", "Chilly", "Cool", "Mild", "Warm", "Balmy", "Hot", "Sweltering", "Scorching"

};

app.MapGet("/weatherforecast", () =>

{

var forecast = Enumerable.Range(1, 5).Select(index =>

new WeatherForecast

(

DateTime.Now.AddDays(index),

Random.Shared.Next(-20, 55),

summaries[Random.Shared.Next(summaries.Length)]

))

.ToArray();

return forecast;

})

.WithName("GetWeatherForecast");

app.Run();

internal record WeatherForecast(DateTime Date, int TemperatureC, string? Summary)

{

public int TemperatureF => 32 + (int)(TemperatureC / 0.5556);

}

The project template creates a WeatherForecast API with support for [Swagger](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/web-api-help-pages-using-swagger?view=aspnetcore-6.0). Swagger is used to generate useful documentation and help pages for web APIs.

The following highlighted code adds support for Swagger:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

// Learn more about configuring Swagger/OpenAPI at https://aka.ms/aspnetcore/swashbuckle

builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseSwagger();

app.UseSwaggerUI();

}

### Run the app

**Visual Studio**

Press Ctrl+F5 to run without the debugger.

Visual Studio displays the following dialog:



Select **Yes** if you trust the IIS Express SSL certificate.

The following dialog is displayed:



Select **Yes** if you agree to trust the development certificate.

For information on trusting the Firefox browser, see [Firefox SEC\_ERROR\_INADEQUATE\_KEY\_USAGE certificate error](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust-ff).

Visual Studio launches the [Kestrel web server](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/servers/kestrel?view=aspnetcore-6.0).

**Visual Studio Code**

* Trust the HTTPS development certificate by running the following command:

dotnet dev-certs https --trust

The preceding command doesn't work on Linux. See your Linux distribution's documentation for trusting a certificate.

The preceding command displays the following dialog, provided the certificate was not previously trusted:



* Select **Yes** if you agree to trust the development certificate.

See [Trust the ASP.NET Core HTTPS development certificate](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust-the-aspnet-core-https-development-certificate-on-windows-and-macos) for more information.

For information on trusting the Firefox browser, see [Firefox SEC\_ERROR\_INADEQUATE\_KEY\_USAGE certificate error](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust-ff).

Press Ctrl+F5 to run the app. A browser window is opened.

### Test Using Swagger

Append /swagger to the URL in the browser, for example <https://localhost:7122/swagger>.

The Swagger page /swagger/index.html is displayed. Select **GET > Try it out> Execute**. The page displays:

* The [Curl](https://curl.haxx.se/) command to test the WeatherForecast API.
* The URL to test the WeatherForecast API.
* The response code, body, and headers.
* A drop down list box with media types and the example value and schema.

Copy and paste the **Request URL** in the browser: https://localhost:<port>/WeatherForecast. JSON similar to the following is returned:

[

{

"date": "2021-10-19T14:12:50.3079024-10:00",

"temperatureC": 13,

"summary": "Bracing",

"temperatureF": 55

},

{

"date": "2021-10-20T14:12:50.3080559-10:00",

"temperatureC": -8,

"summary": "Bracing",

"temperatureF": 18

},

{

"date": "2021-10-21T14:12:50.3080601-10:00",

"temperatureC": 12,

"summary": "Hot",

"temperatureF": 53

},

{

"date": "2021-10-22T14:12:50.3080603-10:00",

"temperatureC": 10,

"summary": "Sweltering",

"temperatureF": 49

},

{

"date": "2021-10-23T14:12:50.3080604-10:00",

"temperatureC": 36,

"summary": "Warm",

"temperatureF": 96

}

]

### Update the generated code

This tutorial focuses on creating a web API, so we'll delete the Swagger code and the WeatherForecast code. Replace the contents of the Program.cs file with the following:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run();

The following highlighted code creates a [WebApplicationBuilder](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.builder.webapplicationbuilder) and a [WebApplication](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.builder.webapplication) with preconfigured defaults:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run();

The following code creates an HTTP GET endpoint / which returns Hello World!:

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.Run(); runs the app.

Remove the two "launchUrl": "swagger", lines from the Properties/launchSettings.json file. When the launchUrl isn't specified, the web browser requests the / endpoint.

Run the app. Hello World! is displayed. The updated Program.cs file contains a minimal but complete app.

### Add NuGet packages

NuGet packages must be added to support the database and diagnostics used in this tutorial.

**Visual Studio**

* From the Tools menu, select NuGet Package Manager > Manage NuGet Packages for Solution.
* Enter Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory in the search box, and then select Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory.

Install-package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory

* Select the Project checkbox in the right pane and then select Install.
* Follow the preceding instructions to add the Microsoft.AspNetCore.Diagnostics.EntityFrameworkCore package.

Install-package Microsoft.AspNetCore.Diagnostics.EntityFrameworkCore

**Visual Studio Code**

* Run the following commands:

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory

dotnet add package Microsoft.AspNetCore.Diagnostics.EntityFrameworkCore

### Add the API code

**IMPORTANT:**

**FOR DEMO ON MINIMAL API WITH ADO.NET DEMO, GO BACK TO THE SECTION** [**Tutorial: Create a minimal web API with ASP.NET Core and ADO.NET**](#_Tutorial:_Create_a_1) **AND REFER TO CODE THAT CODE BASE.**

**FOR MINIMAL API WITH EF CORE, CONTINUE…**

Replace the contents of the Program.cs file with the following code:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddDbContext<TodoDb>(opt => opt.UseInMemoryDatabase("TodoList"));

builder.Services.AddDatabaseDeveloperPageExceptionFilter();

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.MapGet("/todoitems", async (TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.ToListAsync());

app.MapGet("/todoitems/complete", async (TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.Where(t => t.IsComplete).ToListAsync());

app.MapGet("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.FindAsync(id)

is Todo todo

? Results.Ok(todo)

: Results.NotFound());

app.MapPost("/todoitems", async (Todo todo, TodoDb db) =>

{

db.Todos.Add(todo);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Created($"/todoitems/{todo.Id}", todo);

});

app.MapPut("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, Todo inputTodo, TodoDb db) =>

{

var todo = await db.Todos.FindAsync(id);

if (todo is null) return Results.NotFound();

todo.Name = inputTodo.Name;

todo.IsComplete = inputTodo.IsComplete;

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.NoContent();

});

app.MapDelete("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

{

if (await db.Todos.FindAsync(id) is Todo todo)

{

db.Todos.Remove(todo);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Ok(todo);

}

return Results.NotFound();

});

app.Run();

class Todo

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

class TodoDb : DbContext

{

public TodoDb(DbContextOptions<TodoDb> options)

: base(options) { }

public DbSet<Todo> Todos => Set<Todo>();

}

### The model and database context classes

The sample app contains the following model:

class Todo

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

A model is a class that represents data that the app manages. The model for this app is the Todo class.

The sample app contains the following database context class:

class TodoDb : DbContext

{

public TodoDb(DbContextOptions<TodoDb> options)

: base(options) { }

public DbSet<Todo> Todos => Set<Todo>();

}

The database context is the main class that coordinates [Entity Framework](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/) functionality for a data model. This class is created by deriving from the [Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.DbContext](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.entityframeworkcore.dbcontext) class.

The following highlighted code adds the database context to the [dependency injection (DI)](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/dependency-injection?view=aspnetcore-6.0) container and enables displaying database-related exceptions:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddDbContext<TodoDb>(opt => opt.UseInMemoryDatabase("TodoList"));

builder.Services.AddDatabaseDeveloperPageExceptionFilter();

var app = builder.Build();

The DI container provides access to the database context and other services.

The following code creates an HTTP POST endpoint /todoitems to add data to the in-memory database:

app.MapPost("/todoitems", async (Todo todo, TodoDb db) =>

{

db.Todos.Add(todo);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Created($"/todoitems/{todo.Id}", todo);

});

### Install Postman to test the app

This tutorial uses Postman to test the API.

* Install [Postman](https://www.getpostman.com/downloads/)
* Start the web app.
* Start Postman.
* Disable **SSL certificate verification**
  + From **File** > **Settings** (**General** tab), disable **SSL certificate verification**.

**Warning:** Re-enable SSL certificate verification after testing the controller.

#### Test posting data

The following instructions post data to the app:

* Create a new request.
* Set the HTTP method to POST.
* Set the URI to https://localhost:<port>/todoitems. For example: https://localhost:5001/todoitems
* Select the **Body** tab.
* Select **raw**.
* Set the type to **JSON**.
* In the request body enter JSON for a to-do item:

{

  "id": 0,

  "name":"walk dog",

  "isComplete":**false**

}

* Select Send.



#### Examine the GET endpoints

The sample app implements several GET endpoints using calls to MapGet:

| **API** | **Description** | **Request body** | **Response body** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| GET / | Browser test, "Hello World" | None | Hello World! |
| GET /todoitems | Get all to-do items | None | Array of to-do items |
| GET /todoitems/complete | Get all completed to-do items | None | Array of to-do items |
| GET /todoitems/{id} | Get an item by ID | None | To-do item |

app.MapGet("/", () => "Hello World!");

app.MapGet("/todoitems", async (TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.ToListAsync());

app.MapGet("/todoitems/complete", async (TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.Where(t => t.IsComplete).ToListAsync());

app.MapGet("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.FindAsync(id)

is Todo todo

? Results.Ok(todo)

: Results.NotFound());

#### Test the GET endpoints

Test the app by calling the two endpoints from a browser or Postman. For example:

* GET https://localhost:5001/todoitems
* GET https://localhost:5001/todoitems/1

The call to GET /todoitems produces a response similar to the following:

[

{

"id": 1,

"name": "Item1",

"isComplete": false

}

]

#### Test the GET endpoints with Postman

* Create a new request.
* Set the HTTP method to **GET**.
* Set the request URI to https://localhost:<port>/todoitems. For example, https://localhost:5001/todoitems.
* Select **Send**.

This app uses an in-memory database. If the app is restarted, the GET request doesn't return any data. If no data is returned, first [POST](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/min-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0&tabs=visual-studio-code#post) data to the app.

### Return values

ASP.NET Core automatically serializes the object to [JSON](https://www.json.org/) and writes the JSON into the body of the response message. The response code for this return type is [200 OK](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Status/200), assuming there are no unhandled exceptions. Unhandled exceptions are translated into 5xx errors.

The return types can represent a wide range of HTTP status codes. For example, GET /todoitems/{id} can return two different status values:

* If no item matches the requested ID, the method returns a [404 status](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Status/404) [NotFound](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.notfound) error code.
* Otherwise, the method returns 200 with a JSON response body. Returning item results in an HTTP 200 response.

### Examine the PUT endpoint

The sample app implements a single PUT endpoint using MapPut:

app.MapPut("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, Todo inputTodo, TodoDb db) =>

{

var todo = await db.Todos.FindAsync(id);

if (todo is null) return Results.NotFound();

todo.Name = inputTodo.Name;

todo.IsComplete = inputTodo.IsComplete;

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.NoContent();

});

This method is similar to the MapPost method, except it uses HTTP PUT. A successful response returns [204 (No Content)](https://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec9.html). According to the HTTP specification, a PUT request requires the client to send the entire updated entity, not just the changes. To support partial updates, use [HTTP PATCH](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.httppatchattribute).

### Test the PUT endpoint

This sample uses an in-memory database that must be initialized each time the app is started. There must be an item in the database before you make a PUT call. Call GET to ensure there's an item in the database before making a PUT call.

Update the to-do item that has Id = 1 and set its name to "feed fish":

{

"id": 1,

"name": "feed fish",

"isComplete": false

}

### Examine the DELETE endpoint

The sample app implements a single DELETE endpoint using MapDelete:

app.MapDelete("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

{

if (await db.Todos.FindAsync(id) is Todo todo)

{

db.Todos.Remove(todo);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Ok(todo);

}

return Results.NotFound();

});

Use Postman to delete a to-do item:

* Set the method to DELETE.
* Set the URI of the object to delete (for example https://localhost:5001/todoitems/1).
* Select **Send**.

## Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET Core

In the program.cs file:

:

:

// Add CORS.

var TodoOrigins = "\_todoOrigins";

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy(name: TodoOrigins,

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("http://localhost:4200")

.AllowAnyHeader()

.AllowAnyMethod();

});

});

var app = builder.Build();

:

:

app.UseCors(TodoOrigins);

app.Run();

:

### Using [EnableCors] in ASP.NET Core

The [[DisableCors]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/cors?view=aspnetcore-7.0#dc6) attribute does **not** disable CORS that has been enabled by endpoint routing with RequireCors.

In ASP.NET Core 7.0, the [EnableCors] attribute must pass a parameter or an [ASP0023](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/diagnostics/asp0023?view=aspnetcore-7.0) Warning is generated from a ambiguous match on the route. ASP.NET Core 8.0 and later doesn't generate the ASP0023 warning.

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class TodoItems2Controller : ControllerBase

{

// [EnableCors] // Warning ASP0023 Route '{id}' conflicts with another action route.

// An HTTP request that matches multiple routes results in an ambiguous // match error.

[EnableCors("MyPolicy")] // Required for this path.

[HttpGet]

public IActionResult GetTodoItems() =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

[HttpGet("{action}")]

public IActionResult GetTodoItems2() =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

[EnableCors("MyPolicy")] // Required for this path.

[HttpDelete("{action}/{id}")]

public IActionResult MyDelete2(int id) =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

### Enable CORS with attributes

Enabling CORS with the [[EnableCors]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.cors.enablecorsattribute) attribute and applying a named policy to only those endpoints that require CORS provides the finest control.

The [[EnableCors]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.cors.enablecorsattribute) attribute provides an alternative to applying CORS globally. The [EnableCors] attribute enables CORS for selected endpoints, rather than all endpoints:

* [EnableCors] specifies the default policy.
* [EnableCors("{Policy String}")] specifies a named policy.

The [EnableCors] attribute can be applied to:

* Razor Page PageModel
* Controller
* Controller action method

Different policies can be applied to controllers, page models, or action methods with the [EnableCors] attribute. When the [EnableCors] attribute is applied to a controller, page model, or action method, and CORS is enabled in middleware, **both** policies are applied. **We recommend against combining policies. Use the** [EnableCors] **attribute or middleware, not both in the same app.**

The following code applies a different policy to each method:

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class WidgetController : ControllerBase

{

// GET api/values

[EnableCors("AnotherPolicy")]

[HttpGet]

public ActionResult<IEnumerable<string>> Get()

{

return new string[] { "green widget", "red widget" };

}

// GET api/values/5

[EnableCors("Policy1")]

[HttpGet("{id}")]

public ActionResult<string> Get(int id)

{

return id switch

{

1 => "green widget",

2 => "red widget",

\_ => NotFound(),

};

}

}

The following code creates two CORS policies:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy("Policy1",

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("http://example.com",

"http://www.contoso.com");

});

options.AddPolicy("AnotherPolicy",

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("http://www.contoso.com")

.AllowAnyHeader()

.AllowAnyMethod();

});

});

builder.Services.AddControllers();

var app = builder.Build();

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseRouting();

app.UseCors();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllers();

app.Run();

For the finest control of limiting CORS requests:

* Use [EnableCors("MyPolicy")] with a named policy.
* Don't define a default policy.
* Don't use [endpoint routing](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/cors?view=aspnetcore-7.0#ecors6).

### Disable CORS

The [[DisableCors]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.cors.disablecorsattribute) attribute does **not** disable CORS that has been enabled by [endpoint routing](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/cors?view=aspnetcore-7.0#ecors6).

The following code defines the CORS policy "MyPolicy":

var MyAllowSpecificOrigins = "\_myAllowSpecificOrigins";

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy(name: "MyPolicy",

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("http://example.com",

"http://www.contoso.com")

.WithMethods("PUT", "DELETE", "GET");

});

});

builder.Services.AddControllers();

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

var app = builder.Build();

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.UseRouting();

app.UseCors();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.UseEndpoints(endpoints => {

endpoints.MapControllers();

endpoints.MapRazorPages();

});

app.Run();

The following code disables CORS for the GetValues2 action:

[EnableCors("MyPolicy")]

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class ValuesController : ControllerBase

{

// GET api/values

[HttpGet]

public IActionResult Get() =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

// GET api/values/5

[HttpGet("{id}")]

public IActionResult Get(int id) =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

// PUT api/values/5

[HttpPut("{id}")]

public IActionResult Put(int id) =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

// GET: api/values/GetValues2

[DisableCors]

[HttpGet("{action}")]

public IActionResult GetValues2() =>

ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

}

### Set the allowed request headers

To allow specific headers to be sent in a CORS request, called [author request headers](https://xhr.spec.whatwg.org/#request), call [WithHeaders](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.cors.infrastructure.corspolicybuilder.withheaders) and specify the allowed headers:

var MyAllowSpecificOrigins = "\_MyAllowSubdomainPolicy";

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy(name: MyAllowSpecificOrigins,

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("http://example.com")

.WithHeaders(HeaderNames.ContentType, "x-custom-header");

});

});

To allow all [author request headers](https://www.w3.org/TR/cors/#author-request-headers), call [AllowAnyHeader](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.cors.infrastructure.corspolicybuilder.allowanyheader):

var MyAllowSpecificOrigins = "\_MyAllowSubdomainPolicy";

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy(name: MyAllowSpecificOrigins,

policy =>

{

policy.WithOrigins("https://\*.example.com")

.AllowAnyHeader();

});

});

## Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET (.NET Framework)

Add NuGet package:

Install-Package Microsoft.AspNet.WebApi.Cors

In the WebApiConfig.cs file:

using System.Web.Http;

namespace WebService

{

public static class WebApiConfig

{

public static void Register(HttpConfiguration config)

{

// New code

config.EnableCors();

config.Routes.MapHttpRoute(

name: "DefaultApi",

routeTemplate: "api/{controller}/{id}",

defaults: new { id = RouteParameter.Optional }

);

}

}

}

Next, add [EnableCors] attribute to the controller class (*All 3 params are mandatory*):

using System.Net.Http;

using System.Web.Http;

using System.Web.Http.Cors;

namespace WebService.Controllers

{

[EnableCors(origins: "http://localhost:4200", headers: "\*", methods: "\*")]

public class TestController : ApiController

{

// Controller methods not shown...

}

}

### Scope Rules for [EnableCors]

You can enable CORS per action, per controller, or globally for all Web API controllers in your application.

#### **Per Action**

To enable CORS for a single action, set the **[EnableCors]** attribute on the action method. The following example enables CORS for the GetItem method only.

public class ItemsController : ApiController

{

public HttpResponseMessage GetAll() { ... }

[EnableCors(origins: "http://www.example.com", headers: "\*", methods: "\*")]

public HttpResponseMessage GetItem(int id) { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage Post() { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage PutItem(int id) { ... }

}

#### **Per Controller**

If you set **[EnableCors]** on the controller class, it applies to all the actions on the controller. To disable CORS for an action, add the **[DisableCors]** attribute to the action. The following example enables CORS for every method except PutItem.

[EnableCors(origins: "http://www.example.com", headers: "\*", methods: "\*")]

public class ItemsController : ApiController

{

public HttpResponseMessage GetAll() { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage GetItem(int id) { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage Post() { ... }

[DisableCors]

public HttpResponseMessage PutItem(int id) { ... }

}

#### **Globally**

To enable CORS for all Web API controllers in your application, pass an **EnableCorsAttribute** instance to the **EnableCors** method:

public static class WebApiConfig

{

public static void Register(HttpConfiguration config)

{

var cors = new EnableCorsAttribute("www.example.com", "\*", "\*");

config.EnableCors(cors);

// ...

}

}

If you set the attribute at more than one scope, the order of precedence is:

1. Action
2. Controller
3. Global

### Set the Allowed Origins

The origins parameter of the **[EnableCors]** attribute specifies which origins are allowed to access the resource. The value is a comma-separated list of the allowed origins.

[EnableCors(origins: "http://www.contoso.com,http://www.example.com",

headers: "\*", methods: "\*")]

You can also use the wildcard value "\*" to allow requests from any origins.

Consider carefully before allowing requests from any origin. It means that literally any website can make AJAX calls to your web API.

// Allow CORS for all origins. (Caution!)

[EnableCors(origins: "\*", headers: "\*", methods: "\*")]

### Set the Allowed HTTP Methods

The methods parameter of the **[EnableCors]** attribute specifies which HTTP methods are allowed to access the resource. To allow all methods, use the wildcard value "\*". The following example allows only GET and POST requests.

[EnableCors(origins: "http://www.example.com", headers: "\*", methods: "get,post")]

public class TestController : ApiController

{

public HttpResponseMessage Get() { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage Post() { ... }

public HttpResponseMessage Put() { ... }

}

### Set the Allowed Request Headers

This article described earlier how a preflight request might include an Access-Control-Request-Headers header, listing the HTTP headers set by the application (the so-called "author request headers"). The headers parameter of the **[EnableCors]** attribute specifies which author request headers are allowed. To allow any headers, set headers to "\*". To allow specific headers, set headers to a comma-separated list of the allowed headers:

[EnableCors(origins: "http://example.com",

headers: "accept,content-type,origin,x-my-header", methods: "\*")]

However, browsers are not entirely consistent in how they set Access-Control-Request-Headers. For example, Chrome currently includes "origin". FireFox does not include standard headers such as "Accept", even when the application sets them in script.

If you set headers to anything other than "\*", you should include at least "accept", "content-type", and "origin", plus any custom headers that you want to support.

## Prevent over-posting

Currently the sample app exposes the entire Todo object. Production apps typically limit the data that's input and returned using a subset of the model. There are multiple reasons behind this and security is a major one. The subset of a model is usually referred to as a Data Transfer Object (DTO), input model, or view model. **DTO** is used in this article.

A DTO may be used to:

* Prevent over-posting.
* Hide properties that clients are not supposed to view.
* Omit some properties in order to reduce payload size.
* Flatten object graphs that contain nested objects. Flattened object graphs can be more convenient for clients.

To demonstrate the DTO approach, update the Todo class to include a secret field:

public class Todo

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

public string? Secret { get; set; }

}

The secret field needs to be hidden from this app, but an administrative app could choose to expose it.

Verify you can post and get the secret field.

Create a DTO model:

public class TodoItemDTO

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

public TodoItemDTO() { }

public TodoItemDTO(Todo todoItem) =>

(Id, Name, IsComplete) = (todoItem.Id, todoItem.Name, todoItem.IsComplete);

}

Update the code to use TodoItemDTO:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddDatabaseDeveloperPageExceptionFilter();

builder.Services.AddDbContext<TodoDb>(opt => opt.UseInMemoryDatabase("TodoList"));

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/todoitems", async (TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.Select(x => new TodoItemDTO(x)).ToListAsync());

app.MapGet("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

await db.Todos.FindAsync(id)

is Todo todo

? Results.Ok(new TodoItemDTO(todo))

: Results.NotFound());

app.MapPost("/todoitems", async (TodoItemDTO todoItemDTO, TodoDb db) =>

{

var todoItem = new Todo

{

IsComplete = todoItemDTO.IsComplete,

Name = todoItemDTO.Name

};

db.Todos.Add(todoItem);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Created($"/todoitems/{todoItem.Id}", new TodoItemDTO(todoItem));

});

app.MapPut("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoItemDTO todoItemDTO, TodoDb db) =>

{

var todo = await db.Todos.FindAsync(id);

if (todo is null) return Results.NotFound();

todo.Name = todoItemDTO.Name;

todo.IsComplete = todoItemDTO.IsComplete;

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.NoContent();

});

app.MapDelete("/todoitems/{id}", async (int id, TodoDb db) =>

{

if (await db.Todos.FindAsync(id) is Todo todo)

{

db.Todos.Remove(todo);

await db.SaveChangesAsync();

return Results.Ok(new TodoItemDTO(todo));

}

return Results.NotFound();

});

app.Run();

public class Todo

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

public string? Secret { get; set; }

}

public class TodoItemDTO

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

public TodoItemDTO() { }

public TodoItemDTO(Todo todoItem) =>

(Id, Name, IsComplete) = (todoItem.Id, todoItem.Name, todoItem.IsComplete);

}

class TodoDb : DbContext

{

public TodoDb(DbContextOptions<TodoDb> options)

: base(options) { }

public DbSet<Todo> Todos => Set<Todo>();

}

Verify you can't post or get the secret field.

## Differences between minimal APIs and APIs with controllers

* No support for filters: For example, no support for [IAsyncAuthorizationFilter](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.filters.iasyncauthorizationfilter), [IAsyncActionFilter](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.filters.iasyncactionfilter), [IAsyncExceptionFilter](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.filters.iasyncexceptionfilter), [IAsyncResultFilter](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.filters.iasyncresultfilter), and [IAsyncResourceFilter](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.filters.iasyncresourcefilter).
* No support for model binding, i.e. [IModelBinderProvider](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.modelbinding.imodelbinderprovider), [IModelBinder](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.modelbinding.imodelbinder). Support can be added with a custom binding shim.
* No support for binding from forms. This includes binding [IFormFile](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.http.iformfile). We plan to add support for IFormFile in the future.
* No built-in support for validation, i.e. [IModelValidator](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.modelbinding.validation.imodelvalidator)
* No support for [application parts](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/advanced/app-parts?view=aspnetcore-6.0) or the [application model](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/controllers/application-model?view=aspnetcore-6.0). There's no way to apply or build your own conventions.
* No built-in view rendering support. We recommend using [Razor Pages](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/razor-pages/razor-pages-start?view=aspnetcore-6.0) for rendering views.
* No support for [JsonPatch](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Microsoft.AspNetCore.JsonPatch/)
* No support for [OData](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Microsoft.AspNetCore.OData/)
* No support for [ApiVersioning](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Versioning/). See [this issue](https://github.com/dotnet/aspnet-api-versioning/issues/751) for more details.

## Use JsonOptions

The following code uses [JsonOptions](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.http.json.jsonoptions):

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http.Json;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Configure JSON options

builder.Services.Configure<JsonOptions>(options =>

{

options.SerializerOptions.IncludeFields = true;

});

var app = builder.Build();

app.MapGet("/", () => new Todo { Name = "Walk dog", IsComplete = false });

app.Run();

class Todo

{

// These are public fields instead of properties.

public string? Name;

public bool IsComplete;

}

The following code uses [JsonSerializerOptions](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.text.json.jsonserializeroptions):

using System.Text.Json;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

var app = builder.Build();

var options = new JsonSerializerOptions(JsonSerializerDefaults.Web);

app.MapGet("/", () => Results.Json(new Todo {

Name = "Walk dog", IsComplete = false }, options));

app.Run();

class Todo

{

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

The preceding code uses [web defaults](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/standard/serialization/system-text-json-configure-options#web-defaults-for-jsonserializeroptions), which converts property names to camel case.

## Test minimal API

For an example of testing a minimal API app, see [this GitHub sample](https://github.com/davidfowl/CommunityStandUpMinimalAPI/blob/main/TodoApi.Tests/TodoTests.cs).

## Publish to Azure

For information on deploying to Azure, see [Quickstart: Deploy an ASP.NET web app](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/app-service/quickstart-dotnetcore).

# C# - Asynchronous Programming with async and await

async await, async-await

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/asynchronous-programming/?source=recommendations>

<https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/articles/asynchronous-programming-with-async-await-task-csharp>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/AsyncDemos/AsyncDemos.sln>

**Projects:**

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwait

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwaitTask

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwaitTaskMany

Before we see what is asynchronous programming, let's understand what is synchronous programming using the following console example.

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses

In the above example, the LongProcess() method is some long-running task such as reading a file from the server, calling a web API that returns a large amount of data or uploading or downloading a big file. It takes a little longer time to execute (Thread.Sleep(4000) holds it for 4 seconds just to show long execution time). The ShortProcess() is a simple method that gets executed after the LongProcess() method.

The above program executes synchronously. It means execution starts from the Main() method wherein it first executes the LongProcess() method and then ShortProcess() method. During the execution, an application gets blocked and becomes unresponsive (You can see this in Windows-based applications mainly). This is called synchronous programming where execution does not go to next line until the current line executed completely.

## What is Asynchronous Programming?

In asynchronous programming, the code gets executed in a thread without having to wait for an I/O-bound or long-running task to finish. For example, in the asynchronous programming model, the LongProcess() method will be executed in a separate thread from the thread pool, and the main application thread will continue to execute the next statement.

Microsoft recommends [Task-based Asynchronous Pattern](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/concepts/async/task-asynchronous-programming-model)  to implement asynchronous programming in the .NET Framework or .NET Core applications using [async](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/async) , [await](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/await) keywords and [Task](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) or [Task<TResult>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task-1) class.

Now let's rewrite the above example in asynchronous pattern using async keyword.

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwait

In the above example, the Main() method is marked by the async keyword, and the return type is Task. The async keyword marks the method as asynchronous. Note that all the methods in the method chain must be async in order to implement asynchronous programming. So, the Main() method must be async to make child methods asynchronous.

The LongProcess() method is also marked with the async keyword which makes it asynchronous. The await Task.Delay(4000); holds the thread execute for 4 seconds.

Now, the program starts executing from the async Main() method in the main application thread. The async LongProcess() method gets executed in a separate thread and the main application thread continues execution of the next statement which calls ShortProcess() method and does not wait for the LongProcess() to complete.

## async, await, and Task

Use async along with await and Task if the async method returns a value back to the calling code. We used only the async keyword in the above program to demonstrate the simple asynchronous void method.

The await keyword waits for the async method until it returns a value. So the main application thread stops there until it receives a return value.

The [Task](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) class represents an asynchronous operation and [Task<TResult>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task-1) generic class represents an operation that can return a value. In the above example, we used await Task.Delay(4000) that started async operation that sleeps for 4 seconds and await holds a thread until 4 seconds.

The following demonstrates the async method that returns a value.

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwaitTask

In the above example, in the static async Task<int> LongProcess() method, Task<int> is used to indicate the return value type int. int val = await result; will stop the main thread there until it gets the return value populated in the result. Once get the value in the result variable, it then automatically assigns an integer to val.

An async method should return void, Task, or Task<TResult>, where TResult is the return type of the async method. Returning void is normally used for event handlers. The async keyword allows us to use the await keyword within the method so that we can wait for the asynchronous method to complete for other methods which are dependent on the return value.

## Multiple Async Methods

If you have multiple async methods that return the values then you can use await for all methods just before you want to use the return value in further steps.

dotNET Full Stack Demos\AsyncDemos\AsyncProcesses\_AsyncAwaitTaskMany

In the above program, we do await result1 and await result2 just before we need to pass the return value to another method.

## Async Breakfast

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/concepts/async/>

The [Task asynchronous programming model (TAP)](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/concepts/async/task-asynchronous-programming-model) provides an abstraction over asynchronous code. You write code as a sequence of statements, just like always. You can read that code as though each statement completes before the next begins. The compiler performs many transformations because some of those statements may start work and return a [Task](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) that represents the ongoing work.

That's the goal of this syntax: enable code that reads like a sequence of statements, but executes in a much more complicated order based on external resource allocation and when tasks are complete. It's analogous to how people give instructions for processes that include asynchronous tasks. Throughout this article, you'll use an example of instructions for making breakfast to see how the async and await keywords make it easier to reason about code that includes a series of asynchronous instructions. You'd write the instructions something like the following list to explain how to make a breakfast:

1. Pour a cup of coffee.
2. Heat a pan, then fry two eggs.
3. Fry three slices of bacon.
4. Toast two pieces of bread.
5. Add butter and jam to the toast.
6. Pour a glass of orange juice.

If you have experience with cooking, you'd execute those instructions **asynchronously**. You'd start warming the pan for eggs, then start the bacon. You'd put the bread in the toaster, then start the eggs. At each step of the process, you'd start a task, then turn your attention to tasks that are ready for your attention.

Cooking breakfast is a good example of asynchronous work that isn't parallel. One person (or thread) can handle all these tasks. Continuing the breakfast analogy, one person can make breakfast asynchronously by starting the next task before the first task completes. The cooking progresses whether or not someone is watching it. As soon as you start warming the pan for the eggs, you can begin frying the bacon. Once the bacon starts, you can put the bread into the toaster.

For a parallel algorithm, you'd need multiple cooks (or threads). One would make the eggs, one the bacon, and so on. Each one would be focused on just that one task. Each cook (or thread) would be blocked synchronously waiting for the bacon to be ready to flip, or the toast to pop.

Now, consider those same instructions written as C# statements:

using System;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace AsyncBreakfast

{

// These classes are intentionally empty for the purpose of this example. They are simply marker classes for the purpose of demonstration, contain no properties, and serve no other purpose.

internal class Bacon { }

internal class Coffee { }

internal class Egg { }

internal class Juice { }

internal class Toast { }

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("coffee is ready");

Egg eggs = FryEggs(2);

Console.WriteLine("eggs are ready");

Bacon bacon = FryBacon(3);

Console.WriteLine("bacon is ready");

Toast toast = ToastBread(2);

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

Console.WriteLine("toast is ready");

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("oj is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

}

private static Juice PourOJ()

{

Console.WriteLine("Pouring orange juice");

return new Juice();

}

private static void ApplyJam(Toast toast) =>

Console.WriteLine("Putting jam on the toast");

private static void ApplyButter(Toast toast) =>

Console.WriteLine("Putting butter on the toast");

private static Toast ToastBread(int slices)

{

for (int slice = 0; slice < slices; slice++)

{

Console.WriteLine("Putting a slice of bread in the toaster");

}

Console.WriteLine("Start toasting...");

Task.Delay(3000).Wait();

Console.WriteLine("Remove toast from toaster");

return new Toast();

}

private static Bacon FryBacon(int slices)

{

Console.WriteLine($"putting {slices} slices of bacon in the pan");

Console.WriteLine("cooking first side of bacon...");

Task.Delay(3000).Wait();

for (int slice = 0; slice < slices; slice++)

{

Console.WriteLine("flipping a slice of bacon");

}

Console.WriteLine("cooking the second side of bacon...");

Task.Delay(3000).Wait();

Console.WriteLine("Put bacon on plate");

return new Bacon();

}

private static Egg FryEggs(int howMany)

{

Console.WriteLine("Warming the egg pan...");

Task.Delay(3000).Wait();

Console.WriteLine($"cracking {howMany} eggs");

Console.WriteLine("cooking the eggs ...");

Task.Delay(3000).Wait();

Console.WriteLine("Put eggs on plate");

return new Egg();

}

private static Coffee PourCoffee()

{

Console.WriteLine("Pouring coffee");

return new Coffee();

}

}

}



The synchronously prepared breakfast took roughly 30 minutes because the total is the sum of each task.

Computers don't interpret those instructions the same way people do. The computer will block on each statement until the work is complete before moving on to the next statement. That creates an unsatisfying breakfast. The later tasks wouldn't be started until the earlier tasks had been completed. It would take much longer to create the breakfast, and some items would have gotten cold before being served.

If you want the computer to execute the above instructions asynchronously, you must write asynchronous code.

These concerns are important for the programs you write today. When you write client programs, you want the UI to be responsive to user input. Your application shouldn't make a phone appear frozen while it's downloading data from the web. When you write server programs, you don't want threads blocked. Those threads could be serving other requests. Using synchronous code when asynchronous alternatives exist hurts your ability to scale out less expensively. You pay for those blocked threads.

Successful modern applications require asynchronous code. Without language support, writing asynchronous code required callbacks, completion events, or other means that obscured the original intent of the code. The advantage of the synchronous code is that its step-by-step actions make it easy to scan and understand. Traditional asynchronous models forced you to focus on the asynchronous nature of the code, not on the fundamental actions of the code.

## Don't block, await instead

The preceding code demonstrates a bad practice: constructing synchronous code to perform asynchronous operations. As written, this code blocks the thread executing it from doing any other work. It won't be interrupted while any of the tasks are in progress. It would be as though you stared at the toaster after putting the bread in. You'd ignore anyone talking to you until the toast popped.

Let's start by updating this code so that the thread doesn't block while tasks are running. The await keyword provides a non-blocking way to start a task, then continue execution when that task completes. A simple asynchronous version of the make a breakfast code would look like the following snippet:

static async Task Main(string[] args)

{

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("coffee is ready");

Egg eggs = await FryEggsAsync(2);

Console.WriteLine("eggs are ready");

Bacon bacon = await FryBaconAsync(3);

Console.WriteLine("bacon is ready");

Toast toast = await ToastBreadAsync(2);

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

Console.WriteLine("toast is ready");

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("oj is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

}

**Important**

The total elapsed time is roughly the same as the initial synchronous version. The code has yet to take advantage of some of the key features of asynchronous programming.

**Tip**

The method bodies of the FryEggsAsync, FryBaconAsync, and ToastBreadAsync have all been updated to return Task<Egg>, Task<Bacon>, and Task<Toast> respectively. The methods are renamed from their original version to include the "Async" suffix. Their implementations are shown as part of the [**final version**](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/concepts/async/#final-version) later in this article.

**Note**

The Main method returns Task, despite not having a return expression—this is by design. For more information, see [**Evaluation of a void-returning async function**](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/language-specification/classes#14153-evaluation-of-a-void-returning-async-function).

This code doesn't block while the eggs or the bacon are cooking. This code won't start any other tasks though. You'd still put the toast in the toaster and stare at it until it pops. But at least, you'd respond to anyone that wanted your attention. In a restaurant where multiple orders are placed, the cook could start another breakfast while the first is cooking.

Now, the thread working on the breakfast isn't blocked while awaiting any started task that hasn't yet finished. For some applications, this change is all that's needed. A GUI application still responds to the user with just this change. However, for this scenario, you want more. You don't want each of the component tasks to be executed sequentially. It's better to start each of the component tasks before awaiting the previous task's completion.

## Start tasks concurrently

In many scenarios, you want to start several independent tasks immediately. Then, as each task finishes, you can continue other work that's ready. In the breakfast analogy, that's how you get breakfast done more quickly. You also get everything done close to the same time. You'll get a hot breakfast.

The [System.Threading.Tasks.Task](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) and related types are classes you can use to reason about tasks that are in progress. That enables you to write code that more closely resembles the way you'd create breakfast. You'd start cooking the eggs, bacon, and toast at the same time. As each requires action, you'd turn your attention to that task, take care of the next action, then wait for something else that requires your attention.

You start a task and hold on to the [Task](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) object that represents the work. You'll await each task before working with its result.

Let's make these changes to the breakfast code. The first step is to store the tasks for operations when they start, rather than awaiting them:

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("Coffee is ready");

Task<Egg> eggsTask = FryEggsAsync(2);

Egg eggs = await eggsTask;

Console.WriteLine("Eggs are ready");

Task<Bacon> baconTask = FryBaconAsync(3);

Bacon bacon = await baconTask;

Console.WriteLine("Bacon is ready");

Task<Toast> toastTask = ToastBreadAsync(2);

Toast toast = await toastTask;

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

Console.WriteLine("Toast is ready");

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("Oj is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

Next, you can move the await statements for the bacon and eggs to the end of the method, before serving breakfast:

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("Coffee is ready");

Task<Egg> eggsTask = FryEggsAsync(2);

Task<Bacon> baconTask = FryBaconAsync(3);

Task<Toast> toastTask = ToastBreadAsync(2);

Toast toast = await toastTask;

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

Console.WriteLine("Toast is ready");

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("Oj is ready");

Egg eggs = await eggsTask;

Console.WriteLine("Eggs are ready");

Bacon bacon = await baconTask;

Console.WriteLine("Bacon is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");



The asynchronously prepared breakfast took roughly 20 minutes, this time savings is because some tasks ran concurrently.

The preceding code works better. You start all the asynchronous tasks at once. You await each task only when you need the results. The preceding code may be similar to code in a web application that makes requests to different microservices, then combines the results into a single page. You'll make all the requests immediately, then await all those tasks and compose the web page.

## Composition with tasks

You have everything ready for breakfast at the same time except the toast. Making the toast is the composition of an asynchronous operation (toasting the bread), and synchronous operations (adding the butter and the jam). Updating this code illustrates an important concept:

**Important**

The composition of an asynchronous operation followed by synchronous work is an asynchronous operation. Stated another way, if any portion of an operation is asynchronous, the entire operation is asynchronous.

The preceding code showed you that you can use [Task](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) or [Task<TResult>](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task-1) objects to hold running tasks. You await each task before using its result. The next step is to create methods that represent the combination of other work. Before serving breakfast, you want to await the task that represents toasting the bread before adding butter and jam. You can represent that work with the following code:

static async Task<Toast> MakeToastWithButterAndJamAsync(int number)

{

var toast = await ToastBreadAsync(number);

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

return toast;

}

The preceding method has the async modifier in its signature. That signals to the compiler that this method contains an await statement; it contains asynchronous operations. This method represents the task that toasts the bread, then adds butter and jam. This method returns a [Task<TResult>](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task-1) that represents the composition of those three operations. The main block of code now becomes:

static async Task Main(string[] args)

{

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("coffee is ready");

var eggsTask = FryEggsAsync(2);

var baconTask = FryBaconAsync(3);

var toastTask = MakeToastWithButterAndJamAsync(2);

var eggs = await eggsTask;

Console.WriteLine("eggs are ready");

var bacon = await baconTask;

Console.WriteLine("bacon is ready");

var toast = await toastTask;

Console.WriteLine("toast is ready");

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("oj is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

}

The previous change illustrated an important technique for working with asynchronous code. You compose tasks by separating the operations into a new method that returns a task. You can choose when to await that task. You can start other tasks concurrently.

## Asynchronous exceptions

Up to this point, you've implicitly assumed that all these tasks complete successfully. Asynchronous methods throw exceptions, just like their synchronous counterparts. Asynchronous support for exceptions and error handling strives for the same goals as asynchronous support in general: You should write code that reads like a series of synchronous statements. Tasks throw exceptions when they can't complete successfully. The client code can catch those exceptions when a started task is awaited. For example, let's assume that the toaster catches fire while making the toast. You can simulate that by modifying the ToastBreadAsync method to match the following code:

private static async Task<Toast> ToastBreadAsync(int slices)

{

for (int slice = 0; slice < slices; slice++)

{

Console.WriteLine("Putting a slice of bread in the toaster");

}

Console.WriteLine("Start toasting...");

await Task.Delay(2000);

Console.WriteLine("Fire! Toast is ruined!");

throw new InvalidOperationException("The toaster is on fire");

await Task.Delay(1000);

Console.WriteLine("Remove toast from toaster");

return new Toast();

}

**Note**

You'll get a warning when you compile the preceding code regarding unreachable code. That's intentional, because once the toaster catches fire, operations won't proceed normally.

Run the application after making these changes, and you'll output similar to the following text:

Pouring coffee

Coffee is ready

Warming the egg pan...

putting 3 slices of bacon in the pan

Cooking first side of bacon...

Putting a slice of bread in the toaster

Putting a slice of bread in the toaster

Start toasting...

Fire! Toast is ruined!

Flipping a slice of bacon

Flipping a slice of bacon

Flipping a slice of bacon

Cooking the second side of bacon...

Cracking 2 eggs

Cooking the eggs ...

Put bacon on plate

Put eggs on plate

Eggs are ready

Bacon is ready

Unhandled exception. System.InvalidOperationException: The toaster is on fire

at AsyncBreakfast.Program.ToastBreadAsync(Int32 slices) in Program.cs:line 65

at AsyncBreakfast.Program.MakeToastWithButterAndJamAsync(Int32 number) in Program.cs:line 36

at AsyncBreakfast.Program.Main(String[] args) in Program.cs:line 24

at AsyncBreakfast.Program.<Main>(String[] args)

You'll notice quite a few tasks are completed between when the toaster catches fire and the exception is observed. When a task that runs asynchronously throws an exception, that Task is ***faulted***. The Task object holds the exception thrown in the [Task.Exception](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task.exception#system-threading-tasks-task-exception) property. Faulted tasks throw an exception when they're awaited.

There are two important mechanisms to understand: how an exception is stored in a faulted task, and how an exception is unpackaged and rethrown when code awaits a faulted task.

When code running asynchronously throws an exception, that exception is stored in the Task. The [Task.Exception](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task.exception#system-threading-tasks-task-exception) property is an [System.AggregateException](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.aggregateexception) because more than one exception may be thrown during asynchronous work. Any exception thrown is added to the [AggregateException.InnerExceptions](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.aggregateexception.innerexceptions#system-aggregateexception-innerexceptions) collection. If that Exception property is null, a new AggregateException is created and the thrown exception is the first item in the collection.

The most common scenario for a faulted task is that the Exception property contains exactly one exception. When code awaits a faulted task, the first exception in the [AggregateException.InnerExceptions](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.aggregateexception.innerexceptions#system-aggregateexception-innerexceptions) collection is rethrown. That's why the output from this example shows an InvalidOperationException instead of an AggregateException. Extracting the first inner exception makes working with asynchronous methods as similar as possible to working with their synchronous counterparts. You can examine the Exception property in your code when your scenario may generate multiple exceptions.

Before going on, comment out these two lines in your ToastBreadAsync method. You don't want to start another fire:

Console.WriteLine("Fire! Toast is ruined!");

throw new InvalidOperationException("The toaster is on fire");

## Await tasks efficiently

The series of await statements at the end of the preceding code can be improved by using methods of the Task class. One of those APIs is [WhenAll](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task.whenall), which returns a [Task](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task) that completes when all the tasks in its argument list have completed, as shown in the following code:

await Task.WhenAll(eggsTask, baconTask, toastTask);

Console.WriteLine("Eggs are ready");

Console.WriteLine("Bacon is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Toast is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

Another option is to use [WhenAny](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task.whenany), which returns a Task<Task> that completes when any of its arguments complete. You can await the returned task, knowing that it has already finished. The following code shows how you could use [WhenAny](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task.whenany) to await the first task to finish and then process its result. After processing the result from the completed task, you remove that completed task from the list of tasks passed to WhenAny.

var breakfastTasks = new List<Task> { eggsTask, baconTask, toastTask };

while (breakfastTasks.Count > 0)

{

Task finishedTask = await Task.WhenAny(breakfastTasks);

if (finishedTask == eggsTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("Eggs are ready");

}

else if (finishedTask == baconTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("Bacon is ready");

}

else if (finishedTask == toastTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("Toast is ready");

}

await finishedTask;

breakfastTasks.Remove(finishedTask);

}

After all those changes, the final version of the code looks like this:

using System;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace AsyncBreakfast

{

// These classes are intentionally empty for the purpose of this example. They are simply marker classes for the purpose of demonstration, contain no properties, and serve no other purpose.

internal class Bacon { }

internal class Coffee { }

internal class Egg { }

internal class Juice { }

internal class Toast { }

class Program

{

static async Task Main(string[] args)

{

Coffee cup = PourCoffee();

Console.WriteLine("coffee is ready");

var eggsTask = FryEggsAsync(2);

var baconTask = FryBaconAsync(3);

var toastTask = MakeToastWithButterAndJamAsync(2);

var breakfastTasks = new List<Task> { eggsTask, baconTask, toastTask };

while (breakfastTasks.Count > 0)

{

Task finishedTask = await Task.WhenAny(breakfastTasks);

if (finishedTask == eggsTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("eggs are ready");

}

else if (finishedTask == baconTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("bacon is ready");

}

else if (finishedTask == toastTask)

{

Console.WriteLine("toast is ready");

}

breakfastTasks.Remove(finishedTask);

}

Juice oj = PourOJ();

Console.WriteLine("oj is ready");

Console.WriteLine("Breakfast is ready!");

}

static async Task<Toast> MakeToastWithButterAndJamAsync(int number)

{

var toast = await ToastBreadAsync(number);

ApplyButter(toast);

ApplyJam(toast);

return toast;

}

private static Juice PourOJ()

{

Console.WriteLine("Pouring orange juice");

return new Juice();

}

private static void ApplyJam(Toast toast) =>

Console.WriteLine("Putting jam on the toast");

private static void ApplyButter(Toast toast) =>

Console.WriteLine("Putting butter on the toast");

private static async Task<Toast> ToastBreadAsync(int slices)

{

for (int slice = 0; slice < slices; slice++)

{

Console.WriteLine("Putting a slice of bread in the toaster");

}

Console.WriteLine("Start toasting...");

await Task.Delay(3000);

Console.WriteLine("Remove toast from toaster");

return new Toast();

}

private static async Task<Bacon> FryBaconAsync(int slices)

{

Console.WriteLine($"putting {slices} slices of bacon in the pan");

Console.WriteLine("cooking first side of bacon...");

await Task.Delay(3000);

for (int slice = 0; slice < slices; slice++)

{

Console.WriteLine("flipping a slice of bacon");

}

Console.WriteLine("cooking the second side of bacon...");

await Task.Delay(3000);

Console.WriteLine("Put bacon on plate");

return new Bacon();

}

private static async Task<Egg> FryEggsAsync(int howMany)

{

Console.WriteLine("Warming the egg pan...");

await Task.Delay(3000);

Console.WriteLine($"cracking {howMany} eggs");

Console.WriteLine("cooking the eggs ...");

await Task.Delay(3000);

Console.WriteLine("Put eggs on plate");

return new Egg();

}

private static Coffee PourCoffee()

{

Console.WriteLine("Pouring coffee");

return new Coffee();

}

}

}



The final version of the asynchronously prepared breakfast took roughly 15 minutes because some tasks ran concurrently, and the code monitored multiple tasks at once and only took action when it was needed.

This final code is asynchronous. It more accurately reflects how a person would cook a breakfast. Compare the preceding code with the first code sample in this article. The core actions are still clear from reading the code. You can read this code the same way you'd read those instructions for making a breakfast at the beginning of this article. The language features for async and await provide the translation every person makes to follow those written instructions: start tasks as you can and don't block waiting for tasks to complete.

# ASP.NET – HttpClient Demo – ADO.NET

**Source**: dotNET Full Stack Demos\dotNET\dotNETCore\MinimalAPI\_ADO\_Client

To use GetAsJsonAsync(), PostAsJsonAsync() etc., install this NuGet package:

install-package Microsoft.AspNet.WebApi.Client

Uses API from dotNET Full Stack Demos\dotNET\dotNETCore\MinimalAPI\_ADO.

**Full code:**

class Program

{

static HttpClient client = new HttpClient();

static void Main()

{

RunAsync().GetAwaiter().GetResult();

}

static async Task RunAsync()

{

// Update port # in the following line.

client.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://localhost:7152/");

client.DefaultRequestHeaders.Accept.Clear();

client.DefaultRequestHeaders.Accept.Add(

new MediaTypeWithQualityHeaderValue("application/json"));

try

{

// Fetch all existing category records.

var categories = await GetAllCategoriesAsync();

foreach(var cate in categories)

{

ShowCategory(cate);

}

// Create a new Category

Category category = new Category

{

Categoryid = 0,

CategoryName = "Demo 1",

Description = "Demo 1"

};

var url = await CreateCategoryAsync(category);

Console.WriteLine($"Created at {url}");

// Get the Category

category = await GetCategoryAsync(url.ToString());

ShowCategory(category);

Console.WriteLine("Category record created. Please check in DB...");

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to Update this record...");

Console.ReadLine();

// Update the Category

Console.WriteLine("Updating description...");

category.Description = "Demo 1 changed.";

await UpdateCategoryAsync(category);

// Get the updated Category

category = await GetCategoryAsync(url.ToString());

ShowCategory(category);

Console.WriteLine("Category record created. Please check in DB...");

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to Delete this record...");

Console.ReadLine();

// Delete the Category

var statusCode = await DeleteCategoryAsync(category.Categoryid);

Console.WriteLine($"Deleted (HTTP Status = {(int)statusCode})");

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to exit...");

}

catch (Exception e)

{

Console.WriteLine(e.Message);

}

Console.ReadLine();

}

// Install-Package Microsoft.AspNet.WebApi.Client

static void ShowCategory(Category category)

{

Console.WriteLine($"ID: {category.Categoryid}\t Name: {category.CategoryName}\t" +

$"Description: {category.Description}");

}

static async Task<List<Category>> GetAllCategoriesAsync()

{

List<Category> categories = new List<Category>();

var path = "categories";

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.GetAsync(path);

if (response.IsSuccessStatusCode)

{

categories = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<List<Category>>();

}

return categories;

}

static async Task<Uri> CreateCategoryAsync(Category category)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.PostAsJsonAsync(

"categories", category);

response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

// return URI of the created resource.

return response.Headers.Location;

}

static async Task<Category> GetCategoryAsync(string path)

{

Category category = null;

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.GetAsync(path);

if (response.IsSuccessStatusCode)

{

category = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<Category>();

}

return category;

}

static async Task<Category> UpdateCategoryAsync(Category category)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.PutAsJsonAsync(

$"categories/{category.Categoryid}", category);

response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

// Deserialize the updated Category from the response body.

category = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<Category>();

return category;

}

static async Task<HttpStatusCode> DeleteCategoryAsync(long id)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.DeleteAsync(

$"categories/{id}");

return response.StatusCode;

}

}

# Advanced ASP.NET - HttpClient

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/http-requests?view=aspnetcore-6.0>

An [IHttpClientFactory](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.ihttpclientfactory) can be registered and used to configure and create [HttpClient](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpclient) instances in an app. IHttpClientFactory offers the following benefits:

* Provides a central location for naming and configuring logical HttpClient instances. For example, a client named github could be registered and configured to access [GitHub](https://github.com/). A default client can be registered for general access.
* Codifies the concept of outgoing middleware via delegating handlers in HttpClient. Provides extensions for Polly-based middleware to take advantage of delegating handlers in HttpClient.
* Manages the pooling and lifetime of underlying HttpClientMessageHandler instances. Automatic management avoids common DNS (Domain Name System) problems that occur when manually managing HttpClient lifetimes.
* Adds a configurable logging experience (via ILogger) for all requests sent through clients created by the factory.

The sample code in this topic version uses [System.Text.Json](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.text.json) to deserialize JSON content returned in HTTP responses. For samples that use Json.NET and ReadAsAsync<T>, use the version selector to select a 2.x version of this topic.

## Consumption patterns

There are several ways IHttpClientFactory can be used in an app:

* [Basic usage](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/http-requests?view=aspnetcore-6.0#basic-usage)
* [Named clients](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/http-requests?view=aspnetcore-6.0#named-clients)
* [Typed clients](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/http-requests?view=aspnetcore-6.0#typed-clients)
* [Generated clients](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/http-requests?view=aspnetcore-6.0#generated-clients)

The best approach depends upon the app's requirements.

### Basic usage

Register IHttpClientFactory by calling AddHttpClient in Program.cs:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddHttpClient();

An IHttpClientFactory can be requested using [dependency injection (DI)](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/dependency-injection?view=aspnetcore-6.0). The following code uses IHttpClientFactory to create an HttpClient instance:

public class BasicModel : PageModel

{

private readonly IHttpClientFactory \_httpClientFactory;

public BasicModel(IHttpClientFactory httpClientFactory) => \_httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;

public IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>? GitHubBranches { get; set; }

public async Task OnGet()

{

var httpRequestMessage = new HttpRequestMessage(

HttpMethod.Get,

"https://api.github.com/repos/dotnet/AspNetCore.Docs/branches")

{

Headers =

{

{ HeaderNames.Accept, "application/vnd.github.v3+json" },

{ HeaderNames.UserAgent, "HttpRequestsSample" }

}

};

var httpClient = \_httpClientFactory.CreateClient();

var httpResponseMessage = await httpClient.SendAsync(httpRequestMessage);

if (httpResponseMessage.IsSuccessStatusCode)

{

using var contentStream =

await httpResponseMessage.Content.ReadAsStreamAsync();

GitHubBranches = await JsonSerializer.DeserializeAsync

<IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>>(contentStream);

}

}

}

Using IHttpClientFactory like in the preceding example is a good way to refactor an existing app. It has no impact on how HttpClient is used. In places where HttpClient instances are created in an existing app, replace those occurrences with calls to [CreateClient](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.ihttpclientfactory.createclient).

### Named clients

Named clients are a good choice when:

* The app requires many distinct uses of HttpClient.
* Many HttpClients have different configuration.

Specify configuration for a named HttpClient during its registration in Program.cs:

builder.Services.AddHttpClient("GitHub", httpClient =>

{

httpClient.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://api.github.com/");

// using Microsoft.Net.Http.Headers;

// The GitHub API requires two headers.

httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.Accept, "application/vnd.github.v3+json");

httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.UserAgent, "HttpRequestsSample");

});

In the preceding code the client is configured with:

* The base address https://api.github.com/.
* Two headers required to work with the GitHub API.

### CreateClient

Each time [CreateClient](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.ihttpclientfactory.createclient) is called:

* A new instance of HttpClient is created.
* The configuration action is called.

To create a named client, pass its name into CreateClient:

public class NamedClientModel : PageModel

{

private readonly IHttpClientFactory \_httpClientFactory;

public NamedClientModel(IHttpClientFactory httpClientFactory) =>

\_httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;

public IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>? GitHubBranches { get; set; }

public async Task OnGet()

{

var httpClient = \_httpClientFactory.CreateClient("GitHub");

var httpResponseMessage = await httpClient.GetAsync(

"repos/dotnet/AspNetCore.Docs/branches");

if (httpResponseMessage.IsSuccessStatusCode)

{

using var contentStream =

await httpResponseMessage.Content.ReadAsStreamAsync();

GitHubBranches = await JsonSerializer.DeserializeAsync

<IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>>(contentStream);

}

}

}

In the preceding code, the request doesn't need to specify a hostname. The code can pass just the path, since the base address configured for the client is used.

### Typed clients

* Provide the same capabilities as named clients without the need to use strings as keys.
* Provides IntelliSense and compiler help when consuming clients.
* Provide a single location to configure and interact with a particular HttpClient. For example, a single typed client might be used:
  + For a single backend endpoint.
  + To encapsulate all logic dealing with the endpoint.
* Work with DI and can be injected where required in the app.

A typed client accepts an HttpClient parameter in its constructor:

public class GitHubService

{

private readonly HttpClient \_httpClient;

public GitHubService(HttpClient httpClient)

{

\_httpClient = httpClient;

\_httpClient.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://api.github.com/");

// using Microsoft.Net.Http.Headers;

// The GitHub API requires two headers.

\_httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.Accept, "application/vnd.github.v3+json");

\_httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.UserAgent, "HttpRequestsSample");

}

public async Task<IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>?> GetAspNetCoreDocsBranchesAsync() =>

await \_httpClient.GetFromJsonAsync<IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>>(

"repos/dotnet/AspNetCore.Docs/branches");

}

In the preceding code:

* The configuration is moved into the typed client.
* The provided HttpClient instance is stored as a private field.

API-specific methods can be created that expose HttpClient functionality. For example, the GetAspNetCoreDocsBranches method encapsulates code to retrieve docs GitHub branches.

The following code calls [AddHttpClient](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.extensions.dependencyinjection.httpclientfactoryservicecollectionextensions.addhttpclient) in Program.cs to register the GitHubService typed client class:

builder.Services.AddHttpClient<GitHubService>();

The typed client is registered as transient with DI. In the preceding code, AddHttpClient registers GitHubService as a transient service. This registration uses a factory method to:

1. Create an instance of HttpClient.
2. Create an instance of GitHubService, passing in the instance of HttpClient to its constructor.

The typed client can be injected and consumed directly:

public class TypedClientModel : PageModel

{

private readonly GitHubService \_gitHubService;

public TypedClientModel(GitHubService gitHubService) =>

\_gitHubService = gitHubService;

public IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>? GitHubBranches { get; set; }

public async Task OnGet()

{

try

{

GitHubBranches = await \_gitHubService.GetAspNetCoreDocsBranchesAsync();

}

catch (HttpRequestException)

{

// ...

}

}

}

The configuration for a typed client can also be specified during its registration in Program.cs, rather than in the typed client's constructor:

builder.Services.AddHttpClient<GitHubService>(httpClient =>

{

httpClient.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://api.github.com/");

// ...

});

### Generated clients

IHttpClientFactory can be used in combination with third-party libraries such as [Refit](https://github.com/reactiveui/refit). Refit is a REST library for .NET. It converts REST APIs into live interfaces. Call AddRefitClient to generate a dynamic implementation of an interface, which uses HttpClient to make the external HTTP calls.

A custom interface represents the external API:

public interface IGitHubClient

{

[Get("/repos/dotnet/AspNetCore.Docs/branches")]

Task<IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>> GetAspNetCoreDocsBranchesAsync();

}

Call AddRefitClient to generate the dynamic implementation and then call ConfigureHttpClient to configure the underlying HttpClient:

builder.Services.AddRefitClient<IGitHubClient>()

.ConfigureHttpClient(httpClient =>

{

httpClient.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://api.github.com/");

// using Microsoft.Net.Http.Headers;

// The GitHub API requires two headers.

httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.Accept, "application/vnd.github.v3+json");

httpClient.DefaultRequestHeaders.Add(

HeaderNames.UserAgent, "HttpRequestsSample");

});

Use DI to access the dynamic implementation of IGitHubClient:

public class RefitModel : PageModel

{

private readonly IGitHubClient \_gitHubClient;

public RefitModel(IGitHubClient gitHubClient) =>

\_gitHubClient = gitHubClient;

public IEnumerable<GitHubBranch>? GitHubBranches { get; set; }

public async Task OnGet()

{

try

{

GitHubBranches = await \_gitHubClient.GetAspNetCoreDocsBranchesAsync();

}

catch (ApiException)

{

// ...

}

}

}

## Full Demo

For HttpClient Demos, refer to [REST – HttpClient Demo](#_REST_–_HttpClient) section.

## Make POST, PUT, and DELETE requests

In the preceding examples, all HTTP requests use the GET HTTP verb. HttpClient also supports other HTTP verbs, including:

* POST
* PUT
* DELETE
* PATCH

### POST

The following example shows how to make an HTTP POST request:

public async Task CreateItemAsync(TodoItem todoItem)

{

var todoItemJson = new StringContent(

JsonSerializer.Serialize(todoItem),

Encoding.UTF8,

Application.Json); // using static System.Net.Mime.MediaTypeNames;

using var httpResponseMessage =

await \_httpClient.PostAsync("/api/TodoItems", todoItemJson);

httpResponseMessage.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

}

In the preceding code, the CreateItemAsync method:

* Serializes the TodoItem parameter to JSON using System.Text.Json.
* Creates an instance of [StringContent](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.stringcontent) to package the serialized JSON for sending in the HTTP request's body.
* Calls [PostAsync](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpclient.postasync) to send the JSON content to the specified URL. This is a relative URL that gets added to the [HttpClient.BaseAddress](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpclient.baseaddress#system-net-http-httpclient-baseaddress).
* Calls [EnsureSuccessStatusCode](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpresponsemessage.ensuresuccessstatuscode) to throw an exception if the response status code doesn't indicate success.

HttpClient also supports other types of content. For example, [MultipartContent](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.multipartcontent) and [StreamContent](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.streamcontent). For a complete list of supported content, see [HttpContent](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpcontent).

### PUT

The following example shows an HTTP PUT request:

public async Task SaveItemAsync(TodoItem todoItem)

{

var todoItemJson = new StringContent(

JsonSerializer.Serialize(todoItem),

Encoding.UTF8,

Application.Json);

using var httpResponseMessage =

await \_httpClient.PutAsync($"/api/TodoItems/{todoItem.Id}", todoItemJson);

httpResponseMessage.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

}

The preceding code is similar to the POST example. The SaveItemAsync method calls [PutAsync](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpclient.putasync) instead of PostAsync.

### DELETE

The following example shows an HTTP DELETE request:

public async Task DeleteItemAsync(long itemId)

{

using var httpResponseMessage =

await \_httpClient.DeleteAsync($"/api/TodoItems/{itemId}");

httpResponseMessage.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

}

In the preceding code, the DeleteItemAsync method calls [DeleteAsync](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.net.http.httpclient.deleteasync). Because HTTP DELETE requests typically contain no body, the DeleteAsync method doesn't provide an overload that accepts an instance of HttpContent.

# REST – HttpClient Demo – EF Core

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/web-api/overview/advanced/calling-a-web-api-from-a-net-client>

Source:

* Solution: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample>
* Project: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample/HttpClientSample>

## Create Console Application

In Visual Studio, create a new Windows console app named **HttpClientSample** and paste in the following code:

using System;

using System.Net;

using System.Net.Http;

using System.Net.Http.Headers;

using System.Net.Http.Json;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace HttpClientSample

{

public class Employee

{

public long EmployeeId { get; set; }

public string FirstName { get; set; }

public string LastName { get; set; }

public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }

public string PhoneNumber { get; set; }

public string Email { get; set; }

public string Gender { get; set; }

}

class Program

{

static HttpClient client = new HttpClient();

static void ShowEmployee(Employee employee)

{

Console.WriteLine($"Name: {employee.FirstName} {employee.LastName}\t" +

$"Phone: {employee.PhoneNumber}");

}

static async Task<Uri> CreateEmployeeAsync(Employee employee)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.PostAsJsonAsync(

"api/employee", employee);

response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

// return URI of the created resource.

return response.Headers.Location;

}

static async Task<Employee> GetEmployeeAsync(string path)

{

Employee employee = null;

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.GetAsync(path);

if (response.IsSuccessStatusCode)

{

employee = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<Employee>();

}

return employee;

}

static async Task<Employee> UpdateEmployeeAsync(Employee employee)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.PutAsJsonAsync(

$"api/employee/{employee.EmployeeId}", employee);

response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();

// Deserialize the updated employee from the response body.

employee = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<Employee>();

return employee;

}

static async Task<HttpStatusCode> DeleteEmployeeAsync(long id)

{

HttpResponseMessage response = await client.DeleteAsync(

$"api/employee/{id}");

return response.StatusCode;

}

static void Main()

{

RunAsync().GetAwaiter().GetResult();

}

static async Task RunAsync()

{

// Update port # in the following line.

client.BaseAddress = new Uri("https://localhost:7054/");

client.DefaultRequestHeaders.Accept.Clear();

client.DefaultRequestHeaders.Accept.Add(

new MediaTypeWithQualityHeaderValue("application/json"));

try

{

// Create a new employee

Employee employee = new Employee

{

FirstName = "Mary",

LastName = "Jane",

Email = "mjane@gmail.com",

DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1982, 05, 21),

PhoneNumber = "555-777-8888",

Gender = "Female"

};

var url = await CreateEmployeeAsync(employee);

Console.WriteLine($"Created at {url}");

// Get the employee

employee = await GetEmployeeAsync(url.PathAndQuery);

ShowEmployee(employee);

// Update the employee

Console.WriteLine("Updating phone number...");

employee.PhoneNumber = "555-555-8888";

await UpdateEmployeeAsync(employee);

// Get the updated employee

employee = await GetEmployeeAsync(url.PathAndQuery);

ShowEmployee(employee);

Console.WriteLine("Employee record created. Please check in DB...");

Console.WriteLine("Press <ENTER> to Delete this record...");

Console.ReadLine();

// Delete the employee

var statusCode = await DeleteEmployeeAsync(employee.EmployeeId);

Console.WriteLine($"Deleted (HTTP Status = {(int)statusCode})");

}

catch (Exception e)

{

Console.WriteLine(e.Message);

}

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

RunAsync method runs and blocks until it completes. Most **HttpClient** methods are async, because they perform network I/O. All of the async tasks are done inside RunAsync. Normally an app doesn't block the main thread, but this app doesn't allow any interaction.

## Install the Web API Client Libraries

Use NuGet Package Manager to install the Web API Client Libraries package.

From the **Tools** menu, select **NuGet Package Manager** > **Package Manager Console**. In the Package Manager Console (PMC), type the following command:

Install-Package Microsoft.AspNet.WebApi.Client

The preceding command adds the following NuGet packages to the project:

* Microsoft.AspNet.WebApi.Client
* Newtonsoft.Json

Newtonsoft.Json (also known as Json.NET) is a popular high-performance JSON framework for .NET.

# REST – REpresentational State Transfer

REST is an acronym for **RE**presentational **S**tate **T**ransfer and an architectural style for **distributed hypermedia systems**. Roy Fielding first presented it in 2000 in his famous dissertation.

Like other architectural styles, REST has its guiding principles and constraints. These principles must be satisfied if a service interface needs to be referred to as **RESTful**.

A Web API (or Web Service) conforming to the REST architectural style is a REST API.

## Guiding Principles of REST

The six guiding principles or constraints of the RESTful architecture are:

### Uniform Interface

By applying the principle of generality to the components interface, we can simplify the overall system architecture and improve the visibility of interactions.

Multiple architectural constraints help in obtaining a uniform interface and guiding the behavior of components.

The following four constraints can achieve a uniform REST interface:

* **Identification of resources** – The interface must uniquely identify each resource involved in the interaction between the client and the server.
* **Manipulation of resources through representations** – The resources should have uniform representations in the server response. API consumers should use these representations to modify the resources state in the server.
* **Self-descriptive messages** – Each resource representation should carry enough information to describe how to process the message. It should also provide information of the additional actions that the client can perform on the resource.
* **Hypermedia as the engine of application state** – The client should have only the initial URI of the application. The client application should dynamically drive all other resources and interactions with the use of hyperlinks.

### Client-server

The client-server design pattern enforces the **separation of concerns**, which helps the client and the server components evolve independently.

By separating the user interface concerns (client) from the data storage concerns (server), we improve the portability of the user interface across multiple platforms and improve scalability by simplifying the server components.

While the client and the server evolve, we have to make sure that the interface/contract between the client and the server does not break.

### Stateless

Statelessness mandates that each request from the client to the server must contain all of the information necessary to understand and complete the request.

The server cannot take advantage of any previously stored context information on the server.

For this reason, the client application must entirely keep the session state.

### Cacheable

The cacheable constraint requires that a response should implicitly or explicitly label itself as cacheable or non-cacheable.

If the response is cacheable, the client application gets the right to reuse the response data later for equivalent requests and a specified period.

### Layered system

The layered system style allows an architecture to be composed of hierarchical layers by constraining component behavior.

For example, in a layered system, each component cannot see beyond the immediate layer they are interacting with.

### Code on demand (optional)

REST also allows client functionality to extend by downloading and executing code in the form of applets or scripts.

The downloaded code simplifies clients by reducing the number of features required to be pre-implemented. Servers can provide part of features delivered to the client in the form of code, and the client only needs to execute the code.

## What is a Resource?

The key **abstraction of information** in REST is a resource. Any information that we can name can be a resource. For example, a REST resource can be a document or image, a temporal service, a collection of other resources, or a non-virtual object (e.g., a person).

The state of the resource, at any particular time, is known as the **resource representation**.

The resource representations are consisted of:

* the **data**
* the **metadata** describing the data
* and the **hypermedia links** that can help the clients in transition to the next desired state.

A REST API consists of an assembly of interlinked resources. This set of resources is known as the REST API’s ***resource model***.

### Resource Identifiers

REST uses resource identifiers to identify each resource involved in the interactions between the client and the server components.

### Hypermedia

The data format of a representation is known as a media type. The media type identifies a specification that defines how a representation is to be processed.

**A RESTful API looks like hypertext.** Every addressable unit of information carries an address, either explicitly (e.g., link and id attributes) or implicitly (e.g., derived from the media type definition and representation structure).

Hypertext (or hypermedia) means the **simultaneous presentation of information and controls** such that the information becomes the affordance through which the user (or automaton) obtains choices and selects actions.

Remember that hypertext does not need to be HTML (or XML or JSON) on a browser. Machines can follow links when they understand the data format and relationship types.

— Roy Fielding

### Self-descriptive

Further,**resource representations shall be self-descriptive**: the client does not need to know if a resource is an employee or a device. It should act based on the media type associated with the resource.

So, in practice, we will create lots of **custom media types** – usually one media type associated with one resource.

Every media type defines a default processing model. For example, HTML defines a rendering process for hypertext and the browser behavior around each element.

Media Types have no relation to the resource methods GET/PUT/POST/DELETE/… other than the fact that some media type elements will define a process model that goes like “anchor elements with an href attribute create a hypertext link that, when selected, invokes a retrieval request (GET) on the URI corresponding to the CDATA-encoded href attribute.”

## Resource Methods

Another important thing associated with REST is **resource methods**. These resource methods are used to perform the desired transition between two states of any resource.

A large number of people wrongly relate resource methods to HTTP methods (i.e., GET/PUT/POST/DELETE). Roy Fielding has never mentioned any recommendation around which method to be used in which condition. All he emphasizes is that it should be a **uniform interface**.

For example, if we decide that the application APIs will use HTTP POST for updating a resource – rather than most people recommend HTTP PUT – it’s all right. Still, the application interface will be RESTful.

Ideally, everything needed to transition the resource state shall be part of the resource representation – including all the supported methods and what form they will leave the representation.

We should enter a REST API with no prior knowledge beyond the initial URI (a bookmark) and a set of standardized media types appropriate for the intended audience (i.e., expected to be understood by any client that might use the API).

From that point on, all application state transitions must be driven by the client selection of server-provided choices present in the received representations or implied by the user’s manipulation of those representations.

The transitions may be determined (or limited by) the client’s knowledge of media types and resource communication mechanisms, both of which may be improved on the fly (e.g., code-on-demand). [Failure here implies that out-of-band information is driving interaction instead of hypertext.]

## REST and HTTP are not same

Many people prefer to compare HTTP with REST. **REST and HTTP are not the same.**

**REST != HTTP**

Though REST also intends to make the web (internet) more streamlined and standard, Roy fielding advocates using REST principles more strictly. And that’s from where people try to start comparing REST with the web.

Roy fielding, in his dissertation, has nowhere mentioned any implementation direction – including any protocol preference or even HTTP. Till the time, we are honoring the six guiding principles of REST, which we can call our interface – RESTful.

## Summary

In simple words, in the REST architectural style, data and functionality are considered resources and are accessed using **Uniform Resource Identifiers** (URIs).

The resources are acted upon by using a set of simple, well-defined operations. Also, the resources have to be decoupled from their representation so that clients can access the content in various formats, such as HTML, XML, plain text, PDF, JPEG, JSON, and others.

The clients and servers exchange representations of resources by using a standardized interface and protocol. Typically HTTP is the most used protocol, but REST does not mandate it.

Metadata about the resource is made available and used to control caching, detect transmission errors, negotiate the appropriate representation format, and perform authentication or access control.

And most importantly, every interaction with the server must be stateless.

All these principles help RESTful applications to be simple, lightweight, and fast.

# REST – HATEOAS

**HATEOAS (Hypermedia as the Engine of Application State)** is a constraint of the REST application architecture. HATEOAS keeps the REST style architecture unique from most other network application architectures.

The term “**hypermedia**” refers to any content that contains links to other forms of media such as images, movies, and text.

REST architectural style lets us use the hypermedia links in the API response contents. It allows the client to dynamically navigate to the appropriate resources by traversing the hypermedia links.

Navigating hypermedia links is conceptually the same as browsing through web pages by clicking the relevant hyperlinks to achieve a final goal.

For example, the given below JSON response may be from an API like:

HTTP GET http://api.domain.com/management/departments/10

{

"departmentId": 10,

"departmentName": "Administration",

"locationId": 1700,

"managerId": 200,

"links": [

{

"href": "10/employees",

"rel": "employees",

"type" : "GET"

}

]

}

In the preceding example, the response returned by the server contains hypermedia links to employee resources 10/employees, which can be traversed by the client to read employees belonging to the department.

The advantage of the above approach is that hypermedia links returned from the server drive the application’s state and not the other way around.

JSON does not have any universally accepted format for representing links between two resources. We may choose to send in the response body or decide to send links in HTTP response headers.

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

...

Link: <10/employees>; rel="employees"

Both are good solutions.

## How to Implement HATEOAS

In the real world, when we visit a website – we hit its homepage. The homepage presents some snapshots and links to other sections of websites. We click on the links and get more information and related links relevant to the context.

Like a human’s interaction with a website, a **REST client hits an initial API URI and uses the server-provided links to access the resources it needs and discover available actions dynamically**.

The client need not have prior knowledge of the service, or the different steps involved in a workflow. Additionally, the **clients no longer have to hardcode the URI structures for various resources**. HATEOAS allows the server to make URI changes as the API evolves without breaking the clients.

Above API interaction is possible using HATEOAS only.

# ASP.NET Core

ASP.NET Core is a cross-platform, high-performance, open-source framework for building modern, cloud-enabled, Internet-connected apps. With ASP.NET Core, you can:

* Build web apps and services, Internet of Things (IoT) apps, and mobile backends.
* Use your favorite development tools on Windows, macOS, and Linux.
* Deploy to the cloud or on-premises.
* Run on .NET Core.

## Why choose ASP.NET Core?

Millions of developers use or have used ASP.NET 4.x to create web apps. ASP.NET Core is a redesign of ASP.NET 4.x, including architectural changes that result in a leaner, more modular framework.

ASP.NET Core provides the following benefits:

* A unified story for building web UI and web APIs.
* Architected for testability.
* Razor Pages makes coding page-focused scenarios easier and more productive.
* Blazor lets you use C# in the browser alongside JavaScript. Share server-side and client-side app logic all written with .NET.
* Ability to develop and run on Windows, macOS, and Linux.
* Open-source and community-focused.
* Integration of modern, client-side frameworks and development workflows.
* Support for hosting Remote Procedure Call (RPC) services using gRPC.
* A cloud-ready, environment-based configuration system.
* Built-in dependency injection.
* A lightweight, high-performance, and modular HTTP request pipeline.
* Ability to host on the following:
  + Kestrel
  + IIS
  + HTTP.sys
  + Nginx
  + Apache
  + Docker
* Side-by-side versioning.
* Tooling that simplifies modern web development.

## Build web APIs and web UI using ASP.NET Core MVC

ASP.NET Core MVC provides features to build web APIs and web apps:

* The Model-View-Controller (MVC) pattern helps make your web APIs and web apps testable.
* Razor Pages is a page-based programming model that makes building web UI easier and more productive.
* Razor markup provides a productive syntax for Razor Pages and MVC views.
* Tag Helpers enable server-side code to participate in creating and rendering HTML elements in Razor files.
* Built-in support for multiple data formats and content negotiation lets your web APIs reach a broad range of clients, including browsers and mobile devices.
* Model binding automatically maps data from HTTP requests to action method parameters.
* Model validation automatically performs client-side and server-side validation.

## Client-side development

ASP.NET Core integrates seamlessly with popular client-side frameworks and libraries, including Blazor, Angular, React, and Bootstrap.

## Framework selection

The following table compares ASP.NET Core to ASP.NET 4.x.

| **FRAMEWORK SELECTION** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **ASP.NET Core** | **ASP.NET 4.x** |
| Build for Windows, macOS, or Linux | Build for Windows |
| Razor Pages is the recommended approach to create a Web UI as of ASP.NET Core 2.x. See also MVC, Web API, and SignalR. | Use Web Forms,  SignalR, MVC, Web API, WebHooks, or Web Pages |
| Multiple versions per machine | One version per machine |
| Develop with Visual Studio, Visual Studio for Mac, or Visual Studio Code using C# or F# | Develop with Visual Studio using C#, VB, or F# |
| Higher performance than ASP.NET 4.x | Good performance |
| Use .NET Core runtime | Use .NET Framework runtime |

## Demo: Create an ASP.NET Core Web App – Visual Studio

New -> Project -> ASP.NET Core Web App

## Demo: Create an ASP.NET Core Web App – Visual Studio Code

### Create a web app project

Open a command shell, and enter the following command:

dotnet new webapp -o aspnetcoreapp

The preceding command:

* Creates a new web app.
* The -o aspnetcoreapp parameter creates a directory named aspnetcoreapp with the source files for the app.

### Trust the development certificate

Trust the HTTPS development certificate:

**Windows**

dotnet dev-certs https --trust



**macOS**

dotnet dev-certs https --trust

The preceding command displays the following message:

Trusting the HTTPS development certificate was requested. If the certificate is not already trusted, we will run the following command: 'sudo security add-trusted-cert -d -r trustRoot -k /Library/Keychains/System.keychain <<certificate>>'

This command might prompt you for your password to install the certificate on the system keychain. Enter your password if you agree to trust the development certificate.

**Linux**

See the documentation for your Linux distribution on how to trust the HTTPS development certificate.

### Run the app

Run the following commands:

cd aspnetcoreapp

dotnet watch run

After the command shell indicates that the app has started, browse to https://localhost:5001.

## ASP.NET Core Fundamentals

### Program.cs

ASP.NET Core apps created with the web templates contain the application startup code in the Program.cs file. The Program.cs file is where:

* Services required by the app are configured.
* The app's request handling pipeline is defined as a series of middleware components.

The app startup code in the above example code supports:

* Razor Pages
* MVC controllers with views

It can also support *Web API with controllers* (to be discussed later).

### Dependency injection (services)

ASP.NET Core includes dependency injection (DI) that makes configured services available throughout an app. Services are added to the DI container with WebApplicationBuilder.Services, builder.Services in the preceding code. When the WebApplicationBuilder is instantiated, many framework-provided services are added. builder is a WebApplicationBuilder in the following code:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

var app = builder.Build();

In the preceding highlighted code, builder has configuration, logging, and many other services added to the DI container.

The following code adds Razor Pages, MVC controllers with views, and a custom DbContext to the DI container:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

using RazorPagesMovie.Data;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

builder.Services.AddDbContext<RazorPagesMovieContext>(options =>

options.UseSqlServer(builder.Configuration.GetConnectionString("RPMovieContext")));

var app = builder.Build();

Services are typically resolved from DI using constructor injection. The DI framework provides an instance of this service at runtime.

The following code uses constructor injection to resolve the database context and logger from DI:

public class IndexModel : PageModel

{

private readonly RazorPagesMovieContext \_context;

private readonly ILogger<IndexModel> \_logger;

public IndexModel(RazorPagesMovieContext context, ILogger<IndexModel> logger)

{

\_context = context;

\_logger = logger;

}

public IList<Movie> Movie { get;set; }

public async Task OnGetAsync()

{

\_logger.LogInformation("IndexModel OnGetAsync.");

Movie = await \_context.Movie.ToListAsync();

}

}

### Middleware

The request handling pipeline is composed as a series of middleware components. Each component performs operations on an HttpContext and either invokes the next middleware in the pipeline or terminates the request.

By convention, a middleware component is added to the pipeline by invoking a Use{Feature} extension method. Middleware added to the app is highlighted in the following code:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (!app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseExceptionHandler("/Error");

app.UseHsts();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapGet("/hi", () => "Hello!");

app.MapDefaultControllerRoute();

app.MapRazorPages();

app.Run();

### Host

On startup, an ASP.NET Core app builds a host. The host encapsulates all of the app's resources, such as:

* An HTTP server implementation
* Middleware components
* Logging
* Dependency injection (DI) services
* Configuration

There are three different hosts:

* .NET WebApplication Host
* .NET Generic Host
* ASP.NET Core Web Host

The .NET Minimal Host is recommended and used in all the ASP.NET Core templates. The Minimal and Generic hosts share many of the same interfaces and classes. The ASP.NET Core Web Host is available only for backwards compatibility.

The following example instantiates a WebApplication Host:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

var app = builder.Build();

The WebApplicationBuilder.Build method configures a host with a set of default options, such as:

* Use Kestrel as the web server and enable IIS integration.
* Load configuration from appsettings.json, environment variables, command line arguments, and other configuration sources.
* Send logging output to the console and debug providers.

### Non-web scenarios

The Generic Host allows other types of apps to use cross-cutting framework extensions, such as logging, dependency injection (DI), configuration, and app lifetime management. For more information, see .NET Generic Host in ASP.NET Core and Background tasks with hosted services in ASP.NET Core.

#### Servers

An ASP.NET Core app uses an HTTP server implementation to listen for HTTP requests. The server surfaces requests to the app as a set of request features composed into an HttpContext.

**Windows**

ASP.NET Core provides the following server implementations:

* Kestrel is a cross-platform web server. Kestrel is often run in a reverse proxy configuration using IIS. In ASP.NET Core 2.0 or later, Kestrel can be run as a public-facing edge server exposed directly to the Internet.
* IIS HTTP Server is a server for Windows that uses IIS. With this server, the ASP.NET Core app and IIS run in the same process.
* HTTP.sys is a server for Windows that isn't used with IIS.

**macOS**

ASP.NET Core provides the Kestrel cross-platform server implementation. In ASP.NET Core 2.0 or later, Kestrel can run as a public-facing edge server exposed directly to the Internet. Kestrel is often run in a reverse proxy configuration with Nginx or Apache.

**Linux**

ASP.NET Core provides the Kestrel cross-platform server implementation. In ASP.NET Core 2.0 or later, Kestrel can run as a public-facing edge server exposed directly to the Internet. Kestrel is often run in a reverse proxy configuration with Nginx or Apache.

### Configuration

ASP.NET Core provides a configuration framework that gets settings as name-value pairs from an ordered set of configuration providers. Built-in configuration providers are available for a variety of sources, such as .json files, .xml files, environment variables, and command-line arguments. Write custom configuration providers to support other sources.

By default, ASP.NET Core apps are configured to read from appsettings.json, environment variables, the command line, and more. When the app's configuration is loaded, values from environment variables override values from appsettings.json.

For managing confidential configuration data such as passwords, .NET Core provides the Secret Manager. For production secrets, we recommend Azure Key Vault.

### Environments

Execution environments, such as Development, Staging, and Production, are available in ASP.NET Core. Specify the environment an app is running in by setting the ASPNETCORE\_ENVIRONMENT environment variable. ASP.NET Core reads that environment variable at app startup and stores the value in an IWebHostEnvironment implementation. This implementation is available anywhere in an app via dependency injection (DI).

The following example configures the exception handler and HTTP Strict Transport Security Protocol (HSTS) middleware when ***not*** running in the Development environment:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (!app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseExceptionHandler("/Error");

app.UseHsts();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapGet("/hi", () => "Hello!");

app.MapDefaultControllerRoute();

app.MapRazorPages();

app.Run();

### Logging

ASP.NET Core supports a logging API that works with a variety of built-in and third-party logging providers. Available providers include:

* Console
* Debug
* Event Tracing on Windows
* Windows Event Log
* TraceSource
* Azure App Service
* Azure Application Insights

To create logs, resolve an ILogger<TCategoryName> service from dependency injection (DI) and call logging methods such as LogInformation. For example:

public class IndexModel : PageModel

{

private readonly RazorPagesMovieContext \_context;

private readonly ILogger<IndexModel> \_logger;

public IndexModel(RazorPagesMovieContext context, ILogger<IndexModel> logger)

{

\_context = context;

\_logger = logger;

}

public IList<Movie> Movie { get;set; }

public async Task OnGetAsync()

{

\_logger.LogInformation("IndexModel OnGetAsync.");

Movie = await \_context.Movie.ToListAsync();

}

}

### Routing

A route is a URL pattern that is mapped to a handler. The handler is typically a Razor page, an action method in an MVC controller, or a middleware. ASP.NET Core routing gives you control over the URLs used by your app.

The following code, generated by the ASP.NET Core web application template, calls UseRouting:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (!app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseExceptionHandler("/Error");

app.UseHsts();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.UseRouting();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapRazorPages();

app.Run();

### Error handling

ASP.NET Core has built-in features for handling errors, such as:

* A developer exception page
* Custom error pages
* Static status code pages
* Startup exception handling

### Make HTTP requests

An implementation of IHttpClientFactory is available for creating HttpClient instances. The factory:

* Provides a central location for naming and configuring logical HttpClient instances. For example, register and configure a github client for accessing GitHub. Register and configure a default client for other purposes.
* Supports registration and chaining of multiple delegating handlers to build an outgoing request middleware pipeline. This pattern is similar to ASP.NET Core's inbound middleware pipeline. The pattern provides a mechanism to manage cross-cutting concerns for HTTP requests, including caching, error handling, serialization, and logging.
* Integrates with Polly, a popular third-party library for transient fault handling.
* Manages the pooling and lifetime of underlying HttpClientHandler instances to avoid common DNS problems that occur when managing HttpClient lifetimes manually.
* Adds a configurable logging experience via ILogger for all requests sent through clients created by the factory.

### Content root

The content root is the base path for:

1. The executable hosting the app (.exe).
2. Compiled assemblies that make up the app (.dll).
3. Content files used by the app, such as:
   * Razor files (.cshtml, .razor)
   * Configuration files (.json, .xml)
   * Data files (.db)

* The Web root, typically the wwwroot folder.

During development, the content root defaults to the project's root directory. This directory is also the base path for both the app's content files and the Web root. Specify a different content root by setting its path when building the host. For more information, see Content root.

### Web root

The web root is the base path for public, static resource files, such as:

* Stylesheets (.css)
* JavaScript (.js)
* Images (.png, .jpg)

By default, static files are served only from the web root directory and its sub-directories. The web root path defaults to {content root}/wwwroot. Specify a different web root by setting its path when building the host. For more information, see Web root.

Prevent publishing files in wwwroot with the <Content> project item in the project file. The following example prevents publishing content in wwwroot/local and its sub-directories:

<ItemGroup>

<Content Update="wwwroot\local\\*\*\\*.\*" CopyToPublishDirectory="Never" />

</ItemGroup>

In Razor .cshtml files, tilde-slash (~/) points to the web root. A path beginning with ~/ is referred to as a virtual path.

## Dependency Injection

ASP.NET Core supports the dependency injection (DI) software design pattern, which is a technique for achieving Inversion of Control (IoC) between classes and their dependencies.

**Project: DependencyInjectionDemo**

Steps:

1. Show IMyDependency.cs
2. Show MyDependency.cs
3. Show Index2.cshtml and Index2.cshtml.cs
4. Show DI in Program.cs for MyDependency
5. Show \_Layouts.cshtml and change /Index to /Index2
6. Run
7. Show console windows for messages when “Home” page is loaded
8. Show MyDependencyLogger
9. Run
10. Show console windows for messages when “Home” page is loaded
11. Must show “MyDependencyLogger” messages
12. Show About.cshtml and About.cshtml.cs
13. Show DI in Program.cs for MyDependencyLogger
14. Show \_Layouts.cshtml and show /About
15. Run
16. Show console windows for messages when “About” page is loaded

# ASP.NET Core – Middleware

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/middleware/?view=aspnetcore-6.0> ASP.NET Core introduced a new concept called **Middleware.** A middleware is nothing but a component (class) which is executed on every request in ASP.NET Core application. In the classic ASP.NET, HttpHandlers and HttpModules were part of request pipeline. Middleware is similar to HttpHandlers and HttpModules where both needs to be configured and executed in each request.

Middleware is software that's assembled into an app pipeline to handle requests and responses. Each component:

* Chooses whether to pass the request to the next component in the pipeline.
* Can perform work before and after the next component in the pipeline.

Request delegates are used to build the request pipeline. The request delegates handle each HTTP request.

Request delegates are configured using [Run](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.builder.runextensions.run), [Map](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.builder.mapextensions.map), and [Use](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.builder.useextensions.use) extension methods. An individual request delegate can be specified in-line as an anonymous method (called in-line middleware), or it can be defined in a reusable class. These reusable classes and in-line anonymous methods are middleware, also called middleware components. Each middleware component in the request pipeline is responsible for invoking the next component in the pipeline or short-circuiting the pipeline. When a middleware short-circuits, it's called a terminal middleware because it prevents further middleware from processing the request.

## Overview

<https://www.dotnetcurry.com/aspnet-core/middleware-in-aspnetcore>

ASP.NET Core is a flexible, open-source web framework for building modern, scalable web applications. One of its key features is **support for middleware**, which provides a way to process requests and responses in a pipeline.

In ASP.NET Core, middleware is a component that’s composed of one or more delegate functions. Each delegate function can perform some processing on the incoming request and pass control to the next delegate function in the pipeline, or it can handle the request and produce a response. The response that is produced, flows back through the pipeline, giving each middleware component the opportunity to perform post-processing on the response.

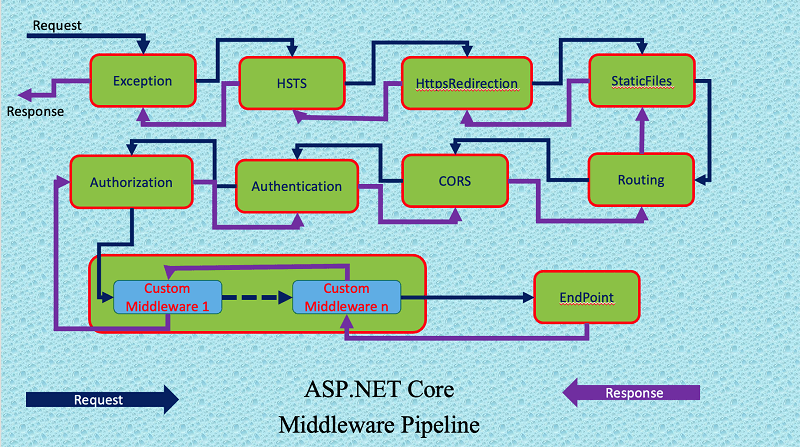
This mechanism provides a flexible and extensible way of handling HTTP requests and responses, making it easy to implement complex features such as authentication, logging, and routing.

Some of the middleware that can be implemented in an ASP.NET Core application include:

* + 1. **Authentication Middleware**: This provides authentication functionality for the application, such as handling login and logout functionality.
    2. **Static Files Middleware**: This serves static files, such as images, CSS, and JavaScript files, to the client.
    3. **Routing Middleware**: This maps incoming requests to the appropriate action in a controller.
    4. **Session Middleware**: This provides a way to store user-specific data between requests, such as user preferences or shopping cart contents.
    5. **Exception Handling Middleware**: This provides a way to handle exceptions that occur during request processing and produce a friendly error response.
    6. **CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) Middleware**: This provides a way to handle cross-domain requests by allowing or denying specific origins.
    7. **GZIP Compression Middleware**: This compresses the response payload to reduce the amount of data transferred over the network, improving performance.
    8. **HTTPS Redirection Middleware**: This redirects HTTP requests to HTTPS to ensure that sensitive data is transmitted securely.

## Architecture of Middleware

The architecture of Middleware in ASP.NET Core consists of a pipeline of components that handle incoming HTTP requests and outgoing responses. Each middleware component in the pipeline is responsible for performing a specific task, such as authentication, logging, or routing.



The following middleware components are for common app scenarios in the recommended order:

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/article/overview-of-middleware-in-asp-net-core/>

A screenshot of a computer screen

Description automatically generated

The first configured middleware has received the request, modify it (if required), and passes control to the next middleware. Similarly, the first middleware is executed at the last while processing a response if the echo comes back down the tube. That’s why Exception-handling delegates need to be called early in the pipeline, so they can validate the result and displays a possible exception in a browser and client-friendly way.

## Understanding the Run, Use and Map Method

### **app.Run()**

This middleware component may expose Run[Middleware] methods that are executed at the end of the pipeline. Generally, this acts as a terminal middleware and is added at the end of the request pipeline, as it cannot call the next middleware.

### app.Use()

This is used to configure multiple middleware. Unlike app.Run(), We can include the next parameter into it, which calls the next request delegate in the pipeline. We can also short-circuit (terminate) the pipeline by not calling the next parameter.

Let’s consider the following example with the app.Use() and app.Run() and observe the output/response:

**public** **void** Configure(IApplicationBuilder app, IWebHostEnvironment env)

{

    app.Use(async (context, next) =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Before Invoke from 1st app.Use()\n");

        await next();

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("After Invoke from 1st app.Use()\n");

    });

    app.Use(async (context, next) =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Before Invoke from 2nd app.Use()\n");

        await next();

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("After Invoke from 2nd app.Use()\n");

    });

    app.Run(async (context) =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello from 1st app.Run()\n");

    });

    // the following will never be executed

    app.Run(async (context) =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello from 2nd app.Run()\n");

    });

}

A screenshot of a computer

Description automatically generated

The first app.Run() delegate terminates the pipeline. In the following example, only the first delegate (“Hello from 1st app.Run()”) will run and the request will never reach the second Run method.

### app.Map()

These extensions are used as a convention for branching the pipeline. The map branches the request pipeline based on matches of the given request path. If the request path starts with the given path, the branch is executed.

Let’s consider the following example with the app.Map() and observe the output/response:

**public** **void** Configure(IApplicationBuilder app, IWebHostEnvironment env)

{

    app.Map("/m1", HandleMapOne);

    app.Map("/m2", appMap => {

        appMap.Run(async context =>

        {

            await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello from 2nd app.Map()");

        });

    });

    app.Run(async (context) =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello from app.Run()");

    });

}

**private** **static** **void** HandleMapOne(IApplicationBuilder app)

{

    app.Run(async context =>

    {

        await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello from 1st app.Map()");

    });

}

The following table shows the requests and responses from localhost using the above code.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Request** | **Response** |
| *https://localhost:44362/* | *Hello from app.Run()* |
| *https://localhost:44362/m1* | *Hello from 1st app.Map()* |
| *https://localhost:44362/m1/xyz* | *Hello from 1st app.Map()* |
| *https://localhost:44362/m2* | *Hello from 2nd app.Map()* |
| *https://localhost:44362/m500* | *Hello from app.Run()* |

### Creating a Custom Middleware

Middleware is generally encapsulated in a class and exposed with an extension method. The custom middleware can be built with a class with InvokeAsync() method and RequestDelegate type parameter in the constructor. RequestDelegate type is required in order to execute the next middleware in a sequence.

Let’s consider an example where we need to create custom middleware to log a request URL in a web application.

public class LogURLMiddleware

{

private readonly RequestDelegate \_next;

private readonly ILogger<LogURLMiddleware> \_logger;

public LogURLMiddleware(RequestDelegate next, ILoggerFactory loggerFactory)

{

\_next = next;

\_logger = loggerFactory?.CreateLogger<LogURLMiddleware>() ??

throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(loggerFactory));

}

public async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context)

{

var request = context.Request;

var response = context.Response;

request.EnableBuffering();

\_logger.LogInformation($"Request URL: " +

$"{Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http.Extensions.UriHelper.GetDisplayUrl(context.Request)}");

var requestTime = DateTime.Now;

var requestBody = await GetRequestBody(request);

var originalBodyStream = response.Body;

request.Body.Position = 0;

using (var responseBody = new MemoryStream())

{

response.Body = responseBody;

await \_next(context);

responseBody.Position = 0;

var responseTime = DateTime.Now;

//var responseBodyString = await GetResponseBody(response);

var responseBodyString = new StreamReader(responseBody).ReadToEnd();

responseBody.Position = 0;

await responseBody.CopyToAsync(originalBodyStream);

\_logger.LogInformation($"LogURLMiddleware: " +

$"Request: {requestTime} {request.Method} {request.Scheme}" +

$"://{request.Host}{request.Path} {request.QueryString} {requestBody}" +

$"Response: {responseTime} {response.StatusCode} {responseBodyString}");

}

}

private async Task<string> GetRequestBody(HttpRequest request)

{

var stream = new StreamReader(request.Body);

var body = await stream.ReadToEndAsync();

return body;

}

}

**public** **static** **class** LogURLMiddlewareExtensions

{

**public** **static** IApplicationBuilder UseLogUrl(**this** IApplicationBuilder app)

    {

**return** app.UseMiddleware<LogURLMiddleware>();

    }

}

In the Configure method:

app.UseLogUrl();

## More Explanation

The middleware pipeline in ASP.NET Core is constructed using the IApplicationBuilder interface, which provides a fluent API for adding middleware components to the pipeline. The pipeline is constructed in Program.cs , which is executed when the application starts.

When an HTTP request is received by the ASP.NET Core application, it is processed by the middleware pipeline in the following way:

* + 1. The request is passed to the first middleware component in the pipeline.
    2. The middleware component performs its specific task, such as logging or authentication.
    3. The middleware component can then either pass the request on to the next middleware component in the pipeline, or it can short-circuit the pipeline and return a response directly to the client.
    4. The process is repeated for each middleware component in the pipeline until a response is returned to the client.

In ASP.NET Core 6.0, the Program.cs file contains code that gets executed when the application is started. It is used to configure the ASP.NET platform.

|  |
| --- |
| var app = builder.Build();        app.UseMiddleware<LoggingMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<AuthenticationMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<RoutingMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<ExceptionHandlingMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<CorsMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<GzipCompressionMiddleware>();      app.UseMiddleware<HttpsRedirectionMiddleware>();    app.MapControllers(); |

In this example, each middleware component is added to the pipeline using the UseMiddleware<T> method on the IApplicationBuilder interface. The order in which the middleware components are added is important, as each component may depend on the functionality provided by the previous components in the pipeline.

One of the key improvements is the introduction of a new generic IMiddleware interface, which provides a simpler and more streamlined way of creating middleware components. The IMiddleware interface has a single method called InvokeAsync, which is responsible for handling the HTTP request and generating the response.

Here is an example of a middleware component that implements the IMiddleware interface:

|  |
| --- |
| **public** **class** LoggingMiddleware : IMiddleware  {  **private** **readonly** ILogger<LoggingMiddleware> \_logger;    **public** LoggingMiddleware(ILogger<LoggingMiddleware> logger)      {          \_logger = logger;      }    **public** async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context, RequestDelegate next)      {          \_logger.LogInformation("Request received: {Method} {Path}", context.Request.Method, context.Request.Path);            await next(context);            \_logger.LogInformation("Response sent: {StatusCode}", context.Response.StatusCode);      }  } |

In this example, the LoggingMiddleware component implements the IMiddleware interface and provides a simple way of logging incoming requests and outgoing responses. The InvokeAsync method is responsible for logging the request, calling the next middleware component in the pipeline, and logging the response.

The result of the Build() method is a WebApplication object, which can be used to set up middleware components.

## Key Components in the Middleware

Let’s take a closer look at some of the key components involved in the LoggingMiddleware example we just saw.

First, there’s the HttpContext object, which represents the context of an HTTP request and provides access to information about the request and response. The HttpContext object is passed from one middleware component to another middleware component as the request travels through the pipeline.

Next, there’s the RequestDelegate delegate object, which invoke a function that represents the next middleware component in the pipeline. When a middleware component is finished processing a request, it can either pass the request on to the next middleware component by invoking the RequestDelegate, or it can generate a response and return it directly to the client.

The IMiddleware interface is used to define middleware components in ASP.NET Core. Middleware components implement this interface and provide a single InvokeAsync method, which is responsible for processing incoming requests and generating responses.

To add middleware components to the pipeline, developers can use the Use method provided by the IApplicationBuilder interface. This method takes an instance of a middleware component and adds it to the pipeline.

Finally, it’s worth noting that middleware components in ASP.NET Core can be configured using options. Options are classes that define settings and parameters that can be used to configure middleware components. Developers can use the IOptions interface to inject these options into their middleware components and use them to customize their behavior.

## Advantages of the Middleware architecture

The middleware architecture in ASP.NET Core provides a powerful and flexible framework for processing HTTP requests and generating responses. It’s designed to be extensible and customizable, allowing developers to create their own middleware components and configure them to suit their needs.

One of the key benefits of the middleware architecture in ASP.NET Core is its modularity. Because each middleware component is responsible for a single, specific task, developers can easily swap out components or add new ones as needed. This makes it easy to build complex web applications with a flexible and modular architecture.

Another advantage of the middleware architecture is that it provides a clear separation of concerns (SoC). Each middleware component is responsible for a specific aspect of request processing, such as authentication, routing, or response compression. This makes it easier to reason about the code and ensure that each component is doing its job correctly.

The middleware architecture in ASP.NET Core also provides a high degree of performance and scalability. Because each middleware component is lightweight and focused on a specific task, it can process requests quickly and efficiently. And because the pipeline is configurable, developers can optimize it for their specific use case to ensure maximum performance.

## Configuring the Middleware Pipeline

An important aspect of middleware in ASP.NET Core is the ability to configure the middleware pipeline. Middleware can be added, removed, or reordered to meet the specific needs of an application. The order of the middleware components in the pipeline is significant, as it determines the processing order of the requests and responses.

For example, authentication middleware typically needs to be placed early in the pipeline, so that the authentication information can be used by other middleware components. Similarly, exception handling middleware should be placed near the end of the pipeline, so that it can catch any exceptions that occur during request processing.

In addition to the built-in middleware components, it’s also possible to create custom middleware components. Custom middleware can be used to implement application-specific functionality, such as logging or performance monitoring. To create custom middleware, you simply implement a delegate function that performs the desired processing and add it to the middleware pipeline.

Custom Middleware has been discussed in another article [**Custom middleware in an ASP.NET Core application**](https://www.dotnetcurry.com/aspnet-core/custom-middleware-aspnetcore)..

## Examples of Middleware Components

At the beginning of the article, we briefly touched upon some of the Middleware that can be implement in an ASP.NET Core application. These were and are not limited to:

* Authentication Middleware
* Static Files Middleware
* Routing Middleware
* Session Middleware
* Exception Handling Middleware
* CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) Middleware
* GZIP Compression Middleware
* HTTPS Redirection Middleware

Let us explore each of these and see how to implement implement each of the middleware components in ASP.NET Core.**The examples here target ASP.NET Core 5.0** which can easily be upgraded to v6 or higher by moving the code to Program.cs.

### 1. Authentication Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| **using** Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authentication.Cookies;  **using** Microsoft.AspNetCore.Builder;      var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);  builder.Services.AddAuthentication(CookieAuthenticationDefaults.AuthenticationScheme)  .AddCookie();    app.UseAuthentication(); |

This example uses the CookieAuthentication scheme and adds it to the IServiceCollection in the ConfigureServices method. The UseAuthentication method is then called in the Configure method to add the authentication middleware to the pipeline.

### 2. Static Files Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| app.UseStaticFiles(); |

The UseStaticFiles method adds the static files middleware to the pipeline, allowing the application to serve static files, such as images, CSS, and JavaScript files, to the client.

### 3. Routing Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| app.UseRouting();    app.MapControllerRoute(      name: "default",      pattern: "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}");    app.Run(); |

The UseRouting method adds the routing middleware to the pipeline, and the UseEndpoints method sets up the endpoint routing for the application. In this example, a default route is defined that maps incoming requests to a controller action.

### 4. Session Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| **using** Microsoft.AspNetCore.Session;    builder.Services.AddSession();  app.UseSession(); |

The AddSession method is called in the ConfigureServices method to add the session services to the IServiceCollection, and the UseSession method is called in the Configure method to add the session middleware to the pipeline.

### 5. Exception Handling Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| app.UseExceptionHandler("/Error");    app.Use(async (context, next) =>  {  **try**      {          await next();      }  **catch** (Exception ex)      {          // Log the exception          // ...            context.Response.StatusCode = 500;          await context.Response.WriteAsync("An error occurred, please try again later.");      }  }); |

The UseExceptionHandler method is called to add the exception handling middleware to the pipeline, and a custom delegate function is used to catch exceptions and log them. In this example, a generic error message is returned to the client, but in a real-world scenario, a more detailed error page could be displayed.

### 6. CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) Middleware:

|  |
| --- |
| **using** Microsoft.Asp.NetCore.Cors;  builder.Services.AddCors();    app.UseCors(options => options.WithOrigins("http://example.com").AllowAnyMethod().AllowAnyHeader()); |

The `AddCors` method is called in the `ConfigureServices` method to add the CORS services to the `IServiceCollection`, and the `UseCors` method is called in the `Configure` method to add the CORS middleware to the pipeline. In this example, the CORS policy allows requests from `http://example.com` to use any HTTP method and any header.

### **7. GZIP Compression Middleware:**

|  |
| --- |
| **using** Microsoft.AspNetCore.ResponseCompression;  builder.Services.AddResponseCompression(options =>  {      options.MimeTypes = ResponseCompressionDefaults.MimeTypes.Concat(**new**[] { "application/json" });      options.Providers.Add<GzipCompressionProvider>();  });    app.UseResponseCompression(); |

The `AddResponseCompression` method is called in the `ConfigureServices` method to add the response compression services to the `IServiceCollection`, and the `UseResponseCompression` method is called in the `Configure` method to add the response compression middleware to the pipeline. In this example, the `GzipCompressionProvider` is used to compress responses, and the compression is applied to `application/json` content types.

### **8. HTTPS Redirection Middleware:**

|  |
| --- |
| app.UseHttpsRedirection(); |

The `UseHttpsRedirection` method is called in the `Configure` method to add the HTTPS redirection middleware to the pipeline. This middleware redirects incoming HTTP requests to HTTPS, ensuring that all communication between the client and server is encrypted.

These are just a few examples of the many middleware components that can be implemented in an ASP.NET Core application. By combining and configuring these components, you can create a highly customized and scalable application.

## Middleware – Differences between ASP.NET Framework and ASP.NET Core

The concept of middleware in ASP.NET Framework and ASP.NET Core is similar in that it involves a pipeline of components that handle incoming requests and outgoing responses. However, there are several differences between the two frameworks in how middleware is implemented and used.

**Hosting mode**l: ASP.NET Framework runs on top of IIS (Internet Information Services), which provides hosting capabilities and process management. In contrast, ASP.NET Core is designed to be cross-platform and runs on top of a built-in web server called Kestrel, which can be hosted inside or outside of IIS.

**Dependency Injection**: ASP.NET Core includes a built-in dependency injection framework that is used to manage the lifecycle of middleware components and other services. This makes it easy to configure and manage the middleware pipeline using dependency injection.

**Middleware pipeline**: In ASP.NET Framework, middleware components are typically implemented as HTTP modules that are configured in the web.config file. In ASP.NET Core, middleware components are implemented as classes that are added to the middleware pipeline using the UseMiddleware method in the Startup class (or Program.cs for ASP.NET Core v6.0 and beyond).

**Extensibility**: ASP.NET Core’s middleware pipeline is highly extensible, making it easy to create and add custom middleware components to the pipeline. This is achieved using the IApplicationBuilder interface, which provides a fluent API for adding and configuring middleware components.

**Performance**: ASP.NET Core is designed with performance in mind and includes several features that improve performance, such as the use of Kestrel as a web server, optimized routing, and support for asynchronous programming. These features make it possible to handle large numbers of requests with high throughput and low latency.

**Cross-platform support**: ASP.NET Core is designed to be cross-platform and can run on different operating systems such as Windows, Linux, and macOS. This means that developers can create and deploy ASP.NET Core applications (including middlware) on different platforms without any issues.

**Configuration**: ASP.NET Core provides a flexible configuration system that allows developers to configure their application using various sources such as appsettings.json, environment variables, and command-line arguments. Middleware components can also be configured using the configuration system.

**Request/response objects**: In ASP.NET Core, the HttpRequest and HttpResponse objects are designed to be lightweight and provide a simple API for working with incoming requests and outgoing responses. This makes it easier to implement middleware components that modify the request or response.

**Middleware reuse**: ASP.NET Core middleware components can be easily reused across different applications and can also be packaged as NuGet packages for easy distribution and reuse. This encourages code reuse and modularity, making it easier to develop and maintain complex web applications.

In summary, the concept of middleware in ASP.NET Core is more flexible, extensible, and efficient compared to ASP.NET Framework. It provides a highly modular and customizable pipeline for handling HTTP requests and responses, making it easier to create and maintain modern web applications.

## Migrating HTTP handlers and modules to ASP.NET Core middleware

If you’re migrating an existing ASP.NET application to ASP.NET Core, you may need to migrate your HTTP handlers and modules to ASP.NET Core middleware. Fortunately, this process is relatively straightforward, although it does require some knowledge of both ASP.NET and ASP.NET Core.

## Custom middleware in an ASP.NET Core application

<https://www.dotnetcurry.com/aspnet-core/custom-middleware-aspnetcore>

A **custom middleware** is a software component designed to extend the functionality of a pipeline in an application. It is a piece of software that is inserted into the pipeline of the application to perform a specific task, such as authentication, logging, error handling, or routing, and it can be used to add custom functionality to the application.

### Examples of a Custom Middleware implementation

Custom middleware in ASP.NET Core allows developers to execute code before or after the request-response cycle. It provides a flexible and extensible way for developers to add custom functionality to their applications. With custom middleware, developers can create a pipeline of processing for each request and response that can be tailored to meet the specific needs of their applications.

In Visual Studio, you can right click the project > Add New Item and choose a ‘Middleware class’ to add a middleware to your application.

Here is an example of a custom middleware implementation for authentication:

|  |
| --- |
| **public** **class** CustomAuthMiddleware  {  **private** **readonly** RequestDelegate \_next;    **public** CustomAuthMiddleware(RequestDelegate next)      {          \_next = next;      }    **public** async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context)      {  **string** authHeader = context.Request.Headers["Authorization"];  **if** (authHeader != **null** && authHeader.StartsWith("Bearer"))          {  **string** token = authHeader.Substring("Bearer ".Length).Trim();    **try**              {                  // Validate the token                  var claimsPrincipal = ValidateToken(token);                  context.User = claimsPrincipal;              }  **catch**              {                  // Return unauthorized status code if the token is invalid                  context.Response.StatusCode = (**int**)HttpStatusCode.Unauthorized;  **return**;              }          }            await \_next(context);      }    **private** ClaimsPrincipal ValidateToken(**string** token)      {          // Implement validation logic here        }  } |

The code begins by declaring a class that is injected with the RequestDelegate delegate, which is used to handle incoming HTTP requests.  The RequestDelegate is a delegate that represents the next middleware component in the pipeline.  In other words, it is a reference to the next middleware component in the pipeline that executes after the current middleware component completes processing the request.

A middleware component is typically defined as a class that either implements the IMiddleware interface or utilizes a function that takes a HttpContext object and returns a Task. The HttpContext object carries important details about the current HTTP request being processed, such as request method, URL, headers, and body.

Middleware components utilize the HttpContext object to examine and adjust the incoming request or outgoing response as needed. Examples include adding a custom header to the response or performing authentication logic on the incoming request.

In the constructor of the middleware component, the \_next field is initialized with the provided RequestDelegate. This permits the middleware component to invoke the next middleware component in the pipeline after completing request processing. The middleware component also has the option to bypass the pipeline by not calling the next middleware component, and instead respond to the request on its own.

The asynchronous InvokeAsync method is then declared. This is used to handle incoming requests. The first step in this method is to check the Authorization header of the request for a Bearer token. If the token is found, it is validated using the ValidateToken method. If the token is valid, the claims of the token are used to set the context.user to a ClaimsPrincipal. If the token is not valid, the status code of the response is set to Unauthorized. Finally, the \_next RequestDelegate is invoked, which is responsible for processing the request.

The ValidateToken method is responsible for validating the token. This method must be implemented according to the authentication mechanism used.

The custom middleware can be added to the HTTP pipeline as follows:

|  |
| --- |
| // Extension method used to add the middleware to the HTTP request pipeline.  **public** **static** **class** MiddlewareExtensions  {  **public** **static** IApplicationBuilder UseMiddleware(**this** IApplicationBuilder builder)      {  **return** builder.UseMiddleware<CustomAuthMiddleware>();      }  } |

### Custom Middleware to add Logging

Another example of custom middleware could be to add logging to track request and response details, such as request time, URL, status code, etc. Here is an example:

|  |
| --- |
| **public** **class** RequestLoggingMiddleware  {  **private** **readonly** RequestDelegate \_next;    **public** RequestLoggingMiddleware(RequestDelegate next)      {          \_next = next;      }    **public** async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context)      {          var startTime = DateTime.Now;            await \_next(context);            var endTime = DateTime.Now;          var elapsedTime = endTime - startTime;            var logMessage = $"{context.Request.Method} {context.Request.Path} {context.Response.StatusCode} {elapsedTime.TotalMilliseconds}ms";          Console.WriteLine(logMessage);      }  } |

The above code is a middleware class that logs requests. The middleware class takes in a RequestDelegate object as its argument and sets it as the next delegate to be invoked in the pipeline.

When the middleware is invoked, the start time of the request is logged and then the request is passed to the next delegate. Once the response is received from the next delegate, the end time is logged and the total time elapsed is calculated. Finally, a log message containing the request method, path, status code and total time elapsed is written to the console.

### Combining Custom Middleware with other built-in Middleware

Additionally, custom middleware can be combined with other built-in middleware and third-party middleware to create a pipeline of processing for each request and response.

For example, you can use custom middleware for authentication, followed by built-in middleware for static file serving, followed by custom middleware for logging.

|  |
| --- |
| var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);  var app = builder.Build();    app.UseMiddleware<CustomAuthMiddleware>();  app.UseStaticFiles();  app.UseMiddleware<RequestLoggingMiddleware>(); |

In this example, each middleware component will be executed in the order they are added to the pipeline. The CustomAuthMiddleware will be executed first, followed by the built-in UseStaticFiles middleware, and finally the RequestLoggingMiddleware. The result of each middleware’s execution will be passed on to the next middleware in the pipeline until the response is returned to the client.

### Custom Middleware for Exception Handling and Caching

So far, we have seen how custom middleware in ASP.NET Core can be used to add custom functionality to the request-response pipeline. One of the most common uses of custom middleware is exception handling and Caching.

Here’s an example of how to add custom exception handling middleware:

Create a new class for your custom middleware, for example:

|  |
| --- |
| **public** **class** ExceptionHandlingMiddleware  {  **private** **readonly** RequestDelegate \_next;    **public** ExceptionHandlingMiddleware(RequestDelegate next)      {          \_next = next;      }    **public** async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context)      {  **try**          {              await \_next(context);          }  **catch** (Exception ex)          {              // Log the exception              Console.WriteLine("An exception occurred: " + ex.Message);                // Set the response status code to 500 Internal Server Error              context.Response.StatusCode = (**int**)HttpStatusCode.InternalServerError;          }      }  } |

Use the UseMiddleware method to add the custom middleware to the request-response pipeline:

|  |
| --- |
| app.UseMiddleware<ExceptionHandlingMiddleware>(); |

With this custom exception handling middleware in place, any exceptions that occur in your application will be caught and logged, and the response status code will be set to 500 Internal Server Error. This can be useful for handling unexpected errors and providing a consistent response to the client.

Another common use case for custom middleware is caching. Here’s an example of how to add custom caching middleware:

Create a new class for your custom middleware, for example:

|  |
| --- |
| **public** **class** CachingMiddleware  {  **private** **readonly** RequestDelegate \_next;  **private** **readonly** IMemoryCache \_memoryCache;    **public** CachingMiddleware(RequestDelegate next, IMemoryCache memoryCache)      {          \_next = next;          \_memoryCache = memoryCache;      }    **public** async Task InvokeAsync(HttpContext context)      {          var cacheKey = context.Request.Path;    **if** (\_memoryCache.TryGetValue(cacheKey, **out** **byte**[] cachedData))          {              context.Response.Body = **new** MemoryStream(cachedData);  **return**;          }            var originalBodyStream = context.Response.Body;  **using** (var memoryStream = **new** MemoryStream())          {              context.Response.Body = memoryStream;                await \_next(context);                var responseData = memoryStream.ToArray();              \_memoryCache.Set(cacheKey, responseData, TimeSpan.FromMinutes(10));              memoryStream.Position = 0;              await memoryStream.CopyToAsync(originalBodyStream);          }      }  } |

The above code is a middleware class that allows for caching of HTTP responses in an application. It uses a memory cache, that stores data in the RAM of the computer, rather than on a hard drive.

When invoked, the middleware first checks if a response has already been cached for the current request. If so, it sets the response body to the cached data and exits. If not, it continues by creating a MemoryStream object to store the response data. It then sets the response body to the MemoryStream object and calls the next piece of middleware in the pipeline.

After the response is generated, Responses will be cached in memory using the `IMemoryCache` service for 10 minutes. Finally, the response data is copied back to the original response body stream, allowing it to be sent back to the client. Subsequent requests for the same URL within the cache time window will receive the cached response, instead of making a new request to the server.

## Create a middleware pipeline with WebApplication

The ASP.NET Core request pipeline consists of a sequence of request delegates, called one after the other. The following diagram demonstrates the concept. The thread of execution follows the black arrows.



ASP.NET Core Request Processing:

A picture containing diagram

Description automatically generated

## Configure Middleware

The simplest possible ASP.NET Core app sets up a single request delegate that handles all requests. This case doesn't include an actual request pipeline. Instead, a single anonymous function is called in response to every HTTP request.

**Project: MiddlewareDemo (Demo1)**

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddRazorPages();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (!app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseExceptionHandler("/Error");

}

:

:

app.Run(async context =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello world!");

});

app.Run();

In the above example, Run() is an extension method on IApplicationBuilder instance, which adds a terminal middleware to the application's request pipeline. The above configured middleware returns a response with a string "Hello World!" for each request.

## Understand Run Method

We used Run extension method to add middleware. The following is the signature of the Run method:

public static void Run(this IApplicationBuilder app, RequestDelegate handler)

The Run method is an extension method on IApplicationBuilder and accepts a parameter of RequestDelegate. The RequestDelegate is a delegate method which handles the request. The following is a RequestDelegate signature.

public delegate Task RequestDelegate(HttpContext context);

As you can see above, the Run method accepts a method as a parameter whose signature should match with RequestDelegate. Therefore, the method should accept the HttpContext parameter and return Task. So, you can either specify a lambda expression or specify a function in the Run method.

## Configure Multiple Middleware (Demo2)

Mostly there will be multiple middleware components in ASP.NET Core application which will be executed sequentially. The Run method adds a terminal middleware so it cannot call the next middleware as it would be the last middleware in a sequence. The following will always execute the first Run method and will never reach the second Run method.

**Project: MiddlewareDemo (Demo2)**

app.Run(async (context) =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello World From 1st Middleware");

});

// the following will never be executed

app.Run(async (context) =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello World From 2nd Middleware");

});

app.Run();

To configure multiple middleware, use Use() extension method. It is similar to Run() method except that it includes the next parameter to invoke next middleware in the sequence. Consider the following example.

**Project: MiddlewareDemo (Demo3)**

**Example: Use() (Demo3)**

app.Use(async (context, next) =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Hello World From 1st Middleware!");

await next();

});

app.Run(async (context) =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("\nHello World From 2nd Middleware");

});

app.Run();

The above example will display Hello World From 1st Middleware!Hello World From 2nd Middleware! in the browser.

Thus, we can use Use() method to configure multiple middlewares in the order we like.

## Add Built-in Middleware Via NuGet

ASP.NET Core is a modular framework. We can add server side features we need in our application by installing different plug-ins via NuGet. There are many middleware plug-ins available which can be used in our application.

The followings are some built-in middleware:

| Middleware | Description | Example |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Authentication | Adds authentication support. | app.UseAuthentication();  app.UseAuthorization(); |
| CORS | Configures Cross-Origin Resource Sharing. | app.UseCors(); |
| Routing | Adds routing capabilities for MVC or web form | app.UseRouting(); |
| Session | Adds support for user session. | app.UseSession(); |
| StaticFiles | Adds support for serving static files and directory browsing. | app.UseStaticFiles(); |

## Branch the middleware pipeline (Demo4)

Map extensions are used as a convention for branching the pipeline. Map branches the request pipeline based on matches of the given request path. If the request path starts with the given path, the branch is executed.

**Project: MiddlewareDemo (Demo4)**

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

var app = builder.Build();

app.Map("/map1", HandleMapTest1);

app.Map("/map2", HandleMapTest2);

app.Run(async context =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("<p>Hello from non-Map delegate</p>");

});

app.Run();

static void HandleMapTest1(IApplicationBuilder app)

{

app.Run(async context =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Map Test 1");

});

}

static void HandleMapTest2(IApplicationBuilder app)

{

app.Run(async context =>

{

await context.Response.WriteAsync("Map Test 2");

});

}

The following table shows the requests and responses from http://localhost:1234 using the preceding code.

| **BRANCH THE MIDDLEWARE PIPELINE** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Request** | **Response** |
| localhost:1234 | Hello from non-Map delegate. |
| localhost:1234/map1 | Map Test 1 |
| localhost:1234/map2 | Map Test 2 |
| localhost:1234/map3 | Hello from non-Map delegate. |

# ASP.NET Core 8: Improved exception handling with IExceptionHandler

<https://anthonygiretti.com/2023/06/14/asp-net-core-8-improved-exception-handling-with-iexceptionhandler/>

To get started with ASP.NET Core in .NET 8 Preview 5, [install the .NET 8 SDK](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/next).

If you’re on Windows using Visual Studio, we recommend installing the latest [Visual Studio 2022 preview](https://visualstudio.com/preview). If you’re using Visual Studio Code, you can try out the new [C# Dev Kit](https://devblogs.microsoft.com/visualstudio/announcing-csharp-dev-kit-for-visual-studio-code/). Visual Studio for Mac support for .NET 8 previews isn’t available at this time.

Upgrade an existing project

To upgrade an existing ASP.NET Core app from .NET 8 Preview 4 to .NET 8 Preview 5:

* Update the target framework of your app to net8.0.
* Update all Microsoft.AspNetCore.\* package references to 8.0.0-preview.5.\*.
* Update all Microsoft.Extensions.\* package references to 8.0.0-preview.5.\*.

**Solution**: TBD.

## No more middleware to handle exceptions!

The great news is you no longer need to handle global exceptions in a middleware since ASP.NET Core brought middleware. To remind you what’s a middleware and how you can handle Exception with, you can read my previous post on exception handling here: <https://anthonygiretti.com/2018/11/18/common-features-in-asp-net-core-2-1-webapi-error-handling/>.

With [ASP.NET Core 8](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/introduction-to-aspnet-core?view=aspnetcore-8.0) you can design a class that implements the IExceptionhandler interface. The latter describe the following contract:

public interface IExceptionHandler

{

ValueTask<bool> TryHandleAsync(HttpContext httpContext, Exception exception, CancellationToken cancellationToken);

}

You can implement the logic you want and return the response you desire to the client. important thing. You must return **True**or **False**. If you return **True**, the pipeline execution will end and other middlewares in the pipeline won’t be invoked. If you return **False**, the pipeline will continue its execution. Let’s see a example of an implementation:

|  |
| --- |
| using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Diagnostics; |
| using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc; |
| using System.Net; |
|  |
| namespace DemoAspNetCore8.ErrorHandling; |
|  |
| public class DefaultExceptionHandler : IExceptionHandler |
| { |
| private readonly ILogger<DefaultExceptionHandler> \_logger; |
| public DefaultExceptionHandler(ILogger<DefaultExceptionHandler> logger) |
| { |
| \_logger = logger; |
| } |
|  |
| public async ValueTask<bool> TryHandleAsync(HttpContext httpContext, Exception exception, CancellationToken cancellationToken) |
| { |
| \_logger.LogError(exception, "An unexpected error occurred"); |
|  |
| await httpContext.Response.WriteAsJsonAsync(new ProblemDetails |
| { |
| Status = (int)HttpStatusCode.InternalServerError, |
| Type = exception.GetType().Name, |
| Title = "An unexpected error occurred", |
| Detail = exception.Message, |
| Instance = $"{httpContext.Request.Method} {httpContext.Request.Path}" |
| }); |
|  |
| return true; |
| } |
| } |

In this class (which supports Dependency Injection) you can add logging and return a response with the WriteAsJsonAsync which takes in parameter a ProblemDetails instance. You can add anything in the response, I chose ProblemDetails because it’s a **RFC**standard to handle errors returned on HTTP APIs responses. You can find the RFC here: <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/html/rfc7807>.

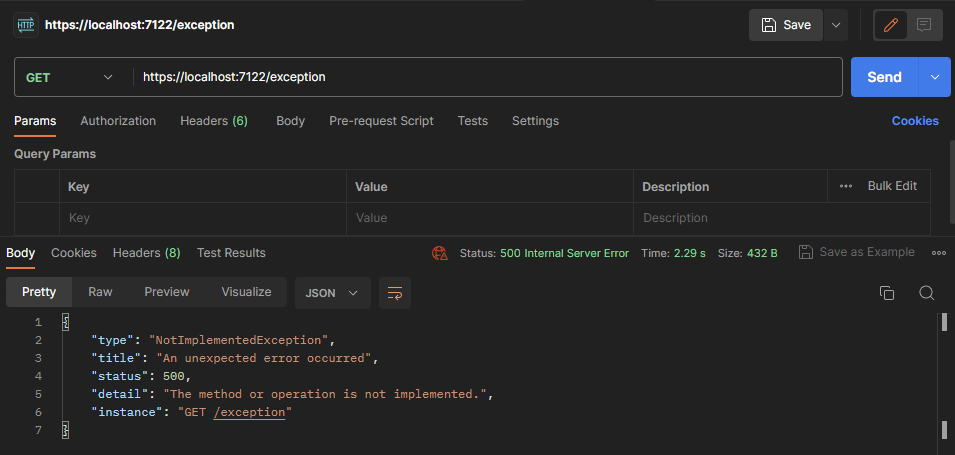
Note that the default HTTP Status code return is 500, you customize it as follow if you need:

httpContext.Response.StatusCode = (int)HttpStatusCode.RequestTimeout;

To register your Exception handler, proceed as follow:

|  |
| --- |
| using DemoAspNetCore8.ErrorHandling; |
|  |
| var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args); |
|  |
| builder.Services.AddExceptionHandler<DefaultExceptionHandler>(); |
|  |
| var app = builder.Build(); |
|  |
| app.UseExceptionHandler(opt => { }); |
|  |
| app.MapGet("/Exception", () => { |
|  |
| throw new NotImplementedException(); |
| }); |
|  |
| app.Run(); |

Use the method named AddException<T>() to register your handler, and use the method named UseExceptionHandler() which needs options paramters (that can remain empty) to work. If you run the app with invoke the **/exception** in my sample you will get following response:



## Chaining Exception handlers

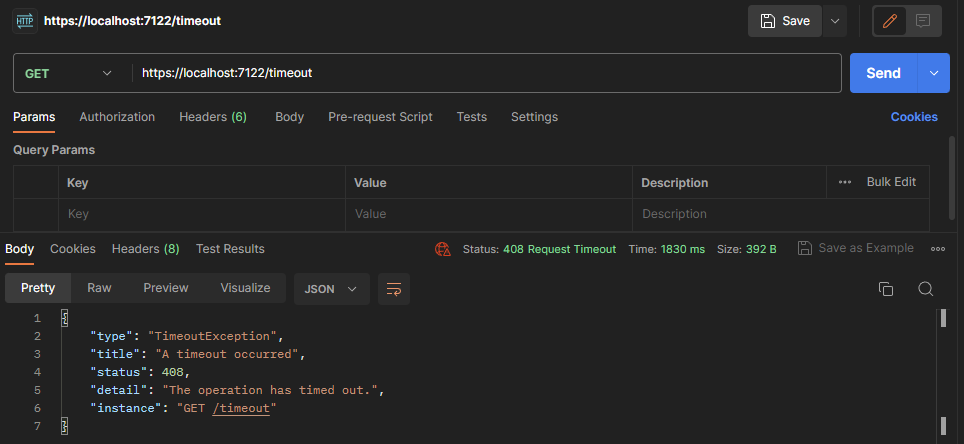
A great thing is that you can you chain exception handlers. How? By returning **False**, the pipeline will pursue its execution and invoke the next Exception handler. If every Exception handlers return **False**, the pipeline will execute all middlewares that remains in the pipeline. You can definitely combine Exception handlers and middlewares if you were wondering if it’s possible.

To chain your Exception handlers and only want to handle exception with them, chain them, but you HAVE TO define a default Exception handler that will run (and placed in the last position) to handle any Exception that has been handled by the previous handlers. The order matters! The following example shows an Exception handler that handles (only) TimeOutException and breaks the pipeline execution if the Exception is effectively a TimeOutException. If not the pipeline execution will continue and reach the default Exception handler as follow:

|  |
| --- |
| using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Diagnostics; |
| using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc; |
| using System.Net; |
|  |
| namespace DemoAspNetCore8.ErrorHandling; |
|  |
| public class TimeOutExceptionHandler : IExceptionHandler |
| { |
| private readonly ILogger<DefaultExceptionHandler> \_logger; |
| public TimeOutExceptionHandler(ILogger<DefaultExceptionHandler> logger) |
| { |
| \_logger = logger; |
| } |
|  |
| public async ValueTask<bool> TryHandleAsync(HttpContext httpContext, Exception exception, CancellationToken cancellationToken) |
| { |
| \_logger.LogError(exception, "A timeout occurred"); |
|  |
| if (exception is TimeoutException) |
| { |
| httpContext.Response.StatusCode = (int)HttpStatusCode.RequestTimeout; |
|  |
| await httpContext.Response.WriteAsJsonAsync(new ProblemDetails |
| { |
| Status = (int)HttpStatusCode.RequestTimeout, |
| Type = exception.GetType().Name, |
| Title = "A timeout occurred", |
| Detail = exception.Message, |
| Instance = $"{httpContext.Request.Method} {httpContext.Request.Path}" |
| }); |
| return true; |
| } |
| return false; |
| } |
| } |

|  |
| --- |
| using DemoAspNetCore8.ErrorHandling; |
|  |
| var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args); |
|  |
| builder.Services.AddExceptionHandler<TimeOutExceptionHandler>(); |
| builder.Services.AddExceptionHandler<DefaultExceptionHandler>(); |
|  |
| var app = builder.Build(); |
|  |
| app.UseExceptionHandler(opt => { }); |
|  |
| app.MapGet("/Exception", () => { |
|  |
| throw new NotImplementedException(); |
| }); |
|  |
| app.MapGet("/Timeout", () => { |
|  |
| throw new TimeoutException(); |
| }); |
|  |
| app.Run(); |

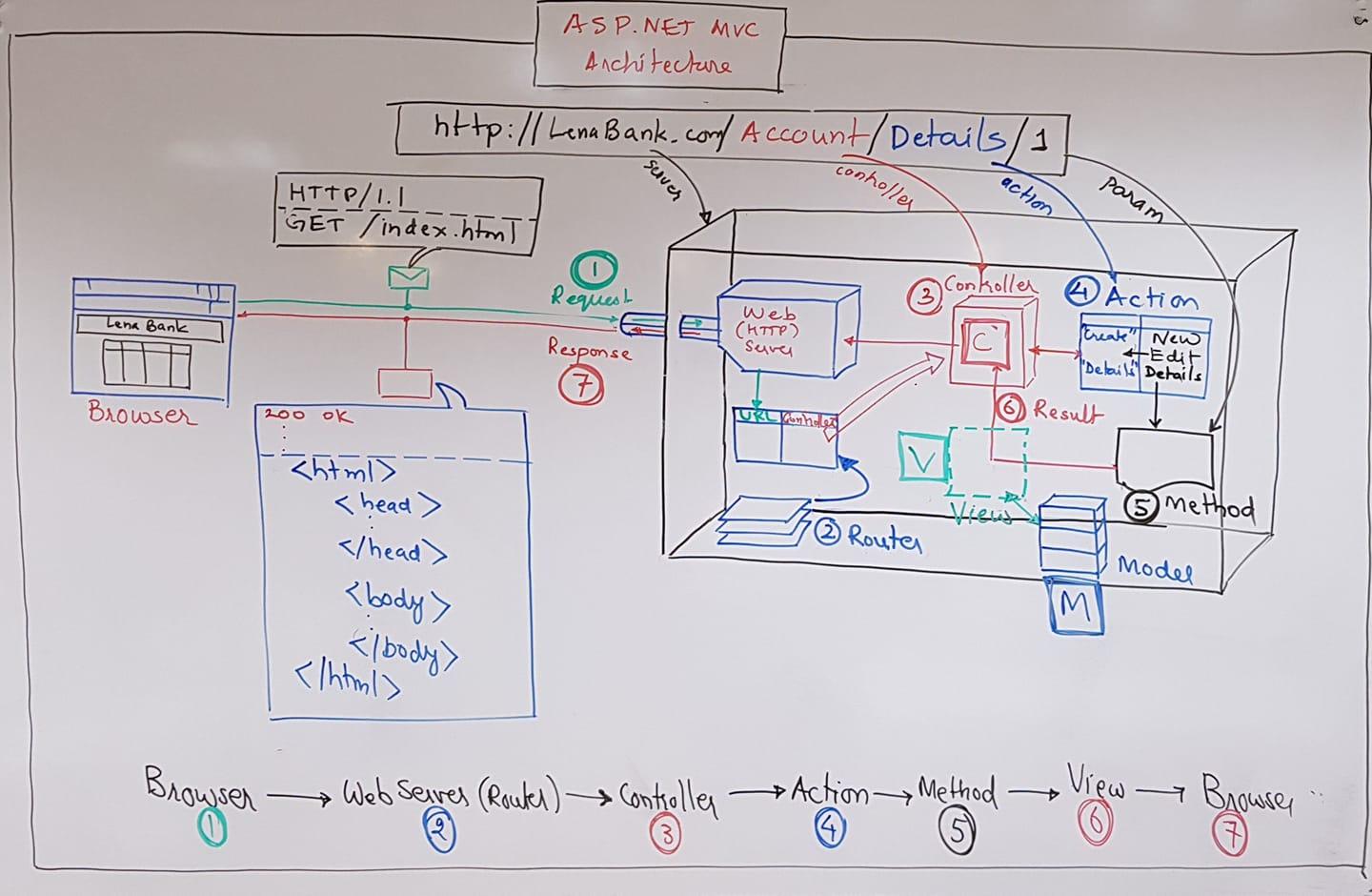
If you try now to invoke the **/timeout** endpoint the right response will be sent to the client and the default Exception handler won’t be invoked:



If you try to invoke again the **/exception** endpoint, the pipeline will still reach first the TimeOutException handler but the latter won’t manage the response since it’s not a TimeOutException and will return **False**in order to tell the pipeline to pursue its exception and reach the default Exception handler.

# MVC Pattern

ASP.NET Core MVC is a rich framework for building web apps and APIs using the Model-View-Controller design pattern.



The Model-View-Controller (MVC) architectural pattern separates an application into three main groups of components: Models, Views, and Controllers. This pattern helps to achieve separation of concerns. Using this pattern, user requests are routed to a Controller which is responsible for working with the Model to perform user actions and/or retrieve results of queries. The Controller chooses the View to display to the user, and provides it with any Model data it requires.

The following diagram shows the three main components and which ones reference the others:



This delineation of responsibilities helps you scale the application in terms of complexity because it's easier to code, debug, and test something (model, view, or controller) that has a single job. It's more difficult to update, test, and debug code that has dependencies spread across two or more of these three areas. For example, user interface logic tends to change more frequently than business logic. If presentation code and business logic are combined in a single object, an object containing business logic must be modified every time the user interface is changed. This often introduces errors and requires the retesting of business logic after every minimal user interface change.

**Note**: Both the view and the controller depend on the model. However, the model depends on neither the view nor the controller. This is one of the key benefits of the separation. This separation allows the model to be built and tested independent of the visual presentation.

## Model Responsibilities

The Model in an MVC application represents the state of the application and any business logic or operations that should be performed by it. Business logic should be encapsulated in the model, along with any implementation logic for persisting the state of the application. Strongly-typed views typically use ViewModel types designed to contain the data to display on that view. The controller creates and populates these ViewModel instances from the model.

## View Responsibilities

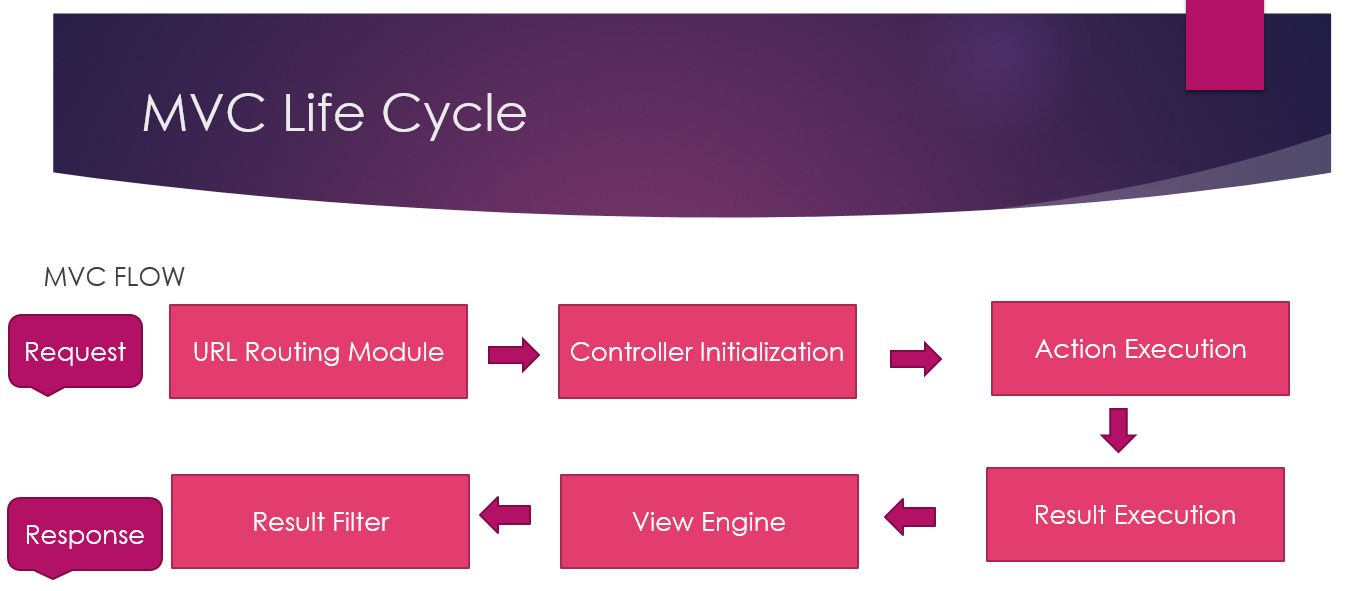
Views are responsible for presenting content through the user interface. They use the Razor view engine to embed .NET code in HTML markup. There should be minimal logic within views, and any logic in them should relate to presenting content. If you find the need to perform a great deal of logic in view files in order to display data from a complex model, consider using a View Component, ViewModel, or view template to simplify the view.

## Controller Responsibilities

Controllers are the components that handle user interaction, work with the model, and ultimately select a view to render. In an MVC application, the view only displays information; the controller handles and responds to user input and interaction. In the MVC pattern, the controller is the initial entry point, and is responsible for selecting which model types to work with and which view to render (hence its name - it controls how the app responds to a given request).

**Note**: Controllers shouldn't be overly complicated by too many responsibilities. To keep controller logic from becoming overly complex, push business logic out of the controller and into the domain model.

**Tip**: If you find that your controller actions frequently perform the same kinds of actions, move these common actions into **filters**.



# ASP.NET - Controllers

**Project: WebApplication1**

Controllers, actions, and action results are a fundamental part of how developers build apps using ASP.NET Core MVC.

A controller is used to define and group a set of actions. An action (or action method) is a method on a controller which handles requests. Controllers logically group similar actions together. This aggregation of actions allows common sets of rules, such as routing, caching, and authorization, to be applied collectively. Requests are mapped to actions through routing.

By convention, controller classes:

* Reside in the project's root-level Controllers folder.
* Inherit from Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Controller.

A controller is an instantiable class, usually public, in which at least one of the following conditions is true:

* The class name is suffixed with Controller.
* The class inherits from a class whose name is suffixed with Controller.
* The [Controller] attribute is applied to the class.

A controller class must not have an associated [NonController] attribute.

Controllers should follow the Explicit Dependencies Principle. There are a couple of approaches to implementing this principle. If multiple controller actions require the same service, consider using constructor injection to request those dependencies. If the service is needed by only a single action method, consider using Action Injection to request the dependency.

Within the **M**odel-**V**iew-**C**ontroller pattern, a controller is responsible for the initial processing of the request and instantiation of the model. Generally, business decisions should be performed within the model.

The controller takes the result of the model's processing (if any) and returns either the proper view and its associated view data or the result of the API call.

The controller is a UI-level abstraction. Its responsibilities are to ensure request data is valid and to choose which view (or result for an API) should be returned. In well-factored apps, it doesn't directly include data access or business logic. Instead, the controller delegates to services handling these responsibilities.

## Defining Actions

Public methods on a controller, except those with the [NonAction] attribute, are actions. Parameters on actions are bound to request data and are validated using model binding. Model validation occurs for everything that's model-bound. The ModelState.IsValid property value indicates whether model binding and validation succeeded.

Action methods should contain logic for mapping a request to a business concern. Business concerns should typically be represented as services that the controller accesses through dependency injection. Actions then map the result of the business action to an application state.

Actions can return anything, but frequently return an instance of IActionResult (or Task<IActionResult> for async methods) that produces a response. The action method is responsible for choosing what kind of response. The action result does the responding.

## Controller Action Return Types

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/action-return-types?view=aspnetcore-6.0>

### Specific type

The simplest action returns a primitive or complex data type (for example, string or a custom object type). Consider the following action, which returns a collection of custom Product objects:

[HttpGet]

public List<Product> Get() =>

\_repository.GetProducts();

Without known conditions to safeguard against during action execution, returning a specific type could suffice. The preceding action accepts no parameters, so parameter constraints validation isn't needed.

### Return IEnumerable<T> or IAsyncEnumerable<T>

ASP.NET Core buffers the result of actions that return IEnumerable<T> before writing them to the response. Consider declaring the action signature's return type as IAsyncEnumerable<T> to guarantee asynchronous iteration. Ultimately, the iteration mode is based on the underlying concrete type being returned. MVC automatically buffers any concrete type that implements IAsyncEnumerable<T>.

Consider the following action, which returns sale-priced product records as IEnumerable<Product>:

[HttpGet("syncsale")]

public IEnumerable<Product> GetOnSaleProducts()

{

var products = \_repository.GetProducts();

foreach (var product in products)

{

if (product.IsOnSale)

{

yield return product;

}

}

}

The IAsyncEnumerable<Product> equivalent of the preceding action is:

[HttpGet("asyncsale")]

public async IAsyncEnumerable<Product> GetOnSaleProductsAsync()

{

var products = \_repository.GetProductsAsync();

await foreach (var product in products)

{

if (product.IsOnSale)

{

yield return product;

}

}

}

### IActionResult type

The [IActionResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.iactionresult) return type is appropriate when multiple ActionResult return types are possible in an action. The ActionResult types represent various HTTP status codes. Any non-abstract class deriving from ActionResult qualifies as a valid return type.

Some common return types in this category are [BadRequestResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.badrequestresult) (400), [NotFoundResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.notfoundresult) (404), and [OkObjectResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.okobjectresult) (200). Alternatively, convenience methods in the [ControllerBase](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase) class can be used to return ActionResult types from an action. For example, return BadRequest(); is a shorthand form of return new BadRequestResult();.

Because there are multiple return types and paths in this type of action, liberal use of the [[ProducesResponseType]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.producesresponsetypeattribute) attribute is necessary. This attribute produces more descriptive response details for web API help pages generated by tools like [Swagger](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/web-api-help-pages-using-swagger?view=aspnetcore-6.0). [ProducesResponseType] indicates the known types and HTTP status codes to be returned by the action.

#### Synchronous action

Consider the following synchronous action in which there are two possible return types:

[HttpGet("{id}")]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status200OK, Type = typeof(Product))]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status404NotFound)]

public IActionResult GetById(int id)

{

if (!\_repository.TryGetProduct(id, out var product))

{

return NotFound();

}

return Ok(product);

}

In the preceding action:

* A 404 status code is returned when the product represented by id doesn't exist in the underlying data store. The [NotFound](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.notfound) convenience method is invoked as shorthand for return new NotFoundResult();.
* A 200 status code is returned with the Product object when the product does exist. The [Ok](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.ok) convenience method is invoked as shorthand for return new OkObjectResult(product);.

#### Asynchronous action

Consider the following asynchronous action in which there are two possible return types:

[HttpPost]

[Consumes(MediaTypeNames.Application.Json)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status201Created)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status400BadRequest)]

public async Task<IActionResult> CreateAsync(Product product)

{

if (product.Description.Contains("XYZ Widget"))

{

return BadRequest();

}

await \_repository.AddProductAsync(product);

return CreatedAtAction(nameof(GetById), new { id = product.Id }, product);

}

In the preceding action:

* A 400 status code is returned when the product description contains "XYZ Widget". The [BadRequest](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.badrequest) convenience method is invoked as shorthand for return new BadRequestResult();.
* A 201 status code is generated by the [CreatedAtAction](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.createdataction) convenience method when a product is created. An alternative to calling CreatedAtAction is return new CreatedAtActionResult(nameof(GetById), "Products", new { id = product.Id }, product);. In this code path, the Product object is provided in the response body. A Location response header containing the newly created product's URL is provided.

For example, the following model indicates that requests must include the Name and Description properties. Failure to provide Name and Description in the request causes model validation to fail.

public class Product

{

public int Id { get; set; }

[Required]

public string Name { get; set; }

[Required]

public string Description { get; set; }

public bool IsOnSale { get; set; }

}

If the [[ApiController]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.apicontrollerattribute) attribute is applied, model validation errors result in a 400 status code. For more information, see [Automatic HTTP 400 responses](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/?view=aspnetcore-6.0#automatic-http-400-responses).

### ActionResult vs IActionResult

The following section compares ActionResult to IActionResult

#### ActionResult<T> type

ASP.NET Core includes the [ActionResult<T>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.actionresult-1) return type for web API controller actions. It enables you to return a type deriving from [ActionResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.actionresult) or return a [specific type](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/action-return-types?view=aspnetcore-6.0#specific-type). ActionResult<T> offers the following benefits over the [IActionResult type](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/action-return-types?view=aspnetcore-6.0#iactionresult-type):

* The [[ProducesResponseType]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.producesresponsetypeattribute) attribute's Type property can be excluded. For example, [ProducesResponseType(200, Type = typeof(Product))] is simplified to [ProducesResponseType(200)]. The action's expected return type is instead inferred from the T in ActionResult<T>.
* [Implicit cast operators](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/keywords/implicit) support the conversion of both T and ActionResult to ActionResult<T>. T converts to [ObjectResult](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.objectresult), which means return new ObjectResult(T); is simplified to return T;.

C# doesn't support implicit cast operators on interfaces. Consequently, conversion of the interface to a concrete type is necessary to use ActionResult<T>. For example, use of IEnumerable in the following example doesn't work:

[HttpGet]

public ActionResult<IEnumerable<Product>> Get() =>

\_repository.GetProducts();

One option to fix the preceding code is to return \_repository.GetProducts().ToList();.

Most actions have a specific return type. Unexpected conditions can occur during action execution, in which case the specific type isn't returned. For example, an action's input parameter may fail model validation. In such a case, it's common to return the appropriate ActionResult type instead of the specific type.

#### Synchronous action

Consider a synchronous action in which there are two possible return types:

[HttpGet("{id}")]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status200OK)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status404NotFound)]

public ActionResult<Product> GetById(int id)

{

if (!\_repository.TryGetProduct(id, out var product))

{

return NotFound();

}

return product;

}

In the preceding action:

* A 404 status code is returned when the product doesn't exist in the database.
* A 200 status code is returned with the corresponding Product object when the product does exist.

#### Asynchronous action

Consider an asynchronous action in which there are two possible return types:

[HttpPost]

[Consumes(MediaTypeNames.Application.Json)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status201Created)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status400BadRequest)]

public async Task<ActionResult<Product>> CreateAsync(Product product)

{

if (product.Description.Contains("XYZ Widget"))

{

return BadRequest();

}

await \_repository.AddProductAsync(product);

return CreatedAtAction(nameof(GetById), new { id = product.Id }, product);

}

In the preceding action:

* A 400 status code ([BadRequest](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.badrequest)) is returned by the ASP.NET Core runtime when:
  + The [[ApiController]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.apicontrollerattribute) attribute has been applied and model validation fails.
  + The product description contains "XYZ Widget".
* A 201 status code is generated by the [CreatedAtAction](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.createdataction) method when a product is created. In this code path, the Product object is provided in the response body. A Location response header containing the newly created product's URL is provided.

## Controller Helper Methods

Controllers usually inherit from Controller, although this isn't required. Deriving from Controller provides access to three categories of helper methods:

### 1. Methods resulting in an empty response body

No Content-Type HTTP response header is included, since the response body lacks content to describe.

There are two result types within this category: Redirect and HTTP Status Code.

* **HTTP Status Code**

This type returns an HTTP status code. A couple of helper methods of this type are BadRequest, NotFound, and Ok. For example, return BadRequest(); produces a 400 status code when executed. When methods such as BadRequest, NotFound, and Ok are overloaded, they no longer qualify as HTTP Status Code responders, since content negotiation is taking place.

* **Redirect**

This type returns a redirect to an action or destination (using Redirect, LocalRedirect, RedirectToAction, or RedirectToRoute). For example, return RedirectToAction("Complete", new {id = 123}); redirects to Complete, passing an anonymous object.

The Redirect result type differs from the HTTP Status Code type primarily in the addition of a Location HTTP response header.

### 2. Methods resulting in a non-empty response body with a predefined content type

Most helper methods in this category include a ContentType property, allowing you to set the Content-Type response header to describe the response body.

There are two result types within this category: View and Formatted Response.

* **View**

This type returns a view which uses a model to render HTML. For example, return View(customer); passes a model to the view for data-binding.

* **Formatted Response**

This type returns JSON or a similar data exchange format to represent an object in a specific manner. For example, return Json(customer); serializes the provided object into JSON format.

Other common methods of this type include File and PhysicalFile. For example, return PhysicalFile(customerFilePath, "text/xml"); returns PhysicalFileResult.

### 3. Methods resulting in a non-empty response body formatted in a content type negotiated with the client

This category is better known as **Content Negotiation**. Content negotiation applies whenever an action returns an ObjectResult type or something other than an IActionResult implementation. An action that returns a non-IActionResult implementation (for example, object) also returns a Formatted Response.

Some helper methods of this type include BadRequest, CreatedAtRoute, and Ok. Examples of these methods include return BadRequest(modelState);, return CreatedAtRoute("routename", values, newobject);, and return Ok(value);, respectively. Note that BadRequest and Ok perform content negotiation only when passed a value; without being passed a value, they instead serve as HTTP Status Code result types. The CreatedAtRoute method, on the other hand, always performs content negotiation since its overloads all require that a value be passed.

## Routing to controller actions in ASP.NET Core

ASP.NET Core controllers use the Routing middleware to match the URLs of incoming requests and map them to actions. Route templates:

* Are defined at startup in Program.cs or in attributes.
* Describe how URL paths are matched to actions.
* Are used to generate URLs for links. The generated links are typically returned in responses.

Actions are either conventionally-routed or attribute-routed. Placing a route on the controller or action makes it attribute-routed.

### Set up conventional route

The ASP.NET Core MVC template generates conventional routing code similar to the following:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

var app = builder.Build();

if (!app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseExceptionHandler("/Home/Error");

app.UseHsts();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.UseRouting();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllerRoute(

name: "default",

pattern: "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}");

app.Run();

MapControllerRoute is used to create a single route. The single route is named default route. Most apps with controllers and views use a route template similar to the default route. REST APIs should use attribute routing.

The route template "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}":

* Matches a URL path like /Products/Details/5
* Extracts the route values { controller = Products, action = Details, id = 5 } by tokenizing the path. The extraction of route values results in a match if the app has a controller named ProductsController and a Details action:

public class ProductsController : Controller

{

public IActionResult Details(int id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

}

* /Products/Details/5 model binds the value of id = 5 to set the id parameter to 5.
* {controller=Home} defines Home as the default controller.
* {action=Index} defines Index as the default action.
* The ? character in {id?} defines id as optional.
* Default and optional route parameters don't need to be present in the URL path for a match
* Matches the URL path /.
* Produces the route values { controller = Home, action = Index }.

The values for controller and action make use of the default values. id doesn't produce a value since there's no corresponding segment in the URL path. / only matches if there exists a HomeController and Index action:

public class HomeController : Controller

{

public IActionResult Index() { ... }

}

Using the preceding controller definition and route template, the HomeController.Index action is run for the following URL paths:

* /Home/Index/17
* /Home/Index
* /Home
* /

The URL path / uses the route template default Home controllers and Index action. The URL path /Home uses the route template default Index action.

### Multiple conventional routes

Multiple conventional routes can be added inside UseEndpoints by adding more calls to MapControllerRoute and MapAreaControllerRoute. Doing so allows defining multiple conventions, or to adding conventional routes that are dedicated to a specific action, such as:

app.MapControllerRoute(name: "blog",

pattern: "blog/{\*article}",

defaults: new { controller = "Blog", action = "Article" });

app.MapControllerRoute(name: "default",

pattern: "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}");

The blog route in the preceding code is a **dedicated conventional route**. It's called a dedicated conventional route because:

* It uses conventional routing.
* It's dedicated to a specific action.

Because controller and action don't appear in the route template "blog/{\*article}" as parameters:

* They can only have the default values { controller = "Blog", action = "Article" }.
* This route always maps to the action BlogController.Article.

/Blog, /Blog/Article, and /Blog/{any-string} are the only URL paths that match the blog route.

The preceding example:

* blog route has a higher priority for matches than the default route because it is added first.
* Is an example of Slug style routing where it's typical to have an article name as part of the URL.

# MVC Routing - .NET Framework, not Core

<https://devindeep.com/how-to-create-asp-net-mvc5-web-project-in-visual-studio-2022/>

<https://www.tutorialspoint.com/asp.net_mvc/asp.net_mvc_routing.htm>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/MVCRoutingDemo/MVCRoutingDemo.sln>

**Project**: MVCRoutingDemo

**Steps:**

* Run the project.
* Navigate to localhost:<port>/customer
* Error!
* Uncomment code in RouteConfig.cs
* Run again.
* Navigate to localhost:<port>/customer
* Works!

# ASP.NET - Model Binding

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/ModelBindingWebApi>

**Project: ModelBindingWebApi**

**Controller**: PersonController

[BindingProperty] – At property level.

[BindingProperties] – At class level.

**Project: WebApplication1**

**Controller**: ModelBindingController

[BindingProperty] – At property level.

[BindingProperties] – At class level.

# ASP.NET – Filters

*Filters* in ASP.NET Core allow code to run before or after specific stages in the request processing pipeline.

Built-in filters handle tasks such as:

* Authorization, preventing access to resources a user isn't authorized for.
* Response caching, short-circuiting the request pipeline to return a cached response.

Custom filters can be created to handle cross-cutting concerns. Examples of cross-cutting concerns include error handling, caching, configuration, authorization, and logging. Filters avoid duplicating code. For example, an error handling exception filter could consolidate error handling.

## How filters work

Filters run within the ASP.NET Core action invocation pipeline, sometimes referred to as the filter pipeline. The filter pipeline runs after ASP.NET Core selects the action to execute:



## Filter types

Each filter type is executed at a different stage in the filter pipeline:

* Authorization filters:
  + Run first.
  + Determine whether the user is authorized for the request.
  + Short-circuit the pipeline if the request is not authorized.
* Resource filters:
  + Run after authorization.
  + OnResourceExecuting runs code before the rest of the filter pipeline. For example, OnResourceExecuting runs code before model binding.
  + OnResourceExecuted runs code after the rest of the pipeline has completed.
* Action filters:
  + Run immediately before and after an action method is called.
  + Can change the arguments passed into an action.
  + Can change the result returned from the action.
  + Are **not** supported in Razor Pages.
* Exception filters apply global policies to unhandled exceptions that occur before the response body has been written to.
* Result filters:
  + Run immediately before and after the execution of action results.
  + Run only when the action method executes successfully.
  + Are useful for logic that must surround view or formatter execution.

The following diagram shows how filter types interact in the filter pipeline:



## Action Filter Attribute

**Project**: dotNETCore\FilterDemos

**Code**: FilterController.cs , SampleActionFilter.cs and SampleActionFilterAsync.cs

***Note****: Show both, Action scope and Controller scope.*

**SampleActionFilter.cs**

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Filters;

namespace FilterDemos

{

public class SampleActionFilter : ActionFilterAttribute, IActionFilter

{

public override void OnActionExecuted(ActionExecutedContext context)

{

Console.WriteLine("SampleActionFilter.OnActionExecuted...");

Console.WriteLine(string.Format("Action Method {0} executing at {1}",

context.ActionDescriptor.DisplayName,

DateTime.Now.ToShortDateString())

);

}

public override void OnActionExecuting(ActionExecutingContext context)

{

Console.WriteLine("SampleActionFilter.OnActionExecuting...");

Console.WriteLine(string.Format("Action Method {0} executing at {1}",

context.ActionDescriptor.DisplayName,

DateTime.Now.ToShortDateString())

);

}

}

}

**SampleActionFilterAsync.cs**

**FilterController.cs**

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using FilterDemos;

using FilterDemos.Models;

namespace FilterDemos.Controllers

{

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class FilterController : ControllerBase

{

[SampleActionFilter]

public async Task<ActionResult<string>> Get()

{

Console.WriteLine("FilterController.Get()...");

return "FilterController.Get()...";

}

[SampleActionFilterAsync]

[Route("Get2")]

public async Task<ActionResult<string>> Get2()

{

Console.WriteLine("FilterController.Get2()...");

return "FilterController.Get2()...";

}

}

}

### The Scope of Action Filters

Like the other types of filters, the action filter can be added to different scope levels: Global, Action, Controller.

If we want to use our filter globally, we need to register it inside the AddControllers() method in Program.cs

builder.Services.AddControllers(config =>

{

config.Filters.Add(new SampleActionFilter());

}

);

After this, the filter will apply to all Actions of all Controllers, without having to apply the attribute to them explicitly. There can be other action filters that can be applied to specific Controllers and Actions.

### Order of Execution

Order of execution of filters - Action Filters

### Changing the Order

**Project**: FilterDemos

**Code**: FilterController.cs

[SampleActionFilter(Order = 2)]

[SampleActionFilterAsync(Order = 1)]

public async Task<ActionResult<string>> Get()

{

Console.WriteLine("FilterController.Get()...");

return "FilterController.Get()...";

}

### Adding Validations

**Project**: FilterDemos

**Code**: FilterController, Person.cs and ValidationFilterAttribute.cs

**IEntity.cs**

namespace FilterDemos.Models

{

public interface IEntity

{

int Id { get; set; }

}

}

**Person.cs**

namespace FilterDemos.Models

{

public class Person : IEntity

{

public int Id { get ; set ; }

public string Name { get; set; } = string.Empty;

}

public class InvalidPerson

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; } = string.Empty;

}

}

**ValidationFilterAttribute.cs**

using FilterDemos.Models;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Filters;

namespace FilterDemos

{

public class ValidationFilterAttribute : ActionFilterAttribute, IActionFilter

{

public override void OnActionExecuted(ActionExecutedContext context)

{

Console.WriteLine("ValidationFilterAttribute.OnActionExecuted...");

Console.WriteLine(string.Format("Action Method {0} executing at {1}",

context.ActionDescriptor.DisplayName,

DateTime.Now.ToShortDateString())

);

}

public override void OnActionExecuting(ActionExecutingContext context)

{

Console.WriteLine("ValidationFilterAttribute.OnActionExecuting...");

Console.WriteLine(string.Format("Action Method {0} executing at {1}",

context.ActionDescriptor.DisplayName,

DateTime.Now.ToShortDateString())

);

var param = context.ActionArguments.SingleOrDefault(p => p.Value is IEntity);

if (param.Value == null)

{

context.Result = new BadRequestObjectResult("Object is null");

return;

}

}

}

}

**FilterController.cs**

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using FilterDemos;

using FilterDemos.Models;

namespace FilterDemos.Controllers

{

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class FilterController : ControllerBase

{

:

:

[HttpPost]

[ValidationFilter]

public async Task<ActionResult<string>> PostPerson([FromBody] InvalidPerson person)

{

return person.Name;

}

}

}

## Service Filter Attribute

Service filter implementation types are registered in Program.cs. A ServiceFilterAttribute retrieves an instance of the filter from DI.

The following code shows the LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService class, which uses DI:

**LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService.cs**

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Filters;

namespace FilterDemos

{

public class LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService : IResultFilter

{

private readonly ILogger \_logger;

public LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService(

ILogger<LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService> logger) =>

\_logger = logger;

public void OnResultExecuting(ResultExecutingContext context)

{

\_logger.LogInformation(

$"- {nameof(LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService)}.{nameof(OnResultExecuting)}");

context.HttpContext.Response.Headers.Add(

nameof(OnResultExecuting), nameof(LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService));

}

public void OnResultExecuted(ResultExecutedContext context)

{

\_logger.LogInformation(

$"- {nameof(LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService)}.{nameof(OnResultExecuted)}");

}

}

}

In the following code, LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService is added to the DI container in **Program.cs**:

builder.Services.AddScoped<LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService>();

In the following code, the ServiceFilter attribute retrieves an instance of the LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService filter from DI in **FilterController.cs**:

[ServiceFilter(typeof(LoggingResponseHeaderFilterService))]

[HttpGet]

[Route("WithServiceFilter")]

public IActionResult WithServiceFilter() =>

Content($"- {nameof(FilterController)}.{nameof(WithServiceFilter)}");

# Attribute routing for REST APIs

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/ReadValuesFromQueryStringsDemo/ReadValuesFromQueryStringsDemo.sln>

* [MyDisplayRouteInfo](https://github.com/Rick-Anderson/RouteInfo/blob/master/Microsoft.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo/ControllerContextExtensions.cs)() is provided by the [Rick.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Rick.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo) NuGet package and displays route information.
* Requires the Nuget package [Rick.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Rick.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo):

Install-Package Rick.Docs.Samples.RouteInfo

REST APIs should use attribute routing to model the app's functionality as a set of resources where operations are represented by HTTP verbs.

Attribute routing uses a set of attributes to map actions directly to route templates. The following code is typical for a REST API and is used in the next sample:

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

builder.Services.AddControllers();

var app = builder.Build();

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllers();

app.Run();

In the preceding code, MapControllers is called inside UseEndpoints to map attribute routed controllers.

In the following example:

* HomeController matches a set of URLs similar to what the default conventional route {controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?} matches.

public class HomeController : Controller

{

[Route("")]

[Route("Home")]

[Route("Home/Index")]

[Route("Home/Index/{id?}")]

public IActionResult Index(int? id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

[Route("Home/About")]

[Route("Home/About/{id?}")]

public IActionResult About(int? id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

}

The HomeController.Index action is run for any of the URL paths /, /Home, /Home/Index, or /Home/Index/3.

This example highlights a key programming difference between attribute routing and conventional routing. Attribute routing requires more input to specify a route. The conventional default route handles routes more succinctly. However, attribute routing allows and requires precise control of which route templates apply to each action.

With attribute routing, the controller and action names play no part in which action is matched, unless token replacement is used. The following example matches the same URLs as the previous example (***comment out the [Route] attributes in HomeController first***):

public class MyDemoController : Controller

{

[Route("")]

[Route("Home")]

[Route("Home/Index")]

[Route("Home/Index/{id?}")]

public IActionResult MyIndex(int? id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

[Route("Home/About")]

[Route("Home/About/{id?}")]

public IActionResult MyAbout(int? id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

}

The following code uses token replacement for action and controller (***comment out the [Route] attributes in MyDemoController first***):

public class HomeController : Controller

{

[Route("")]

[Route("Home")]

[Route("[controller]/[action]")]

public IActionResult Index()

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

}

[Route("[controller]/[action]")]

public IActionResult About()

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();

}

}

~~The following code applies [Route("[controller]/[action]")] to the controller:~~

~~[Route("[controller]/[action]")]~~

~~public class HomeController : Controller~~

~~{~~

~~[Route("~/")]~~

~~[Route("/Home")]~~

~~[Route("~/Home/Index")]~~

~~public IActionResult Index()~~

~~{~~

~~return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();~~

~~}~~

~~public IActionResult About()~~

~~{~~

~~return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo();~~

~~}~~

~~}~~

~~In the preceding code, the Index method templates must prepend / or ~/ to the route templates. Route templates applied to an action that begin with / or ~/ don't get combined with route templates applied to the controller.~~

## How to Read Values From Query Strings In ASP.NET Core

<https://code-maze.com/aspnetcore-read-values-from-query-strings/>

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/ReadValuesFromQueryStringsDemo/ReadValuesFromQueryStringsDemo.sln>

**Code File**: QueryStringsController.cs

### Understanding the Fundamentals of Query Strings

First, let’s understand the basics. The URI specification, [**RFC-3986**](https://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc3986#section-3.4), refers to the URL part after the question mark symbol (?). The query string consists of key-value pairs separated by ampersands (&).

If we check this URL: "https://example.com/search?q=aspnetcore&category=programming", the query string q has the value of aspnetcore, and the category query string has the value of programming. Developers use query strings to transfer data from one page to another or provide additional information to a server.

### How to Read Scalar Values?

Let’s discuss how to read scalar values of various data types from a [**query string**](https://code-maze.com/aspnetcore-required-query-string-parameters/):

**[**HttpGet**(**template:"/v1",Name = "GetQueryStringsAsScalarValues"**)]**

public IActionResult GetFullNameFromScalarValues**([**FromQuery**]** string firstName, **[**FromQuery**]** string lastName**)**

**{**

return Ok**(**new **{**FullName = $"{firstName} {lastName}"**})**;

**}**

This GET action method accepts two query string parameters, namely firstName and lastName. Each parameter utilizes the [FromQuery] attribute, indicating that it retrieves its value from the corresponding query string parameter in the URL.

We can inspect the URL as well:

curl -X 'GET' 'http://localhost:5188/v1?firstName=John&lastName=Doe' -H 'accept: \*/\*'

### How to Read Array Values?

Let’s continue expanding our knowledge by learning to retrieve multiple values from the query string. This can be useful, for example, when we need to fetch product information by their IDs for specific situations. We can pass the various IDs and their values in the query string to do this.

First, let’s check the sample URL endpoint:

curl -X 'GET' 'http://localhost:5188/v2?ids=1&ids=2&ids=3' -H 'accept: \*/\*'

By utilizing the ASPNET Core model binding through the [FromQuery] attribute, the controller action method can effectively interpret multiple query strings as an integer array. To gain further clarity, let’s analyze a code snippet:

**[**HttpGet**(**template:"/v2",Name = "GetMultipleQueryStringsAsArray"**)]**

public IActionResult GetProductsByIds**([**FromQuery**]** int**[]** ids**)**

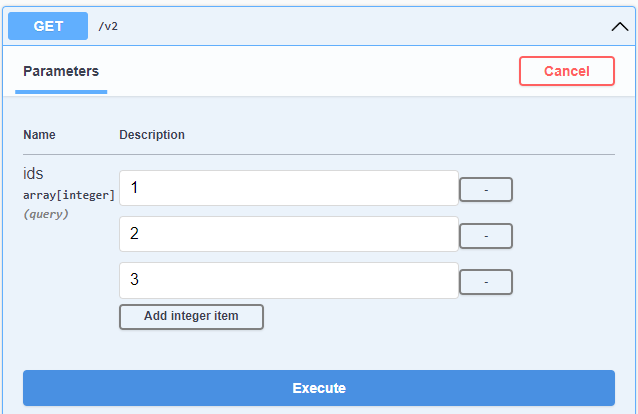
**{**

return Ok**(**new **{**ProductIds=ids**})**;

**}**

Here, we have a GET action method that expects a query string parameter named ids in the URL. The values of this parameter are bound to the ids array, and the action method returns the Ok response with a JSON object containing the product IDs.

The [FromQuery] attribute is applied to the ids parameter, indicating that we bind values from the corresponding query string parameter in the URL. The Swagger UI understands this and generates a dynamic user interface:

[](https://code-maze.com/wp-content/uploads/2023/06/Dynamic-Swagger-UI.png)

### How to Read Object Values?

After discussing scalar and array values, let’s extract multiple values from query strings and serialize them into an object. To better understand this, let’s take a look at an example code:

**[**HttpGet**(**"/v3", Name = "GetMultipleQueryStringsAsObject"**)]**

public IActionResult GetFullNameFromObject**([**FromQuery**]** Person queryStringParameters**)**

**{**

return Ok**(**new **{**FullName =$"{queryStringParameters.FirstName} {queryStringParameters.LastName}"**})**;

**}**

public record Person**(**string FirstName, string LastName**)**;

In this GET action method, we expect query string parameters for FirstName and LastName. We bind these parameters to the Person object and the action method returns the Ok response. The [FromQuery] attribute is applied to the queryStringParameters parameter, indicating that its values should be bound from the corresponding query string parameters in the URL.

Let’s check again the endpoint URL for our action:

curl -X 'GET' 'http://localhost:5188/v3?FirstName=John&LastName=Doe' -H 'accept: \*/\*'

### The Route “template” Parameter

// Two actions with the same name, but different Route "templates".

[HttpGet(template: "ById")]

public IActionResult GetBy(int id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

[HttpGet(template: "ByExternalId")]

public IActionResult GetBy(Guid id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id.ToString());

}

### Full Source Code

**Code File**: QueryStringsController.cs

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using Microsoft.Docs.Samples;

namespace ReadValuesFromQueryStringsDemo.Controllers

{

//[Route("api/[controller]")]

//[ApiController]

public class QueryStringsController : Controller

{

// Read Scalar Values.

//[HttpGet] // api/QueryStrings. Requires [ApiController] and [Route] at the top.

//[HttpGet("/v1")] // /v1.

//[HttpGet(template: "v1")] // api/QueryStrings/v1.

[HttpGet(template: "/v1", Name = "GetQueryStringsAsScalarValues")] // /v1.

public IActionResult GetFullNameFromScalarValues(

[FromQuery] string firstName,

[FromQuery] string lastName)

{

//return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(firstName, lastName);

return Ok(new { FullName = $"{firstName} {lastName}" });

}

//Read Array Values.

[HttpGet(template: "/v2", Name = "GetMultipleQueryStringsAsArray")] // /v2.

public IActionResult GetProductsByIds([FromQuery] int[] ids)

{

return Ok(new { ProductIds = ids });

}

// Read Object Values.

[HttpGet("/v3", Name = "GetMultipleQueryStringsAsObject")]

public IActionResult GetFullNameFromObject([FromQuery] Person queryStringParameters)

{

return Ok(new { FullName = $"{queryStringParameters.FirstName} {queryStringParameters.LastName}" });

}

public record Person(string FirstName, string LastName);

[HttpGet("api/try/test")] // api/try/test?id=123

//[HttpGet("test/{id?}")] // api/QueryStrings/test/123' // Requires[ApiController] and[Route] at the top.

public IActionResult Test(int? id)

{

//IActionResult result = Ok(new { id = id, name = "John" });

var result = Ok(new { customerid = id });

return result;

}

// Two actions with the same name, but different "templates".

[HttpGet(template: "ById")]

public IActionResult GetBy(int id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id);

}

[HttpGet(template: "ByExternalId")]

public IActionResult GetBy(Guid id)

{

return ControllerContext.MyDisplayRouteInfo(id.ToString());

}

}

}

# ASP.NET Core - Web API with EF Core

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/first-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0&tabs=visual-studio-code>

In this tutorial, you learn how to:

* Create a web API project.
* Add a model class and a database context (*in-memory database*).
* Scaffold a controller with CRUD methods.
* Configure routing, URL paths, and return values.
* Call the web API with Postman.

At the end, you have a web API that can manage "to-do" items stored in a database.

This tutorial creates the following API:

| **API** | **Description** | **Request body** | **Response body** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| GET /api/todoitems | Get all to-do items | None | Array of to-do items |
| GET /api/todoitems/{id} | Get an item by ID | None | To-do item |
| POST /api/todoitems | Add a new item | To-do item | To-do item |
| PUT /api/todoitems/{id} | Update an existing item | To-do item | None |
| DELETE /api/todoitems/{id} | Delete an item | None | None |

The following diagram shows the design of the app.



**Repo**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/TodoApi>

**Source**: \dotNET\dotNETCore\TodoApi

## Create a Web Project

* Open the [integrated terminal](https://code.visualstudio.com/docs/editor/integrated-terminal).
* Change directories (cd) to the folder that will contain the project folder.
* Run the following commands:

dotnet new webapi -o TodoApi

cd TodoApi

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.InMemory

code -r ../TodoApi

These commands:

* + Create a new web API project and open it in Visual Studio Code.
  + Add a NuGet package that is needed for the next section.
* When a dialog box asks if you want to add required assets to the project, select **Yes**.

## Test the project

The project template creates a WeatherForecast API with support for [Swagger](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/web-api-help-pages-using-swagger?view=aspnetcore-6.0).

* Trust the HTTPS development certificate by running the following command:

dotnet dev-certs https --trust

The preceding command doesn't work on Linux. See your Linux distribution's documentation for trusting a certificate.

The preceding command displays the following dialog, provided the certificate was not previously trusted:



* Select **Yes** if you agree to trust the development certificate.

See [Trust the ASP.NET Core HTTPS development certificate](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust-the-aspnet-core-https-development-certificate-on-windows-and-macos) for more information.

For information on trusting the Firefox browser, see [Firefox SEC\_ERROR\_INADEQUATE\_KEY\_USAGE certificate error](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/enforcing-ssl?view=aspnetcore-6.0#trust-ff).

Run the app:

* Press Ctrl+F5.
* At the **Select environment** prompt, choose **.NET Core**.
* Select **Add Configuration** > **.NET: Launch a local .NET Core Console App**.
* In the configuration JSON:
  + Replace <target-framework> with net6.0.
  + Replace <project-name.dll> with TodoApi.dll.
* Press Ctrl+F5.
* In the **Could not find the task 'build'** dialog, select **Configure Task**.
* Select **Create tasks.json file from template**.
* Select the **.NET Core** task template.
* Press Ctrl+F5.

In a browser, navigate to https://localhost:<port>/swagger, where <port> is the randomly chosen port number displayed in the output.

The Swagger page /swagger/index.html is displayed. Select **GET** > **Try it out** > **Execute**. The page displays:

* The [Curl](https://curl.haxx.se/) command to test the WeatherForecast API.
* The URL to test the WeatherForecast API.
* The response code, body, and headers.
* A drop down list box with media types and the example value and schema.

If the Swagger page doesn't appear, see [this GitHub issue](https://github.com/dotnet/AspNetCore.Docs/issues/21647).

Swagger is used to generate useful documentation and help pages for web APIs. This tutorial focuses on creating a web API. For more information on Swagger, see [ASP.NET Core web API documentation with Swagger / OpenAPI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/web-api-help-pages-using-swagger?view=aspnetcore-6.0).

Copy and paste the **Request URL** in the browser: https://localhost:<port>/weatherforecast

JSON similar to the following example is returned:

[

{

"date": "2019-07-16T19:04:05.7257911-06:00",

"temperatureC": 52,

"temperatureF": 125,

"summary": "Mild"

},

{

"date": "2019-07-17T19:04:05.7258461-06:00",

"temperatureC": 36,

"temperatureF": 96,

"summary": "Warm"

},

{

"date": "2019-07-18T19:04:05.7258467-06:00",

"temperatureC": 39,

"temperatureF": 102,

"summary": "Cool"

},

{

"date": "2019-07-19T19:04:05.7258471-06:00",

"temperatureC": 10,

"temperatureF": 49,

"summary": "Bracing"

},

{

"date": "2019-07-20T19:04:05.7258474-06:00",

"temperatureC": -1,

"temperatureF": 31,

"summary": "Chilly"

}

]

## Update the launchUrl

In Properties\launchSettings.json, update launchUrl from "swagger" to "api/todoitems":

"launchUrl": "api/todoitems",

Because Swagger will be removed, the preceding markup changes the URL that is launched to the GET method of the controller added in the following sections.

## Add a model class

A model is a set of classes that represent the data that the app manages. The model for this app is a single TodoItem class.

* Add a folder named Models.
* Add a TodoItem.cs file to the Models folder with the following code:

namespace TodoApi.Models

{

public class TodoItem

{

public long Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

}

The Id property functions as the unique key in a relational database.

Model classes can go anywhere in the project, but the Models folder is used by convention.

## Add a database context

The database context is the main class that coordinates Entity Framework functionality for a data model. This class is created by deriving from the [Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.DbContext](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.entityframeworkcore.dbcontext) class.

* Add a TodoContext.cs file to the Models folder.
* Enter the following code:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

using System.Diagnostics.CodeAnalysis;

namespace TodoApi.Models

{

public class TodoContext : DbContext

{

public TodoContext(DbContextOptions<TodoContext> options)

: base(options)

{

}

public DbSet<TodoItem> TodoItems { get; set; } = null!;

}

}

## Register the database context

In ASP.NET Core, services such as the DB context must be registered with the [dependency injection (DI)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/dependency-injection?view=aspnetcore-6.0) container. The container provides the service to controllers.

Update Program.cs with the following code:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

using TodoApi.Models;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddControllers();

builder.Services.AddDbContext<TodoContext>(opt =>

opt.UseInMemoryDatabase("TodoList"));

//builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen(c =>

//{

// c.SwaggerDoc("v1", new() { Title = "TodoApi", Version = "v1" });

//});

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (builder.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseDeveloperExceptionPage();

//app.UseSwagger();

//app.UseSwaggerUI(c => c.SwaggerEndpoint("/swagger/v1/swagger.json", "TodoApi v1"));

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllers();

app.Run();

The preceding code:

* Removes the Swagger calls.
* Removes unused using directives.
* Adds the database context to the DI container.
* Specifies that the database context will use an in-memory database.

## Scaffold a controller

Make sure that all of your changes so far are saved.

Run the following commands from the project folder, that is, the TodoApi folder:

dotnet add package Microsoft.VisualStudio.Web.CodeGeneration.Design

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer

dotnet tool install -g dotnet-aspnet-codegenerator

dotnet aspnet-codegenerator controller -name TodoItemsController -async -api -m TodoItem -dc TodoContext -outDir Controllers

The preceding commands:

* Add NuGet packages required for scaffolding.
* Install the scaffolding engine (dotnet-aspnet-codegenerator).
* Scaffold the TodoItemsController.

The generated code:

* Marks the class with the [[ApiController]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.apicontrollerattribute) attribute. This attribute indicates that the controller responds to web API requests. For information about specific behaviors that the attribute enables, see [Create web APIs with ASP.NET Core](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/?view=aspnetcore-6.0).
* Uses DI to inject the database context (TodoContext) into the controller. The database context is used in each of the [CRUD](https://wikipedia.org/wiki/Create,_read,_update_and_delete) methods in the controller.

The ASP.NET Core templates for:

* Controllers with views include [action] in the route template.
* API controllers don't include [action] in the route template.

When the [action] token isn't in the route template, the [action](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/controllers/routing?view=aspnetcore-6.0#action) name is excluded from the route. That is, the action's associated method name isn't used in the matching route.

## Update the PostTodoItem create method

Update the return statement in the PostTodoItem to use the [nameof](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/operators/nameof) operator:

[HttpPost]

public async Task<ActionResult<TodoItem>> PostTodoItem(TodoItem todoItem)

{

\_context.TodoItems.Add(todoItem);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

//return CreatedAtAction("GetTodoItem", new { id = todoItem.Id }, todoItem);

return CreatedAtAction(nameof(GetTodoItem), new { id = todoItem.Id }, todoItem);

}

The preceding code is an HTTP POST method, as indicated by the [[HttpPost]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.httppostattribute) attribute. The method gets the value of the to-do item from the body of the HTTP request.

The [CreatedAtAction](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.createdataction) method:

* Returns an [HTTP 201 status code](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Status/201) if successful. HTTP 201 is the standard response for an HTTP POST method that creates a new resource on the server.
* Adds a [Location](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Headers/Location) header to the response. The Location header specifies the [URI](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Glossary/URI) of the newly created to-do item. For more information, see [10.2.2 201 Created](https://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec10.html).
* References the GetTodoItem action to create the Location header's URI. The C# nameof keyword is used to avoid hard-coding the action name in the CreatedAtAction call.

### Install http-repl

This tutorial uses [http-repl](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/http-repl/?view=aspnetcore-6.0) to test the web API.

* Run the following command at a command prompt:

dotnet tool install -g Microsoft.dotnet-httprepl

* If you don't have the .NET 6.0 SDK or runtime installed, install the [.NET 6.0 runtime](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download/dotnet/6.0/runtime).

### Test PostTodoItem

* Press Ctrl+F5 to run the app.
* Open a new terminal window, and run the following commands. If your app uses a different port number, replace 5001 in the httprepl command with your port number.

httprepl https://localhost:5001/api/todoitems

post -h Content-Type=application/json -c "{"name":"walk dog", "isComplete":true}"

Here's an example of the output from the command:

HTTP/1.1 201 Created

Content-Type: application/json; charset=utf-8

Date: Tue, 07 Sep 2021 20:39:47 GMT

Location: https://localhost:5001/api/TodoItems/1

Server: Kestrel

Transfer-Encoding: chunked

{

"id": 1,

"name": "walk dog",

"isComplete": true

}

### Test the location header URI

To test the location header, copy and paste it into an httprepl get command.

The following example assumes that you're still in an httprepl session. If you ended the previous httprepl session, replace connect with httprepl in the following commands:

connect https://localhost:5001/api/todoitems/1

get

Here's an example of the output from the command:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Content-Type: application/json; charset=utf-8

Date: Tue, 07 Sep 2021 20:48:10 GMT

Server: Kestrel

Transfer-Encoding: chunked

{

"id": 1,

"name": "walk dog",

"isComplete": true

}

## Examine the GET methods

Two GET endpoints are implemented:

* GET /api/todoitems
* GET /api/todoitems/{id}

You just saw an example of the /api/todoitems/{id} route. Test the /api/todoitems route:

connect https://localhost:5001/api/todoitems

get

Here's an example of the output from the command:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Content-Type: application/json; charset=utf-8

Date: Tue, 07 Sep 2021 20:59:21 GMT

Server: Kestrel

Transfer-Encoding: chunked

[

{

"id": 1,

"name": "walk dog",

"isComplete": true

}

]

This time, the JSON returned is an array of one item.

This app uses an in-memory database. If the app is stopped and started, the preceding GET request will not return any data. If no data is returned, [POST](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/first-web-api?view=aspnetcore-6.0&tabs=visual-studio-code#post) data to the app.

## Routing and URL paths

The [[HttpGet]](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.httpgetattribute) attribute denotes a method that responds to an HTTP GET request. The URL path for each method is constructed as follows:

* Start with the template string in the controller's Route attribute:

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class TodoItemsController : ControllerBase

* Replace [controller] with the name of the controller, which by convention is the controller class name minus the "Controller" suffix. For this sample, the controller class name is **TodoItems**Controller, so the controller name is "TodoItems". ASP.NET Core [routing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/controllers/routing?view=aspnetcore-6.0) is case insensitive.
* If the [HttpGet] attribute has a route template (for example, [HttpGet("products")]), append that to the path. This sample doesn't use a template. For more information, see [Attribute routing with Http[Verb] attributes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/controllers/routing?view=aspnetcore-6.0#verb).

In the following GetTodoItem method, "{id}" is a placeholder variable for the unique identifier of the to-do item. When GetTodoItem is invoked, the value of "{id}" in the URL is provided to the method in its id parameter.

[HttpGet("{id}")]

public async Task<ActionResult<TodoItem>> GetTodoItem(long id)

{

var todoItem = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (todoItem == null)

{

return NotFound();

}

return todoItem;

}

## Return values

The return type of the GetTodoItems and GetTodoItem methods is [ActionResult<T> type](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/action-return-types?view=aspnetcore-6.0#actionresultt-type). ASP.NET Core automatically serializes the object to [JSON](https://www.json.org/) and writes the JSON into the body of the response message. The response code for this return type is [200 OK](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Status/200), assuming there are no unhandled exceptions. Unhandled exceptions are translated into 5xx errors.

ActionResult return types can represent a wide range of HTTP status codes. For example, GetTodoItem can return two different status values:

* If no item matches the requested ID, the method returns a [404 status](https://developer.mozilla.org/docs/Web/HTTP/Status/404) [NotFound](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.controllerbase.notfound) error code.
* Otherwise, the method returns 200 with a JSON response body. Returning item results in an HTTP 200 response.

## The PutTodoItem method

Examine the PutTodoItem method:

[HttpPut("{id}")]

public async Task<IActionResult> PutTodoItem(long id, TodoItem todoItem)

{

if (id != todoItem.Id)

{

return BadRequest();

}

\_context.Entry(todoItem).State = EntityState.Modified;

try

{

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

}

catch (DbUpdateConcurrencyException)

{

if (!TodoItemExists(id))

{

return NotFound();

}

else

{

throw;

}

}

return NoContent();

}

PutTodoItem is similar to PostTodoItem, except it uses HTTP PUT. The response is [204 (No Content)](https://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec9.html). According to the HTTP specification, a PUT request requires the client to send the entire updated entity, not just the changes. To support partial updates, use [HTTP PATCH](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.httppatchattribute).

If you get an error calling PutTodoItem in the following section, call GET to ensure there's an item in the database.

### Test the PutTodoItem method

This sample uses an in-memory database that must be initialized each time the app is started. There must be an item in the database before you make a PUT call. Call GET to ensure there's an item in the database before making a PUT call.

Update the to-do item that has Id = 1 and set its name to "feed fish":

connect https://localhost:5001/api/todoitems/1

put -h Content-Type=application/json -c "{"id":1,"name":"feed fish","isComplete":true}"

Here's an example of the output from the command:

HTTP/1.1 204 No Content

Date: Tue, 07 Sep 2021 21:20:47 GMT

Server: Kestrel

## The DeleteTodoItem method

Examine the DeleteTodoItem method:

[HttpDelete("{id}")]

public async Task<IActionResult> DeleteTodoItem(long id)

{

var todoItem = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (todoItem == null)

{

return NotFound();

}

\_context.TodoItems.Remove(todoItem);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return NoContent();

}

### Test the DeleteTodoItem method

Delete the to-do item that has Id = 1:

connect https://localhost:5001/api/todoitems/1

delete

Here's an example of the output from the command:

HTTP/1.1 204 No Content

Date: Tue, 07 Sep 2021 21:43:00 GMT

Server: Kestrel

## Prevent over-posting

Currently the sample app exposes the entire TodoItem object. Production apps typically limit the data that's input and returned using a subset of the model. There are multiple reasons behind this, and security is a major one. The subset of a model is usually referred to as a Data Transfer Object (DTO), input model, or view model. **DTO** is used in this tutorial.

A DTO may be used to:

* Prevent over-posting.
* Hide properties that clients are not supposed to view.
* Omit some properties in order to reduce payload size.
* Flatten object graphs that contain nested objects. Flattened object graphs can be more convenient for clients.

To demonstrate the DTO approach, update the TodoItem class to include a secret field:

namespace TodoApi.Models

{

public class TodoItem

{

public long Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

public string? Secret { get; set; }

}

}

The secret field needs to be hidden from this app, but an administrative app could choose to expose it.

Verify you can post and get the secret field.

Create a DTO model:

namespace TodoApi.Models

{

public class TodoItemDTO

{

public long Id { get; set; }

public string? Name { get; set; }

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

}

Update the TodoItemsController to use TodoItemDTO:

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

using TodoApi.Models;

namespace TodoApi.Controllers

{

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class TodoItemsController : ControllerBase

{

private readonly TodoContext \_context;

public TodoItemsController(TodoContext context)

{

\_context = context;

}

// GET: api/TodoItems

[HttpGet]

public async Task<ActionResult<IEnumerable<TodoItemDTO>>> GetTodoItems()

{

return await \_context.TodoItems

.Select(x => ItemToDTO(x))

.ToListAsync();

}

// GET: api/TodoItems/5

[HttpGet("{id}")]

public async Task<ActionResult<TodoItemDTO>> GetTodoItem(long id)

{

var todoItem = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (todoItem == null)

{

return NotFound();

}

return ItemToDTO(todoItem);

}

// PUT: api/TodoItems/5

// To protect from overposting attacks, see https://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=2123754

[HttpPut("{id}")]

public async Task<IActionResult> UpdateTodoItem(long id, TodoItemDTO todoItemDTO)

{

if (id != todoItemDTO.Id)

{

return BadRequest();

}

var todoItem = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (todoItem == null)

{

return NotFound();

}

todoItem.Name = todoItemDTO.Name;

todoItem.IsComplete = todoItemDTO.IsComplete;

try

{

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

}

catch (DbUpdateConcurrencyException) when (!TodoItemExists(id))

{

return NotFound();

}

return NoContent();

}

// POST: api/TodoItems

// To protect from overposting attacks, see https://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=2123754

[HttpPost]

public async Task<ActionResult<TodoItemDTO>> CreateTodoItem(TodoItemDTO todoItemDTO)

{

var todoItem = new TodoItem

{

IsComplete = todoItemDTO.IsComplete,

Name = todoItemDTO.Name

};

\_context.TodoItems.Add(todoItem);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return CreatedAtAction(

nameof(GetTodoItem),

new { id = todoItem.Id },

ItemToDTO(todoItem));

}

// DELETE: api/TodoItems/5

[HttpDelete("{id}")]

public async Task<IActionResult> DeleteTodoItem(long id)

{

var todoItem = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (todoItem == null)

{

return NotFound();

}

\_context.TodoItems.Remove(todoItem);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return NoContent();

}

private bool TodoItemExists(long id)

{

return \_context.TodoItems.Any(e => e.Id == id);

}

private static TodoItemDTO ItemToDTO(TodoItem todoItem) =>

new TodoItemDTO

{

Id = todoItem.Id,

Name = todoItem.Name,

IsComplete = todoItem.IsComplete

};

}

}

Verify you can't post or get the secret field.

# ASP.NET Core – Web API, EF Core, Code First, SQL Server

<https://code-maze.com/net-core-web-api-ef-core-code-first/>

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample>

## Configure and Use Migrations

**Using Visual Studio 2022.**

* Create a new Web API project.
* In the Properties🡪 launchSettings.json file:
  + Change the launchUrl to "weatherforecast"
  + Change launchBrowser to false
* Create a Models folder.
* In the Models folder, create Employee.cs:

using **System;**

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations.Schema;

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models

**{**

public class Employee

**{**

**[**Key**]**

**[**DatabaseGenerated**(**DatabaseGeneratedOption.Identity**)]**

public long EmployeeId **{** get; set; **}**

public string FirstName **{** get; set; **}**

public string LastName **{** get; set; **}**

public DateTime DateOfBirth **{** get; set; **}**

public string PhoneNumber **{** get; set; **}**

public string Email **{** get; set; **}**

**}**

**}**

The code above defines the classEmployee with some properties. Additionally, we have decorated the EmployeeId property with Key and DatabaseGenerated attributes. We did this because we will be converting this class into a database table and the columnEmployeeId will serve as our primary key with the auto-incremented identity.

* Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore
* In the Models folder, create EmployeeContext.cs:

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models

**{**

public class EmployeeContext : DbContext

**{**

public EmployeeContext**(**DbContextOptions options**)**

: base**(**options**)**

**{**

**}**

public DbSet**<**Employee**>** Employees **{** get; set; **}**

**}**

**}**

* In the appsettings.json file, add a ConnectionString for SQL Server:

{

"Logging": {

"LogLevel": {

"Default": "Information",

"Microsoft.AspNetCore": "Warning"

}

},

"ConnectionString": {

"EmployeeDB": "server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;initial catalog=EmployeeDB;Trusted\_Connection=True;"

},

"AllowedHosts": "\*"

}

**For MySQL**:

"ConnectionString": **{**

"EmployeeDB": "server=MY\_SERVER;database=EmployeeDB;User ID=MY\_USER;password=MY\_PASSWORD;"

**}**,

* Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer
* In Program.cs:
* using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models;
* using Microsoft.AspNetCore.HttpOverrides;
* using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.HttpOverrides;

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

// DB Context.

var connValue = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("ConnectionString:EmployeeDB");

builder.Services.AddDbContext<EmployeeContext>(opts =>

opts.UseSqlServer(connValue)

);

builder.Services.AddControllers();

* Add code first migrations:
  + Install-Package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Tools
  + Add-Migration EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.EmployeeContext
* Show the “Migrations” folder.
* Update-Database
* Show DB in SQL Server.

## Data Annotations

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/modeling/entity-properties?tabs=data-annotations%2Cwithout-nrt>

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/code-first/dataannotation-in-code-first.aspx>

<https://www.learnentityframeworkcore.com/configuration/data-annotation-attributes>

Each entity type in your model has a set of properties, which EF Core will read and write from the database. If you're using a relational database, entity properties map to table columns.

### Table name

By convention, each entity type will be set up to map to a database table with the same name as the DbSet property that exposes the entity. If no DbSet exists for the given entity, the class name is used.

You can manually configure the table name:

[Table("blogs")]

public class Blog

{

public int BlogId { get; set; }

public string Url { get; set; }

}

### Included and excluded properties

By convention, all public properties with a getter and a setter will be included in the model.

Specific properties can be excluded as follows:

public class Blog

{

public int BlogId { get; set; }

public string Url { get; set; }

[NotMapped]

public DateTime LoadedFromDatabase { get; set; }

}

### Column names

By convention, when using a relational database, entity properties are mapped to table columns having the same name as the property.

If you prefer to configure your columns with different names, you can do so as following code snippet:

public class Blog

{

[Column("blog\_id")]

public int BlogId { get; set; }

public string Url { get; set; }

}

### Column data types

When using a relational database, the database provider selects a data type based on the .NET type of the property. It also takes into account other metadata, such as the configured [maximum length](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/modeling/entity-properties?tabs=data-annotations%2Cwithout-nrt#maximum-length), whether the property is part of a primary key, etc.

For example, SQL Server maps DateTime properties to datetime2(7) columns, and string properties to nvarchar(max) columns (or to nvarchar(450) for properties that are used as a key).

You can also configure your columns to specify an exact data type for a column. For example, the following code configures Url as a non-unicode string with maximum length of 200 and Rating as decimal with precision of 5 and scale of 2:

public class Blog

{

public int BlogId { get; set; }

[Column(TypeName = "varchar(200)")]

public string Url { get; set; }

[Column(TypeName = "decimal(5, 2)")]

public decimal Rating { get; set; }

}

### Maximum length

Configuring a maximum length provides a hint to the database provider about the appropriate column data type to choose for a given property. Maximum length only applies to array data types, such as string and byte[].

**Note**: Entity Framework does not do any validation of maximum length before passing data to the provider. It is up to the provider or data store to validate if appropriate. For example, when targeting SQL Server, exceeding the maximum length will result in an exception as the data type of the underlying column will not allow excess data to be stored.

In the following example, configuring a maximum length of 500 will cause a column of type nvarchar(500) to be created on SQL Server:

public class Blog

{

public int BlogId { get; set; }

[MaxLength(500)]

public string Url { get; set; }

}

### Required and optional properties

A property is considered optional if it is valid for it to contain null. If null is not a valid value to be assigned to a property then it is considered to be a required property. When mapping to a relational database schema, required properties are created as non-nullable columns, and optional properties are created as nullable columns.

**Conventions**

By convention, a property whose .NET type can contain null will be configured as optional, whereas properties whose .NET type cannot contain null will be configured as required. For example, all properties with .NET value types (int, decimal, bool, etc.) are configured as required, and all properties with nullable .NET value types (int?, decimal?, bool?, etc.) are configured as optional.

The following example shows an entity type with required and optional properties:

public class CustomerWithoutNullableReferenceTypes

{

public int Id { get; set; }

[Required] // Data annotations needed to configure as required

public string FirstName { get; set; }

[Required]

public string LastName { get; set; } // Data annotations needed to configure as required

public string MiddleName { get; set; } // Optional by convention

}

### Column order

**Note**: This feature was introduced in EF Core 6.0.

By default when creating a table with [Migrations](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/managing-schemas/migrations/), EF Core orders primary key columns first, followed by properties of the entity type and owned types, and finally properties from base types. You can, however, specify a different column order:

public class EntityBase

{

[Column(Order = 0)]

public int Id { get; set; }

}

public class PersonBase : EntityBase

{

[Column(Order = 1)]

public string FirstName { get; set; }

[Column(Order = 2)]

public string LastName { get; set; }

}

public class Employee : PersonBase

{

public string Department { get; set; }

public decimal AnnualSalary { get; set; }

}

### Configuring a primary key

By convention, a property named Id or <type name>Id will be configured as the primary key of an entity.

internal class Car

{

public string Id { get; set; }

public string Make { get; set; }

public string Model { get; set; }

}

internal class Truck

{

public string TruckId { get; set; }

public string Make { get; set; }

public string Model { get; set; }

}

You can configure a single property to be the primary key of an entity as follows:

internal class Car

{

[Key]

public string LicensePlate { get; set; }

public string Make { get; set; }

public string Model { get; set; }

}

### Validation attributes

Validation attributes let you specify validation rules for model properties. The following example shows a model class that is annotated with validation attributes.

public class Movie

{

public int Id { get; set; }

[Required]

[StringLength(100)]

public string Title { get; set; } = null!;

[DataType(DataType.Date)]

[Display(Name = "Release Date")]

public DateTime ReleaseDate { get; set; }

[Required]

[StringLength(1000)]

public string Description { get; set; } = null!;

[Range(0, 999.99)]

public decimal Price { get; set; }

public Genre Genre { get; set; }

public bool Preorder { get; set; }

}

### Built-in attributes

Here are some of the built-in validation attributes:

* [[ValidateNever]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.aspnetcore.mvc.modelbinding.validation.validateneverattribute): Indicates that a property or parameter should be excluded from validation.
* [[CreditCard]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.creditcardattribute): Validates that the property has a credit card format. Requires [jQuery Validation Additional Methods](https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/jquery-validate/1.19.1/additional-methods.js).
* [[Compare]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.compareattribute): Validates that two properties in a model match.

public string EmailAddress {get; set;}

[Compare(nameof(EmailAddress), ErrorMessage = "Emails mismatch")]

public string VerifiedEmailAddress { get; set; }

* [[EmailAddress]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.emailaddressattribute): Validates that the property has an email format.
* [[Phone]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.phoneattribute): Validates that the property has a telephone number format.
* [[Range]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.rangeattribute): Validates that the property value falls within a specified range.
* [[RegularExpression]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.regularexpressionattribute): Validates that the property value matches a specified regular expression.
* [[Required]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.requiredattribute): Validates that the field isn't null. See [[Required] attribute](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/mvc/models/validation?view=aspnetcore-6.0#non-nullable-reference-types-and-the-required-attribute) for details about this attribute's behavior.
* [[StringLength]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.stringlengthattribute): Validates that a string property value doesn't exceed a specified length limit.
* [[Url]](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.urlattribute): Validates that the property has a URL format.

### Error messages

Validation attributes let you specify the error message to be displayed for invalid input. For example:

[StringLength(8, ErrorMessage = "Name length can't be more than 8.")]

Internally, the attributes call [String.Format](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.string.format) with a placeholder for the field name and sometimes additional placeholders. For example:

[StringLength(8, ErrorMessage = "{0} length must be between {2} and {1}.", MinimumLength = 6)]

When applied to a Name property, the error message created by the preceding code would be "Name length must be between 6 and 8.".

### Custom attributes

For scenarios that the built-in validation attributes don't handle, you can create custom validation attributes. Create a class that inherits from [ValidationAttribute](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.validationattribute), and override the [IsValid](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.validationattribute.isvalid) method.

The IsValid method accepts an object named value, which is the input to be validated. An overload also accepts a [ValidationContext](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations.validationcontext) object, which provides additional information, such as the model instance created by model binding.

The following example validates that the release date for a movie in the Classic genre isn't later than a specified year. The [ClassicMovie] attribute:

* Is only run on the server.
* For Classic movies, validates the release date:

public class ClassicMovieAttribute : ValidationAttribute

{

public ClassicMovieAttribute(int year)

=> Year = year;

public int Year { get; }

public string GetErrorMessage() =>

$"Classic movies must have a release year no later than {Year}.";

protected override ValidationResult? IsValid(

object? value, ValidationContext validationContext)

{

var movie = (Movie)validationContext.ObjectInstance;

var releaseYear = ((DateTime)value!).Year;

if (movie.Genre == Genre.Classic && releaseYear > Year)

{

return new ValidationResult(GetErrorMessage());

}

return ValidationResult.Success;

}

}

Use it as follows:

public class Movie

{

public int Id { get; set; }

[Required]

[StringLength(100)]

public string Title { get; set; } = null!;

[ClassicMovie(1960)]

[DataType(DataType.Date)]

[Display(Name = "Release Date")]

public DateTime ReleaseDate { get; set; }

[Required]

[StringLength(1000)]

public string Description { get; set; } = null!;

[Range(0, 999.99)]

public decimal Price { get; set; }

public Genre Genre { get; set; }

public bool Preorder { get; set; }

}

## Detailed Examples of DataAnnotation (Without EntityFramework)

<https://codemag.com/Article/2301031/The-Rich-Set-of-Data-Annotation-and-Validation-Attributes-in-.NET?utm_source=DeveloperWeek1.11.2023&utm_medium=newsletter&utm_campaign=sm-articles>

**Source**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/dotNETCore/DataAnnotations>

Data annotations are not only for use in ASP.NET web applications. Any type of .NET application can use data annotations for validating data. It only takes about 10 lines of code to programmatically validate data annotations attached to entity classes. There are many built-in data annotations supplied by Microsoft that can validate your data quickly and it's easy to create your own data annotation attributes to apply to your entity classes. If you have some very specific validation needs, you may implement the IValidatableObject interface for your entity classes. If you're developing multilingual applications, you can even move your error messages into resources and specify the name of those resources on each of your attributes.

In this article, you're going to explore most of the data annotations supplied by Microsoft. You're going to develop a few custom validation attributes to check dates and numeric values. You'll also learn to create a custom validation attribute to compare the values between two different properties. You're also going to see how to implement the IValidatableObject interface to tackle more complicated validation scenarios. Finally, you'll set up a couple of resource files and see how easy it is to localize your error messages.

### Traditional Validation Methods

In the distant past, to validate the data a user inputs into a form would be done directly in the code-behind the form. The appropriate messages were displayed on the input form to tell the user what they did wrong. As object-oriented programming (OOP) became the norm, developers moved that input data into properties of a class and wrote a Validate() method to perform the validation. A collection of messages is returned from the Validate() method and those messages were bound to the input form to be displayed. Let's first look at the traditional way of validating data before we move onto using data annotations.

### Create a Console Application

To follow along with this article, open Visual Studio and create a console application with the name **Samples**. You may use either .NET 6 or .NET 7 for the samples in this article. Most of the code will work just as well in earlier versions of .NET too. Once you have the application created, right mouse-click on the project and add a new folder named EntityClasses. Right mouse-click on the EntityClasses folder and add a class named Product, as shown in **Listing 1**, to this project.

**Listing 1: Create a Product entity class to test out validation**

#nullable disable

namespace Samples;

public partial class Product

{

public int ProductID { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

public string Color { get; set; }

public decimal? StandardCost { get; set; }

public decimal? ListPrice { get; set; }

public DateTime SellStartDate { get; set; }

public DateTime? SellEndDate { get; set; }

public DateTime? DiscontinuedDate { get; set; }

public override string ToString()

{

return $"{Name} ({ProductID})";

}

}

There are several properties in the Product class that should be validated, such as making sure the Name property is filled in and that it has 50 characters or fewer in it. You might also verify that the value in the ListPrice property is greater than the value in the StandardCost property. You should also ensure that the value in the SellStartDate property is less than the value in the SellEndDate property.

To report error messages to the user, you need a class to hold the property name in error, and the error message to display to the user. Right mouse-click on the project and add a new folder named ValidationClasses. Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and add a new class named ValidationMessage. This class is shown in the code snippet below.

#nullable disable

namespace Samples;

public class ValidationMessage

{

public string PropertyName { get; set; }

public string ErrorMessage { get; set; }

public override string ToString() {

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(PropertyName)) {

return $"{ErrorMessage}";

}

else {

return $"{ErrorMessage} ({PropertyName})";

}

}

}

### Create a Product View Model Class

If you've been doing MVC or WPF programming for a while, you quickly learned that using a Model-View-View-Model (MVVM) design pattern makes your coding easier and more reusable. Let's create a view model class to encapsulate the Product class. Right mouse-click on the project and add a new folder named ViewModelClasses. Right mouse-click on the ViewModelClasses folder and add a new class named ProductViewModel as shown in the code below. Create a public property named Entity that's of the type Product. In the constructor, create a new instance of Product class into the Entity property. Create a Validate() method in which you add code to test for valid Product data. This method returns a list of ValidationMessage objects.

namespace Samples;

public class ProductViewModel {

public ProductViewModel() {

Entity = new();

}

public Product Entity { get; set; }

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

List<ValidationMessage> msgs = new();

// Insert Validation Code Here

return msgs;

}

}

Within the Validate() method, where the comment says to Insert Validation Code Here, write the code shown in **Listing 2** to test each of the Product properties for valid data. If the data in a property isn't valid, create a new instance of the ValidationMessage class and put the property name into PropertyName property, and the message you want to convey to the user in the Message property.

**Listing 2: Write code to test each property in the Entity object**

if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(Entity.Name)) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = "Product Name Must Be Filled In.",

PropertyName = "Name" });

}

else {

if (Entity.Name.Length > 50) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = "Product Name Must Be 50 Characters or Less.",

PropertyName = "Name" });

}

}

if (Entity.StandardCost == null || Entity.StandardCost < 0.01M) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = "Cost Must Be Greater Than Zero.",

PropertyName = "StandardCost" });

}

if (Entity.ListPrice == null || Entity.ListPrice < 0.01M) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = "Price Must Be Greater Than Zero.",

PropertyName = "ListPrice" });

}

if (Entity.ListPrice < Entity.StandardCost) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = $"Price must be greater than the Cost.",

PropertyName = "ListPrice"

});

}

if (Entity.SellStartDate == DateTime.MinValue) {

msgs.Add(new ValidationMessage() {

ErrorMessage = $"Selling Start Date Must Be

Greater Than '{DateTime.Now.AddDays(-5).ToShortDateString()}'.",

PropertyName = "SellStartDate" });

}

Open the Program.cs file and add the code shown in **Listing 3**. In this code, you create an instance of the ProductViewModel class and fill in a few properties of the Entity property. Call the Validate() method on the ProductViewModel object and it returns a collection of ValidationMessage objects. Iterate over this collection and display each error message on the console.

**Listing 3: Test the Product validation in the Program file**

using Samples;

// Create view model and

// initialize the Entity object

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

Name = "",

ListPrice = 5,

StandardCost = 15

}

};

// Validate the Data

var msgs = vm.Validate();

// Display Failed Validation Messages

foreach (ValidationMessage item in msgs) {

Console.WriteLine(item);

}

// Display Total Count

Console.WriteLine();

Console.WriteLine($"Total Validations Failed: {msgs.Count}");

// Pause for Results

Console.ReadKey();

### Try It Out

Run the program to see the error messages appear on the Console window, as shown in **Figure 1**.

  
**Figure 1:** Validation messages can be displayed however you wish, depending on the type of .NET application you're writing.

### Microsoft Data Annotations

Instead of writing validation code in your view model class as you did in **Listing 1**, you can add attributes above those properties in your Product class that you wish to validate. There are many standard data annotation attributes supplied by Microsoft such as [Required], [MinLength], [MaxLength], [StringLength], and [Range]. From the name of the attribute, you can infer what each of these attributes validates on a property. For a complete list of data annotation attributes, visit Microsoft's website at <https://bit.ly/3TJICid>.

Each of the data annotation attributes inherits from an abstract class named ValidationAttribute. This validation attribute class has properties that each of the inherited attribute classes can use. These properties are shown in **Table 1**.

#### The ErrorMessage Property

The **ErrorMessage** property is what you use to report back the error message to the user. You can use a hard-coded string or you can have placeholders in the string to automatically retrieve data from the property the attribute is decorating. The placeholders are what the String.FormatString() method uses where you add numbers enclosed within curly braces as shown in the following [Required] attribute.

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In")]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

The {0} placeholder is replaced with the name of the property the attribute is decorating. In the above example, the resulting string is “ProductNumber Must Be Filled In”. Next, look at the following code snippet that uses the [Range] attribute.

[Range(0.01, 9999, ErrorMessage = "{0} must be between {1} and {2}")]

public decimal? StandardCost { get; set; }

The {1} placeholder is replaced with the value in the first parameter to the Range attribute and the {2} placeholder is replaced with the value in the second parameter. If you have more parameters, then you keep on incrementing the placeholder accordingly.

#### The [Required] Attribute

Let's explore the [Required] attribute in a little more detail and see how to check any properties with this attribute applied. Open the Product.cs file and add the [Required] attribute just above the Name, ProductNumber, StandardCost, ListPrice, and SellStartDate properties as shown in the following code.

[Required]

public string Name { get; set; }

[Required]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

[Required]

public decimal? StandardCost { get; set; }

[Required]

public decimal? ListPrice { get; set; }

[Required]

public DateTime SellStartDate { get; set; }

If you're using ASP.NET and MVC, the data annotation attributes attached to the properties in a class are automatically validated. If you are using WPF, Windows Forms, or a console application, you need to manually validate those data annotations. There are three classes built into .NET you use to perform this validation. The ValidationContext, the Validator, and the ValidationResult classes are used to generate the error messages from the data annotations. In the example above, you want these classes to return a message that says the user needs to fill in data into those properties decorated with the [Required] attribute. Open the ProductViewModel.cs file, locate the Validate() method and replace all of the code with the code shown in **Listing 4.**

**Listing 4: Use the ValidationContext and Validator objects to validate properties decorated with data annotations**

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

List<ValidationMessage> msgs = new();

// Create instance of ValidationContext object

ValidationContext context = new(Entity, serviceProvider: null,

items: null);

List<ValidationResult> results = new();

// Call TryValidateObject() method

if (!Validator.TryValidateObject(Entity, context, results, true)) {

// Get validation results

foreach (ValidationResult item in results) {

string propName = string.Empty;

if (item.MemberNames.Any()) {

propName = ((string[])item.MemberNames)[0];

}

// Build new ValidationMessage object

ValidationMessage msg = new() {

ErrorMessage = item.ErrorMessage,

PropertyName = propName

};

// Add validation object to list

msgs.Add(msg);

}

}

return msgs;

}

This code creates an instance of a ValidationContext object passing in the Entity property. Create an instance of list of ValidationResult objects so the TryValidateObject() method can fill in this list with all the ValidationResult objects.

The TryValidateObject() method is responsible for checking all data annotations attached to each property in the entity object. If any validations fail, the appropriate error message, along with the property name, is returned in the results variable. Loop through the results collection and add a new ValidationMessage object to the ValidationMessages property. The ErrorMessage property is filled in with the ErrorMessage property from the current ValidationResult item. The property name is retrieved from the first element of the MemberNames property (see **Figure 2**) on the ValidationResult item. It's possible for a data annotation to have two properties to which it applies, but for most simple properties, you only need to grab the first property name.

  
**Figure 2:** The ValidationResult class contains an error message and a list of property names to which the error message applies.

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the view model so the Entity object is initialized with an empty string for both the Name and ProductNumber properties as shown in the following code.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "",

ProductNumber = ""

}

};

Run the application and you should see the output shown in **Figure 3**.

  
**Figure 3:** The [Required] attribute creates a string with the property name in the error message.

#### Add ErrorMessage Property to the [Required] Attribute

If you want to change the default error message generated in the ValidationResult object, fill in the ErrorMessage property on the [Required] attribute. Open the Product.cs file and modify the [Required] attributes above the Name and ProductNumber properties to look like the following.

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

public string Name { get; set; }

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Run the application and you should see the Name and ProductNumber property error messages are different from the StandardCost and ListPrice property error messages as shown in **Figure 4**.

  
**Figure 4:** Use the ErrorMessage property to change the message to display to the user.

#### The [DisplayName] Attribute

Displaying the property name to the user is generally not a good idea. Sometimes the property name won't mean much to the user. It's better to use a more readable string, such as the same label displayed on an input form. You can accomplish this by adding the [DisplayName] attribute to any property in your class. Open the Product.cs file and add the [DisplayName] attribute above the properties shown in **Listing 5**. If the [DisplayName] attribute is attached to a property, the {0} placeholder in the ErrorMessage property uses the Name property from the [DisplayName] attribute instead of the actual property name.

**Listing 5: Apply the [DisplayName] attribute to your properties to receive better error messages**

[Display(Name = "Product Name")]

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

public string Name { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Product Number")]

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Product Color")]

public string Color { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Cost")]

[Required]

public decimal? StandardCost { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Price")]

[Required]

public decimal? ListPrice { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Start Selling Date")]

[Required]

public DateTime SellStartDate { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "End Selling Date")]

public DateTime? SellEndDate { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Date Discontinued")]

public DateTime? DiscontinuedDate { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

After applying the [DisplayName] attribute, run the application and you should now see better error messages, as shown in **Figure 5**. The property name is displayed in the parentheses, so you can clearly see the difference.

  
**Figure 5:** Using the [DisplayName] attribute provides more user-friendly error messages.

#### Create a Generic Helper Class

Most likely, you're not going to only have a single view model class in your application. Thus, you don't want to write a duplicate of the Validate() method in each of your view models. You can either inherit from a base view model class, or you can create a static class with a method to perform the validation for you. Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and create a new class named ValidationHelper. Into this new file, replace the code with the code shown in **Listing 6**.

**Listing 6: Create a generic helper class to perform all the validation for your application**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public static class ValidationHelper {

public static List<ValidationMessage>

Validate<T>(T entity) {

List<ValidationMessage> ret = new();

ValidationContext context = new(entity,

serviceProvider: null, items: null);

List<ValidationResult> results = new();

if (!Validator.TryValidateObject(entity, context, results, true)) {

foreach (ValidationResult item in results) {

string propName = string.Empty;

if (item.MemberNames.Any()) {

propName = ((string[])item.MemberNames)[0];

}

ValidationMessage msg = new() {

ErrorMessage = item.ErrorMessage,

PropertyName = propName

};

ret.Add(msg);

}

}

return ret;

}

}

The code in **Listing 6** is similar to the code in the Validate() method you wrote in the Product class, but the Validate() method in this code is generic and can accept any type. A new List<ValidationMessage> collection is built each time the Validate() method is called, and it's this list that's returned from this method.

#### Try It Out

Open the ProductViewModel.cs file and replace the code in the Validate() method with the following code.

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

// Use Helper Class

return ValidationHelper.Validate(Entity);

}

Run the application and you should see the same results as previously, but the validation is now happening in the Validate() method in the ValidationHelper class. Each view model class you create from now on just needs this very simple Validate() method. Of course, you can still create a view model base class and move this method into the base class, then have all your view model classes inherit from this base class.

#### Attributes for Length of Data

There are a few different attributes that you can use to check for the length of string data within your properties. Let's look at the most common data annotations that you're most likely to use.

##### The [MaxLength] Attribute

The [MaxLength] attribute allows you to specify what the total length the string data within a property should be. If the data within that string property exceeds the specified length, an appropriate error message is returned from the validation. Open the Product.cs file and decorate the ProductNumber and Color properties with the following code.

[Display(Name = "Product Number")]

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

[MaxLength(25)]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Product Color")]

[MaxLength(15)]

public string Color { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the properties on the Entity object to look like the following.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "Product 1",

ProductNumber = "A very long product name to illustrate

the [MaxLength] property.",

Color = "A very long color name."

}

};

Run the application and you should see the appropriate error messages displayed for both the ProductNumber and Color properties.

##### The [MinLength] Attribute

Sometimes you need to ensure a minimum amount of string data is added to a property. For example, the product color shouldn't have any string data that is less than three characters, as there are no one- or two-letter colors. Add a [MinLength] attribute to the Color property in the Product class, as shown in the following code.

[Display(Name = "Product Color")]

[MinLength(3, ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Have {1} Characters or More.")]

[MaxLength(15)]

public string Color { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the Entity object to look like the following code:

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "Product 1",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Re"

}

};

Run the application and you should see the appropriate error message displayed for the Color property.

#### The [String Length] Attribute

If you don't want to apply both the [MinLength] and [MaxLength] attributes to a single property, you may use the [StringLength] attribute as it supports both maximum and minimum length properties. When adding the [StringLength] attribute, the first parameter is the maximum length, and then you can specify the MimimumLength as either the second parameter or as a named parameter, as I have done in the following code. Add the [StringLength] attribute above the Name property in the Product class.

[Display(Name = "Product Name")]

[Required(ErrorMessage = "{0} Must Be Filled In.")]

[StringLength(50, MinimumLength = 4,

ErrorMessage = "{0} Can Only Have Between {2} and {1} Characters.")]

public string Name { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the Entity object to look like the following code.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A"

}

};

Run the application and you should see the appropriate error message displayed for the Name property. If you want to ensure the maximum length of the Name property also works, try setting the Name property to the following and then run the program again.

Name = "A very long product name used

to illustrate [StringLength] attribute."

#### The Range Validator

If you have decimal or int properties in your class, you can use the [Range] attribute to check for a minimum and a maximum value that can be entered into those numbers. You may also use a DateTime with the [Range] attribute, but you need to add an additional parameter.

##### Use the [Range] Attribute with Numeric Values

In the Product class, you have the StandardCost and the ListPrice properties that you should apply a [Range] attribute to. You don't want a cost or a price to be less than zero dollars. Open the Product.cs file and locate the StandardCost and ListPrice properties and add the [Range] attribute as shown below. Be sure to include the ErrorMessage property so you can format the cost as currency.

[Display(Name = "Cost")]

[Required]

[Range(0.01, 9999,

ErrorMessage = "{0} must be between {1:c} and {2:c}")]

public decimal? StandardCost { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "Price")]

[Required]

[Range(0.01, 9999,

ErrorMessage = "{0} must be between {1:c} and {2:c}")]

public decimal? ListPrice { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the Entity object to look like the following code.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Black",

StandardCost = 0,

ListPrice = 10000,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Now,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Now.AddDays(+365)

}

};

Run the application and you should see error messages that look like **Figure 6**.

  
**Figure 6:** Modify the ErrorMessage property to display decimal values as currency if appropriate.

##### Use the [Range] Attributes with DateTime

When using the [Range] attribute with numbers, you specify the minimum and maximum values as the first and the second parameters. When you wish to check a property for a date range, you must pass to the first parameter a typeof(DateTime) so the [Range] attribute class knows to check for a DateTime range. Open the Product.cs file and add a [Range] attribute to the SellStartDate and the SellEndDate properties.

[Display(Name = "Start Selling Date")]

[Required]

[Range(typeof(DateTime), "1/1/2000", "12/31/2030",

ErrorMessage = "{0} must be between {1:d} and {2:d}")]

public DateTime SellStartDate { get; set; }

[Display(Name = "End Selling Date")]

[Range(typeof(DateTime), "1/1/2000", "12/31/2030",

ErrorMessage = "{0} must be between {1:d} and {2:d}")]

public DateTime? SellEndDate { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the Entity object to look like the following code.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Black",

StandardCost = 1,

ListPrice = 10,

SellStartDate = Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/1999"),

SellEndDate = Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/2031")

}

};

Run the application and you should see error messages that look like **Figure 7**.

  
**Figure 7:** The [Range] attribute can be used with DateTime values as well as numeric values

#### Regular Expression and Compare Validators

In some classes, you may need the user to adhere to a specific format for the data. For example, phone numbers, social security numbers, etc. The [RegularExpression] attribute can enforce the formatting of data. You need to understand regular expressions to use this attribute, but luckily, there are many resources on the internet to help you with regular expressions. I like [www.regexlib.com](http://www.regexlib.com/) to look up all sorts of regular expressions. To try out a regular expression, right mouse-click on the EntityClasses folder and add a new class named User that looks like the following code.

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public partial class User {

public int UserId { get; set; }

public string LoginId { get; set; }

public string Password { get; set; }

public string ConfirmPassword { get; set; }

public string EmailAddress { get; set; }

public string Phone { get; set; }

}

Right mouse-click on the ViewModelClasses folder and add a new class named UserViewModel. This class is exactly like the ProductViewModel class in that encapsulates the User class as a property named Entity and has a Validate() method. Enter the code shown below into the UserViewModel.cs file.

namespace Samples;

public class UserViewModel {

public UserViewModel() {

Entity = new();

}

public User Entity { get; set; }

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

// Use Helper Class

return ValidationHelper.Validate(Entity);

}

}

##### The [RegularExpression] Attribute

Let's add a [RegularExpression] attribute to both the EmailAddress and the Phone properties in the User class. When adding the regular expression, don't break them across two lines. I had to break them due to formatting limitations of this printed magazine. I'd highly recommend you include the ErrorMessage property, otherwise, it spits out the regular expression to the user.

[RegularExpression("^\\w+@[a-zA-Z\_]+?\\.[a - zA - Z]{2, 3}$",

ErrorMessage = "The email address entered is not valid.")]

public string EmailAddress { get; set; }

[RegularExpression("((\\(\\d{3}\\) ?)|(\\d{3}-))?\\d{3}-\\d { 4}",

ErrorMessage = "The phone number entered is not valid.

Please use the format (nnn) nnn-nnnn")]

public string Phone { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and create a new instance of the UserViewModel class and initialize the Entity property with the values shown in the code below so you can test the regular expressions.

UserViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

UserId = 1,

LoginId = "JoeSmith",

Password = "Joe![Smith@2022](mailto://Smith@2022)",

EmailAddress = "test!test.com",

Phone = "xxx-xxx-xxxx"

}

};

Run the application and you should see the error messages, as shown in **Figure 8**.

  
**Figure 8:** It's best to use your own error messages for the regular expression attributes.

##### The [Compare] Attribute

A common business rule to enforce is when a user is setting up a new account and they need to put in a new password. It's best to ask them to input that password two times to ensure that they don't misspell the password. In the User class, there's both Password and ConfirmPassword properties. The [Compare] attribute lets you check to ensure that the data contained in both properties is an exact match. Apply the [Compare] attribute to one of the properties and pass in the name of the other property to compare the data to as shown in the following code. It's a best practice to use the nameof() operator so you can rename the property using the Visual Studio rename menu and it will get refactored correctly.

[Compare(nameof(ConfirmPassword))]

public string Password { get; set; }

##### Try It Out

Open the **Program.cs** file and modify the initialization of the **Entity** object to look like the following code. Notice the two different values within the **Password** and the **ConfirmPassword** properties.

UserViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

UserId = 1,

LoginId = "JoeSmith",

Password = "[JoeSmith@2022](mailto://JoeSmith@2022)",

ConfirmPassword = "JoeSmith",

EmailAddress = "[JoeSmith@test.com](mailto://JoeSmith@test.com)",

Phone = "(999) 999-9999",

}

};

Run the application and the error message you get tells you the names of the properties that don't match, as shown in **Figure 9**.

  
**Figure 9:** The [Compare] attribute compares the data between two properties.

### Standard Business Rule Validations

Microsoft realizes that working with regular expressions isn't always the easiest thing to do. They therefore added many attributes to help you enforce the most common business rules such as email, phone, URL, and credit cards. Open the User.cs file and remove the two [RegularExpression] attributes you added to the EmailAddress and Phone properties in the last section.

#### The [EmailAddress] Attribute

Apply the [EmailAddress] attribute to the EmailAddress property, as shown in the following code.

[EmailAddress]

public string EmailAddress { get; set; }

Apply the [Phone] attribute to the Phone property as shown in the following code.

[Phone]

public string Phone { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and modify the initialization of the Entity object to look like the following code. Notice that there's an invalid format for both the EmailAddress and Phone properties.

UserViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

UserId = 1,

LoginId = "JoeSmith",

Password = "Joe![Smith@2022](mailto://Smith@2022)",

ConfirmPassword = "Joe![Smith@2022](mailto://Smith@2022)",

EmailAddress = " Joe!Smith.2022",

Phone = "12.34.asdf"

}

};

Run the application and you should see the appropriate error messages for both the email address and phone number properties.

#### The [Url] Attribute

If you have a URL property in your class, you can use the [Url] attribute to ensure the data contained within that URL is valid. Be aware that the URL entered into your property must start with http://, https://, or ftp://. If you don't want these prefixes, you won't be able to use the [Url] attribute. Open the Product.cs file and add a ProductUrl property and add a [Url] data annotation to it as shown below.

[Display(Name = "Product URL")]

[Url]

public string ProductUrl { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and create a new ProductViewModel object and instantiate the Entity property, as shown in the following code.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

Color = "Black",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 10,

ProductUrl = "asdf.test"

}

};

Run the application and you should see the error message shown in **Figure 10**.

  
**Figure 10:** The [Url] attribute must contain a valid internet prefix to be considered valid.

#### The [CreditCard] Attribute

Another common business rule is to check for valid credit card data entered by a user. To try this out, right mouse-click on the EntityClasses folder and add a new class named CreditCard. In the new CreditCard class add the code shown in **Listing 7**. Notice the use of the [CreditCard] attribute decorating the CardNumber property.

**Listing 7: Create a CreditCard class to test the [CreditCard] annotation**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public partial class CreditCard

{

public string CardType { get; set; }

public string NameOnCard { get; set; }

[CreditCard()]

public string CardNumber { get; set; }

public string SecurityCode { get; set; }

public int ExpMonth { get; set; }

public int ExpYear { get; set; }

public string BillingPostalCode { get; set; }

}

Right mouse-click on the ViewModelClasses folder and add a new class named CreditCardViewModel, as shown in the following code.

namespace Samples;

public class CreditCardViewModel {

public CreditCardViewModel() {

Entity = new();

}

public CreditCard Entity { get; set; }

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

// Use Helper Class

return ValidationHelper.Validate(Entity);

}

}

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and create a new instance of the CreditCardViewModel class and set the appropriate properties of the Entity property, as shown in the following code.

CreditCardViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

CardType = "Visa",

CardNumber = "12 13 123 1234",

NameOnCard = "Joe Smith",

BillingPostalCode = "99999",

ExpMonth = 01,

ExpYear = 2026,

SecurityCode = "000"

}

};

Run the application and you should see an error message informing you that the CardNumber property is not a valid credit card number.

### Create Custom Validators Using the [CustomValidation] Attribute

There's no way that Microsoft can anticipate all the needs for business rule validation. They've provided a couple of different methods to create custom validation using attributes. The first method is to use the [CustomValidation] attribute. This attribute accepts two parameters, the first parameter is the type of a class in which you write a static method that returns a ValidationResult object. The second parameter is the name of that static method. Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and add a new class to your project named WeekdayOnlyValidator and to this new file add the following code:

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples {

public class WeekdayOnlyValidator {

public static ValidationResult Validate(DateTime date) {

return date.DayOfWeek == DayOfWeek.Saturday

|| date.DayOfWeek == DayOfWeek.Sunday

? new ValidationResult("Invalid date

because it falls on a weekend"): ValidationResult.Success;

}

}

}

The Validate() method checks the date passed in to ensure that it doesn't fall on a Saturday or a Sunday. If the date does fall on a weekend, return a ValidationResult object with the error message inside. Otherwise, return a ValidationResult.Success from this method. Right mouse-click on the EntityClasses folder and add a class named Customer. Add the [CustomValidation] attribute to decorate an EntryDate property in the class as shown below.

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public class Customer {

[CustomValidation(typeof(WeekdayOnlyValidator),

nameof(WeekdayOnlyValidator.Validate)]

public DateTime EntryDate { get; set; }

}

Right mouse-click on the ViewModelClasses folder and add a new class named CustomerViewModel. Add the code shown in the code snippet below to this new file.

namespace Samples;

public class CustomerViewModel {

public CustomerViewModel() {

Entity = new();

}

public Customer Entity { get; set; }

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

// Use Helper Class

return ValidationHelper.Validate(Entity);

}

}

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and add a new instantiation of the CustomerViewModel class that sets the EntryDate property of the Entity object to an invalid date.

CustomerViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

EntryDate = DateTime.Parse("10/1/2022")

}

};

Run this code and because the date 10/1/2022 falls on a weekend, the validation message “Invalid date because it falls on a weekend.” should appear on your console window.

### Create Custom Validators by Inheriting from the ValidationAttribute Class

To me, a better method for performing validation is to inherit from the ValidationAttribute class rather than using the [CustomValidation] attribute. The main reason is that you can name your custom validation class something that's distinct, and easy to read and understand.

There's a common design pattern you use when creating your own custom validation attribute by inheriting from the ValidationAttribute class. The following list describes the things you must do in your validation class.

* Name your class to describe what the validation does.
* Pass to the constructor any parameter(s).
* Override the IsValid() method.
* Validate the data entered is correct.
* Return a ValidationResult object.
* Add an error message if validation is not successful.
* Return ValidationResult.Success if validation is successful.

#### Is Date Greater Than Minimum Date

A good use of a custom validation attribute is to determine if a date entered by a user is greater than or equal to a specific date. Below is an example of how you might use this attribute to enforce this business rule.

[DateMinimum("9/1/2022")]

public DateTime? DiscontinuedDate { get; set; }

Pass to this custom attribute the minimum date that the data entered by the user should be. If the date entered is this date or greater, then the data is valid. Otherwise, an error message is returned from this attribute, and you can display that message to the user.

Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and create a new class named DateMinimumAttribute. To this new file, add the code shown in **Listing 8**. The first thing you must do is to inherit your class from the ValidationAttribute class. The constructor needs to receive the string that represents the minimum date. You should then convert that string to a DateTime and store it into a read-only private field named \_minDate. I'm not performing an error checking to ensure that the date passed is valid, but in production code, you should add error checking.

**Listing 8: Create a DateMinimumAttribute class to test for a valid minimum date**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public class DateMinimumAttribute: ValidationAttribute {

public DateMinimumAttribute(string minDate) {

\_minDate = Convert.ToDateTime(minDate);

}

private readonly DateTime \_minDate;

protected override ValidationResult IsValid(

object value, ValidationContext vc) {

if (value != null) {

// Get the value entered

DateTime dateEntered = (DateTime)value;

// Get display name for validation message

string displayName = vc.DisplayName;

// If the date entered is less than

// or equal to the minimum date set

// return an error

if (dateEntered <= \_minDate) {

// Check if ErrorMessage is filled in

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(ErrorMessage)) {

ErrorMessage = $"{displayName} must be

greater than or equal to '{\_minDate:MM/dd/yyyy}'.";

}

return new ValidationResult(ErrorMessage,

new[] { vc.MemberName });

}

}

return ValidationResult.Success;

}

}

Override the IsValid() method to write the code you need to enforce your business rule in your validation class. In this case, I verify that the value passed in is not equal to null. If it isn't null, convert the value entered into the property to a DateTime object. Next, get the name of the property, or the value specified in the [DisplayName] property, so you can use this if you need to return an error message.

Check to see if the date entered is less than or equal to the \_minDate field. If it is, return a new ValidationResult object. If the ErrorMessage property is not filled in, create a message to display. The first parameter to the ValidationResult constructor is the error message you wish to display. For the second parameter, create a new string array and fill in the MemberName from the ValidationContext. This MemberName property is the actual property name that this attribute is decorating. If there's no validation error, return a ValidationResult.Success from this attribute class to signify that the data was valid.

#### Try It Out

Open the Product.cs file and add the DataMinimum attribute to the DiscontinuedDate property, as shown below.

[DateMinimum("9/1/2022")]

Open the Program.cs file and create an instance of the ProductViewModel class and initialize the Entity property to the following code. Notice that the DiscontinuedDate property is set to a date less than the minimum date specified in the [DateMinimum] attribute.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Red",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 12,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today.AddYears(+5),

DiscontinuedDate =

Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/2020")

}

};

Run the application and view the error message you get back from the DateMinimumAttribute class.

#### Is Date Less Than Maximum Date

If you want to try out another custom attribute, copy the DateMinimumAttribute.cs file to a new file in the ValidationClasses folder named DateMaximumAttribute.cs. Open this new file and change the name of the class to DateMaximumAttribute. Rename the \_minDate field as \_maxDate. Change the comparison operator from a less than or equal sign (<=) to a greater than or equal to sign (>=). Modify the error message to display “less than” rather than “greater than.” You now have another validation attribute that you can use to enforce business rules.

#### Try It Out

Open the Product.cs file and add to the SellEndDate property the [DateMaximum] attribute, as shown below.

[DateMaximum("12/31/2030")]

Open the Program.cs file and initialize the Entity property within the ProductViewModel class to the following code. Notice the SellEndDate property is set to a date greater than the maximum date specified in the [DateMaximum] attribute.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Red",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 12,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today.AddYears(+20),

DiscontinuedDate = Convert.ToDateTime("12/15/2022")

}

};

Run the application and view the error message you get back from the DateMaximumAttribute class.

### Custom Validator: Dynamic Date Range by Year

The problem with the [Range] attribute when working with dates is that the minimum and maximum dates you enter must be hard-coded strings. What if you want to make the range a little more dynamic? For example, you might want to specify the minimum year the user may enter is two years prior to today's date. And the maximum year the user may enter is five years after today's date. To accomplish this, create a [DateYearRange] attribute class and pass in two integer values that specify the years prior and after that are valid for the date entered.

[DateYearRange(-2, 5)]

public DateTime SellStartDate { get; set; }

Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and add a new class named DateYearRangeAttribute. Into this file add the code shown in **Listing 9**. In the constructor, you accept the integer values and use those to calculate the two private read-only fields: \_minDate and \_maxDate.

**Listing 9: Create a DateYearRangeAttribute class to test for a valid date within two date ranges by year**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public class DateYearRangeAttribute: ValidationAttribute {

public DateYearRangeAttribute(int yearsPrior, int yearsAfter) {

\_minDate = DateTime.Now.AddYears(yearsPrior);

\_maxDate = DateTime.Now.AddYears(yearsAfter);

}

private readonly DateTime \_minDate;

private readonly DateTime \_maxDate;

protected override ValidationResult IsValid(object value,

ValidationContext vc} {

if (value != null) {

// Get the value entered

var dateEntered = (DateTime)value;

// Get display name for validation message

string displayName = vc.DisplayName;

// Is date entered within the date range

if (dateEntered < \_minDate || dateEntered > \_maxDate) {

// Check if ErrorMessage is filled in

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(ErrorMessage)) {

ErrorMessage = $"{displayName} must be between

'{\_minDate:MM/dd/yyyy}' and '{\_maxDate:MM/dd/yyyy}'.";

}

return new ValidationResult(ErrorMessage,

new[] { vc.MemberName });

}

}

return ValidationResult.Success;

}

}

Within the IsValid() method, retrieve the value entered from the user, then check to see if that date entered is less than the \_minDate field or if it's greater than the \_maxDate field. If either of these conditions fail, return a ValidationResult object with the error message telling the user the date range their input value must fall within.

#### Try It Out

Open the Product.cs file and add to the SellStartDate property the [DateYearRange] attribute, as shown below.

[DateYearRange(-2, 5)]

Open the Program.cs file and initialize the Entity property within the ProductViewModel class to the following code. Notice that the SellStartDate property is set to six years prior to today's date. This will cause the [DateYearRange] attribute to fail the validation.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Red",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 12,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today.AddYears(-6),

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today,

DiscontinuedDate = DateTime.Today

}

};

Run the application and view the error message you get back from the DateYearRange class.

### Custom Validator: Is One Date Property Less Than Another

Earlier in this article, you learned about the [Compare] attribute, which allows you to check if the data in one property is equal to the data in another. Let's create a validation attribute that does something similar but checks to see if one date value is less than another value. For example, you might want check to see if the SellStartDate is less than the SellEndDate property in the Product class.

Right mouse-click on the ValidationClasses folder and add a class named CompareDateLessThanAttribute.cs. Replace all the code in this file with the code shown in **Listing 10.** The constructor accepts the name of the property to compare to as a string value. Place this value into a private read-only field named \_propToCompare. Retrieve the value entered by the user from the value parameter passed in and convert it to a DateTime type. Use the GetProperty() method on the ValidationContext.ObjectType object to retrieve the actual address of where the property to compare to is located in memory. Once you have the PropertyInfo object call the GetValue() method to get the value in the property to compare to. If that value is not null, use that value to perform the comparison to the current value so you know whether to return an error message.

**Listing 10: Create a CompareDateLessThanAttribute class to test for one date must be less than another date**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

using System.Reflection;

namespace Samples;

public class CompareDateLessThanAttribute: ValidationAttribute {

public CompareDateLessThanAttribute(string propToCompare) {

\_propToCompare = propToCompare;

}

private readonly string \_propToCompare;

protected override ValidationResult IsValid(

object value, ValidationContext vc) {

if (value != null) {

// Get value entered

DateTime currentValue = (DateTime)value;

// Get PropertyInfo for comparison property

PropertyInfo pinfo = vc.ObjectType.GetProperty(\_propToCompare);

// Ensure the comparison property value is not null

if (pinfo.GetValue(vc.ObjectInstance) != null) {

// Get value for comparison property

DateTime comparisonValue = (DateTime)pinfo.GetValue(

vc.ObjectInstance);

// Perform the comparison

if (currentValue > comparisonValue) {

return new ValidationResult(ErrorMessage,

new[] { vc.MemberName });

}

}

}

return ValidationResult.Success;

}

}

#### Try It Out

Open the Product.cs file and add to the SellStartDate property the [CompareDateLessThan] attribute, as shown below. The first parameter to the attribute is the name of the property you want to compare it to.

[CompareDateLessThan(nameof(SellEndDate),

ErrorMessage = "Start Selling Date must be less than the End Selling Date.")]

Open the Program.cs file and initialize the Entity property within the ProductViewModel class to the following code. Notice that the SellEndDate property is set to one day prior to the SellStartDate. This causes the [CompareDateLessThan] attribute to fail the validation.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Red",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 12,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today.AddDays(-1),

DiscontinuedDate = Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/2023")

}

};

Run the application and view the error message you get back from the CompareDateLessThan class.

### Custom Validator: Is One Numeric Property Less Than Another

If you want to check if a numeric property is less than another numeric property, copy the CompareDateLessThanAttribute.cs file to a new file named CompareDecimalLessThanAttribute.cs. Open this new file and change the name of the class to CompareDecimalLessThanAttribute. Change all instances of DateTime to decimal. You now have another validation attribute that you can use to ensure that one decimal property is less than another.

#### Try It Out

Open the Product.cs file and add to the StandardCost property the [CompareDecimalLessThan] attribute, as shown in the code below. The first parameter to the attribute is the name of the property you want to compare it to.

[CompareDecimalLessThan(nameof(ListPrice),

ErrorMessage = "Cost must be less than the Price.")]

Open the Program.cs file and initialize the Entity property within the ProductViewModel class to the following code. Notice that the ListPrice property is set to a value less than the value in the StandardCost property. This causes the [CompareDecimalLessThan] attribute to fail the validation.

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "A New Product",

ProductNumber = "PROD001",

Color = "Red",

StandardCost = 5,

ListPrice = 2,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today.AddDays(+1),

DiscontinuedDate = Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/2023")

}

};

Run the application and view the error message you get back from the CompareDecimalLessThan class.

### Implement the IValidatableObject Interface

If you have business rules that are very specific to a class, you may not want to inherit from the ValidationAttribute. Instead, you might want to keep the code that performs the validation within the class itself. To do this, implement the IValidatableObject interface on your class. Right mouse-click on the EntityClasses folder and add a new class named Employee. Replace all the code in this new file with the code shown in **Listing 11**.

**Listing 11: Instead of using data annotations, you may implement the IValidatable interface to check properties on your entity classes**

#nullable disable

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace Samples;

public partial class Employee : IValidatableObject {

public int EmployeeId { get; set; }

public string FirstName { get; set; }

public string LastName { get; set; }

public decimal? Salary { get; set; }

public DateTime StartDate { get; set; }

public DateTime? TerminationDate { get; set; }

public override string ToString() {

return $"{LastName}, {FirstName}";

}

public IEnumerable<ValidationResult>Validate(ValidationContext vc) {

List<ValidationResult> ret = new();

if (FirstName.Length < 2) {

ret.Add(new ValidationResult("First Name must have

at least 2 characters.", new[] { nameof(FirstName) }));

}

if (LastName.Length < 3) {

ret.Add(new ValidationResult("Last Name must have

at least 3 characters.", new[] { nameof(LastName) }));

}

if (Salary < 1) {

ret.Add(new ValidationResult("Salary must be greater than $1.00.",

new[] { nameof(Salary) }));

}

string minStartDate = DateTime.Now.AddDays(-7).ToString("D");

if (StartDate < DateTime.Parse(minStartDate)) {

ret.Add(new ValidationResult($"Start Date must be later than

{minStartDate}.",

new[] { nameof(StartDate) }));

}

if (TerminationDate.HasValue && TerminationDate < StartDate) {

ret.Add(new ValidationResult($"Termination Date must be

later than {StartDate}.", new[] { nameof(TerminationDate) }));

}

return ret;

}

}

This Employee class defines several properties and implements the Validate() method. Within the Validate() method is where the business rules are implemented. This is a simple example, and these rules could have been implemented using data annotations, but I wanted to show you how this method works.

One thing to be aware of is that if you have both data annotations and this interface, the [Required] data annotations are validated first. Once all the [Required] annotations are resolved, other data annotations are then validated. The Validate() method on your class is not called until there are no ValidationResult objects passed back from the TryValidateObject() method in the ValidationHelper class. Then, and only then, is the Validate() method on your class called.

Right mouse-click on the ViewModelClasses folder and add a new class named EmployeeViewModel. This class contains an Entity property that's of the type Employee and has a Validate() method used to check the business rules of the Employee object.

namespace Samples;

public class EmployeeViewModel {

public EmployeeViewModel() {

Entity = new();

}

public Employee Entity { get; set; }

public List<ValidationMessage> Validate() {

// Use Helper Class

return ValidationHelper.Validate(Entity);

}

}

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and instantiate the EmployeeViewModel class and set the appropriate properties on the Entity object as shown in the following code.

EmployeeViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

EmployeeId = 1,

FirstName = "A",

LastName = "AA",

Salary = 0.01m,

StartDate = DateTime.Now.AddDays(-10),

TerminationDate = DateTime.Now.AddDays(-11)

}

};

Run the application and view the validation messages.

### Localizing Error Messages

If you need to work with multiple languages such as English, Spanish, German, etc. You should not hard-code error messages in the data annotation attributes. Instead, move them to a resource file and use the ErrorMessageResourceName property on the data annotation instead of the ErrorMessage property. You also need to include the ErrorMessageResourceType property to specify the namespace and class where the resources are compiled. Let's look at how to set up resources, add both English and Spanish error messages, and connect those messages to data annotations.

#### Create Resources

Add one resource file per language that you wish to support in your application. Right mouse-click on your project and create a new folder named Resources. Right mouse-click on the Resources folder and select **Add > New Item** from the menu. Locate the **Resources File** template and set the name to ValidationMessages.resx. Click the **Add** button to add the new resource file to the project, as shown in **Figure 11**.

  
**Figure 11:** Add a new Resources File to add messages that you can use in your project.

After adding the resources file, you need to change the **Access Modifier** to Public, as shown in **Figure 12**. Once you set this modifier, a ValidationMessages class is generated by Visual Studio so you can access each resource as a property of that class.

  
**Figure 12:** Change the Access Modifier on the resources file to Public to ensure that you can use the messages.

**Table 2** is a list of the resources you need to add to the ValidationMessages file. Each of these resources correspond to the similarly named data annotation attribute. These resource names show up as properties in the ValidateMessage class.

#### Create a Spanish Version of Error Messages

You're going to learn how to assign the resource names to the data annotation attributes in your Product class, but before you do that, let's create the Spanish version of these error messages. Right mouse-click on the Resources folder and select **Add > New Item** from the menu. Locate the **Resources File** template and set the name to ValidationMessages.es-MX.resx. Click the **Add** button to add the new resource file to the project. Add the same names as you did in the first resource file you added. The Value property is what changes for each language. In **Figure 13**, you see the values you should enter for the Spanish error messages. Please excuse any bad Spanish grammar as I used “Google Translate.”

  
**Figure 13:** Create a resource file for each language you need to support in your project.

Why did you add the suffix of “.es-MX” on this file, but didn't use one on the other resource file? The resource file selected is based on two things; the culture running on the computer and the culture set on the current thread. If the two cultures match, the resource file without a suffix is chosen, otherwise the resource file that matches the culture on the current thread is selected.

#### Modify Product Class to Work with Resources

Let's now modify the Product class to use the values from the resource files instead of the hard-coded messages you've used throughout this article. Open the Product.cs file and add a Using statement at the top of this file. This Using statement is the namespace where the ValidationMessages class has been generated.

using Samples.Resources;

Locate the Name property and modify the [Required] and [StringLength] attributes. Remove the ErrorMessage property from each of these attributes and add the ErrorMessageResourceName and ErrorMessageResourceType properties, as shown in the following code:

[Required(ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.Required),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

[StringLength(50, MinimumLength = 4,

ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.StringLength),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string Name { get; set; }

Next, modify the [MaxLength] attribute on the ProductNumber property to look like the following code:

[MaxLength(25, ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.MaxLength),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string ProductNumber { get; set; }

Finally, modify the [MinLength] property on the Color property to look like the following:

[MinLength(3, ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.MinLength),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string Color { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and instantiate the ProductViewModel class to look like the following:

ProductViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

ProductID = 1,

Name = "",

ProductNumber = "A very long product number to show[MaxLength] Attribute",

Color = "it",

StandardCost = 2,

ListPrice = 5,

SellStartDate = DateTime.Today,

SellEndDate = DateTime.Today.AddDays(+1),

DiscontinuedDate = Convert.ToDateTime("1/1/2023")

}

};

Run the application to see the English language messages from the resource file appear.

#### Modify the Culture on the Current Thread

Open the Program.cs file and add a using statement at the top of this file.

using System.Globalization;

Add a new variable named culture to set the current language.

string culture = "en-US";

Just before the call to the vm.Validate() method, set the current UI culture to the string contained in the culture variable. The culture set on the CurrentUICulture thread is the one used to determine which resource file to use.

Thread.CurrentThread.CurrentUICulture = new CultureInfo(culture);

Run the application again and you should see the same English language messages appear. After viewing the error messages, modify the culture variable to “es-MX” as shown below:

string culture = "es-MX";

Run the application again to see the Spanish language messages appear.

#### Modify the User Class to Work with Resources

In the User class, you added the [EmailAddress] and the [Phone] attributes. You should add the appropriate error messages for those two attributes to each of your resource files. Open the ValidationMessages.resx file and add the name/value pairs shown in **Table 3**.

Open the ValidationMessages.es-MX.resx file and add the name/value pairs shown in **Table 4**.

Open the User.cs file and add a using statement at the top of the file to bring in the namespace where the ValidationMessages class is located.

using Samples.Resources;

Add a [Required] attribute to the LoginId property to look like the following code:

[Required(ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.Required),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string LoginId { get; set; }

Modify the [EmailAddress] attribute on the EmailAddress property to look like the code shown below:

[EmailAddress(ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.Email),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string EmailAddress { get; set; }

Modify the [Phone] attribute on the Phone property as shown in the code below:

[Phone(ErrorMessageResourceName = nameof(ValidationMessages.Phone),

ErrorMessageResourceType = typeof(ValidationMessages))]

public string Phone { get; set; }

#### Try It Out

Open the Program.cs file and instantiate the UserViewModel to look like the following:

UserViewModel vm = new() {

Entity = new() {

UserId = 1,

LoginId = "",

Password = "Joe![Smith@2022](mailto://Smith@2022)",

ConfirmPassword = "Joe![Smith@2022](mailto://Smith@2022)",

EmailAddress = "test!test.com",

Phone = "asfsadf"

}

};

Be sure to set the culture variable back to “en-US” and run the application to see the English language messages from the resource file appear. After running the English version, change the culture variable to “es-MX” and run the application to see the Spanish language version of the error messages.

## Seeding

Data seeding allows us to provide initial data during the creation of a database. Then, EF Core migrations will automatically determine what insert, update or delete operations need to be applied when upgrading the database to a new version of the model.

* Override the OnModelCreating method in the EmployeeContext class:

protected override void OnModelCreating**(**ModelBuilder modelBuilder**)**

**{**

modelBuilder.Entity**<**Employee**>()**.HasData**(**new Employee

**{**

EmployeeId = 1,

FirstName = "Uncle",

LastName = "Bob",

Email = "uncle.bob@gmail.com",

DateOfBirth = new DateTime**(**1979, 04, 25**)**,

PhoneNumber = "999-888-7777"

**}**, new Employee

**{**

EmployeeId = 2,

FirstName = "Jan",

LastName = "Kirsten",

Email = "jan.kirsten@gmail.com",

DateOfBirth = new DateTime**(**1981, 07, 13**)**,

PhoneNumber = "111-222-3333"

**})**;

}

* Add-Migration EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.EmployeeContextSeed
* update-database
* Show the “Migrations” folder with new file.
* Show DB table with records.

## Reverting Migrations

* Add “Gender” property in Employee.cs
* Add-Migration EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.AddEmployeeGender
* Error in Seed data code since Gender not provided.
* remove-Migration -Force
* Show the “Migrations” folder with new file.
* Show DB table all columns.
* Add value for Gender in OnModelCreating method of the EmployeeContext class for seeding data.
* Add-Migration EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.AddEmployeeGenderAndSeed
* Update-Database
* Show the “Migrations” folder with new file.
* Show DB table with Gender column.

## Creating DB Scripts

While deploying our migrations to a production database, it’s useful to generate a SQL script. We can further tune the script to match the production database. Also, we can use the script along with various deployment tools.

The command to generate the script is:

Script-Migration

Once we apply this command, we can see a SQL script generated with all changes related to our migrations.

## CORS Configuration

<https://code-maze.com/net-core-web-development-part2/#creatingNewProject>

**For more detailed explanation, refer to the** [**Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET Core**](#_Adding_CORS_to) **and** [**Adding CORS to the API – ASP.NET (.NET Framework)**](#_Adding_CORS_to_1) **sections.**

An extension method is inherently the static method. They play a great role in .NET Core configuration because they increase the readability of our code for sure. What makes it different from the other static methods is that it accepts “this” as the first parameter, and “this” represents the data type of the object which uses that extension method. An extension method must be inside a **static class**. This kind of method extends the behavior of the types in .NET.

First, we need to configure CORS in our application. [**CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing)**](https://code-maze.com/enabling-cors-in-asp-net-core/) is a mechanism that gives rights to the user to access resources from the server on a different domain. Because we will use Angular as a client-side on a different domain than the server’s domain, configuring CORS is mandatory.

* Create a folder called Extensions.
* Add ServiceExtensions.cs with this code:

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Extensions

{

public static class ServiceExtensions

{

public static void ConfigureCors(this IServiceCollection services)

{

services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy("CorsPolicy",

builder => builder.AllowAnyOrigin()

.AllowAnyMethod()

.AllowAnyHeader());

});

}

}

}

We are using the basic settings for adding CORS policy because for this project allowing any origin, method, and header is quite enough. But we can be more restrictive with those settings if we want. Instead of the AllowAnyOrigin() method which allows requests from any source,we could use the WithOrigins("http://www.something.com") which will allow requests just from the specified source.Also, instead of AllowAnyMethod() that allows all HTTP methods, we can use WithMethods("POST", "GET")that will allow only specified HTTP methods. Furthermore, we can make the same changes for the AllowAnyHeader()method by using, for example, the WithHeaders("accept", "content-type")method to allow only specified headers.

## IIS Configuration as Part of .NET Core Configuration

Additionally, we need to configure an IIS integration that will help us with the IIS deployment. Modify the ServiceExtentions class and add the ConfigureIISIntegration method:

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Extensions

{

public static class ServiceExtensions

{

public static void ConfigureCors(this IServiceCollection services)

{

services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy("CorsPolicy",

builder => builder.AllowAnyOrigin()

.AllowAnyMethod()

.AllowAnyHeader());

});

}

public static void ConfigureIISIntegration(this IServiceCollection services)

{

services.Configure<IISOptions>(options =>

{

});

}

}

}

We do not initialize any of the properties inside the options because we are just fine with the default values. For more pieces of information about those properties, look at the explanation:



To call these extension methods, we are going to modify the Program class:

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Extensions;

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.HttpOverrides;

using Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore;

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.ConfigureCors();

builder.Services.ConfigureIISIntegration();

// DB Context.

var connValue = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("ConnectionString:EmployeeDB");

builder.Services.AddDbContext<EmployeeContext>(opts =>

opts.UseSqlServer(connValue)

);

builder.Services.AddControllers();

// Learn more about configuring Swagger/OpenAPI at https://aka.ms/aspnetcore/swashbuckle

builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();

var app = builder.Build();

// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.

if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseDeveloperExceptionPage();

app.UseSwagger();

app.UseSwaggerUI();

}

else

app.UseHsts();

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

// Useful for Linux deployment.

app.UseForwardedHeaders(new ForwardedHeadersOptions

{

ForwardedHeaders = ForwardedHeaders.All

});

app.UseCors("CorsPolicy");

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllers();

app.Run();

In the first part, CORS, and IIS configuration have been added. Furthermore, the CORS configuration has been added to the application’s pipeline inside the second part of the class reserved for adding components to a pipeline. The important thing to notice here is that we call the UseCors method above the UseAuthorization method.  This is the best practice, which Microsoft recommends.

But as you may notice, there is a little more code. Therefore, we are going to explain it now:

* app.UseForwardedHeaders will forward proxy headers to the current request. This will help us during the Linux deployment.
* app.UseStaticFiles() enables using static files for the request. If we don’t set a path to the static files, it will use a wwwroot folder in our solution explorer by default.

## Create the Repository

* Let’s add a new folder under Models and name it Repository. Then let’s create a new interface called IDataRepository:

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.Repository

**{**

public interface IDataRepository**<**TEntity**>**

**{**

IEnumerable**<**TEntity**>** GetAll**()**;

TEntity Get**(**long id**)**;

void Add**(**TEntity entity**)**;

void Update**(**TEntity dbEntity, TEntity entity**)**;

void Delete**(**TEntity entity**)**;

**}**

**}**

* Next, let’s create a concrete class that implements the interface IDataRepository. Let’s add a new folder under Models called DataManager. Then let’s create a new class EmployeeManager:

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.Repository;

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.DataManager

**{**

public class EmployeeManager : IDataRepository**<**Employee**>**

**{**

readonly EmployeeContext \_employeeContext;

public EmployeeManager**(**EmployeeContext context**)**

**{**

\_employeeContext = context;

**}**

public IEnumerable**<**Employee**>** GetAll**()**

**{**

return \_employeeContext.Employees.ToList**()**;

**}**

public Employee Get**(**long id**)**

**{**

return \_employeeContext.Employees

.FirstOrDefault**(**e =**>** e.EmployeeId == id**)**;

**}**

public void Add**(**Employee entity**)**

**{**

\_employeeContext.Employees.Add**(**entity**)**;

\_employeeContext.SaveChanges**()**;

**}**

public void Update**(**Employee employee, Employee entity**)**

**{**

employee.FirstName = entity.FirstName;

employee.LastName = entity.LastName;

employee.Email = entity.Email;

employee.DateOfBirth = entity.DateOfBirth;

employee.PhoneNumber = entity.PhoneNumber;

\_employeeContext.SaveChanges**()**;

**}**

public void Delete**(**Employee employee**)**

**{**

\_employeeContext.Employees.Remove**(**employee**)**;

\_employeeContext.SaveChanges**()**;

**}**

**}**

**}**

The classEmployeeManager handles all database operations related to the employee. The purpose of this class is to separate the actual data operations logic from our API Controller.

This class has the following methods for supporting CRUD operations:

GetAll() – Gets all employee records from the database.

Get() – Gets a specific employee record from the database by passing an Id.

Add() – Creates a new employee record in the database.

Update() – Updates a specific employee record in the database.

Delete() – Removes a specific employee record from the database based on the Id.

* As a next step, let’s configure the repository using dependency injection in Program.cs:

builder.Services.AddDbContext<EmployeeContext>(opts =>

opts.UseSqlServer(connValue)

);

builder.Services.AddScoped<IDataRepository<Employee>, EmployeeManager>();

builder.Services.AddControllers();

## Add the Employee Controller

* In the Controllers folder, add an empty API controller named EmployeeController.cs with this code:

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models;

using EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Models.Repository;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

namespace EFCoreAPICodeFirstSample.Controllers

{

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[ApiController]

public class EmployeeController : ControllerBase

{

private readonly IDataRepository<Employee> \_dataRepository;

public EmployeeController(IDataRepository<Employee> dataRepository)

{

\_dataRepository = dataRepository;

}

// GET: api/Employee

[HttpGet]

public IActionResult Get()

{

IEnumerable<Employee> employees = \_dataRepository.GetAll();

return Ok(employees);

}

// GET: api/Employee/5

[HttpGet("{id}", Name = "Get")]

public IActionResult Get(long id)

{

Employee employee = \_dataRepository.Get(id);

if (employee == null)

{

return NotFound("The Employee record couldn't be found.");

}

return Ok(employee);

}

// POST: api/Employee

[HttpPost]

public IActionResult Post([FromBody] Employee employee)

{

if (employee == null)

{

return BadRequest("Employee is null.");

}

\_dataRepository.Add(employee);

return CreatedAtRoute(

"Get",

new { Id = employee.EmployeeId },

employee);

}

// PUT: api/Employee/5

[HttpPut("{id}")]

public IActionResult Put(long id, [FromBody] Employee employee)

{

if (employee == null)

{

return BadRequest("Employee is null.");

}

Employee employeeToUpdate = \_dataRepository.Get(id);

if (employeeToUpdate == null)

{

return NotFound("The Employee record couldn't be found.");

}

\_dataRepository.Update(employeeToUpdate, employee);

return NoContent();

}

// DELETE: api/Employee/5

[HttpDelete("{id}")]

public IActionResult Delete(long id)

{

Employee employee = \_dataRepository.Get(id);

if (employee == null)

{

return NotFound("The Employee record couldn't be found.");

}

\_dataRepository.Delete(employee);

return NoContent();

}

}

}

## Testing the Employee API

Run the project and test it from Postman.

# EntityFramework – Fluent API

<https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/fluent-api-in-entity-framework-core.aspx>

Entity Framework Fluent API is used to configure domain classes to override conventions. EF Fluent API is based on a Fluent API design pattern (a.k.a [Fluent Interface](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fluent_interface)) where the result is formulated by [method chaining](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Method_chaining).

In Entity Framework Core, the [ModelBuilder](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/api/microsoft.entityframeworkcore.modelbuilder) class acts as a Fluent API. By using it, we can configure many different things, as it provides more configuration options than data annotation attributes.

Entity Framework Core Fluent API configures the following aspects of a model:

1. Model Configuration: Configures an EF model to database mappings. Configures the default Schema, DB functions, additional data annotation attributes and entities to be excluded from mapping.
2. Entity Configuration: Configures entity to table and relationships mapping e.g. PrimaryKey, AlternateKey, Index, table name, one-to-one, one-to-many, many-to-many relationships etc.
3. Property Configuration: Configures property to column mapping e.g. column name, default value, nullability, Foreignkey, data type, concurrency column etc.

## Fluent API Configurations

Override the OnModelCreating method and use a parameter modelBuilder of type ModelBuilder to configure domain classes, as shown below.

public class SchoolDBContext: DbContext

{

public DbSet<Student> Students { get; set; }

protected override void OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

//Write Fluent API configurations here

//Property Configurations

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.Property(s => s.StudentId)

.HasColumnName("Id")

.HasDefaultValue(0)

.IsRequired();

}

}

In the above example, the ModelBuilder Fluent API instance is used to configure a property by calling multiple methods in a chain. It configures the StudentId property of the Student entity; it configures the name using HasColumnName, the default value using HasDefaultValue and nullability using IsRequired method in a single statement instead of multiple statements. This increases the readability and also takes less time to write compare to multiple statements, as shown below.

//Fluent API method chained calls

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.Property(s => s.StudentId)

.HasColumnName("Id")

.HasDefaultValue(0)

.IsRequired();

//Separate method calls

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>().Property(s => s.StudentId).HasColumnName("Id");

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>().Property(s => s.StudentId).HasDefaultValue(0);

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>().Property(s => s.StudentId).IsRequired();

**Note:** Fluent API configurations have higher precedence than data annotation attributes.

## Configure One-to-Many Relationships using Fluent API in Entity Framework Core

You learned about the [Conventions for One-to-Many Relationship](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/one-to-many-conventions-entity-framework-core.aspx). Generally, you don't need to configure one-to-many relationships because EF Core includes enough conventions which will automatically configure them. However, you can use Fluent API to configure the one-to-many relationship if you decide to have all the EF configurations in Fluent API for easy maintenance.

Entity Framework Core made it easy to configure relationships using Fluent API. Consider the following Student and Grade classes where the Grade entity includes many Student entities.

Create a .NET Core Console project in C:\temp\dotnet\_demos:

dotnet new console --name ef\_fluent

Open the folder in VS Code and then add EF packages:

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.SqlServer

dotnet add package Microsoft.EntityFrameworkCore.Design

Create the following classes:

public class Student

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

public int CurrentGradeId { get; set; }

public Grade Grade { get; set; }

}

public class Grade

{

public int GradeId { get; set; }

public string GradeName { get; set; }

public string Section { get; set; }

public ICollection<Student> Students { get; set; }

}

Configure the one-to-many relationship for the above entities using Fluent API by overriding the OnModelCreating method in the context class, as shown below.

public class SchoolContext : DbContext

{

protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

{

optionsBuilder.UseSqlServer("Server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;Database=EFCore-SchoolDB;Trusted\_Connection=True");

}

protected override void OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.HasOne<Grade>(s => s.Grade)

.WithMany(g => g.Students)

.HasForeignKey(s => s.CurrentGradeId);

}

public DbSet<Grade> Grades { get; set; }

public DbSet<Student> Students { get; set; }

}

In the example above, the following code snippet configures the one-to-many relationship:

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.HasOne<Grade>(s => s.Grade)

.WithMany(g => g.Students)

.HasForeignKey(s => s.CurrentGradeId);

Now, to reflect this in the database, execute [migration commands](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/entity-framework-core-migration.aspx), add-migration <name> and update-database. The database will include two tables with One-to-Many relationship.

dotnet ef migrations add first

dotnet ef database update

Let's understand the above code step by step.

* First, we need to start configuring with one entity class, either Student or Grade. So, modelBuilder.Entity<student>() starts with the Student entity.
* Then, .HasOne<Grade>(s => s.Grade) specifies that the Student entity includes a Grade type property named Grade.
* Now, we need to configure the other end of the relationship, the Grade entity. The .WithMany(g => g.Students) specifies that the Grade entity class includes many Student entities. Here, WithMany infers collection navigation property.
* The .HasForeignKey<int>(s => s.CurrentGradeId); specifies the name of the foreign key property CurrentGradeId. This is optional. Use it only when you have the foreign key Id property in the dependent class.

Alternatively, you can start configuring the relationship with the Grade entity instead of the Student entity, as shown below.

modelBuilder.Entity<Grade>()

.HasMany<Student>(g => g.Students)

.WithOne(s => s.Grade)

.HasForeignKey(s => s.CurrentGradeId);

## Configure One-to-One Relationships using Fluent API in Entity Framework Core

Here you will learn how to configure one-to-one relationships between two entities using Fluent API, if they do not follow EF Core conventions.

Generally, you don't need to configure one-to-one relationships manually because EF Core includes [Conventions for One-to-One Relationships](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/one-to-one-conventions-entity-framework-core.aspx). However, if the key or foreign key properties do not follow the convention, then you can use data annotation attributes or Fluent API to configure a one-to-one relationship between the two entities.

Let's configure a one-to-one relationship between the following Student and StudentAddress entities, which do not follow the foreign key convention.

public class Student

{

public int Id { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

public StudentAddress Address { get; set; }

}

public class StudentAddress

{

public int StudentAddressId { get; set; }

public string Address { get; set; }

public string City { get; set; }

public string State { get; set; }

public string Country { get; set; }

public int AddressOfStudentId { get; set; }

public Student Student { get; set; }

}

To configure a one-to-one relationship using Fluent API in EF Core, use the HasOne, WithOne and HasForeignKey methods, as shown below.

public class SchoolContext : DbContext

{

protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

{

optionsBuilder.UseSqlServer("Server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;Database=EFCore-SchoolDB;Trusted\_Connection=True");

}

protected override void OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.HasOne<StudentAddress>(s => s.Address)

.WithOne(ad => ad.Student)

.HasForeignKey<StudentAddress>(ad => ad.AddressOfStudentId);

}

public DbSet<Student> Students { get; set; }

public DbSet<StudentAddress> StudentAddresses { get; set; }

}

In the above example, the following code snippet configures the one-to-one relationship.

modelBuilder.Entity<Student>()

.HasOne<StudentAddress>(s => s.Address)

.WithOne(ad => ad.Student)

.HasForeignKey<StudentAddress>(ad => ad.AddressOfStudentId);

Let's understand it step by step.

* modelBuilder.Entity<Student>() starts configuring the Student entity.
* The .HasOne<StudentAddress>(s => s.Address) method specifies that the Student entity includes one StudentAddress reference property using a lambda expression.
* .WithOne(ad => ad.Student) configures the other end of the relationship, the StudentAddress entity. It specifies that the StudentAddress entity includes a reference navigation property of Student type.
* .HasForeignKey<StudentAddress>(ad => ad.AddressOfStudentId) specifies the foreign key property name.

Now, to reflect this in the database, execute [migration commands](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/entity-framework-core-migration.aspx), add-migration <name> and update-database.

dotnet ef migrations add Student\_Address

dotnet ef database update

You can start configuring with the StudentAddress entity in the same way, as below.

modelBuilder.Entity<StudentAddress>()

.HasOne<Student>(ad => ad.Student)

.WithOne(s => s.Address)

.HasForeignKey<StudentAddress>(ad => ad.AddressOfStudentId);

## Configure Many-to-Many Relationships in Entity Framework Core

Here you will learn how to configure many-to-many relationships between two entities using Fluent API in Entity Framework Core.

Let's implement a many-to-many relationship between the following Student and Course entities, where one student can enroll for many courses and, in the same way, one course can be joined by many students.

public class Student

{

public int StudentId { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

}

public class Course

{

public int CourseId { get; set; }

public string CourseName { get; set; }

public string Description { get; set; }

}

The many-to-many relationship in the database is represented by a joining table which includes the foreign keys of both tables. Also, these foreign keys are composite primary keys.

[Graphical user interface, application

Description automatically generated](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/images/efcore/manytomany-db-diagram.png)

### Convention

There are no default conventions available in Entity Framework Core which automatically configure a many-to-many relationship. You must configure it using Fluent API.

### Fluent API

In the Entity Framework 6.x or prior, EF API used to create the joining table for many-to-many relationships. We need not to create a joining entity for a joining table (however, we can of course create a joining entity explicitly in EF 6).

In Entity Framework Core, this has not been implemented yet. We must create a joining entity class for a joining table. The joining entity for the above Student and Course entities should include a foreign key property and a reference navigation property for each entity.

The steps for configuring many-to-many relationships would the following:

1. Define a new joining entity class which includes the foreign key property and the reference navigation property for each entity.
2. Define a one-to-many relationship between other two entities and the joining entity, by including a collection navigation property in entities at both sides (Student and Course, in this case).
3. Configure both the foreign keys in the joining entity as a composite key using Fluent API.

So, first of all, define the joining entity StudentCourse, as shown below.

public class StudentCourse

{

public int StudentId { get; set; }

public Student Student { get; set; }

public int CourseId { get; set; }

public Course Course { get; set; }

}

The above joining entity StudentCourse includes reference navigation properties Student and Course and their foreign key properties StudentId and CourseId respectively (foreign key properties follow the convention).

Now, we also need to configure two separate one-to-many relationships between Student -> StudentCourse and Course -> StudentCourse entities. We can do it by just following the [convention for one-to-many relationships](https://www.entityframeworktutorial.net/efcore/one-to-many-conventions-entity-framework-core.aspx), as shown below.

public class Student

{

public int StudentId { get; set; }

public string Name { get; set; }

**public IList<StudentCourse> StudentCourses { get; set; }**

}

public class Course

{

public int CourseId { get; set; }

public string CourseName { get; set; }

public string Description { get; set; }

**public IList<StudentCourse> StudentCourses { get; set; }**

}

As you can see above, the Student and Course entities now include a collection navigation property of StudentCourse type. The StudentCourse entity already includes the foreign key property and navigation property for both, Student and Course. This makes it a fully defined one-to-many relationship between Student & StudentCourse and Course & StudentCourse.

Now, the foreign keys must be the composite primary key in the joining table. This can only be configured using Fluent API, as below.

public class SchoolContext : DbContext

{

protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder optionsBuilder)

{

optionsBuilder.UseSqlServer("Server=.\\SQLEXPRESS;Database=EFCore-SchoolDB;Trusted\_Connection=True");

}

protected override void OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)

{

**modelBuilder.Entity<StudentCourse>().HasKey(sc => new { sc.StudentId, sc.CourseId });**

}

public DbSet<Student> Students { get; set; }

public DbSet<Course> Courses { get; set; }

public DbSet<StudentCourse> StudentCourses { get; set; }

}

Run:

dotnet ef migrations add Student\_Courses

dotnet ef database update

In the above code, modelBuilder.Entity<StudentCourse>().HasKey(sc => new { sc.StudentId, sc.CourseId }) configures StudentId and CourseId as the composite key.

This is how you can configure many-to-many relationships if entities follow the conventions for one-to-many relationships with the joining entity. Suppose that the foreign key property names do not follow the convention (e.g. SID instead of StudentId and CID instead of CourseId), then you can configure it using Fluent API, as shown below.

modelBuilder.Entity<StudentCourse>().HasKey(sc => new { sc.SId, sc.CId });

modelBuilder.Entity<StudentCourse>()

.HasOne<Student>(sc => sc.Student)

.WithMany(s => s.StudentCourses)

.HasForeignKey(sc => sc.SId);

modelBuilder.Entity<StudentCourse>()

.HasOne<Course>(sc => sc.Course)

.WithMany(s => s.StudentCourses)

.HasForeignKey(sc => sc.CId);

# ASP.NET – OpenAPI

Swagger (OpenAPI) is a language-agnostic specification for describing REST APIs. It allows both computers and humans to understand the capabilities of a REST API without direct access to the source code. Its main goals are to:

* Minimize the amount of work needed to connect decoupled services.
* Reduce the amount of time needed to accurately document a service.

The two main OpenAPI implementations for .NET are [Swashbuckle](https://github.com/domaindrivendev/Swashbuckle.AspNetCore) and [NSwag](https://github.com/RicoSuter/NSwag), see:

* [Getting Started with Swashbuckle](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/getting-started-with-swashbuckle?view=aspnetcore-6.0)
* [Getting Started with NSwag](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/getting-started-with-nswag?view=aspnetcore-6.0)

The Swagger project was donated to the OpenAPI Initiative in 2015 and has since been referred to as OpenAPI. Both names are used interchangeably. However, "OpenAPI" refers to the specification. "Swagger" refers to the family of open-source and commercial products from SmartBear that work with the OpenAPI Specification. Subsequent open-source products, such as [OpenAPIGenerator](https://github.com/OpenAPITools/openapi-generator), also fall under the Swagger family name, despite not being released by SmartBear.

In short:

* OpenAPI is a specification.
* Swagger is tooling that uses the OpenAPI specification. For example, OpenAPIGenerator and SwaggerUI.

## OpenAPI specification (openapi.json)

The OpenAPI specification is a document that describes the capabilities of your API. The document is based on the XML and attribute annotations within the controllers and models. It's the core part of the OpenAPI flow and is used to drive tooling such as SwaggerUI. By default, it's named openapi.json. Here's an example of an OpenAPI specification, reduced for brevity:

{

"openapi": "3.0.1",

"info": {

"title": "API V1",

"version": "v1"

},

"paths": {

"/api/Todo": {

"get": {

"tags": [

"Todo"

],

"operationId": "ApiTodoGet",

"responses": {

"200": {

"description": "Success",

"content": {

"text/plain": {

"schema": {

"type": "array",

"items": {

"$ref": "#/components/schemas/ToDoItem"

}

}

},

"application/json": {

"schema": {

"type": "array",

"items": {

"$ref": "#/components/schemas/ToDoItem"

}

}

},

"text/json": {

"schema": {

"type": "array",

"items": {

"$ref": "#/components/schemas/ToDoItem"

}

}

}

}

}

}

},

"post": {

…

}

},

"/api/Todo/{id}": {

"get": {

…

},

"put": {

…

},

"delete": {

…

}

}

},

"components": {

"schemas": {

"ToDoItem": {

"type": "object",

"properties": {

"id": {

"type": "integer",

"format": "int32"

},

"name": {

"type": "string",

"nullable": true

},

"isCompleted": {

"type": "boolean"

}

},

"additionalProperties": false

}

}

}

}

## Swagger UI

[Swagger UI](https://swagger.io/swagger-ui/) offers a web-based UI that provides information about the service, using the generated OpenAPI specification. Both Swashbuckle and NSwag include an embedded version of Swagger UI, so that it can be hosted in your ASP.NET Core app using a middleware registration call. The web UI looks like this:



Each public action method in your controllers can be tested from the UI. Select a method name to expand the section. Add any necessary parameters, and select **Try it out!**.



**Note**: The Swagger UI version used for the screenshots is version 2. For a version 3 example, see [**Petstore example**](https://petstore.swagger.io/).

## Get started with Swashbuckle and ASP.NET Core

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/WebApiSwagger>

There are three main components to Swashbuckle:

* [Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.Swagger](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.Swagger/): a Swagger object model and middleware to expose SwaggerDocument objects as JSON endpoints.
* [Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.SwaggerGen](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.SwaggerGen/): a Swagger generator that builds SwaggerDocument objects directly from your routes, controllers, and models. It's typically combined with the Swagger endpoint middleware to automatically expose Swagger JSON.
* [Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.SwaggerUI](https://www.nuget.org/packages/Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.SwaggerUI/): an embedded version of the Swagger UI tool. It interprets Swagger JSON to build a rich, customizable experience for describing the web API functionality. It includes built-in test harnesses for the public methods.

### Package installation

Swashbuckle can be added with the following approaches:

#### Visual Studio

* From the **Package Manager Console** window:
  + Go to View > Other Windows > Package Manager Console
  + Navigate to the directory in which the .csproj file exists
  + Execute the following command:

Install-Package Swashbuckle.AspNetCore -Version 6.2.3

* From the **Manage NuGet Packages** dialog:
  + Right-click the project in Solution Explorer > Manage NuGet Packages
  + Set the Package source to "nuget.org"
  + Ensure the "Include prerelease" option is enabled
  + Enter "Swashbuckle.AspNetCore" in the search box
  + Select the latest "Swashbuckle.AspNetCore" package from the Browse tab and click Install

#### Visual Studio for Mac

* Right-click the *Packages* folder in **Solution Pad** > **Add Packages...**
* Set the **Add Packages** window's **Source** drop-down to "nuget.org"
* Ensure the "Show pre-release packages" option is enabled
* Enter "Swashbuckle.AspNetCore" in the search box
* Select the latest "Swashbuckle.AspNetCore" package from the results pane and click **Add Package**

#### Visual Studio Code

Run the following command from the **Integrated Terminal**:

dotnet add TodoApi.csproj package Swashbuckle.AspNetCore -v 6.2.3

#### .NET Core CLI

Run the following command:

dotnet add TodoApi.csproj package Swashbuckle.AspNetCore -v 6.2.3

### Add and configure Swagger middleware

Add the Swagger generator to the services collection in Program.cs:

builder.Services.AddControllers();

builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();

Enable the middleware for serving the generated JSON document and the Swagger UI, also in Program.cs:

if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseSwagger();

app.UseSwaggerUI();

}

The preceding code adds the Swagger middleware only if the current environment is set to Development. The UseSwaggerUI method call enables the [Static File Middleware](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/fundamentals/static-files?view=aspnetcore-6.0).

Launch the app and navigate to https://localhost:<port>/swagger/v1/swagger.json. The generated document describing the endpoints appears as shown in [OpenAPI specification (openapi.json)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/tutorials/web-api-help-pages-using-swagger?view=aspnetcore-6.0#openapi-specification-openapijson).

The Swagger UI can be found at https://localhost:<port>/swagger. Explore the API via Swagger UI and incorporate it in other programs.

**Tip**: To serve the Swagger UI at the app's root (https://localhost:<port>/), set the RoutePrefix property to an empty string:

app.UseSwaggerUI(options =>

{

options.SwaggerEndpoint("/swagger/v1/swagger.json", "v1");

options.RoutePrefix = string.Empty;

});

If using directories with IIS or a reverse proxy, set the Swagger endpoint to a relative path using the ./ prefix. For example, ./swagger/v1/swagger.json. Using /swagger/v1/swagger.json instructs the app to look for the JSON file at the true root of the URL (plus the route prefix, if used). For example, use https://localhost:<port>/<route\_prefix>/swagger/v1/swagger.json instead of https://localhost:<port>/<virtual\_directory>/<route\_prefix>/swagger/v1/swagger.json.

**Note**: By default, Swashbuckle generates and exposes Swagger JSON in version 3.0 of the specification—officially called the OpenAPI Specification. To support backwards compatibility, you can opt into exposing JSON in the 2.0 format instead. This 2.0 format is important for integrations such as Microsoft Power Apps and Microsoft Flow that currently support OpenAPI version 2.0. To opt into the 2.0 format, set the SerializeAsV2 property in Program.cs:

app.UseSwagger(options =>

{

options.SerializeAsV2 = true;

});

### Customize and extend

Swagger provides options for documenting the object model and customizing the UI to match your theme.

#### API info and description

The configuration action passed to the AddSwaggerGen method adds information such as the author, license, and description.

In Program.cs, import the following namespace to use the OpenApiInfo class:

using Microsoft.OpenApi.Models;

Using the OpenApiInfo class, modify the information displayed in the UI:

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen(options =>

{

options.SwaggerDoc("v1", new OpenApiInfo

{

Version = "v1",

Title = "ToDo API",

Description = "An ASP.NET Core Web API for managing ToDo items",

TermsOfService = new Uri("https://example.com/terms"),

Contact = new OpenApiContact

{

Name = "Example Contact",

Url = new Uri("https://example.com/contact")

},

License = new OpenApiLicense

{

Name = "Example License",

Url = new Uri("https://example.com/license")

}

});

});

The Swagger UI displays the version's information:



### XML comments

XML comments can be enabled with the following approaches:

Add [GenerateDocumentationFile](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/core/project-sdk/msbuild-props#generatedocumentationfile) to the .csproj file:

<PropertyGroup>

<GenerateDocumentationFile>true</GenerateDocumentationFile>

</PropertyGroup>

Enabling XML comments provides debug information for undocumented public types and members. Undocumented types and members are indicated by the warning message. For example, the following message indicates a violation of warning code 1591:

warning CS1591: Missing XML comment for publicly visible type or member 'TodoController'

To suppress warnings project-wide, define a semicolon-delimited list of warning codes to ignore in the project file. Appending the warning codes to $(NoWarn); applies the [C# default values](https://github.com/dotnet/sdk/blob/2eb6c546931b5bcb92cd3128b93932a980553ea1/src/Tasks/Microsoft.NET.Build.Tasks/targets/Microsoft.NET.Sdk.CSharp.props#L16) too.

<PropertyGroup>

<GenerateDocumentationFile>true</GenerateDocumentationFile>

<NoWarn>$(NoWarn);1591</NoWarn>

</PropertyGroup>

To suppress warnings only for specific members, enclose the code in [#pragma warning](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/language-reference/preprocessor-directives/preprocessor-pragma-warning) preprocessor directives. This approach is useful for code that shouldn't be exposed via the API docs. In the following example, warning code CS1591 is ignored for the entire TodoContext class. Enforcement of the warning code is restored at the close of the class definition. Specify multiple warning codes with a comma-delimited list.

namespace SwashbuckleSample.Models;

#pragma warning disable CS1591

public class TodoContext : DbContext

{

public TodoContext(DbContextOptions<TodoContext> options) : base(options) { }

public DbSet<TodoItem> TodoItems => Set<TodoItem>();

}

#pragma warning restore CS1591

Configure Swagger to use the XML file that's generated with the preceding instructions. For Linux or non-Windows operating systems, file names and paths can be case-sensitive. For example, a TodoApi.XML file is valid on Windows but not CentOS.

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen(options =>

{

options.SwaggerDoc("v1", new OpenApiInfo

{

Version = "v1",

Title = "ToDo API",

Description = "An ASP.NET Core Web API for managing ToDo items",

TermsOfService = new Uri("https://example.com/terms"),

Contact = new OpenApiContact

{

Name = "Example Contact",

Url = new Uri("https://example.com/contact")

},

License = new OpenApiLicense

{

Name = "Example License",

Url = new Uri("https://example.com/license")

}

});

// using System.Reflection;

var xmlFilename = $"{Assembly.GetExecutingAssembly().GetName().Name}.xml";

options.IncludeXmlComments(Path.Combine(AppContext.BaseDirectory, xmlFilename));

});

In the preceding code, [Reflection](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/concepts/reflection) is used to build an XML file name matching that of the web API project. The [AppContext.BaseDirectory](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.appcontext.basedirectory) property is used to construct a path to the XML file. Some Swagger features (for example, schemata of input parameters or HTTP methods and response codes from the respective attributes) work without the use of an XML documentation file. For most features, namely method summaries and the descriptions of parameters and response codes, the use of an XML file is mandatory.

Adding triple-slash comments to an action enhances the Swagger UI by adding the description to the section header. Add a [<summary>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/xmldoc/summary) element above the Delete action:

/// <summary>

/// Deletes a specific TodoItem.

/// </summary>

/// <param name="id"></param>

/// <returns></returns>

[HttpDelete("{id}")]

public async Task<IActionResult> Delete(long id)

{

var item = await \_context.TodoItems.FindAsync(id);

if (item is null)

{

return NotFound();

}

\_context.TodoItems.Remove(item);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return NoContent();

}

The Swagger UI displays the inner text of the preceding code's <summary> element:



The UI is driven by the generated JSON schema:

"delete": {

"tags": [

"Todo"

],

"summary": "Deletes a specific TodoItem.",

"parameters": [

{

"name": "id",

"in": "path",

"description": "",

"required": true,

"schema": {

"type": "integer",

"format": "int64"

}

}

],

"responses": {

"200": {

"description": "Success"

}

}

},

Add a [<remarks>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/xmldoc/remarks) element to the Create action method documentation. It supplements information specified in the <summary> element and provides a more robust Swagger UI. The <remarks> element content can consist of text, JSON, or XML.

/// <summary>

/// Creates a TodoItem.

/// </summary>

/// <param name="item"></param>

/// <returns>A newly created TodoItem</returns>

/// <remarks>

/// Sample request:

///

/// POST /Todo

/// {

/// "id": 1,

/// "name": "Item #1",

/// "isComplete": true

/// }

///

/// </remarks>

/// <response code="201">Returns the newly created item</response>

/// <response code="400">If the item is null</response>

[HttpPost]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status201Created)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status400BadRequest)]

public async Task<IActionResult> Create(TodoItem item)

{

\_context.TodoItems.Add(item);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return CreatedAtAction(nameof(Get), new { id = item.Id }, item);

}

Notice the UI enhancements with these additional comments:



### Data annotations

Mark the model with attributes, found in the [System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.componentmodel.dataannotations) namespace, to help drive the Swagger UI components.

Add the [Required] attribute to the Name property of the TodoItem class:

using System.ComponentModel;

using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations;

namespace SwashbuckleSample.Models;

public class TodoItem

{

public long Id { get; set; }

[Required]

public string Name { get; set; } = null!;

[DefaultValue(false)]

public bool IsComplete { get; set; }

}

The presence of this attribute changes the UI behavior and alters the underlying JSON schema:

"schemas": {

"TodoItem": {

"required": [

"name"

],

"type": "object",

"properties": {

"id": {

"type": "integer",

"format": "int64"

},

"name": {

"type": "string"

},

"isComplete": {

"type": "boolean",

"default": false

}

},

"additionalProperties": false

}

},

Add the [Produces("application/json")] attribute to the API controller. Its purpose is to declare that the controller's actions support a response content type of *application/json*:

[ApiController]

[Route("api/[controller]")]

[Produces("application/json")]

public class TodoController : ControllerBase

{

The **Media type** drop-down selects this content type as the default for the controller's GET actions:



As the usage of data annotations in the web API increases, the UI and API help pages become more descriptive and useful.

### Describe response types

Developers consuming a web API are most concerned with what's returned—specifically response types and error codes (if not standard). The response types and error codes are denoted in the XML comments and data annotations.

The Create action returns an HTTP 201 status code on success. An HTTP 400 status code is returned when the posted request body is null. Without proper documentation in the Swagger UI, the consumer lacks knowledge of these expected outcomes. Fix that problem by adding the highlighted lines in the following example:

/// <summary>

/// Creates a TodoItem.

/// </summary>

/// <param name="item"></param>

/// <returns>A newly created TodoItem</returns>

/// <remarks>

/// Sample request:

///

/// POST /Todo

/// {

/// "id": 1,

/// "name": "Item #1",

/// "isComplete": true

/// }

///

/// </remarks>

/// <response code="201">Returns the newly created item</response>

/// <response code="400">If the item is null</response>

[HttpPost]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status201Created)]

[ProducesResponseType(StatusCodes.Status400BadRequest)]

public async Task<IActionResult> Create(TodoItem item)

{

\_context.TodoItems.Add(item);

await \_context.SaveChangesAsync();

return CreatedAtAction(nameof(Get), new { id = item.Id }, item);

}

The Swagger UI now clearly documents the expected HTTP response codes:



Conventions can be used as an alternative to explicitly decorating individual actions with [ProducesResponseType]. For more information, see [Use web API conventions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/web-api/advanced/conventions?view=aspnetcore-6.0).

To support the [ProducesResponseType] decoration, the [Swashbuckle.AspNetCore.Annotations](https://github.com/domaindrivendev/Swashbuckle.AspNetCore/blob/master/README.md#swashbuckleaspnetcoreannotations) package offers extensions to enable and enrich the response, schema, and parameter metadata.

### Customize the UI (skip)

The default UI is both functional and presentable. However, API documentation pages should represent your brand or theme. Branding the Swashbuckle components requires adding the resources to serve static files and building the folder structure to host those files.

Enable Static File Middleware:

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseStaticFiles();

app.MapControllers();

To inject additional CSS stylesheets, add them to the project's wwwroot folder and specify the relative path in the middleware options:

app.UseSwaggerUI(options =>

{

options.InjectStylesheet("/swagger-ui/custom.css");

});

# ASP.NET Core – Caching

<https://code-maze.com/aspnetcore-in-memory-caching/>

## What is Caching?

Caching is the technique of storing the frequently accessed data at a temporary location for quicker access in the future. This can significantly improve the performance of an application by reducing the time required for connecting with the data source frequently and sending data across the network. This works best with data that doesn’t change frequently but takes time to populate. Once cached, we can fetch this data very quickly. That said, we should never blindly depend on cached data and there should always be a fall-back mechanism. Moreover, we should periodically refresh the data stored in the cache so that it doesn’t become stale.

## What is In-Memory Caching in ASP.NET Core?

ASP.NET Core supports two types of caching out of the box:

* **In-Memory Caching** – This stores data on the application server memory.
* **Distributed Caching** – This stores data on an external service that multiple application servers can share.

**In-Memory Caching in ASP.NET Core is the simplest form of cache in which the application stores data in the memory of the webserver.** This is based on the IMemoryCache interface which represents a cache object stored in the application’s memory. Since the application maintains an in-memory cache on the server memory, if we want to run the app on multiple servers, we should ensure sessions are sticky. **A Sticky session is a mechanism in which we make all requests from a client go to the same server**.

## Implementing an In-Memory Cache

Sample: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/TodoApi>

**Steps**:

* Go through the “cache” and “IMemoryCache” code in the TodoApi project.
  + Program.cs: uncomment this line:

builder.Services.AddMemoryCache();

* + TodoItemsCacheController

## Configuring the Cache Options

We can configure the behavior of in-memory caching using the MemoryCacheEntryOptions object. MemoryCacheEntryOptions exposes several methods to set different cache properties:

var cacheEntryOptions = new MemoryCacheEntryOptions**()**

.SetSlidingExpiration**(**TimeSpan.FromSeconds**(**60**))**

.SetAbsoluteExpiration**(**TimeSpan.FromSeconds**(**3600**))**

.SetPriority**(**CacheItemPriority.Normal**)**

.SetSize**(**1024**)**;

* **SlidingExpiration** – This determines how long a cache entry can be inactive before it is removed from the cache. It is a good practice to set a lower value like 1 minute or so. We can use the SetSlidingExpiration() method for setting this value.
* **AbsoluteExpiration** – The problem with sliding expiration is that if we keep on accessing the cache entry, it will never expire. Absolute expiration solve this by making sure that the cache entry expires by an absolute time irrespective of whether it is still active or not. It is a good practice to set this to a higher value like 1 hour or so.  We can use the SetAbsoluteExpiration() method for setting this value. **A good caching strategy is to use a combination of sliding and absolute expiration**.
* **Priority** – This sets the priority of the cached object. By default, the priority will be **Normal**, but we can set it to **Low**, **High**, **Never Remove**, etc. depending on what priority we need to assign for the cache. We can use the SetPriority() method for setting this value. As the server tries to free up the memory, the priority that we set for the cache item will determine if it will be removed from the cache.
* **Size** – This allows us to set a size limit for cache entry so that it doesn’t consume a large number of server resources which can impact the application performance. We can use the SetSize() method for setting this value.

# ASP.NET Core – Security

## ASP.NET Core security features

ASP.NET Core provides many tools and libraries to secure ASP.NET Core apps such as built-in identity providers and third-party identity services such as Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn. ASP.NET Core provides several approaches to store app secrets.

### Authentication vs. Authorization

[Authentication](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/authentication/?view=aspnetcore-6.0) is a process in which a user provides credentials that are then compared to those stored in an operating system, database, app or resource. If they match, users authenticate successfully, and can then perform actions that they're authorized for, during an [authorization](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/authorization/introduction?view=aspnetcore-6.0) process. The authorization refers to the process that determines what a user is allowed to do.

Another way to think of authentication is to consider it as a way to enter a space, such as a server, database, app or resource, while authorization is which actions the user can perform to which objects inside that space (server, database, or app).

Despite the similar-sounding terms, authentication and authorization are separate steps in the login process. Understanding the difference between the two is key to successfully implementing an IAM solution.

Let's use an analogy to outline the differences.

Consider a person walking up to a locked door to provide care to a pet while the family is away on vacation. That person needs:

* **Authentication**, in the form of a key. The lock on the door only grants access to someone with the correct key in much the same way that a system only grants access to users who have the correct credentials.
* **Authorization,**in the form of permissions. Once inside, the person has the authorization to access the kitchen and open the cupboard that holds the pet food. The person may not have permission to go into the bedroom for a quick nap.

Authentication and authorization work together in this example. A pet sitter has the right to enter the house (authentication), and once there, they have access to certain areas (authorization).

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Authentication** | **Authorization** |
| **What does it do?** | Verifies credentials | Grants or denies permissions |
| **How does it work?** | Through passwords, biometrics, one-time pins, or apps | Through settings maintained by security teams |
| **Is it visible to the user?** | Yes | No |
| **It is changeable by the user?** | Partially | No |
| **How does data move?** | Through ID tokens | Through access tokens |

### Common Vulnerabilities in software

ASP.NET Core and EF contain features that help you secure your apps and prevent security breaches. The following list of links takes you to documentation detailing techniques to avoid the most common security vulnerabilities in web apps:

* [Cross-Site Scripting (XSS) attacks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/cross-site-scripting?view=aspnetcore-6.0)
* [SQL injection attacks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/ef/core/querying/raw-sql)
* [Cross-Site Request Forgery (XSRF/CSRF) attacks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/anti-request-forgery?view=aspnetcore-6.0)
* [Open redirect attacks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/aspnet/core/security/preventing-open-redirects?view=aspnetcore-6.0)

There are more vulnerabilities that you should be aware of. For more information, see the other articles in the **Security and Identity** section of the table of contents.

## Security - IDaaS

The security aspects, in particular, of identity management, is an important challenge when we develop web or mobile applications. It is difficult and can always be a risk to develop it ourselves. The good news is that there are several identity management providers — Identity-as-a-Service — that resolve these aspects for us. Most are based on two industry standards highly adopted by many digital companies — [**OAuth 2.0**](https://oauth.net/2/) and [**OpenID Connect**](http://openid.net/connect/).

Many services are part of broader cloud solutions like Amazon Web Services Cognito and Microsoft Azure Active Directory B2C. There are also solutions provided by companies that are dedicated only to these types of services, such as Auth0 and Okta. Likewise, Google and Facebook use these standards to offer access to their platforms and other applications.

Before looking at the examples and how to use them, compare one of each group. Although **AWS Cognito** and **Okta** offer the same basic services related to identity management, other aspects are very different offers. Prices and characteristics differ significantly.

## IDaaS – Okta and ASP.NET Core

### My Okta (Github)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Name** | **Audience** | **Issuer URI** |
| default | api://default | https://dev-88745611.okta.com/oauth2/default |

* App Integration Name: WeatherForecast API Services App
* Client Id: 0oa5dz2otei9Ce5or5d7
* Client Secret: YIBGMXwvgAGPtWnyFsXiOWuwen5-fcnPT5Rh9bXh
  + 0oa5dz2otei9Ce5or5d7:YIBGMXwvgAGPtWnyFsXiOWuwen5-fcnPT5Rh9bXh
* Okta Domain: dev-88745611.okta.com

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Okta_ClientFlowDotNetSix>

### [What is the client credentials flow](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#what-is-the-client-credentials-flow)

<https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api>

**Other refs**:

* <https://dzone.com/articles/identity-as-a-service-idaas-okta-amp-asp-netnbspco>
* <https://dzone.com/articles/identity-as-a-service-idaas-asp-net-core-api-and-o>

The [client credentials flow](https://developer.okta.com/docs/guides/implement-grant-type/clientcreds/main/) is a server-to-server flow that allows applications to request resources on behalf of itself rather than a user. The client credentials flow requires the client id and the client secret, and exchanges those for an access token.



In this tutorial, you will use Okta to implement the client credentials flow in your .NET 6 API. To do this, you will set up your application in Okta’s admin portal. You will then learn how to retrieve the token from your authorization server. I will use an Advanced Rest Client to obtain the token, but you can use Postman or even write your own client. You will then write a JWT verifier in your .NET 6 application to protect your resource server. Finally, you will call your API using the JWT you obtained from your authorization server to access the resource requested.

### [Prerequisites](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#prerequisites)

* [Visual Studio 2022](https://code.visualstudio.com/)
* [.NET 6](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/en-us/download/dotnet/6.0)
* A free [Okta Developer Account](https://developer.okta.com/signup) (to handle your OAuth needs)
* [Postman](https://www.postman.com/), [Advanced Rest Client](https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/advanced-rest-client/hgmloofddffdnphfgcellkdfbfbjeloo?hl=en-US), or any other API Testing tool

### [Set up your Okta authorization server](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#set-up-your-okta-authorization-server)

On the[Okta Developer](https://developer.okta.com/signup/) (<https://developer.okta.com/signup/>) site, you can create a new account. After completing the form, it shows us the welcome message. We also received an email from Okta to confirm our account and the temporary password to access our new account.

The first thing you’ll need to do is set up your authorization server. Typically in a production environment, you would want to create a new authorization server, but the default server that comes with your Okta developer account should be sufficient for this demo. Navigate to the API section on the Security menu in your Okta admin portal.

Note the Audience and Issuer URI of the default authorization server. You will need these in your application. Next, click on **default** and navigate to the Scopes tab. Add a new custom scope by clicking on **Add Scope** and give it the name api. Your Display phrase and Description can be anything you like.



Next, navigate to the Applications page under the Applications menu. Click **Create App Integration** and then select API Services. Give your application a meaningful name; I named mine ‘WeatherForecast API Services App’. Make a note of your Client ID and your Client secret. You will need these to obtain the access code from your authorization server.

### [Create your web API](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#create-your-web-api)

Next, you can begin work on your resource API. Open Visual Studio 2022 and select Create a new project. Find the option for ASP.NET Core Web API and press **Next**.

Name your application Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix and click **Next**. Finally, under Additional Information select .NET 6.0 (Long-term support) as your framework. Click on **Create** and give VS a moment to scaffold your application.

Once Visual Studio has completed this process you will be presented with some boilerplate code, along with a brief sample for WeatherForecast. This WeatherForecastController serves as a demonstration for setting up your .NET 6 Web API. You are going to borrow this demo application and expand on it to properly implement the client credentials flow.

### [Install your dependencies](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#install-your-dependencies)

You’ll need three dependencies to make your JWT verification code work properly.

Install-Package Microsoft.IdentityModel.Protocols -Version 6.16.0

Install-Package Microsoft.IdentityModel.Protocols.OpenIdConnect -Version 6.16.0

At this time, Okta does not provide a JWT Verification library for .NET, but .NET itself does via the JwtSecurityTokenHandler object. To access the libraries required to make the JwtSecurityTokenHandler work, you will need the packages from Microsoft listed above.

### [Set up your appsettings.json files](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#set-up-your-appsettingsjson-files)

Next, you’ll want to set up your configuration files. If you’ve pulled this code from GitHub you should have a file called appsettings.json with the code below in it.

{

"Logging": {

"LogLevel": {

"Default": "Information",

"Microsoft.AspNetCore": "Warning"

}

},

"AllowedHosts": "\*",

"Okta": {

"Issuer": ""

}

}

This serves as a template for the appsettings.Development.json you will add shortly. If you started coding this program from scratch then appsettings.Development.json should already exist and you can replace the code with the following:

{

"Logging": {

"LogLevel": {

"Default": "Information",

"Microsoft.AspNetCore": "Warning"

}

},

"AllowedHosts": "\*",

"Okta": {

"Issuer": "https://{yourOktaDomain}/oauth2/default"

}

}

// "Issuer": "https://dev-88745611.okta.com/oauth2/default"

The default endpoint in this URI refers to the authorization server. Assuming you used the default authorization server this should work. However, if you are using a custom authorization server you will want to obtain the Issuer from your Okta admin portal.

### [Add your API code](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#add-your-api-code)

Start by adding a new folder to your solution called Okta and add the file IJwtValidator.cs to it. Replace the boilerplate code with the code below.

using System.Threading.Tasks;

using System.IdentityModel.Tokens.Jwt;

namespace Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta

{

public interface IJwtValidator

{

Task<JwtSecurityToken> ValidateToken(string token, CancellationToken ct = default(CancellationToken));

}

}

Next, add the implementation for this interface in the same folder, but name it OktaJwtvalidation.cs. The code in this file is below.

using System.IdentityModel.Tokens.Jwt;

using Microsoft.Extensions.Options;

using Microsoft.IdentityModel.Protocols;

using Microsoft.IdentityModel.Protocols.OpenIdConnect;

using Microsoft.IdentityModel.Tokens;

namespace Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta

{

public class OktaJwtValidation : IJwtValidator

{

private readonly string \_issuer;

private readonly ConfigurationManager<OpenIdConnectConfiguration> \_configurationManager;

public OktaJwtValidation(IOptions<OktaJwtVerificationOptions> options)

{

\_issuer = options.Value.Issuer;

\_configurationManager = new ConfigurationManager<OpenIdConnectConfiguration>(

\_issuer + "/.well-known/oauth-authorization-server",

new OpenIdConnectConfigurationRetriever(),

new HttpDocumentRetriever());

}

public async Task<JwtSecurityToken> ValidateToken(string token, CancellationToken ct = default(CancellationToken))

{

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(token))

{

throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(token));

}

if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(\_issuer))

{

throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(\_issuer));

}

var discoveryDocument = await \_configurationManager.GetConfigurationAsync(ct);

var signingKeys = discoveryDocument.SigningKeys;

var validationParameters = new TokenValidationParameters

{

RequireExpirationTime = true,

RequireSignedTokens = true,

ValidateIssuer = true,

ValidIssuer = \_issuer,

ValidateIssuerSigningKey = true,

IssuerSigningKeys = signingKeys,

ValidateLifetime = true,

ClockSkew = TimeSpan.FromMinutes(2),

ValidateAudience = false,

};

try

{

var principal = new JwtSecurityTokenHandler()

.ValidateToken(token, validationParameters, out var rawValidatedToken);

return (JwtSecurityToken)rawValidatedToken;

}

catch (Exception e)

{

*// Logging, etc.*

return null;

}

}

}

}

This implementation uses the ConfigurationManager to obtain the rotating signing keys from your Okta authorization server. With those keys, it can use the JwtSecurityTokenHandler provided by .NET to validate the token. If the token is invalid, the method will throw an exception and return null to the calling code.

The last piece you’ll need for the validation is the OktaJwtVerificationOptions you passed into this class using the IOptions pattern. Add a file for OktaJwtVerificationOptions.cs in the Okta folder and replace the code in there with the code below.

namespace Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta

{

public class OktaJwtVerificationOptions

{

public string Issuer { get; set; }

}

}

Later, you will bind this class to your configuration to pass the Issuer from your appsettings.Development.json file to your OktaJwtValidation class.

Next, replace the code in Controllers.WeatherForecaseController.cs with the following.

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

namespace Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Controllers

{

[ApiController]

[Route("[controller]")]

public class WeatherForecastController : ControllerBase

{

private static readonly string[] Summaries = new[]

{

"Freezing", "Bracing", "Chilly", "Cool", "Mild", "Warm", "Balmy", "Hot", "Sweltering", "Scorching"

};

private readonly ILogger<WeatherForecastController> \_logger;

private readonly Okta.IJwtValidator \_validationService;

public WeatherForecastController(ILogger<WeatherForecastController> logger, Okta.IJwtValidator validationService)

{

\_logger = logger;

\_validationService = validationService;

}

[HttpGet(Name = "GetWeatherForecast")]

public async Task<IActionResult> Get()

{

var authToken = this.HttpContext.Request.Headers["Authorization"].ToString();

if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(authToken))

{

return Unauthorized();

}

var validatedToken = await \_validationService.ValidateToken(authToken.Split(" ")[1]);

if(validatedToken == null)

{

return Unauthorized();

}

return new JsonResult(Enumerable.Range(1, 5).Select(index => new WeatherForecast

{

Date = DateTime.Now.AddDays(index),

TemperatureC = Random.Shared.Next(-20, 55),

Summary = Summaries[Random.Shared.Next(Summaries.Length)]

})

.ToArray());

}

}

}

As stated above, you are borrowing the WeatherForecast code that Microsoft provides as a demo. However, you are modifying the Get call to read the token from the authorization header and pass it to the \_validationService you just wrote. If the token isn’t present, the controller will return an Unauthorized result. If the token is there, the controller will pass it to the \_validationService. If that result is null, which is a product of the token being invalid, then you will return the Unauthorized result. Otherwise, you will return the weather data.

This implementation is a bit crude and not exactly fit for production. But using the OktaJwtValidation code you could wrap this in some middleware or create an attribute that uses the ValidateToken method if you wish to refine it.

Finally, replace the code in Program.cs with the following.

var builder = WebApplication.CreateBuilder(args);

*// Add services to the container.*

builder.Services.AddControllers();

*// Learn more about configuring Swagger/OpenAPI at https://aka.ms/aspnetcore/swashbuckle*

builder.Services.AddEndpointsApiExplorer();

builder.Services.AddSwaggerGen();

builder.Services.Configure<Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta.OktaJwtVerificationOptions>(

builder.Configuration.GetSection("Okta"));

builder.Services.AddTransient<Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta.IJwtValidator, Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.Okta.OktaJwtValidation>();

var app = builder.Build();

*// Configure the HTTP request pipeline.*

if (app.Environment.IsDevelopment())

{

app.UseSwagger();

app.UseSwaggerUI();

}

app.UseHttpsRedirection();

app.UseAuthorization();

app.MapControllers();

app.Run();

In addition to the boilerplate code from Visual Studio, this class also configures your OktaJwtVerificationOptions and the dependency injection for the IJwtValidator.

### [Test your .NET 6 API](https://developer.okta.com/blog/2022/04/20/dotnet-6-web-api#test-your-net-6-api)

var clientId = "0oa5dz2otei9Ce5or5d7";

var clientSecret = "YIBGMXwvgAGPtWnyFsXiOWuwen5-fcnPT5Rh9bXh";

//var base64ClientIdClientSecret = "MG9hNWR6Mm90ZWk5Q2U1b3I1ZDc6WUlCR01Yd3ZnQUdQdFdueUZzWGlPV3V3ZW41LWZjblBUNVJoOWJYaA==";

Now you are ready to see the flow come together. First, start your Web API in Visual Studio.

Next, open your API test tool of choice (such as Postman, or using the built in Swagger test page) and set up your request to the Okta authorization server.

* https://{yourOktaDomain}/oauth2/default/v1/token POST
* headers - Accept: application/json Authorization: Basic {yourBase64EncodedCredentials} Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded
* body - grant\_type: client\_credentials scope: api

{yourBase64EncodedCredentials} is a base64 encoded string of the format {yourClientId}:{yourClientSecret}. You can also write a small C# application to this or follow along in our [documentation on how to apply Base64 encoding](https://developer.okta.com/docs/guides/implement-grant-type/clientcreds/main/#flow-specifics).

#### On Linux

Run the following command to generate a base64 string for your client id and secret:

$ echo -n clientid:secret | base64

If the generated string is split into multiple lines, copy it in a text file and merge them into a single line.

#### On Windows

Download Base64.exe from [here](https://www.di-mgt.com.au/base64-for-windows.html) (<https://www.di-mgt.com.au/base64-for-windows.html>).

Download the zip file and unzip it in a folder.

Copy your client id and secret in a text file on a single line in this format: clientid:secret. **Make sure there is ONLY a single line in the file**.

Run the following command on the prompt:

C:\temp\base64> Base64 <filenname>

If the generated string is split into multiple lines, copy it in a text file and merge them into a single line.

#### In Postman





You’ll remember that api was the custom scope you added to your authorization server above.

Send your request and you should receive a response that includes the access\_token. Copy the access\_token and use it in the call to the API next.

Create a new request in your API test tool and use the following setup.

* {yourWebAPIDomain}/weatherforecast GET
* headers - Authorization: Bearer {yourAccessToken}



Send your request and you should be greeted with a weather forecast for the upcoming few days.

#### Using CURL

* You can get the token using curl:

curl --request POST --url https://dev-88745611.okta.com/oauth2/default/v1/token --header 'accept: application/json' --header 'authorization: Basic MG9h…' --header 'cache-control: no-cache' --header 'content-type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded' --data 'grant\_type=client\_credentials&scope=api'

* Copy the generated access\_token and call the API:

curl --request GET --url {yourWebAPIDomain}/weatherforecast --header 'authorization: Bearer {access\_token}'

## Getting Token from an Application and Consuming the API

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Okta_ClientFlowDotNetSix>

* Solution: Okta\_ClientFlowDotNetSix.sln
* Project: Okta\_ConsoleClient.csproj

## Okta Authorization

### ASP.NET Core MVC Web App with User Login

* <https://developer.okta.com/code/dotnet/aspnetcore/>
* <https://developer.okta.com/docs/guides/sign-into-web-app-redirect/asp-net-core-3/main/>

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/OktaWebApp>

Project: OktaWebApp.csproj

Add authentication with Okta's redirect model (opens new window) to your server-side web app. This example uses Okta as the user store.

Learning outcomes

* Create an integration that represents your app in your Okta org.
* Add dependencies and configure your app to use Okta redirect authentication.
* Test user sign in flow.

### Create an Okta integration for your app

1. [Sign in to your Okta organization (opens new window)](https://developer.okta.com/login) with your administrator account.
2. Click the **Admin** button on the top right of the page.
3. Open the Applications configuration pane by selecting **Applications** > **Applications**.
4. Click **Create App Integration**.
5. Select a **Sign-in method** of **OIDC - OpenID Connect**, then click **Next**.
6. Select an **Application type** of **Web Application**, then click **Next**.

**Note:** If you choose an inappropriate application type, it can break the sign-in or sign-out flows by requiring the verification of a client secret, which is something that public clients don't have.

1. Enter an App integration name.
2. Enter the **Sign-in redirect URIs** for local development, such as <http://localhost:xxxx/authorization-code/callback>.
3. Enter the **Sign-out redirect URIs** for both local development, such as <http://localhost:xxxx/signout/callback>.
4. In the **Assignments** section, define the type of **Controlled access** for your app. Select the **Everyone** group for now.
5. Click **Save** to create the app integration. The configuration pane for the integration opens after it's saved. Keep this pane open as you copy some values when configuring your app.
   * Copy the values for Client Id, Client Secret and Okta Domain and save it in Notepad.

### Create app

In this section you create a sample web app and add redirect authentication using your new app integration.

#### Create a new project

For this tutorial, we create a sample app from scratch using the Visual Studio ASP.NET Core Web App project template.

1. Launch Visual Studio 2022, **select New project > ASP.NET Core Web App (Model-View-Controller)**, and click **Next**.
2. Name your project and click **Next**.
3. **Authentication** as **None** (don't worry, Okta handles this part) and select **Configure for HTTPS**.
4. Click **Create**.

#### Add packages

Add the required dependencies for using the Okta SDK with your web app.

install-package Okta.AspNetCore -version 4.0.0

#### Configure your app

Our app uses information from the Okta integration that we created earlier to configure communication with the API: Client ID, Client Secret, and Issuer.

1. Add Okta settings in appsettings.json and add the following manually as a top-level node, replacing the placeholders with your own values. Use the values you copied from the earlier steps to [create an integration app on Okta](#_Create_an_Okta):

"Okta": {

"OktaDomain": "https://${yourOktaDomain}",

"ClientId": "${clientId}",

"ClientSecret": "${clientSecret}",

"AuthorizationServerId": "default"

}

"Okta": {

"OktaDomain": "https://dev-88745611.okta.com",

"ClientId": "0oa5fe13yeYlJtM7f5d7",

"ClientSecret": "qMaDVtAWpujcVproxVS\_GoQdeGW-PiNNtTfIQ5RX",

"AuthorizationServerId": "default"

}

1. You also need to configure your MVC app to enable cookies and OpenID Connect as the default protocol for authentication. Open Program.cs and add the following using statements at the top . In Program.cs, add the following using statements:

using Okta.AspNetCore;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authorization;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Authorization;

1. Add the following lines in Program.cs:

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.ConfigureApplicationCookie(options =>

{

options.Cookie.HttpOnly = true;

options.Cookie.SecurePolicy = Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http.CookieSecurePolicy.Always;

})

.AddAuthentication(options =>

{

options.DefaultScheme = CookieAuthenticationDefaults.AuthenticationScheme;

options.DefaultChallengeScheme = OpenIdConnectDefaults.AuthenticationScheme;

})

.AddCookie()

.AddOktaMvc(new OktaMvcOptions

{

// Replace these values with your Okta configuration

OktaDomain = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:OktaDomain"),

AuthorizationServerId = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:AuthorizationServerId"),

ClientId = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:ClientId"),

ClientSecret = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:ClientSecret"),

Scope = new List<string> { "openid", "profile", "email" },

});

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

1. Add the following line immediately above app.UseAuthorization();:

app.UseAuthentication();

#### Redirect to the sign-in page

To authenticate a user, your web app redirects the browser to the Okta-hosted sign-in page. This usually happens from a sign-in action such as clicking a button or when a user visits a protected page.

1. By default, the redirect to the sign-in page happens automatically when users access a protected route. In Visual Studio, to create a universal sign-in link, expand **Views** > **Shared** and open your \_Layout.cshtml file.
2. Insert the following code directly above <ul class="navbar-nav flex-grow-1>:

@if (User.Identity.IsAuthenticated)

{

<ul class="nav navbar-nav navbar-right">

<li><p class="navbar-text">Hello, @User.Identity.Name</p></li>

<li><a class="nav-link" asp-controller="Home" asp-action="Profile" id="profile-button">Profile</a></li>

<li>

<form class="form-inline" asp-controller="Account" asp-action="SignOut" method="post">

<button type="submit" class="nav-link btn btn-link text-dark" id="logout-button">Sign Out</button>

</form>

</li>

</ul>

}

else

{

<ul class="nav navbar-nav navbar-right">

<li><a asp-controller="Account" asp-action="SignIn" id="login-button">Sign In</a></li>

</ul>

}

1. Now you need to handle the Sign In click. Create an empty MVC Controller named AccountController in the Controllers folder.
2. Add the following using statements to the top of the controller:

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authentication;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authentication.Cookies;

using Okta.AspNetCore;

1. Add a new IActionResult for SignIn:

public IActionResult SignIn()

{

if (!HttpContext.User.Identity.IsAuthenticated)

{

return Challenge(OktaDefaults.MvcAuthenticationScheme);

}

return RedirectToAction("Index", "Home");

}

1. Add another IActionResult right below it for SignOut:

[HttpPost]

public IActionResult SignOut()

{

return new SignOutResult(

new[]

{

OktaDefaults.MvcAuthenticationScheme,

CookieAuthenticationDefaults.AuthenticationScheme,

},

new AuthenticationProperties { RedirectUri = "/Home/" });

}

After successful authentication Okta redirects back to the app with an authorization code that's then exchanged for an ID and access token that you can use to confirm sign in status.

#### Define a callback route

To sign users in, your application redirects the browser to an Okta-hosted sign-in page. Okta then redirects back to your application with information about the user.

Your web application must host a route that Okta sends information to when a user signs in. This route is called a callback route or redirect URI. The callback route isn't seen by the user, and it's not the user's final destination. It's just one step in the authentication redirect flow.

Similarly, when your web application contacts Okta to sign a user out, Okta redirects the browser to a sign-out redirect URI that the application must also host.

The Okta ASP.NET Core SDK configures and hosts these routes for you in your web app. By default, the sign-in route is hosted at /authorization-code/callback and the sign-out route is hosted at /signout/callback. You need to update the redirect URIs of your Okta app integration to reflect the development URLs that Visual Studio assigned to your app.

1. In Visual Studio, open **Properties** > **launchSettings.json**.
2. Make a note of the **sslPort** settings under **iisExpress**. In the example below, that's 44300.

"iisSettings": {

"windowsAuthentication": false,

"anonymousAuthentication": true,

"iisExpress": {

"applicationUrl": "http://localhost:1544",

"sslPort": 44300

}

}

1. Open the Okta Admin Console.
2. Select **Applications** > **Applications** from the left navigation.
3. Click the entry for your application integration.
4. Click **Edit** on the **General** tab.
5. Scroll down to the **LOGIN** section.
6. Edit the **Sign-in redirect URIs** to use the **sslPort** that you made note of earlier, for example https://localhost:44300/authorization-code/callback.
7. Edit the **Sign-out redirect URIs** to use the **sslPort** that you made note of earlier, for example https://localhost:44300/signout/callback
8. Click **Save**.

#### Get info about the user

After the user signs in, Okta returns some of their profile information to your app, such as those shown in the [/userinfo response example](https://developer.okta.com/docs/reference/api/oidc/#response-example-success-6). One use of this information is updating your user interface, for example to display the customer's name.

The default profile items (called claims) returned by Okta include the user's email address, name, and preferred username. The claims that you see may differ depending on the scopes requested by your app.

ASP.NET Core automatically populates HttpContext.User with the information Okta sends back about the user. You can check whether the user is signed in with User.Identity.IsAuthenticated in your actions or views and see all of the user's claims in User.Claims.

1. Open up your HomeController and add this using statement:

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authorization;

1. Add a new IActionResult called Profile to hand the claim data over to your View:

[Authorize]

public IActionResult Profile()

{

return View(HttpContext.User.Claims);

}

1. Expand your Views folder, add a new empty Razor View named Profile.cshtml to the Home folder, and replace the contents of the new file with the following code:

@model IEnumerable<System.Security.Claims.Claim>

@{

ViewBag.Title = "View claims";

}

<h2>@ViewBag.Title</h2>

<dl class="dl-horizontal">

@foreach (var claim in Model)

{

<dt title="@claim.Type">

@claim.Type

<button type="button"

class="btn btn-link btn-xs"

aria-label="Copy to clipboard"

title="Copy to clipboard"

data-clipboard-text="@claim.Value">

<span class="glyphicon glyphicon glyphicon-copy" aria-hidden="true"></span>

</button>

</dt>

<dd id="claim-@String.Format("{0}", claim.Type)">@claim.Value</dd>

}

</dl>

### Sign in a user

Test your integration by starting your server and signing in a user (use [asingala@yahoo.com](mailto:asingala@yahoo.com)).

1. Run the project from Visual Studio. The browser loads the welcome page for your new app.
2. Click **Sign In** and you are redirected to Okta to complete the sign-in flow with OIDC.
3. After you have successfully signed in, click **Profile** and you should see a list of user information that came along with the ID token from Okta.

**Note**: If you are sign in as an administrator in the same browser already, it displays your name. You can open an incognito window and create a test user in the Admin Console to use if you want.

### Configure required authentication

Your app can require authentication for the entire site or just for specific routes. Routes that don't require authentication are accessible without signing in, which is also called anonymous access.

#### Require authentication for everything

Some apps require user authentication for all routes, for example a company intranet.

To require authentication for all actions, you can create an authorization policy in the Program.cs class that you can use everywhere. Add the following code immediately after the lines add in Step 3 of the [Configure your app](#_Configure_your_app) section:

builder.Services.AddMvc(o =>

{

var policy = new AuthorizationPolicyBuilder()

.RequireAuthenticatedUser()

.Build();

o.Filters.Add(new AuthorizeFilter(policy));

});

builder.Services.AddControllersWithViews();

#### Require authentication for a specific route

Your website may have a protected portion that is only available to authenticated users.

Use the [Authorize] attribute on controllers or actions to require a signed-in user:

[Authorize]

public IActionResult Protected()

{

// Only for signed-in users!

return View("Profile", HttpContext.User.Claims);

}

#### Allow anonymous access

Your website may enable anonymous access for some content but require a user to sign in for other content or to take some other action. For example, an ecommerce site might allow a user to browse anonymously and add items to a cart, but require a user to sign in for checkout and payment.

You can grant anonymous access for specific URLs by using [AllowAnonymous] on your route:

[AllowAnonymous]

public IActionResult PublicAccess()

{

// For all users, even anonymous ones!

return View();

}

Create a View named PublicAccess.cshtml in the Views -> Home folder for the PublicAccess action with the following code:

@{

ViewData["Title"] = "Public Access";

}

<div class="text-center">

<h1 class="display-4">This page can be accessed by anyone without logging on.</h1>

</div>

Run your app and try accessing the /Home/Protected and /Home/PublicAccess urls.

## Okta - Secure Your API

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/OktaAuthorizationApi>

Project: OktaAuthorizationApi.csproj

1. Create the REST API
2. Add dependencies:

install-package Okta.AspNetCore -version 4.0.0

1. Add Okta settings in appsettings.json:

"Okta": {

"OktaDomain": "https://${yourOktaDomain}",

"AuthorizationServerId": "default",

"Audience": "api://default"

}

"Okta": {

"OktaDomain": "https://dev-88745611.okta.com",

"AuthorizationServerId": "default",

"Audience": "api://default"

}

1. In Program.cs, add the following using statements:

using Okta.AspNetCore;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authorization;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc.Authorization;

1. Add the following lines in Program.cs:

// Add services to the container.

builder.Services.AddAuthentication(options =>

{

options.DefaultAuthenticateScheme = OktaDefaults.ApiAuthenticationScheme;

options.DefaultChallengeScheme = OktaDefaults.ApiAuthenticationScheme;

options.DefaultSignInScheme = OktaDefaults.ApiAuthenticationScheme;

})

.AddOktaWebApi(new OktaWebApiOptions()

{

OktaDomain = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:OktaDomain"),

AuthorizationServerId = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:AuthorizationServerId"),

Audience = builder.Configuration.GetValue<string>("Okta:Audience")

});

builder.Services.AddAuthorization();

builder.Services.AddControllers();

1. Add the following line immediately above app.UseAuthorization();:

app.UseAuthentication();

1. Create the REST endpoints:

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Authorization;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Cors;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Http;

using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Mvc;

using System.Collections.Generic;

using System.Linq;

using System.Security.Claims;

namespace OktaAuthorizationApi.Controllers

{

[ApiController]

[Route("api")]

public class InfoController : ControllerBase

{

// GET: api/whoami

[HttpGet]

[Route("whoami")]

public Dictionary<string, string> GetAuthorized()

{

var principal = HttpContext.User.Identity as ClaimsIdentity;

return principal.Claims

.GroupBy(claim => claim.Type)

.ToDictionary(claim => claim.Key, claim => claim.First().Value);

}

// GET: api/hello

[HttpGet]

[Route("hello")]

public string GetAnonymous()

{

return "You are anonymous";

}

}

}

1. Configure required authentication

In many APIs, all of the endpoints require authorization. In others, there may be a mix of protected and unprotected (anonymous) endpoints. These examples show you how to do both.

**Require authorization for everything:**

To require authentication for all actions, create an authorization policy in the Program.cs class that you can use everywhere:

builder.Services.AddAuthorization();

builder.Services.AddMvc(o =>

{

var policy = new AuthorizationPolicyBuilder()

.RequireAuthenticatedUser()

.Build();

o.Filters.Add(new AuthorizeFilter(policy));

});

1. Allow anonymous access for specific routes

If you have endpoints that need to be accessed without any authorization, instead of securing the entire API like the previous section, you can configure access per route.

Add the [Authorize] and [AllowAnonymous] attributes to the REST endpoints created earlier.

// GET: api/whoami with authorization required

[Authorize]

[HttpGet]

[Route("whoami")]

public Dictionary<string, string> GetAuthorized()...

// GET: api/hello with anonymous access allowed

[AllowAnonymous]

[HttpGet]

[Route("hello")]

public string GetAnonymous()...

1. Configure CORS if necessary

Configuring Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) is only required if the API is being called from a browser app hosted on a different domain. For example, if you are hosting a single-page JavaScript app at example.com, which consumes an API endpoint hosted on api.example.com, you need to enable CORS.

Add CORS in Program.cs

builder.Services.AddCors(options =>

{

options.AddPolicy(

"AllowAll",

builder => builder.AllowAnyOrigin()

.AllowAnyMethod()

.AllowAnyHeader());

});

builder.Services.AddControllers();

1. Enable CORS just before app.UseAuthentication(); and app.UseAuthorization();

app.UseCors();

1. Add the CORS attribute to your API controller:

[EnableCors("AllowAll")] // Enables CORS for this route

[ApiController]

[Route("api")]

public class InfoController : ControllerBase

1. Consume your secure API endpoints

Test your APIs with an access token that is sent to your endpoint for validation.

**Use an access token with your API endpoint**:

In order for someone to make a request to your API, they need an access token. How an access token is obtained depends on the client making the request.

Use Postman (as shown in earlier example) to get an access\_token. Copy the access\_token to use it when calling your API.

1. Run your API and send a request to your API endpoint using Postman

After your API is running locally, you need to test it. Using a tool like Postman or cURL, call your API endpoints to see the responses with and without your token.

https://localhost:44336/api/whoami

Authorization: Bearer ${TOKEN}

https://localhost:44336/api/hello

The expected results are as follows, provided you followed the instructions in the Allow anonymous access for specific routes section:

* api/whoami — 401 response without a valid token, 200 response with a valid token.
* api/hello — response with or without a valid token, due to anonymous access.

## Creating Users on Okta – Users API

The Okta User API provides operations to manage users in your organization.

### Okta API tokens

Okta API tokens are used to authenticate requests to Okta APIs. When calling an Okta API endpoint, you need to supply a valid API token in the HTTP Authorization header, with a valid token specified as the header value. You need to prefix the value with the SSWS identifier, which specifies the proprietary authentication scheme that Okta uses. For example:

Authorization: SSWS 00QCjAl4MlV-WPXM...0HmjFx-vbGua

### Create the token

To create an API token, follow these steps:

1. Sign in to your Okta organization as a user with [administrator privileges (opens new window)](https://help.okta.com/okta_help.htm?id=ext_Security_Administrators).

API tokens have the same permissions as the user who creates them, and if the user permissions change, the API token permissions also change.

1. See the section above on **Privilege level**, regarding the use of a service account when creating an API token, to specifically control the privilege level associated with the token.
2. Access the API page: In the Admin Console, select **API** from the **Security** menu and then select the **Tokens** tab.
3. Click **Create Token**.
4. Name your token and click **Create Token**.
5. Record the token value. This is the only opportunity to see it and record it.

### Token expiration and deactivation

Tokens expire automatically after a certain period and can also be deactivated at any time.

#### Token expiration

Tokens are valid for 30 days from creation or last use, so that the 30 day expiration automatically refreshes with each API call. Tokens that aren't used for 30 days expire. The 30-day period is currently fixed and can't be changed for your organization.

#### Token deactivation

If a user account is deactivated in Okta, any API token created by that user account is deprovisioned at the same time.

# Security - OWASP Top 10

<https://owasp.org/Top10/>

## What's changed in the Top 10 for 2021

There are three new categories, four categories with naming and scoping changes, and some consolidation in the Top 10 for 2021. We've changed names when necessary to focus on the root cause over the symptom.



* [**A01:2021-Broken Access Control**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A01_2021-Broken_Access_Control/) moves up from the fifth position to the category with the most serious web application security risk; the contributed data indicates that on average, 3.81% of applications tested had one or more Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) with more than 318k occurrences of CWEs in this risk category. The 34 CWEs mapped to Broken Access Control had more occurrences in applications than any other category.
* [**A02:2021-Cryptographic Failures**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A02_2021-Cryptographic_Failures/) shifts up one position to #2, previously known as **A3:2017-Sensitive Data Exposure**, which was broad symptom rather than a root cause. The renewed name focuses on failures related to cryptography as it has been implicitly before. This category often leads to sensitive data exposure or system compromise.
* [**A03:2021-Injection**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A03_2021-Injection/) slides down to the third position. 94% of the applications were tested for some form of injection with a max incidence rate of 19%, an average incidence rate of 3.37%, and the 33 CWEs mapped into this category have the second most occurrences in applications with 274k occurrences. Cross-site Scripting is now part of this category in this edition.
* [**A04:2021-Insecure Design**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A04_2021-Insecure_Design/) is a new category for 2021, with a focus on risks related to design flaws. If we genuinely want to "move left" as an industry, we need more threat modeling, secure design patterns and principles, and reference architectures. An insecure design cannot be fixed by a perfect implementation as by definition, needed security controls were never created to defend against specific attacks.
* [**A05:2021-Security Misconfiguration**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A05_2021-Security_Misconfiguration/) moves up from #6 in the previous edition; 90% of applications were tested for some form of misconfiguration, with an average incidence rate of 4.5%, and over 208k occurrences of CWEs mapped to this risk category. With more shifts into highly configurable software, it's not surprising to see this category move up. The former category for **A4:2017-XML External Entities (XXE)** is now part of this risk category.
* [**A06:2021-Vulnerable and Outdated Components**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A06_2021-Vulnerable_and_Outdated_Components/) was previously titled Using Components with Known Vulnerabilities and is #2 in the Top 10 community survey, but also had enough data to make the Top 10 via data analysis. This category moves up from #9 in 2017 and is a known issue that we struggle to test and assess risk. It is the only category not to have any Common Vulnerability and Exposures (CVEs) mapped to the included CWEs, so a default exploit and impact weights of 5.0 are factored into their scores.
* [**A07:2021-Identification and Authentication Failures**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A07_2021-Identification_and_Authentication_Failures/) was previously Broken Authentication and is sliding down from the second position, and now includes CWEs that are more related to identification failures. This category is still an integral part of the Top 10, but the increased availability of standardized frameworks seems to be helping.
* [**A08:2021-Software and Data Integrity Failures**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A08_2021-Software_and_Data_Integrity_Failures/) is a new category for 2021, focusing on making assumptions related to software updates, critical data, and CI/CD pipelines without verifying integrity. One of the highest weighted impacts from Common Vulnerability and Exposures/Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVE/CVSS) data mapped to the 10 CWEs in this category. **A8:2017-Insecure Deserialization** is now a part of this larger category.
* [**A09:2021-Security Logging and Monitoring Failures**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A09_2021-Security_Logging_and_Monitoring_Failures/) was previously **A10:2017-Insufficient Logging & Monitoring** and is added from the Top 10 community survey (#3), moving up from #10 previously. This category is expanded to include more types of failures, is challenging to test for, and isn't well represented in the CVE/CVSS data. However, failures in this category can directly impact visibility, incident alerting, and forensics.
* [**A10:2021-Server-Side Request Forgery**](https://owasp.org/Top10/A10_2021-Server-Side_Request_Forgery_%28SSRF%29/) is added from the Top 10 community survey (#1). The data shows a relatively low incidence rate with above average testing coverage, along with above-average ratings for Exploit and Impact potential. This category represents the scenario where the security community members are telling us this is important, even though it's not illustrated in the data at this time.

## A01:2021 – Broken Access Control

### Overview

Moving up from the fifth position, 94% of applications were tested for some form of broken access control with the average incidence rate of 3.81%, and has the most occurrences in the contributed dataset with over 318k. Notable Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) included are CWE-200: Exposure of Sensitive Information to an Unauthorized Actor, CWE-201: Insertion of Sensitive Information Into Sent Data, and CWE-352: Cross-Site Request Forgery.

### Description

Access control enforces policy such that users cannot act outside of their intended permissions. Failures typically lead to unauthorized information disclosure, modification, or destruction of all data or performing a business function outside the user's limits. Common access control vulnerabilities include:

* Violation of the principle of least privilege or deny by default, where access should only be granted for particular capabilities, roles, or users, but is available to anyone.
* Bypassing access control checks by modifying the URL (parameter tampering or force browsing), internal application state, or the HTML page, or by using an attack tool modifying API requests.
* Permitting viewing or editing someone else's account, by providing its unique identifier (insecure direct object references)
* Accessing API with missing access controls for POST, PUT and DELETE.
* Elevation of privilege. Acting as a user without being logged in or acting as an admin when logged in as a user.
* Metadata manipulation, such as replaying or tampering with a JSON Web Token (JWT) access control token, or a cookie or hidden field manipulated to elevate privileges or abusing JWT invalidation.
* CORS misconfiguration allows API access from unauthorized/untrusted origins.
* Force browsing to authenticated pages as an unauthenticated user or to privileged pages as a standard user.

## A02:2021 – Cryptographic Failures

### Overview

Shifting up one position to #2, previously known as Sensitive Data Exposure, which is more of a broad symptom rather than a root cause, the focus is on failures related to cryptography (or lack thereof). Which often lead to exposure of sensitive data. Notable Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) included are CWE-259: Use of Hard-coded Password, CWE-327: Broken or Risky Crypto Algorithm, and CWE-331 Insufficient Entropy.

### Description

The first thing is to determine the protection needs of data in transit and at rest. For example, passwords, credit card numbers, health records, personal information, and business secrets require extra protection, mainly if that data falls under privacy laws, e.g., EU's General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR), or regulations, e.g., financial data protection such as PCI Data Security Standard (PCI DSS). For all such data:

* Is any data transmitted in clear text? This concerns protocols such as HTTP, SMTP, FTP also using TLS upgrades like STARTTLS. External internet traffic is hazardous. Verify all internal traffic, e.g., between load balancers, web servers, or back-end systems.
* Are any old or weak cryptographic algorithms or protocols used either by default or in older code?
* Are default crypto keys in use, weak crypto keys generated or re-used, or is proper key management or rotation missing? Are crypto keys checked into source code repositories?
* Is encryption not enforced, e.g., are any HTTP headers (browser) security directives or headers missing?
* Is the received server certificate and the trust chain properly validated?
* Are initialization vectors ignored, reused, or not generated sufficiently secure for the cryptographic mode of operation? Is an insecure mode of operation such as ECB in use? Is encryption used when authenticated encryption is more appropriate?
* Are passwords being used as cryptographic keys in absence of a password base key derivation function?
* Is randomness used for cryptographic purposes that was not designed to meet cryptographic requirements? Even if the correct function is chosen, does it need to be seeded by the developer, and if not, has the developer over-written the strong seeding functionality built into it with a seed that lacks sufficient entropy/unpredictability?
* Are deprecated hash functions such as MD5 or SHA1 in use, or are non-cryptographic hash functions used when cryptographic hash functions are needed?
* Are deprecated cryptographic padding methods such as PKCS number 1 v1.5 in use?
* Are cryptographic error messages or side channel information exploitable, for example in the form of padding oracle attacks?

## A03:2021 – Injection

### Overview

Injection slides down to the third position. 94% of the applications were tested for some form of injection with a max incidence rate of 19%, an average incidence rate of 3%, and 274k occurrences. Notable Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) included are CWE-79: Cross-site Scripting, CWE-89: SQL Injection, and CWE-73: External Control of File Name or Path.

### Description

An application is vulnerable to attack when:

* User-supplied data is not validated, filtered, or sanitized by the application.
* Dynamic queries or non-parameterized calls without context-aware escaping are used directly in the interpreter.
* Hostile data is used within object-relational mapping (ORM) search parameters to extract additional, sensitive records.
* Hostile data is directly used or concatenated. The SQL or command contains the structure and malicious data in dynamic queries, commands, or stored procedures.

Some of the more common injections are SQL, NoSQL, OS command, Object Relational Mapping (ORM), LDAP, and Expression Language (EL) or Object Graph Navigation Library (OGNL) injection. The concept is identical among all interpreters. Source code review is the best method of detecting if applications are vulnerable to injections. Automated testing of all parameters, headers, URL, cookies, JSON, SOAP, and XML data inputs is strongly encouraged. Organizations can include static (SAST), dynamic (DAST), and interactive (IAST) application security testing tools into the CI/CD pipeline to identify introduced injection flaws before production deployment.

## A04:2021 – Insecure Design

### Overview

A new category for 2021 focuses on risks related to design and architectural flaws, with a call for more use of threat modeling, secure design patterns, and reference architectures. As a community we need to move beyond "shift-left" in the coding space to pre-code activities that are critical for the principles of Secure by Design. Notable Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) include CWE-209: Generation of Error Message Containing Sensitive Information, CWE-256: Unprotected Storage of Credentials, CWE-501: Trust Boundary Violation, and CWE-522: Insufficiently Protected Credentials.

### Description

Insecure design is a broad category representing different weaknesses, expressed as “missing or ineffective control design.” Insecure design is not the source for all other Top 10 risk categories. There is a difference between insecure design and insecure implementation. We differentiate between design flaws and implementation defects for a reason, they have different root causes and remediation. A secure design can still have implementation defects leading to vulnerabilities that may be exploited. An insecure design cannot be fixed by a perfect implementation as by definition, needed security controls were never created to defend against specific attacks. One of the factors that contribute to insecure design is the lack of business risk profiling inherent in the software or system being developed, and thus the failure to determine what level of security design is required.

## A05:2021 – Security Misconfiguration

### Overview

Moving up from #6 in the previous edition, 90% of applications were tested for some form of misconfiguration, with an average incidence rate of 4.%, and over 208k occurences of a Common Weakness Enumeration (CWE) in this risk category. With more shifts into highly configurable software, it's not surprising to see this category move up. Notable CWEs included are CWE-16 Configuration and CWE-611 Improper Restriction of XML External Entity Reference.

### Description

The application might be vulnerable if the application is:

* Missing appropriate security hardening across any part of the application stack or improperly configured permissions on cloud services.
* Unnecessary features are enabled or installed (e.g., unnecessary ports, services, pages, accounts, or privileges).
* Default accounts and their passwords are still enabled and unchanged.
* Error handling reveals stack traces or other overly informative error messages to users.
* For upgraded systems, the latest security features are disabled or not configured securely.
* The security settings in the application servers, application frameworks (e.g., Struts, Spring, ASP.NET), libraries, databases, etc., are not set to secure values.
* The server does not send security headers or directives, or they are not set to secure values.
* The software is out of date or vulnerable (see [A06:2021-Vulnerable and Outdated Components](https://owasp.org/Top10/A06_2021-Vulnerable_and_Outdated_Components/)).

Without a concerted, repeatable application security configuration process, systems are at a higher risk.

## A06:2021 – Vulnerable and Outdated Components

### Overview

It was #2 from the Top 10 community survey but also had enough data to make the Top 10 via data. Vulnerable Components are a known issue that we struggle to test and assess risk and is the only category to not have any Common Vulnerability and Exposures (CVEs) mapped to the included CWEs, so a default exploits/impact weight of 5.0 is used. Notable CWEs included are CWE-1104: Use of Unmaintained Third-Party Components and the two CWEs from Top 10 2013 and 2017.

### Description

You are likely vulnerable:

* If you do not know the versions of all components you use (both client-side and server-side). This includes components you directly use as well as nested dependencies.
* If the software is vulnerable, unsupported, or out of date. This includes the OS, web/application server, database management system (DBMS), applications, APIs and all components, runtime environments, and libraries.
* If you do not scan for vulnerabilities regularly and subscribe to security bulletins related to the components you use.
* If you do not fix or upgrade the underlying platform, frameworks, and dependencies in a risk-based, timely fashion. This commonly happens in environments when patching is a monthly or quarterly task under change control, leaving organizations open to days or months of unnecessary exposure to fixed vulnerabilities.
* If software developers do not test the compatibility of updated, upgraded, or patched libraries.
* If you do not secure the components’ configurations (see [A05:2021-Security Misconfiguration](https://owasp.org/Top10/A05_2021-Security_Misconfiguration/)).

## A07:2021 – Identification and Authentication Failures

### Overview

Previously known as Broken Authentication, this category slid down from the second position and now includes Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) related to identification failures. Notable CWEs included are CWE-297: Improper Validation of Certificate with Host Mismatch, CWE-287: Improper Authentication, and CWE-384: Session Fixation.

### Description

Confirmation of the user's identity, authentication, and session management is critical to protect against authentication-related attacks. There may be authentication weaknesses if the application:

* Permits automated attacks such as credential stuffing, where the attacker has a list of valid usernames and passwords.
* Permits brute force or other automated attacks.
* Permits default, weak, or well-known passwords, such as "Password1" or "admin/admin".
* Uses weak or ineffective credential recovery and forgot-password processes, such as "knowledge-based answers," which cannot be made safe.
* Uses plain text, encrypted, or weakly hashed passwords data stores (see [A02:2021-Cryptographic Failures](https://owasp.org/Top10/A02_2021-Cryptographic_Failures/)).
* Has missing or ineffective multi-factor authentication.
* Exposes session identifier in the URL.
* Reuse session identifier after successful login.
* Does not correctly invalidate Session IDs. User sessions or authentication tokens (mainly single sign-on (SSO) tokens) aren't properly invalidated during logout or a period of inactivity.

## A08:2021 – Software and Data Integrity Failures

### Overview

A new category for 2021 focuses on making assumptions related to software updates, critical data, and CI/CD pipelines without verifying integrity. One of the highest weighted impacts from Common Vulnerability and Exposures/Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVE/CVSS) data. Notable Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) include CWE-829: Inclusion of Functionality from Untrusted Control Sphere, CWE-494: Download of Code Without Integrity Check, and CWE-502: Deserialization of Untrusted Data.

### Description

Software and data integrity failures relate to code and infrastructure that does not protect against integrity violations. An example of this is where an application relies upon plugins, libraries, or modules from untrusted sources, repositories, and content delivery networks (CDNs). An insecure CI/CD pipeline can introduce the potential for unauthorized access, malicious code, or system compromise. Lastly, many applications now include auto-update functionality, where updates are downloaded without sufficient integrity verification and applied to the previously trusted application. Attackers could potentially upload their own updates to be distributed and run on all installations. Another example is where objects or data are encoded or serialized into a structure that an attacker can see and modify is vulnerable to insecure deserialization.

## A09:2021 – Security Logging and Monitoring Failures

### Overview

Security logging and monitoring came from the Top 10 community survey (#3), up slightly from the tenth position in the OWASP Top 10 2017. Logging and monitoring can be challenging to test, often involving interviews or asking if attacks were detected during a penetration test. There isn't much CVE/CVSS data for this category, but detecting and responding to breaches is critical. Still, it can be very impactful for accountability, visibility, incident alerting, and forensics. This category expands beyond CWE-778 Insufficient Logging to include CWE-117 Improper Output Neutralization for Logs, CWE-223 Omission of Security-relevant Information, and CWE-532 Insertion of Sensitive Information into Log File.

### Description

Returning to the OWASP Top 10 2021, this category is to help detect, escalate, and respond to active breaches. Without logging and monitoring, breaches cannot be detected. Insufficient logging, detection, monitoring, and active response occurs any time:

* Auditable events, such as logins, failed logins, and high-value transactions, are not logged.
* Warnings and errors generate no, inadequate, or unclear log messages.
* Logs of applications and APIs are not monitored for suspicious activity.
* Logs are only stored locally.
* Appropriate alerting thresholds and response escalation processes are not in place or effective.
* Penetration testing and scans by dynamic application security testing (DAST) tools (such as OWASP ZAP) do not trigger alerts.
* The application cannot detect, escalate, or alert for active attacks in real-time or near real-time.

You are vulnerable to information leakage by making logging and alerting events visible to a user or an attacker (see [A01:2021-Broken Access Control](https://owasp.org/Top10/A01_2021-Broken_Access_Control/)).

## A10:2021 – Server-Side Request Forgery (SSRF)

### Overview

This category is added from the Top 10 community survey (#1). The data shows a relatively low incidence rate with above average testing coverage and above-average Exploit and Impact potential ratings. As new entries are likely to be a single or small cluster of Common Weakness Enumerations (CWEs) for attention and awareness, the hope is that they are subject to focus and can be rolled into a larger category in a future edition.

### Description

SSRF flaws occur whenever a web application is fetching a remote resource without validating the user-supplied URL. It allows an attacker to coerce the application to send a crafted request to an unexpected destination, even when protected by a firewall, VPN, or another type of network access control list (ACL).

As modern web applications provide end-users with convenient features, fetching a URL becomes a common scenario. As a result, the incidence of SSRF is increasing. Also, the severity of SSRF is becoming higher due to cloud services and the complexity of architectures.

# C# - Delegates

## Introduction

A Delegate is an abstraction of one or more function pointers (as existed in C++; the explanation about this is out of the scope of this article). The .NET has implemented the concept of function pointers in the form of delegates. With delegates, you can treat a function as data. Delegates allow functions to be passed as parameters, returned from a function as a value, and stored in an array. Delegates have the following characteristics:

* Delegates are derived from the System.MulticastDelegate class.
* They have a signature and a return type. A function that is added to delegates must be compatible with this signature.
* Delegates can point to either static or instance methods.
* Once a delegate object has been created, it may invoke the methods it points to at runtime.
* Delegates can call methods synchronously and asynchronously.

A delegate contains a couple of useful fields. The first is a reference to an object, and the second is a method pointer. When invoking the delegate, the instance method is called on the contained reference. However, if the object reference is null, then the runtime understands this to mean that the method is static. Moreover, invoking a delegate syntactically is the exact same as calling a regular function. Therefore, delegates are perfect for implementing callbacks.

## Example: Callback Operation by Delegate

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/UploadFile/1c8574/delegate-used-for-callback-operation/>

**Source**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/CallbackDemo>

A "**callback**" is a term that refers to a coding design pattern. In this design pattern executable code is passed as an argument to other code and it is expected to call back at some time. This callback can be synchronous or asynchronous. So, in this way large piece of the internal behavior of a method from the outside of a method can be controlled. It is basically a function pointer that is being passed into another function.

Delegate is a famous way to implement Callback in C#.  But, it can also be implemented by Interface. I will explain Callback by Delegate and Interface one by one.

### Callback by Delegate

Delegate provides a way to pass a method as argument to other method. To create a Callback in C#, function address will be passed inside a variable. So, this can be achieved by using Delegate.

The following is an example of Callback by Delegate:

public delegate void TaskCompletedCallBack(string taskResult);

public class CallBack

{

public void StartNewTask(TaskCompletedCallBack taskCompletedCallBack)

{

Console.WriteLine("I have started new Task.");

if (taskCompletedCallBack != null)

taskCompletedCallBack("I have completed Task.");

}

}

public class CallBackTest

{

public void Test()

{

TaskCompletedCallBack callback = TestCallBack;

CallBack testCallBack = new CallBack();

testCallBack.StartNewTask(callback);

}

public void TestCallBack(string result)

{

Console.WriteLine(result);

}

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

CallBackTest callBackTest = new CallBackTest();

callBackTest.Test();

Console.ReadLine();

}

## Callback by Interface

Delegate is a good way to implement Callback. But, you could use Interface for this. Because, suppose you have two methods - one for the success and another for the error and these methods will use Callback, so if you will use Delegate you will have to take two Delegates.

If you need more than one Callback method, then Callback mechanism with the use of Delegate doesn't makes sense. So, the use of Interface provides flexible and well-performing Callback mechanism for this scenario.

Use an Interface to provide Callback mechanism. It provides flexible and well-performing Callback mechanism. The following code example will elaborate the Callback mechanism with the help of Interface:

public interface IMeeting

{

void ShowAgenda(string agenda);

void EmployeeAttendedMeeting(string employee);

void EmployeeLeftMeeting(string employee);

}

public class Meeting : IMeeting

{

public void ShowAgenda(string agenda)

{

Console.WriteLine("Agenda Details: " + agenda);

}

public void EmployeeAttendedMeeting(string employee)

{

Console.WriteLine("Employee Attended Meeting: " + employee);

}

public void EmployeeLeftMeeting(string employee)

{

Console.WriteLine("Employee Left Meeting: " + employee);

}

}

public class MeetingRoom

{

private string message;

public MeetingRoom(string message)

{

this.message = message;

}

public void StartMeeting(IMeeting meeting)

{

// Its a callback

if (meeting != null) meeting.ShowAgenda(message);

}

}

public class MeetingExecution

{

public void PerformMeeting()

{

IMeeting meeging = new Meeting();

MeetingRoom meetingStarted = new MeetingRoom("Code Quality Improvement.");

meetingStarted.StartMeeting(meeging);

}

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

MeetingExecution meetingExecution = new MeetingExecution();

meetingExecution.PerformMeeting();

Console.ReadLine();

}

**Output:**

Agenda Details: Code Quality Improvement.

## Array of Delegates

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/UploadFile/84c85b/delegates-and-events-C-Sharp-net/>

Creating an array of delegates is similar to declaring an array of any type. The following example has a couple of static methods to perform specific math-related operations. Then you use delegates to call these methods.

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

public class Operation

{

public static void Add(int a, int b)

{

Console.WriteLine("Addition={0}",a + b);

}

public static void Multiple(int a, int b)

{

Console.WriteLine("Multiply={0}", a \* b);

}

}

class Program

{

delegate void DelOp(int x, int y);

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Delegate instantiation

DelOp[] obj =

{

new DelOp(Operation.Add),

new DelOp(Operation.Multiple)

};

for (int i = 0; i < obj.Length; i++)

{

obj[i](2, 5);

obj[i](8, 5);

obj[i](4, 6);

}

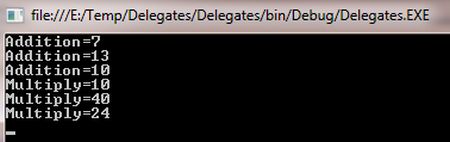
Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

In this code, you instantiate an array of Delop delegates. Each element of the array is initialized to refer to a different operation implemented by the operation class. Then, you loop through the array and apply each operation to three different values. After compiling this code, the output will be as follows;



## Anonymous Methods

Anonymous methods, as their name implies, are nameless methods. They prevent the creation of separate methods, especially when the functionality can be done without a new method creation. Anonymous methods provide a cleaner and more convenient approach while coding.  
  
Define an anonymous method with the delegate keyword and a nameless function body. This code assigns an anonymous method to the delegate. The anonymous method must not have a signature. The signature and return type is inferred from the delegate type. For example, if the delegate has three parameters and returns a double type, the anonymous method would also have the same signature.

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

class Program

{

// Delegate Definition

delegate void operation();

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Delegate instantiation

operation obj = delegate

{

Console.WriteLine("Anonymous method");

};

obj();

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

The anonymous methods reduce the complexity of code, especially where several events are defined. With the anonymous method, the code does not perform faster. The compiler still defines methods implicitly.

## Multicast Delegate

So far, you have seen a single method invocation/call with delegates. If you want to invoke/call more than one method, you must make an explicit call through a delegate more than once. However, it is possible for a delegate to do that via multicast delegates.   
  
A multicast delegate is similar to a virtual container where multiple functions reference a stored invocation list. It successively calls each method in FIFO (first in, first out) order. When you wish to add multiple methods to a delegate object, you use an overloaded += operator rather than a direct assignment.

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

public class Operation

{

public static void Add(int a)

{

Console.WriteLine("Addition={0}", a + 10);

}

public static void Square(int a)

{

Console.WriteLine("Multiple={0}",a \* a);

}

}

class Program

{

delegate void DelOp(int x);

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Delegate instantiation

DelOp obj = Operation.Add;

obj += Operation.Square;

obj(2);

obj(8);

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

The code above combines two delegates that hold the functions Add() and Square(). Here the Add() method executes first and Square() later. This is the order in which the function pointers are added to the multicast delegates.

To remove function references from a multicast delegate, use the overloaded -= operator that allows a caller to remove a method from the delegate object invocation list dynamically.

// Delegate instantiation

DelOp obj = Operation.Add;

obj -= Operation.Square;

Here when the delegate is invoked, the Add() method is executed, but Square() is not because we unsubscribed it with the -= operator from a given runtime notification.  
  
Invoking multiple methods by one delegate may lead to a problematic situation. If one of the methods invoked by a delegate throws an exception, the complete iteration would be aborted. You can avoid such a scenario by iterating the method invocation list. The Delegate class defines a method GetInvocationList that returns an array of Delegate objects.

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

public class Operation

{

public static void One()

{

Console.WriteLine("one display");

throw new Exception("Error");

}

public static void Two()

{

Console.WriteLine("Two display");

}

}

class Program

{

delegate void DelOp();

static void Main(string[] args)

{

// Delegate instantiation

DelOp obj = Operation.One;

obj += Operation.Two;

Delegate[] del = obj.GetInvocationList();

foreach (DelOp d in del)

{

try

{

d();

}

catch (Exception)

{

Console.WriteLine("Error caught");

}

}

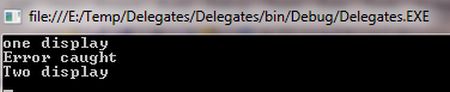
Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

When you run the application, you will see that the iteration continues with the next method even after an exception is caught, as in the following.



## More Details

**Source**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/Delegates>

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/UploadFile/84c85b/delegates-and-events-C-Sharp-net/>

A delegate is a type that safely encapsulates a method, similar to a function pointer in C and C++. Unlike C function pointers, delegates are object-oriented, type safe, and secure. The type of a delegate is defined by the name of the delegate. The following example declares a delegate named Del that can encapsulate a method that takes a string as an argument and returns void:

public delegate void Del(string message);

A delegate object is normally constructed by providing the name of the method the delegate will wrap, or with a lambda expression. Once a delegate is instantiated, a method call made to the delegate will be passed by the delegate to that method. The parameters passed to the delegate by the caller are passed to the method, and the return value, if any, from the method is returned to the caller by the delegate. This is known as invoking the delegate. An instantiated delegate can be invoked as if it were the wrapped method itself. For example:

// Create a method for a delegate.

public static void DelegateMethod(string message)

{

Console.WriteLine(message);

}

// Instantiate the delegate.

Del handler = DelegateMethod;

// Call the delegate.

handler("Hello World");

Delegate types are derived from the Delegate class in .NET. Delegate types are sealed—they cannot be derived from— and it is not possible to derive custom classes from Delegate. Because the instantiated delegate is an object, it can be passed as an argument, or assigned to a property. This allows a method to accept a delegate as a parameter, and call the delegate at some later time. This is known as an asynchronous callback, and is a common method of notifying a caller when a long process has completed. When a delegate is used in this fashion, the code using the delegate does not need any knowledge of the implementation of the method being used. The functionality is similar to the encapsulation interfaces provide.

Another common use of callbacks is defining a custom comparison method and passing that delegate to a sort method. It allows the caller's code to become part of the sort algorithm. The following example method uses the Del type as a parameter:

public static void MethodWithCallback(int param1, int param2, Del callback)

{

callback("The number is: " + (param1 + param2).ToString());

}

You can then pass the delegate created above to that method:

MethodWithCallback(1, 2, handler);

and receive the following output to the console:

The number is: 3

Using the delegate as an abstraction, MethodWithCallback does not need to call the console directly—it does not have to be designed with a console in mind. What MethodWithCallback does is simply prepare a string and pass the string to another method. This is especially powerful since a delegated method can use any number of parameters.

When a delegate is constructed to wrap an instance method, the delegate references both the instance and the method. A delegate has no knowledge of the instance type aside from the method it wraps, so a delegate can refer to any type of object as long as there is a method on that object that matches the delegate signature. When a delegate is constructed to wrap a static method, it only references the method. Consider the following declarations:

public class MethodClass

{

public void Method1(string message) { }

public void Method2(string message) { }

}

Along with the static DelegateMethod shown previously, we now have three methods that can be wrapped by a Del instance.

A delegate can call more than one method when invoked. This is referred to as multicasting. To add an extra method to the delegate's list of methods—the invocation list—simply requires adding two delegates using the addition or addition assignment operators ('+' or '+='). For example:

var obj = new MethodClass();

Del d1 = obj.Method1;

Del d2 = obj.Method2;

Del d3 = DelegateMethod;

//Both types of assignment are valid.

Del allMethodsDelegate = d1 + d2;

allMethodsDelegate += d3;

At this point allMethodsDelegate contains three methods in its invocation list—Method1, Method2, and DelegateMethod. The original three delegates, d1, d2, and d3, remain unchanged. When allMethodsDelegate is invoked, all three methods are called in order. If the delegate uses reference parameters, the reference is passed sequentially to each of the three methods in turn, and any changes by one method are visible to the next method. When any of the methods throws an exception that is not caught within the method, that exception is passed to the caller of the delegate and no subsequent methods in the invocation list are called. If the delegate has a return value and/or out parameters, it returns the return value and parameters of the last method invoked. To remove a method from the invocation list, use the subtraction or subtraction assignment operators (- or -=). For example:

//remove Method1

allMethodsDelegate -= d1;

// copy AllMethodsDelegate while removing d2

Del oneMethodDelegate = allMethodsDelegate - d2;

Because delegate types are derived from System.Delegate, the methods and properties defined by that class can be called on the delegate. For example, to find the number of methods in a delegate's invocation list, you may write:

int invocationCount = d1.GetInvocationList().GetLength(0);

Delegates with more than one method in their invocation list derive from [MulticastDelegate](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.multicastdelegate), which is a subclass of System.Delegate. The above code works in either case because both classes support GetInvocationList.

## Multicast Delegates

Multicast delegates are used extensively in event handling. Event source objects send event notifications to recipient objects that have registered to receive that event. To register for an event, the recipient creates a method designed to handle the event, then creates a delegate for that method and passes the delegate to the event source. The source calls the delegate when the event occurs. The delegate then calls the event handling method on the recipient, delivering the event data. The delegate type for a given event is defined by the event source. For more, see [Events](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/programming-guide/events/).

## Func Delegate

* First showcase FuncDelegateNormal.cs

A **Func** is a built-in generic type delegate. This delegate saves you from defining a custom delegate like as shown in the above example and make your program more readable and optimized. As we know that, Func is a generic delegate so it is defined under System namespace.

* It can **contain minimum 0 and maximum of 16 input parameters** in it and **contain only one out parameter**.
* The last parameter of the Func delegate is the out parameter which is considered as return type and used for the result.

Func is generally used for those methods which are going to return a value, or in other words, Func delegate is used for value returning methods. It can also contain parameters of the same type or of different types.

* Now, showcase FuncDelegate.cs

**Important:** The last parameter in Func Delegate is always an out parameter which is considered as a return type. It is generally used for the result.

## C# - Anonymous Method

As the name suggests, an anonymous method is a method without a name. Anonymous methods in C# can be defined using the delegate keyword and can be assigned to a variable of delegate type.

**Example: Anonymous Method**

public delegate void Print(int value);

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Print print = delegate(int val) {

Console.WriteLine("Inside Anonymous method. Value: {0}", val);

};

print(100);

}

**Output:**

Inside Anonymous method. Value: 100

Anonymous methods can access variables defined in an outer function.

**Example: Anonymous Method**

public delegate void Print(int value);

static void Main(string[] args)

{

int i = 10;

Print prnt = delegate(int val) {

val += i;

Console.WriteLine("Anonymous method: {0}", val);

};

prnt(100);

}

**Output:**

Anonymous method: 110

Anonymous methods can also be passed to a method that accepts the delegate as a parameter.

In the following example, PrintHelperMethod() takes the first parameters of the Print delegate:

**Example: Anonymous Method as Parameter**

public delegate void Print(int value);

class Program

{

public static void PrintHelperMethod(Print printDel,int val)

{

val += 10;

printDel(val);

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

PrintHelperMethod(delegate(int val) { Console.WriteLine("Anonymous method: {0}", val); }, 100);

}

}

**Output:**

Anonymous method: 110

Anonymous methods can be used as event handlers:

**Example: Anonymous Method as Event Handler**

saveButton.Click += delegate(Object o, EventArgs e)

{

System.Windows.Forms.MessageBox.Show("Save Successfully!");

};

C# 3.0 introduced the [lambda expression](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/linq/linq-lambda-expression) which also works like an anonymous method.

### Anonymous Method Limitations

* It cannot contain jump statement like goto, break or continue.
* It cannot access ref or out parameter of an outer method.
* It cannot have or access unsafe code.
* It cannot be used on the left side of the is operator.

 Points to Remember:

1. Anonymous method can be defined using the delegate keyword
2. Anonymous method must be assigned to a delegate.
3. Anonymous method can access outer variables or functions.
4. Anonymous method can be passed as a parameter.
5. Anonymous method can be used as event handlers.

# C# - Events

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/events-overview>

Events are, like delegates, a late binding mechanism. In fact, events are built on the language support for delegates.

Events are a way for an object to broadcast (to all interested components in the system) that something has happened. Any other component can subscribe to the event, and be notified when an event is raised.

You've probably used events in some of your programming. Many graphical systems have an event model to report user interaction. These events would report mouse movement, button presses and similar interactions. That's one of the most common, but certainly not the only scenario where events are used.

You can define events that should be raised for your classes. One important consideration when working with events is that there may not be any object registered for a particular event. You must write your code so that it does not raise events when no listeners are configured.

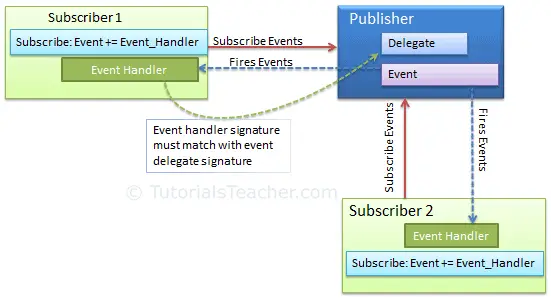
Subscribing to an event also creates a coupling between two objects (the event source, and the event sink). You need to ensure that the event sink unsubscribes from the event source when no longer interested in events.

An event is a notification sent by an object to signal the occurrence of an action. Events in .NET follow the [observer design pattern](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/standard/events/observer-design-pattern).

The class who raises events is called Publisher, and the class who receives the notification is called Subscriber. There can be multiple subscribers of a single event. Typically, a publisher raises an event when some action occurred. The subscribers, who are interested in getting a notification when an action occurred, should register with an event and handle it.

In C#, an event is an encapsulated [delegate](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-delegates). It is dependent on the delegate. The [delegate](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/csharp/csharp-delegates) defines the signature for the event handler method of the subscriber class.

The following figure illustrates the event in C#.



## Events

<https://www.c-sharpcorner.com/UploadFile/84c85b/delegates-and-events-C-Sharp-net/>

The applications and windows communicate via predefined messages. These messages contain various information to determine window and application actions. The .NET considers these messages as an event. You will handle the corresponding event if you need to react to a specific incoming message. For instance, when a button is clicked on a form, Windows sends a WM\_MOUSECLICK message to the button message handler.  
  
You don't need to build custom methods to add or remove methods to a delegate invocation list. C# provides the event keyword. When the compiler processes the event keyword, you can subscribe and unsubscribe methods and any necessary member variables for your delegate types. The syntax for the event definition should be as in the following:

Accessibility event delegatename eventname;

Defining an event is a two-step process. First, you need to define a delegate type that will hold the list of methods to be called when the event is fired. Next, you declare an event using the event keyword. To illustrate the event, we are creating a console application. In this iteration, we will define an event to add that is associated with a single delegate DelEventHandler.

### Example 1

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/CallbackDemo>

**Project & Method**: EventDemo.EventDemo1()

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

public delegate void DelEventHandler();

class Program

{

public static event DelEventHandler add;

static void Main(string[] args)

{

add += new DelEventHandler(USA);

add += new DelEventHandler(India);

add += new DelEventHandler(England);

add.Invoke();

Console.ReadLine();

}

static void USA()

{

Console.WriteLine("USA");

}

static void India()

{

Console.WriteLine("India");

}

static void England()

{

Console.WriteLine("England");

}

}

}

In the main method, we associate the event with its corresponding event handler with a function reference. Here, we fill the delegate invocation lists with a couple of defined methods using the +=operator. Finally, we invoke the event via the Invoke method.

**Note:** Event Handlers can't return a value. They are always void.

Let's use another example to get a better understanding of events. Here we are defining an event name as xyz and a delegate EventHandler with a string argument signature in the operation class. We are putting the implementation in the action method to confirm whether an event is fired or not.

### Example 2

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/CallbackDemo>

**Project & Method**: EventDemo.EventDemo2()

using System;

namespace Delegates

{

public delegate void EventHandler(string a);

public class Operation

{

public event EventHandler xyz;

public void Action(string a)

{

if (xyz != null)

{

xyz(a);

Console.WriteLine(a);

}

else

{

Console.WriteLine("Not Registered");

}

}

}

class Program

{

public static void CatchEvent(string s)

{

Console.WriteLine("Method Calling");

}

static void Main(string[] args)

{

Operation o = new Operation();

o.Action("Event Calling");

o.xyz += new EventHandler(CatchEvent);

Console.ReadLine();

}

}

}

Later in the Program class, we are defining a CatchEvent method that would be referenced in the delegate invocation list. Finally, we instantiated the operation class and implemented the event firing in the main method.

## Example 3: Declare, Raising and Consuming an Event

An event can be declared in two steps:

1. Declare a delegate.
2. Declare a variable of the delegate with event keyword.

### Declaring an Event

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/CallbackDemo>

**Project & Method**: EventDemo.EventNotifyDemo()

public delegate void Notify(); // delegate

public class ProcessBusinessLogic

{

public event Notify ProcessCompleted; // event

}

In the above example, we declared a delegate Notify and then declared an event ProcessCompleted of delegate type Notify using "event" keyword in the ProcessBusinessLogic class. Thus, the ProcessBusinessLogic class is called the publisher. The Notify delegate specifies the signature for the ProcessCompleted event handler. It specifies that the event handler method in subscriber class must have a void return type and no parameters.

Now, let's see how to raise the ProcessCompleted event. Consider the following implementation.

### Raising an Event

public delegate void Notify(); // delegate

public class ProcessBusinessLogic

{

public event Notify ProcessCompleted; // event

public void StartProcess()

{

Console.WriteLine("Process Started!");

// some code here..

OnProcessCompleted();

}

protected virtual void OnProcessCompleted() //protected virtual method

{

//if ProcessCompleted is not null then call delegate

ProcessCompleted?.Invoke();

}

}

Above, the StartProcess() method calls the method onProcessCompleted() at the end, which raises an event. Typically, to raise an event, protected and virtual method should be defined with the name On<EventName>. Protected and virtual enable derived classes to override the logic for raising the event. However, A derived class should always call the On<EventName> method of the base class to ensure that registered delegates receive the event.

The OnProcessCompleted() method invokes the delegate using ProcessCompleted?.Invoke();. This will call all the event handler methods registered with the ProcessCompleted event.

The subscriber class must register to ProcessCompleted event and handle it with the method whose signature matches Notify delegate, as shown below.

### Consume an Event

class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

ProcessBusinessLogic bl = new ProcessBusinessLogic();

bl.ProcessCompleted += bl\_ProcessCompleted; // register with an event

bl.StartProcess();

}

// event handler

public static void bl\_ProcessCompleted()

{

Console.WriteLine("Process Completed!");

}

}

Above, the Program class is a subscriber of the ProcessCompleted event. It registers with the event using += operator. Remember, this is the same way we add methods in the invocation list of multicast delegate. The bl\_ProcessCompleted() method handles the event because it matches the signature of the Notify delegate.

## Built-in EventHandler Delegate

.NET Framework includes built-in delegate types [EventHandler](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.eventhandler) and [EventHandler<TEventArgs>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.eventhandler-1) for the most common events. Typically, any event should include two parameters: the source of the event and event data. Use the EventHandler delegate for all events that do not include event data. Use [EventHandler<TEventArgs>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.eventhandler-1) delegate for events that include data to be sent to handlers.

The example shown above can use EventHandler delegate without declaring a custom Notify delegate, as shown below.

class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

ProcessBusinessLogic bl = new ProcessBusinessLogic();

bl.ProcessCompleted += bl\_ProcessCompleted; // register with an event

bl.StartProcess();

}

// event handler

public static void bl\_ProcessCompleted(object sender, EventArgs e)

{

Console.WriteLine("Process Completed!");

}

}

public class ProcessBusinessLogic

{

// declaring an event using built-in EventHandler

public event EventHandler ProcessCompleted;

public void StartProcess()

{

Console.WriteLine("Process Started!");

// some code here..

OnProcessCompleted(EventArgs.Empty); //No event data

}

protected virtual void OnProcessCompleted(EventArgs e)

{

ProcessCompleted?.Invoke(this, e);

}

}

In the above example, the event handler bl\_ProcessCompleted() method includes two parameters that match with EventHandler delegate. Also, passing this as a sender and EventArgs.Empty, when we raise an event using Invoke() in the OnProcessCompleted() method. Because we don't need any data for our event, it just notifies subscribers about the completion of the process, and so we passed EventArgs.Empty.

## Example 4: Passing an Event Data

Most events send some data to the subscribers. The [EventArgs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.eventargs) class is the base class for all the event data classes. .NET includes many built-in event data classes such as [SerialDataReceivedEventArgs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.io.ports.serialdatareceivedeventargs). It follows a naming pattern of ending all event data classes with EventArgs. You can create your custom class for event data by deriving EventArgs class.

Use [EventHandler<TEventArgs>](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/system.eventhandler-1) to pass data to the handler, as shown below.

### Example: Passing Event Data

**Solution**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/CallbackDemo>

**Project & Method**: EventDemo.PassEventDataDemo()

class Program

{

public static void Main()

{

ProcessBusinessLogic bl = new ProcessBusinessLogic();

bl.ProcessCompleted += bl\_ProcessCompleted; // register with an event

bl.StartProcess();

}

// event handler

public static void bl\_ProcessCompleted(object sender, bool IsSuccessful)

{

Console.WriteLine("Process " + (IsSuccessful? "Completed Successfully": "Failed!!!"));

}

}

public class ProcessBusinessLogic

{

// declaring an event using built-in EventHandler

public event EventHandler<bool> ProcessCompleted;

public void StartProcess()

{

try

{

Console.WriteLine("Process Started!");

// some code here..

var rnd = new Random();

var divisor = rnd.Next(0, 2);

var dividend = rnd.Next(1, 100);

Console.WriteLine($"Dividing {dividend} by {divisor}");

var result = dividend / divisor;

OnProcessCompleted(true);

}

catch(Exception ex)

{

OnProcessCompleted(false);

}

}

protected virtual void OnProcessCompleted(bool IsSuccessful)

{

ProcessCompleted?.Invoke(this, IsSuccessful);

}

}

In the above example, we are passing a single boolean value to the handlers that indicate whether the process completed successfully or not.

## More Details

### Defining and Using Events

The syntax for defining events, and subscribing or unsubscribing from events is an extension of the syntax for delegates.

To define an event you use the event keyword:

public event EventHandler<FileListArgs> Progress;

The type of the event (EventHandler<FileListArgs> in this example) must be a delegate type. There are a number of conventions that you should follow when declaring an event. Typically, the event delegate type has a void return. Event declarations should be a verb, or a verb phrase. Use past tense when the event reports something that has happened. Use a present tense verb (for example, Closing) to report something that is about to happen. Often, using present tense indicates that your class supports some kind of customization behavior. One of the most common scenarios is to support cancellation. For example, a Closing event may include an argument that would indicate if the close operation should continue, or not. Other scenarios may enable callers to modify behavior by updating properties of the event arguments. You may raise an event to indicate a proposed next action an algorithm will take. The event handler may mandate a different action by modifying properties of the event argument.

When you want to raise the event, you call the event handlers using the delegate invocation syntax:

Progress?.Invoke(this, new FileListArgs(file));

As discussed in the section on [delegates](https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/csharp/delegates-patterns), the ?. operator makes it easy to ensure that you do not attempt to raise the event when there are no subscribers to that event.

You subscribe to an event by using the += operator:

EventHandler<FileListArgs> onProgress = (sender, eventArgs) =>

Console.WriteLine(eventArgs.FoundFile);

fileLister.Progress += onProgress;

The handler method typically has the prefix 'On' followed by the event name, as shown above.

You unsubscribe using the -= operator:

fileLister.Progress -= onProgress;

It's important that you declare a local variable for the expression that represents the event handler. That ensures the unsubscribe removes the handler. If, instead, you used the body of the lambda expression, you are attempting to remove a handler that has never been attached, which does nothing.

# C# - LINQ

<https://zetcode.com/csharp/linq/>

Source: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/dotNetFullStackDemos/tree/main/dotNETCore/LinqDemos>

**Language-Integrated Query (LINQ)** is the name for a set of technologies based on the integration of query capabilities directly into the C# language. LINQ provides a consistent query experience for objects (LINQ to Objects), relational databases (LINQ to SQL), and XML (LINQ to XML).

LINQ extends the language by the addition of query expressions, which are similar to SQL statements. LINQ query expressions can be used to conveniently extract and process data from arrays, enumerable classes, XML documents, relational databases, and third-party data sources.

Query expressions can be used to query and to transform data from any LINQ-enabled data source. Query expressions have deferred execution. They are not executed until we iterate over the query variable, for example, in a foreach statement.

LINQ queries can be written in the query syntax or the method syntax.

## LINQ query and method syntax

In LINQ, we can use either the query or the method syntax. A few methods, such as Append or Concat, do not have equivalents in the query syntax.

The example uses the query and the method syntax to find out all words that contain the 'a' character.

QueryAndMethodSyntax**.cs**

var words = new string[] { "falcon", "eagle", "sky", "tree", "water" };

// Query syntax

var res = from word in words

where word.Contains('a')

select word;

foreach (var word in res)

{

Console.WriteLine(word);

}

Console.WriteLine("-----------");

// Method syntax

var res2 = words.Where(word => word.Contains('a'));

foreach (var word in res2)

{

Console.WriteLine(word);

}

The LINQ extension methods are available in the System.Linq namespace.

This is the query syntax; it is similar to SQL code:

// Query syntax

var res = from word in words

where word.Contains('a')

select word;

This is the method syntax; the methods can be chained:

// Method syntax

var res2 = words.Where(word => word.Contains('a'));

## LINQ element access

There are a couple of helper methods for accessing elements.

ElementAccess**.cs**

string[] words = { "falcon", "oak", "sky", "cloud", "tree", "tea", "water" };

Console.WriteLine(words.ElementAt(2));

Console.WriteLine(words.First());

Console.WriteLine(words.Last());

Console.WriteLine(words.First(word => word.Length == 3));

Console.WriteLine(words.Last(word => word.Length == 3));

In the example, we access elements of an array.

Console.WriteLine(words.ElementAt(2));

We get the third element from the array with ElementAt.

Console.WriteLine(words.First());

Console.WriteLine(words.Last());

We retrieve the first and the last element of the array.

Console.WriteLine(words.First(word => word.Length == 3));

Console.WriteLine(words.Last(word => word.Length == 3));

The First and Last methods also can take a predicate. We get the first an last elements that have three characters.

The Prepend adds a value to the beginning of the sequence and the Append appends a value to the end of the sequence. Note that these methods do not modify the elements of the collection. Instead, they create a copy of the collection with the new elements.

int[] vals = {1, 2, 3};

vals.Prepend(0);

vals.Append(4);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", vals));

var vals2 = vals.Prepend(0);

var vals3 = vals2.Append(4);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", vals3));

## LINQ select

The select clause or the Select method projects each element of a sequence into a new form. It selects, projects and transforms elements in a collection. The Select is usually called Map in other languages.

**Select.cs**

int[] vals = { 2, 4, 6, 8 };

var powered = vals.Select(e => Math.Pow(e, 2));

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", powered));

string[] words = { "sky", "earth", "oak", "falcon" };

var wordLens = words.Select(e => e.Length);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", wordLens));

In the example, we transform an array of integers into a sequence of its powers and transform an array of words into a sequence of word lengths.

## LINQ select into anonymous type

Projections are selection of specific fields from the returned objects. Projections are performed with the select clause. We can project fields into anonymous types.

In the example, we select users who live in Bratislava.

With the select new clause, we create an anonymous type with two fields: Name and City.

**SelectIntoAnon.cs**

User[] users =

{

new (1, "John", "London", "2001-04-01"),

new (2, "Lenny", "New York", "1997-12-11"),

new (3, "Andrew", "Boston", "1987-02-22"),

new (4, "Peter", "Prague", "1936-03-24"),

new (5, "Anna", "Bratislava", "1973-11-18"),

new (6, "Albert", "Bratislava", "1940-12-11"),

new (7, "Adam", "Trnava", "1983-12-01"),

new (8, "Robert", "Bratislava", "1935-05-15"),

new (9, "Robert", "Prague", "1998-03-14"),

};

var res = from user in users

where user.City == "Bratislava"

select new { user.Name, user.City };

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", res));

## LINQ SelectMany

The SelectMany flattens sequences into a single sequence.

**SelectMany.cs**

int[][] vals = {

new[] {1, 2, 3},

new[] {4},

new[] {5, 6, 6, 2, 7, 8},

};

var res = vals.SelectMany(array => array).OrderBy(x => x);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", res));

In the example, we have an array of arrays. With the SelectMany method, we flatten the two-dimensional array into an one-dimensional array values. The values are also ordered.

In the next example, we flatten the nested lists into a single list of unique values.

The Distinct method is used to get unique values.

var vals = new List<List<int>> {

new List<int> {1, 2, 3, 3},

new List<int> {4},

new List<int> {5, 6, 6, 7, 7}

};

var res = vals.SelectMany(list => list)

.Distinct()

.OrderByDescending(e => e);

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", res));

## LINQ Concat

The Concat method concatenates two sequences.

**Concat.cs**

User[] users1 =

{

new User("John", "Doe", "gardener"),

new User("Jane", "Doe", "teacher"),

new User("Roger", "Roe", "driver")

};

User[] users2 =

{

new User("Peter", "Smith", "teacher"),

new User("Lucia", "Black", "accountant"),

new User("Michael", "Novak", "programmer")

};

var allUsers = users1.Concat(users2);

foreach (var user in allUsers)

{

Console.WriteLine(user);

}

## LINQ filter

We can filter data with the where clause. The conditions can be combined with && or || operators.

In the example, we pick all words that have four letters.

**Filter.cs**

var words = new List<string> { "sky", "rock", "forest", "new",

"falcon", "jewelry", "eagle", "blue", "gray" };

var query = from word in words

where word.Length == 4

select word;

foreach (var word in query)

{

Console.WriteLine(word);

}

In our list, we have three words that satisfy the condition.

In the next example, we use the || operator to combine conditions.

In the example, we pick all words that either start with 'f', or 's' characters.

var words = new List<string> { "sky", "rock", "forest", "new",

"falcon", "jewelry", "small", "eagle", "blue", "gray" };

var res = from word in words

where word.StartsWith('f') || word.StartsWith('s')

select word;

foreach (var word in res)

{

Console.WriteLine(word);

}

In the following example, we apply two conditions with &&.

In the example, we filter the list of car objects with the where clause. We include all cars whose price is between 30000 and 100000.

var cars = new List<Car>

{

new ("Audi", 52642),

new ("Mercedes", 57127),

new ("Skoda", 9000),

new ("Volvo", 29000),

new ("Bentley", 350000),

new ("Citroen", 21000),

new ("Hummer", 41400),

new ("Volkswagen", 21600),

};

var res = from car in cars

where car.Price > 30000 && car.Price < 100000

select new { car.Name, car.Price };

foreach (var car in res)

{

Console.WriteLine($"{car.Name} {car.Price}");

}

## LINQ built-in aggregate calculations

LINQ allows us to calculate aggregate calculations, such as min, max, or sum.

**Aggregates.cs**

var vals = new List<int> { 6, 2, -3, 4, -5, 9, 7, 8 };

var n1 = vals.Count();

Console.WriteLine($"There are {n1} elements");

var n2 = vals.Count(e => e % 2 == 0);

Console.WriteLine($"There are {n2} even elements");

var sum = vals.Sum();

Console.WriteLine($"The sum of all values is: {sum}");

var s2 = vals.Sum(e => e > 0 ? e : 0);

Console.WriteLine($"The sum of all positive values is: {s2}");

var avg = vals.Average();

Console.WriteLine($"The average of values is: {avg}");

var max = vals.Max();

Console.WriteLine($"The maximum value is: {max}");

var min = vals.Min();

Console.WriteLine($"The minimum value is: {min}");

The following example uses query expressions. In the example, we count the number of positive values in the vals list and the number of characters in the words list.

var vals = new List<int> { 1, -2, 3, -4, 5, 6, 7, -8 };

var s = (from x in vals where x > 0 select x).Sum();

Console.WriteLine($"The sum of positive values is: {s}");

var words = new List<string> { "falcon", "eagle", "hawk", "owl" };

int len = (from x in words select x.Length).Sum();

Console.WriteLine($"There are {len} letters in the list");

## LINQ orderby

With the OrderBy method or the orderby clause we can sort the elements of a sequence.

In the example, we sort the integers in ascending and descending order. The ascending keyword is optional.

**OrderBy.cs**

int[] vals = { 4, 5, 3, 2, 7, 0, 1, 6 };

var result = from e in vals

orderby e ascending

select e;

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", result));

var result2 = from e in vals

orderby e descending

select e;

Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ", result2));

In the next example, we sort objects by multiple fields.

var users = new List<User>

{

new ("John", "Doe", 1230),

new ("Lucy", "Novak", 670),

new ("Ben", "Walter", 2050),

new ("Robin", "Brown", 2300),

new ("Amy", "Doe", 1250),

new ("Joe", "Draker", 1190),

new ("Janet", "Doe", 980),

new ("Albert", "Novak", 1930),

};

Console.WriteLine("sort ascending by last name and salary");

var sortedUsers = users.OrderBy(u => u.LastName).ThenBy(u => u.Salary);

foreach (var user in sortedUsers)

{

Console.WriteLine(user);

}

Console.WriteLine("---------------------");

Console.WriteLine("sort descending by last name and salary");

var sortedUsers2 = users.OrderByDescending(u => u.LastName)

.ThenByDescending(u => u.Salary);

foreach (var user in sortedUsers2)

{

Console.WriteLine(user);

}

## LINQ group by

We can group data into categories based on a certain key.

**GroupBy.cs**

var cars = new List<Car>

{

new ("Audi", "red", 52642),

new ("Mercedes", "blue", 57127),

new ("Skoda", "black", 9000),

new ("Volvo", "red", 29000),

new ("Bentley", "yellow", 350000),

new ("Citroen", "white", 21000),

new ("Hummer", "black", 41400),

new ("Volkswagen", "white", 21600),

};

var groups = from car in cars

group car by car.Colour;

foreach (var group in groups)

{

Console.WriteLine(group.Key);

foreach (var car in group)

{

Console.WriteLine($" {car.Name} {car.Price}");

}

}

In the following example, we perform a grouping and aggregation operations.

We have revenues for four quarters. We group the revenues by the quarters and sum the amounts.

Revenue[] revenues =

{

new (1, "Q1", 2340),

new (2, "Q1", 1200),

new (3, "Q1", 980),

new (4, "Q2", 340),

new (5, "Q2", 780),

new (6, "Q3", 2010),

new (7, "Q3", 3370),

new (8, "Q4", 540),

};

var res = from revenue in revenues

group revenue by revenue.Quarter

into g

select new { Quarter = g.Key, Total = g.Sum(e => e.Amount) };

foreach (var line in res)

{

Console.WriteLine(line);

}

## LINQ join

The join clause joins sequences.

**Join.cs**

string[] basketA = { "coin", "book", "fork", "cord", "needle" };

string[] basketB = { "watches", "coin", "pen", "book", "pencil" };

var res = from item1 in basketA

join item2 in basketB

on item1 equals item2

select item1;

foreach (var item in res)

{

Console.WriteLine(item);

}

## LINQ XML

LINQ can be used to process XML.

**LinqXml.cs**

using System.Xml.Linq;

string myXML = @"

<Users>

<User>

<Name>Jack</Name>

<Sex>male</Sex>

</User>

<User>

<Name>Paul</Name>

<Sex>male</Sex>

</User>

<User>

<Name>Frank</Name>

<Sex>male</Sex>

</User>

<User>

<Name>Martina</Name>

<Sex>female</Sex>

</User>

<User>

<Name>Lucia</Name>

<Sex>female</Sex>

</User>

</Users>";

var xdoc = new XDocument();

xdoc = XDocument.Parse(myXML);

var females = from u in xdoc.Root.Descendants()

where (string)u.Element("Sex") == "female"

select u.Element("Name");

foreach (var e in females)

{

Console.WriteLine("{0}", e);

}

# C# - Extension Methods

Extension methods, as the name suggests, are additional methods. Extension methods allow you to inject additional methods without modifying, deriving or recompiling the original class, struct or interface. Extension methods can be added to your own custom class, .NET framework classes, or third party classes or interfaces.

In the following example, IsGreaterThan() is an extension method for int type, which returns true if the value of the int variable is greater than the supplied integer parameter.

**Example: Extension Method**

int i = 10;

bool result = i.IsGreaterThan(100); //returns false

The IsGreaterThan() method is not a method of int data type (Int32 struct). It is an extension method written by the programmer for the int data type. The IsGreaterThan() extension method will be available throughout the application by including the namespace in which it has been defined.

The extension methods have a special symbol in intellisense of the visual studio, so that you can easily differentiate between class methods and extension methods.

[](https://www.tutorialsteacher.com/Content/images/csharp/extension-method.png)

Extension Method Symbol in visual studio intellisense

Now let's see how to write an extension method.

Icon

Description automatically generatedLINQ is built upon extension methods that operate on IEnumerable and IQeryable type.

An extension method is actually a special kind of static method defined in a static class. To define an extension method, first of all, define a static class.

For example, we have created an IntExtensions class under the ExtensionMethods namespace in the following example. The IntExtensions class will contain all the extension methods applicable to int data type. (You may use any name for namespace and class.)

**Example: Create a Class for Extension Methods**

namespace ExtensionMethods

{

public static class IntExtensions

{

}

}

Now, define a static method as an extension method where the first parameter of the extension method specifies the type on which the extension method is applicable. We are going to use this extension method on int type. So the first parameter must be int preceded with the ***this*** modifier.

For example, the IsGreaterThan() method operates on int, so the first parameter would be, this int i.

**Example: Define an Extension Method**

namespace ExtensionMethods

{

public static class IntExtensions

{

public static bool IsGreaterThan(this int i, int value)

{

return i > value;

}

}

}

Now, you can include the ExtensionMethods namespace wherever you want to use this extension method.

**Example: Extension method**

using ExtensionMethods;

class Program

{

static void Main(string[] args)

{

int i = 10;

bool result = i.IsGreaterThan(100);

Console.WriteLine(result);

}

}

**Output:**

false

**Note:**

The only difference between a regular static method and an extension method is that the first parameter of the extension method specifies the type that it is going to operator on, preceded by the ***this*** keyword.

 Points to Remember :

1. Extension methods are additional custom methods which were originally not included with the class.
2. Extension methods can be added to custom, .NET Framework or third party classes, structs or interfaces.
3. The first parameter of the extension method must be of the type for which the extension method is applicable, preceded by the **this** keyword.
4. Extension methods can be used anywhere in the application by including the namespace of the extension method.

# Deployment

.NET:

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/architecture/devops-for-aspnet-developers/actions-deploy>

<https://learn.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/devops/dotnet-publish-github-action>

<https://docs.github.com/en/actions/deployment/deploying-to-your-cloud-provider/deploying-to-azure/deploying-net-to-azure-app-service>

<https://github.com/marketplace/actions/sonarcloud-scan>

Angular:

<https://www.rupeshtiwari.com/setup-ci-cd-for-angular-app-with-github-action/>

<https://gist.github.com/FabianHertwig/1f10fe8941035eccd1ca7958f38ef0f0>

Docker:

<https://www.cloudwithchris.com/blog/github-action-docker-dotnet-core/>

<https://dev.to/mcklmt/build-and-deploy-net-5-app-with-github-actions-1de>

<https://docs.github.com/en/actions/deployment/deploying-to-your-cloud-provider/deploying-to-azure/deploying-docker-to-azure-app-service>

<https://dev.to/hatembentayeb/deploying-a-dockerized-angular-app-with-github-actions-59oo>

## Minimal Todo API Deployment to Azure using GitHub Actions and SonarCloud

**Source**: C:\Temp\mintodo

**Repo**: <https://github.com/AjaySingala/mintodo>

**App Service**: <https://ajs-todoapi.azurewebsites.net>

**Sonar Project**: mintodo

* Define **SONAR\_TOKEN** in the GitHub repo’s secrets section.
* Walk-thru C:\Temp\mintodo\.github\workflows\main\_ajs-todoapi.yml

## Adding Environments and Approval Steps

* GitHub repo -> Settings – Environments -> New Environment.
* Give a name to the env and add Required Users for manual approval.
* Save Protection Rules.
* Add steps to the .yml file:
  + Note the “**needs**” rule for **deploy-prod**.

deploy-dev:

runs-on: ubuntu-latest

needs: build

environment:

name: 'dev'

url: ${{ steps.deploy-to-webapp.outputs.webapp-url }}

steps:

- name: Download artifact from build job

uses: actions/download-artifact@v2

with:

name: .net-app

- name: Deploy to Azure Web App

id: deploy-to-webapp

uses: azure/webapps-deploy@v2

with:

app-name: 'ajs-todoapi'

slot-name: 'Production'

publish-profile: ${{ secrets.AZUREAPPSERVICE\_PUBLISHPROFILE\_DBF622AFDBF547DFB3C04D6A10167652 }}

package: .

deploy-prod:

runs-on: ubuntu-latest

needs: [build, deploy-dev]

environment:

name: 'Production'

url: ${{ steps.deploy-to-webapp.outputs.webapp-url }}

steps:

- name: Download artifact from build job

uses: actions/download-artifact@v2

with:

name: .net-app

- name: Deploy to Azure Web App

id: deploy-to-webapp

uses: azure/webapps-deploy@v2

with:

app-name: 'ajs-todoapi'

slot-name: 'Production'

publish-profile: ${{ secrets.AZUREAPPSERVICE\_PUBLISHPROFILE\_DBF622AFDBF547DFB3C04D6A10167652 }}

package: .